



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Genesis

Version 57

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2021-12-22

Version: 57

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2021-12-06

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2021-09-07

Version: 2.1.23

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2021-09-14

Version: 0.22

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2021-12-09

Version: 24

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2021-11-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	14
Genesis	14
Introduction to Genesis	15
Genesis 1	18
Genesis 2	50
Genesis 3	76
Genesis 4	101
Genesis 5	128
Genesis 6	161
Genesis 7	184
Genesis 8	209
Genesis 9	232
Genesis 10	263
Genesis 11	296
Genesis 12	329
Genesis 13	350
Genesis 14	369
Genesis 15	394
Genesis 16	416
Genesis 17	433
Genesis 18	461
Genesis 19	495
Genesis 20	535
Genesis 21	554
Genesis 22	589
Genesis 23	614
Genesis 24	635
Genesis 25	703
Genesis 26	738
Genesis 27	774
Genesis 28	822
Genesis 29	845
Genesis 30	881
Genesis 31	925
Genesis 32	981
Genesis 33	1014
Genesis 34	1035
Genesis 35	1067
Genesis 36	1097
Genesis 37	1141
Genesis 38	1178
Genesis 39	1209
Genesis 40	1233
Genesis 41	1257
Genesis 42	1315
Genesis 43	1354
Genesis 44	1389
Genesis 45	1424
Genesis 46	1453

Genesis 47	1488
Genesis 48	1520
Genesis 49	1543
Genesis 50	1578

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	1606
Abstract Nouns	1607
Active or Passive	1609
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1612
Background Information	1616
Biblical Distance	1619
Biblical Volume	1622
Biblical Weight	1626
Connecting Words and Phrases	1628
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1632
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding	1634
Double Negatives	1637
Doublet	1639
Ellipsis	1641
Euphemism	1644
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1646
First, Second or Third Person	1648
Forms of You	1650
Fractions	1651
Go and Come	1653
Hebrew Months	1655
Hendiadys	1658
How to Translate Names	1661
Hyperbole	1665
Hypothetical Situations	1669
Idiom	1672
Imperatives — Other Uses	1674
Introduction of a New Event	1677
Introduction of New and Old Participants	1680
Irony	1683
Litotes	1686
Merism	1688
Metaphor	1690
Metonymy	1696
Nominal Adjectives	1698
Numbers	1700
Order of Events	1703
Ordinal Numbers	1705
Parallelism	1708
Personification	1711
Poetry	1713
Predictive Past	1716
Pronouns	1718
Proverbs	1720
Quotes within Quotes	1723
Reflexive Pronouns	1726
Rhetorical Question	1729

Sentence Structure	1732
Simile	1734
Symbolic Action	1737
Symbolic Language	1739
Synecdoche	1741
Textual Variants	1743
Translate Unknowns	1745
When Masculine Words Include Women	1748
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	1750
Abel	1751
Abimelech	1752
abomination, abominable	1753
Abraham, Abram	1754
Adam	1756
administration, administrator, administering, officer, official,	1757
adversary, enemy	1758
afflict, affliction, distress	1759
Ai	1760
alien, foreigner, sojourn	1761
Almighty	1762
altar	1763
Amalek, Amalekite	1764
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder,	1765
Ammon, Ammonite	1766
Amorite	1767
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1768
angel, archangel	1770
anoint, anointed, anointing	1772
appoint, appointed	1773
appoint, appointed	1774
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus	1775
Ararat	1776
archer	1777
ark	1778
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	1779
ash, ashes	1780
Asher	1781
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1782
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1783
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1784
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	1785
barren, dry	1786
basket, basketfuls	1787
bear, bearer, carry	1788
beast	1789
Beersheba	1790
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	1791
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1794
Bethel	1795
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	1796
Bethuel	1797
Bilhah	1798

bind, bond, bound	1799
bind, bond, bound	1800
birthright	1801
bless, blessed, blessing	1802
blood	1804
blot out, wipe out	1806
body	1807
bow and arrow, a bow	1808
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1809
bread	1810
breath, breathe	1811
bronze	1812
brother	1813
brother	1815
burnt offering, offering by fire	1816
bury, buried, burial	1817
Cain	1818
call, call out	1819
camel	1821
Canaan, Canaanite	1822
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1823
cast out, driving out, throw out	1824
caught up	1825
Chaldea, Chaldean	1826
chariot, charioteers	1827
cherub	1828
chief, leader	1829
children, child, offspring	1830
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1832
cistern, well	1834
clan	1835
clean, wash	1836
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments	1838
column, pillar	1839
comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted	1840
command, commandment	1841
companion, fellow worker, friend	1842
compassion, compassionate	1843
conceive, conception	1844
concubine	1845
contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to	1846
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved	1847
council	1848
court, courtyard	1849
covenant	1850
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1852
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1853
create, created, creation, creator	1854
cry, cry out, outcry	1855
cupbearer	1856
cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	1857
curse, cursed, cursing	1859

Cush	1861
cut off, cut down	1862
Damascus	1863
Dan	1864
darkness	1865
day	1866
deceive, lie, deception, illusions	1867
declare, proclaim, announce	1868
decree, decreed	1869
deer, doe, fawns, roebuck	1870
defile, defiled, desecrate	1871
delight	1872
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	1873
descend, descendant	1874
desert, wilderness	1875
desolate, desolation, alone, deserted	1876
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1877
devour	1878
die, dead, deadly, death	1879
discern, discernment, distinguish	1881
disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed	1882
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	1883
dominion	1884
donkey, mule	1885
dove, pigeon	1886
dream	1887
drink offering	1888
drunk, drunkard	1889
earth, land	1890
Eden, garden of Eden	1892
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1893
Egypt, Egyptian	1894
Elam, Elamites	1895
elder, older, old	1896
Enoch	1897
envy, covet	1898
envy, covet	1899
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1900
Ephrath, Ephrathah	1901
Esau	1902
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1903
Euphrates River, the River	1905
Eve	1906
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1907
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1909
face, facial	1910
faith	1912
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1913
family, household	1915
famine	1916
favor, favorable, favoritism	1917
fear, afraid, frighten	1918

feast, feasting	1919
fig	1920
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1921
firstborn	1922
flesh	1923
flock, herd	1924
flood	1925
flute, pipe	1926
fool, foolish, folly	1927
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	1928
forsake, forsaken, leave	1930
fountain, source, spring	1931
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1932
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	1934
Gad	1935
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1936
Gaza	1937
generation	1938
Gerar	1939
gift	1940
Gilead, Gileadite	1941
Girgashites	1942
glory, glorious, glorify	1943
goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids	1945
God	1946
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1948
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	1950
gold, golden	1952
Gomorrah	1953
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1954
Goshen	1956
grace, gracious	1957
grain, grainfields	1958
grape, grapevine	1959
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	1960
Greece, Grecian	1961
guilt, guilty	1962
had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with	1963
Hagar	1964
Ham	1965
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath	1966
Hamor	1967
hand	1968
hang, hung	1970
Haran	1971
hard, harden, hardness	1972
harvest, reap	1973
head	1974
heart	1975
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	1976
Hebrew	1978
Hebron	1979

heir	1980
Hittite	1981
Hivite	1982
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1983
honey, honeycomb	1985
honor	1986
horn, horned	1987
horse, warhorse, horseback	1988
horseman	1989
house, household	1990
image of God, image	1991
image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue	1992
inherit, inheritance, heir	1993
iniquity	1995
innocent	1996
integrity	1997
interpret, interpretation, interpreter	1998
Isaac	1999
Ishmael, Ishmaelite	2001
Israel, Israelites	2002
Issachar	2004
Jacob, Israel	2005
Japheth	2007
jealous, jealousy	2008
Jebus, Jebusite	2009
Jordan River, Jordan	2010
Joseph (OT)	2011
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	2012
Judah	2014
judge	2015
judge, judgment	2016
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	2018
Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh	2020
Kedar	2021
kind [NOT kindness]	2022
king, kingship	2023
kingdom	2024
kiss	2026
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	2027
Korah, Korahite	2029
Laban	2030
labor, laborer, work, hard work	2031
lamb, Lamb of God	2032
Lamech	2034
lament, lamentation	2035
law, principle	2036
Leah	2037
Levi, Levite	2038
life, live, living, alive	2039
light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten	2041
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if	2042
lion, lioness	2043

livestock, animals	2044
loins, waist	2045
lord, Lord, master, sir	2046
Lot	2048
love, beloved	2049
lust, lustful, passions, desires	2051
lute, lyre	2052
Maacah	2053
magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits	2054
Manasseh	2055
Mede, Medes, Media	2056
meditate, meditation	2057
Melchizedek	2058
Meshech	2059
messenger	2060
Midian, Midianite	2061
might, mighty, mighty works	2062
Mizpah	2063
Moab, Moabite	2064
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock	2065
month, monthly	2066
Most High	2067
mourn, mourner, weeping	2068
multiply, multiplied, multiplication	2069
myrrh	2070
Naaman	2071
Nahor	2072
name	2073
Naphtali	2074
nation	2075
Negev	2077
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile	2078
Nineveh, Ninevite	2079
Noah	2080
oak	2081
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	2082
obey, keep	2083
oil	2084
olive	2085
oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate	2086
oversee, overseer, keeper	2087
overtake	2088
Paddan Aram	2089
Paran	2090
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	2091
people of God	2092
people, people group	2093
perfect, complete	2095
Perizzite	2096
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	2097
Philistines	2098
pierce, pierced	2099

pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern	2100
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow	2101
plea, plead, please, beg, implore	2102
pledge, pledged	2103
plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed	2104
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	2105
Potiphar	2106
praise, praised, praiseworthy	2107
pray, prayer	2108
precious, valuable, expensive, fine	2109
prey, prey on	2110
priest, priesthood	2111
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	2113
prison, prisoner, imprison	2114
profit, profitable, unprofitable	2115
promise, promised	2116
Promised Land	2117
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	2118
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	2120
prostitute, harlot, whored	2121
prostrate	2122
prostrate, bow down, worship	2123
proud, pride, prideful	2124
pure, purify, purification	2126
Rachel	2127
raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,	2128
Rebekah	2130
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	2131
rebuke, reprove	2132
redeem, redeemer, redemption	2133
reed	2134
reign, rule	2135
remnant	2136
report, reported, tell, reputation	2137
rest, rested, restless	2138
restore, restoration	2139
return, turn back	2140
Reuben	2141
reveal, revealed, revelation	2142
reward, prize, deserve	2143
right hand	2144
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright,	2146
rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader	2148
run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows	2149
sackcloth	2150
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	2151
Salt Sea, Dead Sea	2153
sandal	2154
Sarah, Sarai	2155
Satan, devil, evil one	2156
Saul (OT)	2158
save, saved, safe, salvation	2159

scepter	2161
seal, sealed, unsealed	2162
seed, semen	2163
seek, search, look for	2164
seize, seizure, capture	2165
send, sent, send out	2166
serpent, snake, viper	2167
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	2168
set apart	2171
Seth	2172
shadow, overshadow, shade	2173
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	2174
Sheba	2176
Shechem	2177
Shem	2178
shepherd, herder, pastor	2179
shield	2181
Shiloh	2182
Shinar	2183
shrewd, cunning	2184
Sidon, Sidonians	2185
sign, proof, reminder	2186
silver	2188
Simeon	2189
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	2190
sister	2192
slaughter, slaughtered	2193
slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder	2194
Sodom	2195
son	2196
sons of God, children of God	2198
soul, self, person	2199
spirit, wind, breath	2200
staff, clubs	2202
statute	2203
strength, strengthen, strong	2204
strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict	2206
Succoth	2207
sweep	2208
sword, swordsmen	2209
Tamar	2210
Tarshish	2211
tempt, temptation	2212
tent, tentmakers	2213
tenth, tithe	2214
Terah	2215
terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic	2216
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	2217
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	2218
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits	2220
thorn, thorn bush, thistle	2221
thresh	2222

throne, enthroned	2223
tongue, language	2224
transgress, transgression	2225
tremble, stagger, shake	2226
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	2227
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	2228
true, truth	2229
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	2231
Tubal	2232
tunic	2233
unleavened bread	2234
Ur	2235
veil, veiled, unveiled	2236
vine	2237
vineyard	2238
virgin, virginity	2239
vision, envision	2240
voice	2241
vow	2242
walk, walked	2243
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	2244
water, deep	2245
week	2247
wheat	2248
wine, wineskin, new wine	2249
wise men, advisor	2250
wise, wisdom	2251
wolf, wild dogs	2252
womb	2253
work, works, deeds	2254
wrath, fury	2255
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful	2256
Yahweh	2257
year	2259
yoke, yoked, tied	2260
Zebulun	2261
Zilpah	2262
Zoar	2263
Contributors	2264
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	2264
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	2270
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	2271
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	2272



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Genesis

Introduction to Genesis

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Genesis

From the Creation to the Tower of Babel

The account of the creation of the heavens and the earth (1:1–4:26)

The account of Adam (5:1–6:8)

The account of Noah (6:9–11:9)

The account of Shem (11:10–11:26)

The account of Terah (11:27–11:32)

The accounts of the Patriarchs

The account of Abraham (12:1–25:11)

The account of Ishmael (25:12–25:18)

The account of Isaac, focusing on Jacob (25:19–35:29)

The account of Esau (36:1–37:1)

The account of Jacob, focusing on Joseph (37:2–50:26)

What is Genesis about?

Genesis begins with the early years of creation. It tells about God creating heaven, earth, and the first humans. It also tells about the first time humans sinned. This caused humans to be separated from God and to eventually die. Genesis 1-11 briefly tells about other important events that occurred over many hundreds of years. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#))

Genesis is also about the beginning of God's people. Genesis 12-50 tells about how God remained faithful to Abraham and his descendants. Abraham's descendants became known as the Hebrews and later as the Israelites. These people would worship Yahweh and be his people.

Genesis ends with Abraham's descendants living in Egypt with the hope of returning one day to the Promised Land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

"Genesis" means "beginning," so translators should express this idea in their title. Titles such as "The Beginning of Things" may be suitable. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote Genesis?

The writers of both the Old and New Testaments presented Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Genesis. Since ancient times, both Jews and Christians have thought that Moses wrote Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What are the covenants mentioned in Genesis?

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

God made three covenants in Genesis. In the covenant with Adam, God promised to bless Adam and cause him to prosper. Adam was not allowed to eat fruit from the tree of knowledge of good and evil. God promised that Adam would die if he disobeyed what he commanded.

In the covenant with Noah, God promised to never again destroy the world with a flood.

In the covenant with Abraham, God promised to make Abraham's descendants into a great nation. He also promised to protect them and to give them a land of their own.

What was God's purpose for the book of Genesis?

The book of Genesis says that God created a very good world. However, the world became cursed because human beings began to sin. But Genesis shows that God continues to have complete control over the world.

Genesis also describes the start of God's plan to bless the whole world again. This is shown when God makes a covenant with Abraham. With this covenant, God chose Abraham and his descendants to be his people. God promised to bless the world through Abraham's descendants.

What was the custom for inheritance as described by Genesis?

There are several passages in Genesis that show the customs of a father who is about to die passing on a blessing to his son. Abraham blessed his son, Isaac, and made him the ancestor of the people of Israel. However, Ishmael, Abraham's other son, did not receive that same divine blessing. Likewise, Isaac's older son Esau did not receive the blessing. Isaac's younger son, Jacob, received it instead. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Also, it was the custom for a man to divide among his sons his material wealth and land. All his sons received equal portions except the oldest son. The firstborn son received twice as much. His portion was called a double portion. Esau gave up his right to receive the double portion.

How does Genesis present sin and evil?

Genesis presents sin as doing things that are against God's word and God's ways. It presents evil as the opposite of good.

Sin and evil have affected all people. This started when Adam disobeyed God in the Garden of Eden.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is one way in which Genesis marks the beginning of important sections?

Genesis uses one Hebrew phrase that the ULT translates as "this is the record of," "these were the events concerning," or "these were the descendants of." The information in these sections may have come from sources much older than Moses. These passages are 2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10, 27; 25:12, 19; 36:1, 9; 37:2.

If the translator wants to translate in only two ways, we recommend for most passages a phrase such as, "this is the record about" or "this is information about." Some passages will be better translated, however, as "These were the descendants of."

Why are the beginnings of some narrative sections in Genesis difficult to translate?

Often in Genesis, the author first summarizes what is about to happen. Then in the following verses, the author tells the details of what happened. Probable examples of this style occur in Gen. 1:1, 6:22, 18:1, 21:1 and 22:1.

However, in many languages, it is preferred to write summaries at the end of a narrative. In this case, translators may choose a different approach. For example, in Gen. 1:1 (“In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth”), translators may decide to translate like this: “This is about how God made the heavens and the earth in the beginning.”

What is the difference between “people,” “peoples,” and “people groups”?

The word “people” refers to all the individuals who belong to a group, such as “the people of Israel.” The word “peoples” (used in the ULT) refers to multiple groups of people. Each people group might speak their own language, have their own customs, and worship their own gods. Some different peoples in the ancient Near East were those of Israel, Egypt, Edom, Moab, and Ammon.

The expression “people groups” (used in the UST) means the same thing as “peoples” in the ULT. The translator should use the most equivalent term that is common in the project language.

What is the relationship between individuals and peoples that have similar names?

Many individuals in Genesis eventually had large numbers of descendants who were called after their ancestor’s name. For example, Cush was the name of an individual. But, “Cush” also became the name of nation that his descendants formed. They were called “Cushites.” If possible, when translating these names, the translator should make the individual’s name and the nation’s name similar. Examples of this are “Cush” and “Cushite” or “Moab” and “Moabite.” Otherwise, the translator may say, “the descendants of Cush” or “the descendants of Moab.”

What do the phrases “to this day” or “of today” mean?

These phrases were used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” and “of today” refer to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in Gen. 19:37, 19:38, 22:14, 26:33, 32:32, 35:20, 47:26, 48:18.

Genesis 1

Genesis 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter presents the first account of God creating the world. There is a pattern to this account: “God said... God saw that it was good...This was evening and morning, the first day.” Translators should preserve this pattern in their versions.

Special concepts in this chapter

The universe

This account of creation is told within the framework of ancient Hebrew ideas about the universe: the earth was resting with water around it and below it. Over the earth was something like a vast dome, called “an expanse between the waters” (1:6), on top of which was more water. Translators should try to keep these original images in their work, even though readers in their project language might have a completely different idea of what the universe is like.

Evening and morning

Genesis 1 presents the ancient Hebrew idea of a day: it begins with sunset, lasts through the night and continues through the daylight hours until the next sunset. This pattern should be preserved in translation, even if readers in the project language define “day” differently.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“In the beginning”

Some languages and cultures speak of the world as if it has always existed, as if it had no beginning. But “very long ago” is different from “in the beginning,” and you need to be sure that your translation communicates correctly.

“God said, ‘Let there be’”

This expression occurs often in this chapter. It can be difficult to translate, because God is not shown as talking to a particular person. If God is talking to a thing, it is something not yet in existence. Translators should find the most natural way in the project language to signal the idea that God spoke things into existence; he created the world and the things in it by simply commanding that they should exist.

Genesis 1:1

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth

“This is about how God made the heavens and the earth in the beginning.” This statement summarizes the rest of the chapter.

Some languages translate it as “A very long time ago God created the heavens and the earth.” Translate it in a way that shows this actually happened and is not just a folk story.

ULT

¹ In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

In the beginning

This refers to the start of the world and everything in it.

the heavens and the earth

“the sky, the ground, and everything in them”

heavens

This refers here to the sky.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- created
- the heavens
- the earth

Genesis 1:2

without form and empty

God had not yet put the world in order.

the deep

“the water” or “the deep water” or “the vast water”

the surface of the waters

“the surface of the water” or “the water”

Translation Words - ULT

- Now the earth
- and darkness
- the deep waters
- the waters
- and the Spirit of
- God

ULT

² Now the earth was formless and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the deep waters, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters.

Genesis 1:3

Let there be light

This is a command. By commanding that light should exist, God made it exist. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- light
- light

ULT

³ Then God said, "Let there be light."
And there was light.

Genesis 1:4

God saw the light, that it was good

“God considered the light and was pleased with it.” “Good” here means “pleasing” or “suitable.”

divided the light from the darkness

“separated the light and the darkness” or “made it light at one time and dark at another.” This refers to God creating the daytime and the night time.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- the light
- the light (2)
- it was good
- the darkness

ULT

⁴ And God saw the light, that it was good. Then God separated between the light and the darkness.

Genesis 1:5

This was evening and morning, the first day

God did these things on the first day that the universe existed.

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

⁵ And God called the light " Day," and the darkness he called "Night." Then there was evening, and there was morning, one day.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- And...called
- he called
- the light
- Day
- day
- and the darkness

Genesis 1:6

Let there be an expanse...let it divide

These are commands. By commanding that the expanse should exist and that it divide the waters, God made it exist and divide the waters. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

expanse

large empty space. The Jewish people thought of this space as being shaped like the inside of dome or the inside of a bowl that is turned upside down.

between the waters

“in the water”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [from the waters](#)

ULT

6 Then [God](#) said, " Let there be an expanse in the middle of [the waters](#), and let it separate [the waters from the waters](#)."

Genesis 1:7

God made the expanse and divided the waters

“In this way God made the expanse and divided the waters.” When God spoke, it happened. This sentence explains what God did when he spoke.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the waters
- the waters

ULT

⁷ So God made the expanse and separated between the waters that were under the expanse and the waters that were above the expanse. And it was so.

Genesis 1:8

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the second day

This refers to the second day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [And...called](#)
- [Heavens](#)
- [the...day](#)

ULT

⁸ And [God called](#) the expanse "[Heavens](#)." Then there was evening, and there was morning, the second [day](#).

Genesis 1:9

Let the waters...be gathered

This can be translated with an active verb. This is a command. By commanding that the waters gather together, God made them gather together. Alternate translation: "Let the waters...gather" or "Let the waters...come together" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

ULT

⁹ Then God said, " Let [the waters](#) under [the heavens](#) be gathered to one place, and let the dry ground appear." And it was so.

let the dry land appear

The water had covered the land. Now the water would move aside and some of the land would be uncovered. This is a command. By commanding that dry land should appear, God made it appear. Alternate translation: "let dry land become visible" or "let the dry land become clear" or "let the land be uncovered" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

dry land

This refers to land that is not covered with water. It does not refer to land that is too dry for farming.

It was so

"It happened like that" or "That is what happened." What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears. See how you translated it in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Genesis 1:10

the dry land “earth,” and

“the part that was dry ‘earth,’ and”

He saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the land and the sea. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- And...called
- he called
- Land
- waters
- it was good

ULT

10 And God called the dry ground "Land," and the gathered waters he called " Seas." And God saw that it was good.

Genesis 1:11

Let the earth sprout vegetation

This is a command. By commanding that vegetation should sprout on the earth, God made it sprout. Alternate translation: “Let vegetation sprout up on the earth” or “Let vegetation grow on the earth” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

vegetation: plants yielding seed and fruit trees bearing fruit

“vegetation, each plant that bears seed and each tree that bears fruit” or “vegetation. Let them be plants that produce seeds and fruit trees that produce fruit.” Here “vegetation” is used here as a general term that includes all plants and trees.

plants

These are kinds of vegetation that have soft stems, rather than woody stems.

fruit trees bearing fruit whose seed is in the fruit

“trees that bear fruit with seeds in them”

each according to its own kind

The seeds would produce plants and trees that would be like the ones they came from. In this way, the plants and trees would “reproduce themselves” .

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning wherever it appears. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [that yield](#)
- [seeds](#)
- [have their seeds](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [fruit](#)
- [according to their kinds](#)

ULT

11 Then [God](#) said, "Let [the land](#) sprout vegetation on [the earth](#), plants [that yield seeds](#) and [fruit trees](#) that bear [fruit according to their kinds](#) that [have their seeds](#) inside them." And it was so:

Genesis 1:12

God saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the vegetation, plants, and trees. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- that yield
- seeds
- has its seeds
- each according to its kind
- each according to its kind
- fruit
- God
- it was good

ULT

¹² So [the land](#) produced vegetation, plants [that yield seeds](#), [each according to its kind](#), and trees that bear [fruit that has its seeds](#) inside it, [each according to its kind](#). And [God](#) saw that [it was good](#).

Genesis 1:13

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

13 Then there was evening, and there was morning, the third [day](#).

the third day

This refers to the third day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...day](#)

Genesis 1:14

Let there be lights in the sky

This is a command. By commanding that lights should exist, God made them exist. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

lights in the sky

“things that shine in the sky” or “things that give light in the sky.” This refers to the sun, moon, and stars.

in the sky

“in the expanse of the sky” or “in the large space of the sky”

to divide the day from the night

“to separate the day from the night.” This means “to help us tell the difference between day and night.” The sun means it is daytime, and the moon and stars mean it is nighttime.

let them be as signs

This is a command. By commanding that they should serve as signs, God made them serve as signs. Alternate translation: “Let them serve as signs” or “let them show” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

signs

Here this means something that reveals or points to something.

for seasons, for days and years

The sun, moon, and stars show the passing of time. This enables us to know when it is time for events that happen each week, month, or year.

seasons

times that are set aside for festivals and other things that people do

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [lights](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the day](#)
- [and for days](#)
- [for signs](#)
- [and for seasons](#)
- [and years](#)

ULT

14 Then [God](#) said, " Let there be [lights](#) in the expanse of [the heavens](#) to separate between [the day](#) and the night. And let them be [for signs, and for seasons, and for days and years.](#)

Genesis 1:15

Let them be lights in the sky to give light upon the earth

This is a command. By commanding that they should light the earth, God made them light the earth. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

ULT

¹⁵ And let them be [as lights](#) in the expanse of [the heavens to shine](#) on [the earth.](#)” And it was so.

to give light upon the earth

“to shine light on the earth” or “to brighten the earth.” The earth does not self-shine but it is lit and so reflects light.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [as lights](#)
- [to shine](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the earth](#)

Genesis 1:16

God made the two great lights

“In this way God made the two great lights.” This sentence explains what God did when he spoke.

the two great lights

“the two large lights” or “the two bright lights.” The two great lights are the sun and the moon.

to rule the day

The lights that controlled the day are spoken of as if they were a human ruler that controlled what people do. Alternate translation: “to direct the daytime as a ruler directs a group of people” or “to mark the times of the day” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

day

This refers only to the daylight hours.

the lesser light

“the smaller light” or “the dimmer light”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [lights](#)
- [the...light](#) (2)
- [to rule](#)
- [to rule](#) (2)
- [the day](#)

ULT

16 So [God](#) made the two great [lights](#), the greater light [to rule the day](#), and the lesser [light to rule](#) the night, and the stars.

Genesis 1:17

in the sky

“in the heavens” or “in the open space of the sky”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the heavens
- to shine
- the earth

ULT

17 And God put them in the expanse of the heavens to shine on the earth,

Genesis 1:18

to divide the light from the darkness

“to separate the light from the darkness” or “to make it light at one time and dark at another.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

God saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the sun, moon, and stars. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [and to rule](#)
- [over the day](#)
- [the light](#)
- [the darkness](#)
- [God](#)
- [it was good](#)

ULT

18 [and to rule over the day](#) and over the night, and to separate between [the light](#) and [the darkness](#). And [God](#) saw that [it was good](#).

Genesis 1:19

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

19 Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fourth [day](#).

the fourth day

This refers to the fourth day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...day](#)

Genesis 1:20

Let the waters be filled with great numbers of living creatures

This is a command. By commanding that living creatures should fill the waters, God made them exist. Some languages may have one word that refers to all kinds of fish and sea animals. Alternate translation: "Let the waters be full of many living things" or "Let many animals that swim live in the oceans" (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

ULT

²⁰ Then God said, "Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky."

let birds fly

This is a command. By commanding that birds should fly, God made them fly. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

birds

"animals that fly" or "flying things"

the expanse of the sky

"the open space of the sky" or "the sky"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the waters
- living
- the earth
- the sky

Genesis 1:21

God created

“In this way God created”

great sea creatures

“large animals that live in the sea”

after its kind

Living things of the same “kind” are like the ones they came from. See how you translated “kind” in [Genesis 1:11,12](#).

every winged bird

“every flying thing that has wings.” If the word for birds is used, it may be more natural in some languages to simply say “every bird,” since all birds have wings.

God saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the birds and the fish. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...created](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [living](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [each according to its kind](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [it was good](#)

ULT

²¹ So God created the great sea creatures and every living creature that moves, which the waters swarm with, each according to its kind, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.

Genesis 1:22

blessed them

“blessed the animals that he had made”

Be fruitful and multiply

This is God’s blessing. He told the sea animals to produce more sea animals like themselves, so that there would be many of them in the seas. The word “multiply” explains how they are to be “fruitful.” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

ULT

²² Then God blessed them by saying, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters in the seas, and let the birds multiply on the earth."

multiply

increase greatly in number

Let birds multiply

This is a command. By commanding that birds should multiply, God made birds multiply. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

birds

“animals that fly” or “flying things.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:20](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Then...blessed](#)
- [Be fruitful](#)
- [and multiply](#)
- [let...multiply](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [on the earth](#)

Genesis 1:23

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

²³ Then there was evening, and there was morning, the fifth [day](#).

the fifth day

This refers to the fifth day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...day](#)

Genesis 1:24

Let the earth produce living creatures

“Let the earth produce living things” or “Let many living animals live on the earth.” This is a command. By commanding that the earth should produce living creatures, God made the earth produce living creatures. (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

each according to its own kind

“so that each kind of animal will produce more of its own kind”

livestock, creeping things, and beasts of the earth

This shows that God created all kinds of animals. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups.

livestock

animals that people look after

creeping things

“small animals”

beasts of the earth

“wild animals” or “dangerous animals”

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [living](#)
- [and living creatures of](#)
- [each according to its kind](#)
- [each according to its kind](#)
- [livestock](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then [God](#) said, "Let [the land](#) produce [living](#) creatures, [each according to its kind](#), [livestock](#), and creatures that crawl and living creatures of the earth, [each according to its kind](#)." And it was so.

Genesis 1:25

God made the beasts

“In this way God made the beasts”

He saw that it was good

Here “it” refers to the living creatures on the earth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [the living creatures of](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [each according to its kind](#)
- [according to their kind](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [the livestock](#)
- [it was good](#)

ULT

²⁵ So [God](#) made [the living creatures of the earth](#), each according to its kind, and [the livestock according to their kind](#), and every creature that crawls on the ground [according to its kind](#). And [God](#) saw that it was good.

Genesis 1:26

Let us make

The word “us” here refers to God. God was saying what he intended to do. The pronoun “us” is plural. Possible reasons for the plural use are (1) the plural form suggests that God is discussing something with the angels that make up his heavenly court or (2) the plural form foreshadows the later New Testament implications that God exists in the form of the Holy Trinity. Some translate it as “Let me make” or “I will make.” If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the word is plural. (See: [Pronouns](#))

ULT

²⁶ Then God said, " Let us make [mankind in our image](#), according to our likeness, [and let them rule](#) over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of [the sky](#), [and over the livestock](#), and over all [the earth](#), and over every moving creature that moves on [the earth](#)."

man

human beings

in our image, after our likeness

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that God made mankind to be like him. This verse does not tell in what ways God made people to be like himself. God does not have a body, so it does not mean that people would look like God. Alternate translation: “to truly be like us” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Pronouns](#))

have dominion over

“rule over” or “have authority over”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [in our image](#)
- [and let them rule](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [and over the livestock](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the earth](#)

Genesis 1:27

God created man...he created him

These two sentences mean the same thing and emphasize that God created people in his own image. (See: [Parallelism](#))

God created man

The way that God created man was different from the way he created everything else. Do not specify that he created man by simply speaking, as in the preceding verses.

ULT

²⁷ Then God created mankind in his own image. In the image of God he created them; male and female he created them.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Then...created
- he created
- he created
- mankind
- in his own image
- In the image of

Genesis 1:28

God blessed them

The word “them” refers to the man and woman God had created.

Be fruitful, and multiply

God told the man and the woman to produce more people like themselves so that there would be many of them. The word “multiply” explains how they are to be “fruitful.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:22](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Fill the earth

Fill the earth with people.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Then...blessed
- Be fruitful
- and multiply
- the earth
- the earth
- And rule
- the sky
- living creature

ULT

28 Then God blessed them and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth and subdue it. And rule over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the sky, and over every living creature that moves on the earth."

Genesis 1:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- that yields
- seeds
- that yields (2)
- seeds
- the...earth
- bears fruit

ULT

²⁹ Then God said, " Behold, I have given to you every plant that yields seeds that is on the surface of the whole earth, and every tree that bears fruit that yields seeds inside it. They will be yours for food.

Genesis 1:30

General Information:

God continues speaking.

every bird of the heavens

“all the birds that fly in the sky”

that has the breath of life

“that breathes.” This phrase emphasizes that these animals had a different kind of life than the plants. Plants do not breathe, and were to be used as food for the animals. Here “life” means physical life.

It was so

“It happened like that” or “That is what happened.” What God commanded happened just as he said it should. This phrase appears throughout the chapter and has the same meaning. See how you translated it in [Genesis 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- living creature of
- life
- the earth
- the earth
- the sky

ULT

³⁰ And to every living creature of the earth, and to every bird of the sky, and to every creature that moves on the earth that has the breath of life in it, I have given every green plant for food.” And it was so.

Genesis 1:31

Behold, it

“This is true and important: it”

it was very good

Now when God looked at everything he had made, it was “very good.”
“See how you translated “it was good” in [Genesis 1:10](#).

evening and morning

This refers to the whole day. The writer speaks of the whole day as if it were these two parts. In the Jewish culture, a day begins when the sun sets. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:5](#). (See: [Merism](#))

the sixth day

This refers to the sixth day that the universe existed. See how you translated “the first day” in [Genesis 1:5](#) and decide if you should translate this the same way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [it was...good](#)
- [the...day](#)

ULT

³¹ Then [God](#) saw everything that he had made, and behold [it was](#) very [good](#).
Then there was evening, and there was morning, the sixth [day](#).

Genesis 2

Genesis 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Gen. 2:1-3 ends the first creation account, begun in the previous chapter. The second creation account, beginning in 2:4, is very different, using a more natural, story-telling style instead of following a set formula using repeated phrases. Translators should try to imitate this difference in their versions.

Special concepts in this chapter

The second creation account in Gen. 2:4-25

Gen. 2:4-25 presents an account of creation from a different viewpoint than the one given in Gen. 1:1-2:3. This second account should be regarded as filling out the first account, not as conflicting with it.

Yahweh, the name of God

“Yahweh,” the personal name of God in the Old Testament, appears for the first time in this chapter. Translators must decide how to represent it in their versions. For 2,000 years, it has been traditional for many Christians to represent it with the term “the Lord.” Indeed, it is demanded by Roman Catholics for their Bible versions to continue doing this. Of course, the disadvantage of using “the Lord” is that this is a title for God, not a personal name. (See: [Yahweh](#))

Translators who are not producing versions for Roman Catholics can consider transliterating the name “Yahweh,” approximating the name as best as their project languages allow.

Or translators can consider using expressions for the supreme god that might exist in their project languages, such as, “The Great One,” “The Ruler of All,” “The One who Never Sleeps,” etc. Of course, these are descriptive titles, not personal names, so they suffer from the same disadvantages that “the Lord” has.

Translators can also consider pairing a transliteration of “Yahweh” with a meaningful title for the supreme god in the project language. Whatever solution is found should be followed consistently when the name “Yahweh” occurs in the Scriptures.

The Garden of Eden

This was not a vegetable garden or cultivated field. Instead, it was probably a large area of land with fruit trees and other plants bearing leaves, etc., that were good to eat. A river flowed out from the Garden of Eden, giving the impression that the Garden was a holy place; in the ancient Near East, temples had gardens and waterways. In Rev. 22:1-2, the throne of God in the New Jerusalem is pictured with a river flowing out from it. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [unholy](#), [sacred](#))

Genesis 2:1

the heavens

“the sky” or “the skies”

and all the living things that filled them

“and all the many living things that are in them” or “and all the crowds of living things in them”

were finished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God had finished creating them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heavens](#)
- [and the earth](#)

ULT

¹ So [the heavens and the earth](#) were finished, and all their hosts.

Genesis 2:2

On the seventh day God came to the end of his work

God did not work at all on the seventh day.

came to the end of

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “had finished” (See: [Idiom](#))

he rested on the seventh day from all his work

“on that day he did not work”

Translation Words - ULT

- [by the...day](#)
- [on the...day](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [his work](#)
- [his work](#) (2)
- [so he rested](#)

ULT

² And [by the](#) seventh [day](#) [God](#) had finished [his work](#) that he had done, [so](#) [he rested on the](#) seventh [day](#) from all [his work](#) that he had done.

Genesis 2:3

God blessed the seventh day

Possible meanings are (1) God caused the seventh day to produce good result or (2) God said that the seventh day was good.

sanctified it

“set it apart” or “called it his own”

in it he rested from all his work

“on it he did not work”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Then...blessed
- the...day
- and sanctified
- he rested
- his work
- of creating

ULT

³ Then God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on it he rested from all his work of creating that God had done.

Genesis 2:4

General Information:

The rest of Genesis 2 tells about how God created people on the sixth day.

These were the events concerning the heavens and the earth

“This is the account of the heavens and the earth” or “This is the story about the heavens and the earth.” Possible meanings are (1) it is a summary of the events described in Genesis 1:1-2:3 or (2) it introduces the events described in Genesis 2. If possible, translate this so that people can understand it either way.

they were created

“Yahweh God created them.” In chapter 1 the writer always speaks of God as “God,” but in chapter 2 he always speaks of God as “Yahweh God.”

on the day that Yahweh God made

“when Yahweh God created.” The word “day” refers to the whole time span of the creation, not to just one particular day.

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

Translation Words - ULT

- the generations of
- the heavens
- and the heavens
- and the earth
- the earth
- when they were created
- in the day
- Yahweh
- God

ULT

⁴ These are the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day when Yahweh God made the earth and the heavens.

Genesis 2:5

No bush of the field

no shrubs growing in the wild that animals might eat

no plant of the field

no leafy plants like vegetables or greens that both animals and humans can eat

to cultivate

to do everything he needed to do so that the plants would grow well

Translation Words - ULT

- on the earth
- the earth
- Yahweh
- God
- and...man
- to work

ULT

⁵ Now every shrub of the fields had not yet appeared on the earth, and every plant of the fields had not yet sprung up, because Yahweh God had not caused it to rain on the earth, and there was no man to work the ground.

Genesis 2:6

mist

Possible meanings are (1) something like dew or morning fog or (2) springs from underground streams.

the whole surface of the ground

the entire earth

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)

ULT

⁶ But mist came up from [the earth](#) and watered the entire surface of the ground.

Genesis 2:7

formed man

“molded man” or “shaped man” or “created man”

man...man

“a human being...the human” or “a person...the person” not specifically a male

his nostrils

“his nose”

breath of life

“breath that makes things live.” Here “life” refers to physical life.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the man
- the man
- and he breathed
- the breath of
- life
- living

ULT

⁷ Then Yahweh God formed the man out of dust from the ground, and he breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living being.

Genesis 2:8

a garden

This could have been an orchard of fruit trees or an area with all kinds of trees.

eastward

in the east

Translation Words - ULT

- Now...had planted
- Yahweh
- God
- in Eden
- the man

ULT

⁸ Now Yahweh God had planted a garden in Eden, in the east, and there he put the man whom he had formed.

Genesis 2:9

the tree of life

“the tree that gives people life”

life

Here this means “eternal life” or life that does not end.

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

“the tree that gives people the ability to understand both good and evil” or “the tree that makes people who eat its fruit able to know good things and bad things”

good and evil

This is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. Alternate translation: “everything, including both good and evil” (See: [Merism](#))

in the midst of the garden

“in the middle of the garden.” The two trees may not have been in the exact center of the garden.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [that is pleasant](#)
- [and good](#)
- [good](#)
- [life](#)
- [the knowledge of](#)
- [and evil](#)

ULT

⁹ And [Yahweh God](#) had made every tree to grow from the ground [that is pleasant](#) to the sight [and good](#) for food, including the tree of [life](#) in the middle of the garden and the tree of [the knowledge of good and evil](#).

Genesis 2:10

A river went out of Eden to water the garden

The garden was in Eden. The river continued to flow outside of Eden.
“A river flowed through Eden to water the garden”

Translation Words - ULT

- from Eden
- headwaters

ULT

10 And a river went out from Eden to water the garden, and from there it divided and became four headwaters.

Genesis 2:11

Pishon

This is the only time this river is referred to in the Bible. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the whole land of Havilah

“the whole land called Havilah.” It was somewhere in the Arabian Desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

where there is gold

This phrase gives information about Havilah. Some languages would translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “There is gold in Havilah” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The name of](#)
- [the...land of](#)
- [gold](#)

ULT

11 [The name of](#) the first is the Pishon. It winds through the entire [land of](#) Havilah, where there is [gold](#).

Genesis 2:12

There are also bdellium and the onyx stone

The word “there” is placed first in the sentence for emphasis.
Alternate translation: “This is also where people can find bdellium and onyx stones”

bdellium

This resin comes from a tree and smells nice. A resin is sticky stuff that comes out of some trees and can burn.
(See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the onyx stone

“onyx stones.” Onyx is a certain kind of beautiful stone. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the gold of](#)
- [land](#)
- [is good](#)

ULT

¹² [And the gold of that land is good.](#)
Bdellium and onyx stones are also there.

Genesis 2:13

Gihon

This is the only mention of this river in the Bible. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

flows throughout the whole land of Cush

The river did not cover the whole land, but wound through various parts of the land.

the whole land of Cush

“the entire land called Cush”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...land of](#)
- [Cush](#)

ULT

13 And the name of the second river is the Gihon. It winds through the entire [land of Cush](#).

Genesis 2:14

which flows east of Ashur

“which flows in the land east of the city of Ashur.” The Tigris River flows from north to south. The phrase “which flows east of Ashur” gives information about where the Tigris River is. Some languages would translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: “It flows east of Ashur” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#)
- [is the Euphrates](#)

ULT

14 And the name of the third river is the Tigris. It goes east of [Assyria](#). And the fourth river [is the Euphrates](#).

Genesis 2:15

the garden of Eden

“the garden that was in Eden”

to work it

“to cultivate it.” This means to do everything necessary so that the plants will grow well.

to maintain it

to guard against anything bad happening in it

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the man
- and put him
- Eden
- to work it
- and tend it

ULT

¹⁵ And Yahweh God took the man and put him in the Garden of Eden to work it and tend it.

Genesis 2:16

From every tree in the garden

"The fruit of every tree in the garden"

you

This pronoun is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

may freely eat

"may eat without restriction"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Then...commanded](#)
- [the man](#)

ULT

16 Then [Yahweh God](#) commanded the [man](#) by saying, "From every tree of the garden you may freely eat,

Genesis 2:17

But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat

These words complete the command that begins with the words “From every tree in the garden you may freely eat” in verse 15. In some languages, it may be more natural to say what is not permitted and to then say what is permitted, as in the UST.

ULT

¹⁷ but you must not eat from the tree of [the knowledge of good and evil](#), because [on the day](#) you eat from it [you will surely die.](#)”

the tree of the knowledge of good and evil

“the tree that gives people the ability to understand both good and evil” or “the tree that makes people who eat its fruit able to know good things and bad things.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:9](#).

you may not eat

“I will not permit you to eat” or “you must not eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the knowledge of](#)
- [good](#)
- [and evil](#)
- [on the day](#)
- [you will...die](#)

Genesis 2:18

I will make him a helper suitable for him

"I will make a helper who is just right for him"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- It is...good for
- the man

ULT

¹⁸ Then Yahweh God said, " It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a suitable helper for him."

Genesis 2:19

every animal of the field and every bird of the sky

The phrases “of the field” and “of the sky” tell where the animals and birds are usually found. Alternate translation: “all kinds of animals and birds”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- living creature of
- living
- the sky
- the man
- the man
- each one
- each
- its name

ULT

¹⁹ Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground every living creature of the fields and every bird of the sky. So he brought them to the man to see what he would call each one, and whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name.

Genesis 2:20

all the livestock

“all the animals that people look after”

there was found no helper suitable for him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “there was no companion that was right for him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the man
- but...for the man
- And...gave
- names
- the livestock
- the sky
- the living creatures of

ULT

²⁰ And [the man](#) gave names to all [the livestock](#) and to the birds of [the sky](#) and to all [the living creatures of](#) the fields, [but](#) a suitable helper was not found [for the man](#).

Genesis 2:21

caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man

“caused the man to sleep intensely.” A deep sleep is a time of sleeping in which a person is not easily disturbed or wakened.

flesh

This refers to the soft parts of the body like skin and muscle.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the man
- with flesh

ULT

²¹ So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man, and while he was sleeping, then he took one of his ribs and closed up its place with flesh.

Genesis 2:22

With the rib...he made a woman

“From the rib...he formed a woman.” The rib was the material God made the woman from.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the man
- the man

ULT

²² Then Yahweh God made the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman, and he brought her to the man.

Genesis 2:23

This time, this one is bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh

“Finally, this one’s bones are like my bones, and her flesh is like my flesh.” After looking among all the animals for a partner and not finding one, he finally saw someone who was like him and could be his partner. The man was probably expressing his feeling of relief and joy.

ULT

²³ And **the man** said, "This one now has bones from my bones **and flesh from my flesh!** She **will be called** 'woman', because it was from a man that she was taken."

She will be called 'woman,' because she was taken out of man

The translator may want to write a footnote saying “The Hebrew word for ‘woman’ sounds like the Hebrew word for ‘man.’”

Translation Words - ULT

- **the man**
- **and flesh**
- **from my flesh**
- **will be called**

Genesis 2:24

General Information:

What follows is written by the author. The man did not say these things.

Therefore a man

“That is why a man”

a man will leave his father and his mother

“a man will stop living in his father and mother’s home.” This is about men in general. It does not refer to any particular man at any particular time.

they will become one flesh

This idiom speaks of sexual activity as though the bodies that are together become one body. Alternate translation: “their two bodies will become one body” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [flesh](#)

ULT

²⁴ For that reason a man will leave [his father](#) and his mother, and he will cling to his wife, and they will become one [flesh](#).

Genesis 2:25

They were both naked

The word “they” refers to the man and the woman that God had created.

naked

“not wearing clothing”

but were not ashamed

“they were not ashamed about being naked”

Translation Words - ULT

- the man
- they were...ashamed

ULT

²⁵ Now both the man and his wife were naked, but they were not ashamed.

Genesis 3

Genesis 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the second creation account that began in Gen. 2:4. But a new section of this account begins in 3:1. The ULT reads, “Now the serpent was more shrewd than any other beast of the field which Yahweh God had made,” because this is how the Scriptures introduce the serpent into the account. However, many languages prefer different ways to introduce new characters or things into stories, for example, “One of the wild animals made by God was the serpent” or “This is about the serpent, one of the wild animals that God had made.”

Scholars typically refer to the events of this chapter as “the fall” or “the fall of man” because sin is introduced into creation. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Curses

In this chapter, God curses the man, the woman, and the serpent for their sins. In general, cursing is calling down God’s punishment on someone or something. In this chapter, however, it is God himself who is doing the cursing. Of course, he does not call down punishment on the man, the woman, and the serpent from someone else. Instead, he is promising that he himself will punish them. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Serpent

Most scholars believe that the serpent is Satan, even though his name is not used in this chapter. There are other places in Scripture where the serpent is used as an image for Satan. (See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 3:1

Now

The writer is beginning a new part of the story.

more shrewd

“more cunning” or “smarter at getting what he wanted by telling lies”

Has God really said, ‘You...garden’?

The snake is pretending to be surprised that God has made this rule. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “I am surprised that God said, ‘You...garden.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

You must not eat

The word “you” is plural and refers to the man and the woman. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now the serpent](#)
- [more crafty](#)
- [the living creatures of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

¹ [Now the serpent](#) was [more crafty](#) than all [the living creatures of](#) the fields that [Yahweh God](#) had made. And he said to the woman, "Did [God](#) really say, 'You must not eat from any tree of the garden'?"

Genesis 3:2

We may eat

“We are allowed to eat” or “We have permission to eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- the serpent
- from the fruit of

ULT

² Then the woman said to the serpent, " We may eat from the fruit of the trees of the garden,

Genesis 3:3

**but concerning the fruit...garden, God said,
'You may not eat it, nor may you touch it, or
you will die**

These words are the end of Eve's description of God's command to them that begins with the words "We may eat" in verse 2. Eve told the serpent what God had permitted them to do first and then what God had told them not to do. Some languages would say what they were told not to do first and then say what they were allowed to do, as in the UST.

ULT

³ **except from the fruit of** the tree that is in the middle of the garden. **God** said, 'You must not eat from it and you must not touch it, or else **you will die!**' "

You may not...nor may you...you will die

The word "you" is plural and refers to the man and the woman. (See: [Forms of You](#))

You may not eat it

"You must not eat it" or "Do not eat it"

nor may you touch it

"and you must not touch it" or "and do not touch it"

Translation Words - ULT

- **except from the fruit of**
- **God**
- **you will die**

Genesis 3:4

You will...not die

These words refer to the man and the woman and so are dual or plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the serpent](#)
- [You will...die](#)

ULT

⁴ But [the serpent](#) said to the woman,
"You will not surely die.

Genesis 3:5

you...your...you

These words refer to the man and the woman and so are dual or plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your eyes will be opened

“your eyes will open.” This idiom means “you will become aware of things” or “you will understand new things.” This meaning can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “It will be as though your eyes were opened” (See: [Idiom](#))

knowing good and evil

Here “good and evil” is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. See how you translated “knowledge of good and evil” in [Genesis 2:9](#). Alternate translation: “knowing everything, including both good and evil” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [like God](#)
- [knows](#)
- [in knowing](#)
- [on the day](#)
- [good](#)
- [and evil](#)

ULT

⁵ For [God knows](#) that [on the day](#) you eat from it, then your eyes will be opened, and you will be [like God in knowing good and evil.](#)”

Genesis 3:6

it was a delight to the eyes

“the tree was delightful to look at” or “it was nice to look at” or “it was very beautiful”

that the tree was desirable to make one wise

“she wanted the tree’s fruit because it could make a person wise” or “she wanted its fruit because it could make her understand what was right and wrong just as God does”

Translation Words - ULT

- was good
- and that...was desirable
- some of its fruit

ULT

⁶ And the woman saw that the tree **was good** for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, **and that** the tree **was desirable** for gaining wisdom. So she took **some of its fruit** and ate it. Then she also gave some to her husband with her, and he ate it.

Genesis 3:7

The eyes of both of them were opened

“Then their eyes opened” or “They became aware” or “They understood.” See how you translated “your eyes will be opened” in [Genesis 3:5](#).

sewed

put together, probably using vines as thread

fig leaves

If people do not know what fig leaves are like, this can be translated as “large leaves from a fig tree” or simply “large leaves.”

made coverings for themselves

They did this because they were ashamed. This implicit information can be made explicit if needed as in the UST. Alternate translation: “clothed themselves with them because they were ashamed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and they knew](#)
- [fig](#)

ULT

⁷ Then the eyes of them both were opened, [and they knew](#) that they were naked. So they sewed [fig](#) leaves together and made aprons for themselves.

Genesis 3:8

in the cool of the day

“at the time of day when a cool breeze blows”

from the presence of Yahweh God

“from Yahweh God’s sight” or “so that Yahweh God would not see them” or “from Yahweh God”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- God
- God
- in the cool of
- the day
- the man

ULT

⁸ Then they heard the sound of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, but the man and his wife hid from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.

Genesis 3:9

Where are you?

“Why are you trying to hide from me?” God knew where the man was. When the man answered, he did not say where he was but why he was hiding.

ULT

⁹ So Yahweh God called to the man and said to him, " Where are you?"

you

In verses 9 and 11, God was speaking to the man. Languages that have a singular form of “you” would use that here. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...called](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [the man](#)

Genesis 3:10

I heard you

"I heard the sound you were making"

Translation Words - ULT

- [but I was afraid](#)

ULT

10 And he said, "I heard your sound in the garden, [but I was afraid](#) because I was naked, so I hid."

Genesis 3:11

Who told you

God knew the answer to this question. He asked it in order to force Adam to confess that he had disobeyed God. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have you eaten...from?

Again, God knew this had happened. Translate this question in a form that shows God was accusing Adam of disobedience. The sentence can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You must have eaten...from." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I commanded you](#)

ULT

11 Then he said, " Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat from the tree that [I commanded you](#) not to eat from?"

Genesis 3:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the man

ULT

¹² Then the man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me, she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate it."

Genesis 3:13

What is this you have done?

God already knew what the woman had done. When he asked this question, he was giving her the opportunity to tell him about it, and he was expressing his disappointment with what she had done. Many languages use rhetorical questions for scolding or rebuking. If possible, use a form that expresses this disappointment. It can also be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have done a terrible thing." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [The serpent](#)
- [deceived me](#)

ULT

13 Then [Yahweh God](#) said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" And the woman said, "[The serpent deceived me](#), so I ate it."

Genesis 3:14

cursed are you alone

“you alone are cursed.” The word “curse” is first in Hebrew in order to emphasize the contrast between God’s blessing on the animals and this curse on the serpent. This is a “curse formula,” or the way that curses were expressed. By saying this curse, God made it happen.

all the livestock and all the beasts of the field

“all domestic animals and all wild animals”

It is on your stomach that you will go

“You will move along the ground on your stomach.” The words “it is upon your stomach” comes first to emphasize the contrast between the way other animals would move along using their legs and the way the serpent would slither along on its stomach. This is also part of the curse formula.

it is dust that you will eat

“you will eat dust.” The words “it is dust” comes first to emphasize the contrast between the plants above the ground that other animals would eat and the dirty food on the ground that the serpent would eat. This is part of the curse formula.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- the serpent
- are cursed
- the livestock
- the living creatures of
- your life
- the days of

ULT

14 Then Yahweh God said to the serpent, " Because you have done this, you are cursed above all the livestock and above all the living creatures of the fields! You will move on your belly and you will eat dust all the days of your life.

Genesis 3:15

hostility between you and the woman

This means that the serpent and the woman would become enemies.

seed

The word “seed” refers to what a man puts into a woman to cause a baby to grow inside the woman. Like the word “offspring,” it can refer to more than one person. Try to find a word that is singular but can refer to more than one person.

He will bruise...his heel

The words “he” and “his” refer to the woman’s descendant. If “seed” was translated as plural, this can be translated as “they will bruise...their heel”; in this case, consider inserting footnotes to say that the “they” and “their” are used to translate a singular pronoun. (See: [Pronouns](#))

bruise

“crush” or “strike” or “attack”

Translation Words - ULT

- [your offspring](#)
- [her offspring](#)
- [on the head](#)

ULT

15 I will also put hostility between you and the woman, and between [your offspring](#) and [her offspring](#). He will strike you [on the head](#), and you will strike him on the heel.”

Genesis 3:16

I will greatly multiply your pain

“I will make your pain increase much” or “I will make your pain to be very severe”

in having children

“in giving birth to children” or “when you give birth to children”

Your desire will be for your husband

“You will have a strong desire for your husband.” Possible meanings are (1) “You will want very much to be with your husband” or (2) “You will want to control your husband”

he will rule over you

“he will be your master” or “he will control you”

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...multiply
- you will bear
- children
- will rule

ULT

16 To the woman he said, "I will greatly multiply your pain and your childbearing; in pain you will bear children. Yet your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you."

Genesis 3:17

Adam

The name Adam is the same as the Hebrew word for “man.” Some translations say “Adam” and some say “the man.” You may use either form as it refers to the same person.

you have listened to the voice of your wife

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “you have obeyed what your wife said” (See: [Idiom](#))

have eaten from the tree

You can say what it was that they ate. Alternate translation: “have eaten the fruit of the tree” or “have eaten some of the fruit of the tree” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You may not eat from it

“You must not eat from it” or “Do not eat its fruit”

cursed is the ground

The word “curse” comes first in the sentence to emphasize that the ground, which had been “good” ([Genesis 1:10](#)), was now under God’s curse. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am cursing the ground” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

through painful work

“by doing hard work”

you will eat from it

The word “it” refers to the ground and is a metonym for the parts of the plants, which grow in the ground, that people eat. Alternate translation: “you will eat what grows from it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then...to Adam](#)
- [to the voice of](#)
- [I commanded you](#)
- [is cursed](#)
- [the days of](#)
- [your life](#)

ULT

17 Then he said [to Adam](#), " Since you listened [to the voice of](#) your wife and you ate from the tree that I [commanded you](#) by saying, 'You must not eat from it,' the ground [is cursed](#) because of you; by painful toil you will eat from it all [the days of your life](#)."

Genesis 3:18

the plants of the field

Possible meanings are (1) “the plants that you take care of in your fields” or (2) “the wild plants that grow in the open fields.”

Translation Words - ULT

- And...thorns
- and thistles

ULT

18 And it will produce **thorns and thistles** for you, and you will eat the plants of the fields.

Genesis 3:19

By the sweat of your face

“By doing hard work that makes your face sweat”

you will eat bread

Here the word “bread” is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: “you will eat food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

until you return to the ground

“until you die and your body is put in the ground.” In some cultures, they put the bodies of people who have died in a hole in the ground. Man’s hard work does not end until the time of his death and burial.

For dust you are, and to dust you will return

“I made you from soil, so your body will become soil again.” Translate both occurrences of “dust” with the same word in order to show that man begins and ends in the same condition.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [you return](#)
- [you will return](#)

ULT

¹⁹ By the sweat of your brow you will eat [bread](#), until [you return](#) to the ground, since from it you were taken. For you are dust, and to dust [you will return](#).”

Genesis 3:20

The man

Some translations say “Adam.”

called his wife’s name Eve

“gave his wife the name Eve” or “named his wife Eve”

Eve

Translators may write a footnote saying “The name Eve sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘living.’”

all the living

The word “living” refers to people. Alternate translation: “all people” or “all living people” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the man](#)
- [Then...called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Eve](#)
- [living people](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then [the man](#) called the name of his wife [Eve](#), because she was the mother of all [living people](#).

Genesis 3:21

garments of skins

“clothing made out of animal skins”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God
- garments from
- for Adam
- and he clothed them

ULT

²¹ Then Yahweh God made garments from animal skins for Adam and his wife, and he clothed them.

Genesis 3:22

the man

Possible meanings are (1) God was referring to one human, the man, or (2) God was referring to humans in general, so this would mean the man and his wife. Even if God was speaking about one person, what he said applied to both of them.

like one of us

“like us.” The pronoun “us” is plural. See how you translated “Let us make” in [Genesis 1:26](#).

knowing good and evil

Here “good and evil” is a figure of speech that refers to both extremes and everything in between. See how you translated “knowledge of good and evil” in [Genesis 2:9](#). Alternate translation: “knowing everything, including both good and evil” (See: [Merism](#))

he must not be allowed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will not allow him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tree of life

“the tree that gives people life.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [The man](#)
- [in knowing](#)
- [good](#)
- [and evil](#)
- [his hands](#)
- [life](#)
- [and live](#)
- [forever](#)

ULT

²² Then [Yahweh God](#) said, "Behold! [The man](#) has become like one of us [in knowing good and evil](#). And now he must not be allowed to reach out [his hands](#) and also take fruit from the tree of [life](#) and eat it [and live forever!](#)"

Genesis 3:23

the ground from which he had been taken

“dirt because he had been taken from dirt.” This does not refer to the particular place on the land that the God took man from.

to cultivate

This means to what is needed so that plants grow well. See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...sent him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Eden](#)
- [to work](#)

ULT

²³ [So Yahweh God sent him](#) out of the garden of [Eden to work](#) the ground which he had been taken from.

Genesis 3:24

So God drove the man out of the garden

“God forced the man to leave the garden.” This refers to the event in [Genesis 3:23](#), where it says “Yahweh God sent him out of the garden of Eden.” God did not send the man out a second time.

in order to guard the way to the tree of life

“in order to stop people from going to the tree of life”

flaming sword

Possible meanings are (1) a sword that had flames coming from it or (2) a fire that was shaped like a sword. Languages that do not have swords could use another weapon such as a spear or arrow.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And after he drove...out](#)
- [the man](#)
- [Eden](#)
- [cherubim angels](#)
- [a...sword](#)
- [life](#)

ULT

²⁴ [And after he drove the man out](#), then he placed on the east side of the garden of [Eden cherubim angels](#) and a flaming [sword](#) that was turning in every direction to guard the way to the tree of [life](#).

Genesis 4

Genesis 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Most of the text in this chapter is prose, but 4:23-24 is poetry. If the translator should put these two verses into poetic form, or at least into elegant speech, different from the rest of the chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Vengeance

The theme of vengeance is important in this chapter. Ancient Hebrew society allowed for people to seek revenge if a relative was murdered. After Cain murdered his brother Abel, he thought that he would be helpless against this danger because he had been driven away from God's protection. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

The theme of vengeance continues with the words of Lamech, who had killed someone for injuring him: "I have killed a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me. If Cain is avenged seven times as much, truly Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times as much" (Gen. 4:23b-24).

Genesis 4:1

The man knew Eve

This is a polite way of saying that the man had sexual relations with Eve. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. (See: [Euphemism](#))

The man

“the human being” or “Adam”

I have produced a man

The word for “man” typically describes an adult male, rather than a baby or child. If that would cause confusion, it could be translated as “manchild” or “boy” or “baby boy” or “son.”

Cain

Translators may want to include a footnote that says “The name Cain sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘produce.’ Eve named him Cain because she produced him.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the man](#)
- [knew](#)
- [Eve](#)
- [and she conceived](#)
- [and bore](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

1 Then the man knew Eve his wife, and she conceived and bore Cain. And she said, "I have obtained a man with Yahweh!"

Genesis 4:2

Then she gave birth

We do not know how much time passed between the births of Cain and Abel. They may have been twins, or Abel may have been born after Eve became pregnant again. If possible, use an expression that does not tell how much time passed.

cultivated

This means he did everything he needed to do so that the plants would grow well. See how “cultivate” is translated in [Genesis 2:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- to bear
- his brother
- Abel
- Abel
- a keeper of
- flocks
- and Cain
- a worker of

ULT

² Then she continued on to bear his brother Abel. Now Abel became a keeper of flocks, and Cain became a worker of the ground.

Genesis 4:3

It came about that

This phrase is used to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using that method here.

ULT

³ And it happened in the course of [days](#) that [Cain](#) brought [some of the fruit of the ground](#) [as an offering to Yahweh](#).

in the course of time

Possible meanings are (1) “after some time had passed” or (2) “at the right time”

fruit of the ground

This refers to the food that came from plants he had tended. Alternate translation: “crops” or “harvest” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [some of the fruit of](#)
- [as an offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

Genesis 4:4

some of the fat

This refers to the fatty parts of the lambs that he had killed, it was the best part of the animal. Alternate translation: “some of their fat parts” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

accepted

“looked favorably upon” or “was pleased with”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Abel](#)
- [Abel](#)
- [some of the firstborn of](#)
- [his flocks](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his offering](#)

ULT

⁴ [And Abel](#) also brought [some of the firstborn of his flocks](#), and some of their fat. And [Yahweh](#) looked favorably on [Abel](#) and [his offering](#).

Genesis 4:5

did not accept

“did not look favorably upon” or “was not pleased with”

was very angry

Some languages have an idiom for anger such as “He burned” or “His anger burned.”

he scowled

This means that the expression on his face showed that he was angry or jealous. Some languages have an idiom that describes what a person’s face looks like when he is angry. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Cain](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [his offering](#)

ULT

⁵ However he did not look favorably on [Cain](#) and [his offering](#). So [Cain](#) burned with intense anger and his face fell.

Genesis 4:6

Why are you angry and why are you scowling?

God used these rhetorical questions to tell Cain that he was wrong to be angry and scowl. They may also have been intended to give Cain an opportunity to confess that he was wrong. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

6 Then [Yahweh](#) said to [Cain](#), " Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Cain](#)

Genesis 4:7

If you...will you not be accepted?

God used this rhetorical question to remind Cain of something Cain should have already known. Alternate translation: "You know that if you do what is right, I will accept you" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But if you do not...you must rule over it

God speaks of sin as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "But if you do not do what is right, you will desire to sin even more, and then you will do sinful things. You must refuse to obey it" (See: [Personification](#))

sin crouches...to control you

Here sin is spoken of as a dangerous wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack Cain. Alternate translation: "you will become so angry that you will not be able to stop sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

sin

Languages that do not have a noun that means "sin" could translate this as "your desire to sin" or "the bad things you want to do."

you must rule over it

Yahweh speaks of Cain's desire to sin as if it were a person over whom Cain should rule. Alternate translation: "you must control it so you do not sin" (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you do right](#)
- [you do...do right](#)
- [sin](#)
- [must rule](#)

ULT

⁷ If [you do right](#), will you not be accepted? But if [you do not do right](#), [sin](#) is crouching at the door, and its desire is for you, but you [must rule](#) over it."

Genesis 4:8

Cain spoke to Abel his brother.

Some early translations tell explicitly what Cain said to his brother. You may want to do the same if it is present in your national version. Alternate translation: "Cain said to Abel his brother, 'Let us go into the fields.'" (See: [Textual Variants](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁸ Then Cain spoke to Abel his brother. And it happened while they were in the field, Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him.

brother

Abel was Cain's younger brother. Some languages may need to use the word for "younger brother." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

rose up against

Standing up to fight against a person is an idiom for attacking him. Alternate translation: "attacked" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Cain
- Cain
- Abel
- Abel
- his brother
- his brother
- rose up
- and killed him

Genesis 4:9

Where is Abel your brother

God knew that Cain had killed Abel, but he asked Cain this question so that Cain would have to answer. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Am I my brother's keeper?

Cain used this rhetorical question so that he would not have to tell the truth. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not my brother's keeper!" or "You know that taking care of my brother is not my job!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" And he replied, " I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Cain
- Abel
- your brother
- my brother's
- I do...know
- Am...keeper

Genesis 4:10

What have you done?

God uses a rhetorical question to rebuke Cain. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have done is terrible!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

10 Then he said, "What have you done?!
The voice of [your brother's](#) blood [is crying out](#) to me from the ground!"

Your brother's blood is calling out to me

Abel's blood is a metonym for his death, as if it were a person calling out for God to punish Cain. Alternate translation: "Your brother's blood is like a person calling out to me to punish the person who killed him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your brother](#)
- [is crying out](#)

Genesis 4:11

Now cursed are you from the ground

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am cursing you so that you will not be able to grow food from the ground" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood

God speaks of the earth as if it were a person who could drink Abel's blood. Alternate translation: "which is soaked with your brother's blood" (See: [Personification](#))

from your hand

Here Cain is represented by his "hand," to emphasize that he personally had killed his brother. Alternate translation: "that spilled when you killed him" or "from you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are cursed](#)
- [your brother](#)
- [from your hand](#)

ULT

11 So now you [are cursed](#) from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive [your brother's blood](#) [from your hand](#).

Genesis 4:12

cultivate

This means to do everything necessary to do so that the plants would grow well. See how “cultivate” is translated in [Genesis 2:5](#).

it will not yield to you its strength

The ground is personified as if it were a person who loses strength. Alternate translation: “the ground will not produce much food for you” (See: [Personification](#))

A fugitive and a wanderer

You can join these words together. Alternate translation: “A homeless wanderer” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you work](#)
- [its strength](#)
- [a fugitive](#)
- [on the earth](#)

ULT

¹² When [you work](#) the ground, it will not continue to yield [its strength](#) for you. You will be [a fugitive](#) and a wanderer [on the earth](#).”

Genesis 4:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Cain
- Yahweh
- than I can bear

ULT

¹³ Then Cain said to Yahweh, " My punishment is greater than I can bear.

Genesis 4:14

I will be hidden from your face

The term “your face” represents God’s presence. Alternate translation: “I will not be able to speak to you” (See: [Idiom](#))

a fugitive and a wanderer

See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:12](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Today](#)
- [you are driving](#)
- [a fugitive](#)
- [on the earth](#)
- [will kill me](#)

ULT

14 Behold! [Today you are driving](#) me from the surface of the ground, and I will be hidden from your presence and I will be [a fugitive](#) and a wanderer [on the earth](#), and it will be everyone who finds me [will kill me!](#)”

Genesis 4:15

vengeance will be taken on him sevenfold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will take vengeance on him seven times" or "I will punish that person seven times as severely as I am punishing you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

would not attack him

"would not kill Cain"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- who kills
- Cain
- on Cain
- will suffer vengeance
- a mark

ULT

15 Then Yahweh replied to him, "For that reason, anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance seven times over!" Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain so that everyone who found him would not kill him.

Genesis 4:16

went out from the presence of Yahweh

Even though Yahweh is everywhere, this idiom speaks of Cain as though he went far away. Alternate translation: “went away from where Yahweh spoke to him” (See: [Idiom](#))

Nod

Translators may add a footnote saying “The word Nod means ‘wandering.’”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Cain](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in the land of](#)
- [Eden](#)

ULT

16 Then [Cain](#) went away from the presence of [Yahweh](#) and lived [in the land of](#) Nod, east of [Eden](#).

Genesis 4:17

Cain knew his wife

This is a polite way of saying that Cain had sexual relations with his wife. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

He built a city

“Cain built a city”

Translation Words - ULT

- Cain
- Then...knew
- and she conceived
- and bore
- Enoch
- Enoch
- so he called
- the name of
- after the name of
- his son

ULT

17 Then Cain knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. And he was building a city, so he called the name of the city after the name of his son Enoch.

Genesis 4:18

To Enoch was born Irad

It is implied that Enoch grew up and married a woman. Alternate translation: "Enoch grew up and married and became the father of a son whom he named Irad" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Irada

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Enoch
- Then...was born
- Lamech

ULT

¹⁸ Then to Enoch was born Irad. Then Irad fathered Mehujael, then Mehujael fathered Methushael, then Methushael fathered Lamech.

Genesis 4:19

Adah...Zillah

women's names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamech](#)
- [The name of](#)
- [and the name of](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Then [Lamech](#) took two wives for himself. [The name of](#) the one was Adah, [and the name of](#) the second was Zillah.

Genesis 4:20

Adah

See how you translated this woman's name in [Genesis 4:19](#).

He was the father of those who lived in tents

Possible meanings are (1) "He was the first person to live in a tent" or (2) "He and his descendants lived in tents."

who lived in tents who have livestock

people who both live in tents and also take care of animals

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...bore](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [in tents](#)
- [and own livestock](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Adah bore Jabal. He was the father of those who live in tents and own livestock.

Genesis 4:21

He was the father of those who play the harp and pipe

Possible meanings are (1) "He was the first person to play the harp and pipe" or (2) "He and his descendants played the harp and pipe."

Translation Words - ULT

- And the name of
- his brother
- the father of
- harps
- and flutes

ULT

²¹ And the name of his brother was Jubal. He was the father of all who play harps and flutes.

Genesis 4:22

Zillah

See how you translated this woman's name in [Genesis 4:19](#).

Tubal-Cain

the name of a man (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the forger of tools of bronze and iron

"who made tools out of bronze and iron"

iron

a very strong metal used to make tools and weapons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bore](#)
- [Cain](#)
- [Tubal](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [And the sister of](#)

ULT

²² And Zillah also [bore](#) Tubal [Cain](#), who forged all kinds of tools out of [bronze](#) and iron. [And the sister of Tubal](#) Cain was Naamah.

Genesis 4:23

Adah...Zillah

See how you translated these women's names in [Genesis 4:19](#).

listen to my voice...listen to what I say

Lamech said the same thing twice for emphasis. His voice is a synecdoche for his whole person. Alternate translation: "listen carefully to me" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

a man for wounding me, a young man for bruising me

Lamech killed only one person. These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize the certainty of his action. Alternate translation: "a young man because he hurt me" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamech](#)
- [Lamech](#)
- [to my voice](#)
- [I killed](#)

ULT

²³ And [Lamech](#) said to his wives, " Adah and Zillah, listen [to my voice](#). Wives of [Lamech](#), hear my words: For [I killed](#) a man for my wound, even a young man for my bruise.

Genesis 4:24

If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech

Lamech knows that God will avenge Cain seven times. Alternate translation: "Since God will punish anyone who kills Cain seven times, Lamech" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

then Lamech will be avenged seventy-seven times

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whoever kills me, God will punish seventy-seven times" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

seventy-seven

77 (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Cain](#)
- [is avenged](#)
- [then Lamech](#)

ULT

²⁴ If [Cain is avenged](#) seven times, [then Lamech](#) is avenged seventy-seven times!"

Genesis 4:25

Adam knew his wife

This is a polite way of saying that Adam had sexual relations with his wife. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

said, “God has given me another son

This is the reason that she named him Seth. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “explained, ‘God has given me another child’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Seth

Translators may add a footnote that says “This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘has given.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Adam
- Then...knew
- Cain
- killed him
- and she bore
- a son
- and she called
- his name
- Seth
- God
- offspring
- Abel

ULT

²⁵ Then Adam knew his wife again, and she bore a son, and she called his name Seth, because she said, “God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, since Cain killed him.”

Genesis 4:26

A son was born to Seth

This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Seth’s wife bore him a son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to call on the name of Yahweh

This is the first time people called God by the name Yahweh. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “to worship God by using the name Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁶ And to Seth also a son was born, and he called his name Enosh. Then people began to call on the name of Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- And to Seth
- a son
- was born
- and he called
- to call
- his name
- on the name of
- Yahweh

Genesis 5

Genesis 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter provides the first of many lists of descendants in the Bible. This is not a simple list, because the author makes comments about each person. Translators should format this text in the way that is clearest in the project language. Many may choose to introduce each new person in a separate paragraph, as the ULT and UST do.

Genesis 5:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of the list of Adam's descendants.

in his own likeness

This phrase means that God made mankind to be like him. This verse does not tell in what ways God made people to be like himself. God does not have a body, so it does not mean that people would look like God. See how "after our likeness" is translated in [Genesis 1:26](#). Alternate translation: "to truly be like us" (See: [Pronouns](#))

ULT

¹ This is the written account of [the generations of Adam](#): [On the day God created mankind](#), he made them [in the likeness of God](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the generations of](#)
- [Adam](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [On the day](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [created](#)
- [in the likeness of](#)

Genesis 5:2

when they were created

This can be made active. Alternate translation: “when he created them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- He created them
- they were created
- and he blessed
- and called
- their name
- mankind
- on the day

ULT

² He created them male and female, and he blessed them and called their name "mankind," on the day they were created.

Genesis 5:3

130

Translators may write the words “one hundred thirty.” (The ULT and the UST use numerals if the number has three or more words; they use words if a number has only one or two words.) (See: [Numbers](#))

he became the father of a son

“he had a son”

in his own likeness, after his image

These two phrases mean the same thing. They are used as a reminder that God made man in his own image. See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 1:26](#).

Seth

See how you translated this name in [Genesis 4:25](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Adam](#)
- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)
- [in his own likeness](#)
- [and he called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Seth](#)

ULT

³ And [Adam lived](#) 130 [years](#), then he fathered a son [in his own likeness](#), according to his image, [and he called his name Seth](#).

Genesis 5:4

eight hundred

Translators may write the numerals "800." (The ULT and the UST use numerals if the number has three or more words; they use words if a number has only one or two words.) (See: [Numbers](#))

He became the father of more sons and daughters

"He had more sons and daughters"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Adam](#)
- [s days](#)
- [Seth](#)
- [800](#)
- [years](#)
- [other sons](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Adam's days](#) after he fathered [Seth](#) were [800 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 5:5

then he died

This phrase will be repeated throughout the chapter. Use the ordinary word for “died.”

Adam lived 930 years

“Adam lived nine hundred and thirty years.” People used to live a very long time. Use your ordinary word for “years.” Alternate translation: “Adam lived a total of 930 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Adam
- s days
- he lived
- 930 years
- 930 years
- then he died

ULT

⁵ So all Adam's days that he lived were 930 years, then he died.

Genesis 5:6

105 years

“one hundred and five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

he became the father of Enosh

Here “father” means his actual father, not his grandfather. Alternate translation: “he had his son Enosh”

Enosh

This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Seth](#)
- [And...lived](#)
- [105 years](#)
- [105 years](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Seth](#) lived [105 years](#), then he fathered Enosh.

Genesis 5:7

807 years

“eight hundred and seven years” (See: [Numbers](#))

and became the father of more sons and daughters

“and had more sons and daughters”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Seth](#)
- [Then...lived](#)
- [807 years](#)
- [807 years](#)
- [other sons](#)

ULT

⁷ Then after he fathered Enosh, [Seth lived 807 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 5:8

Seth lived 912 years

“Seth lived nine hundred and twelve years.” Seth lived a total of 912 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

then he died

This phrase is repeated throughout the chapter. Use the ordinary word for “died.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Seth
- s days
- 912 years
- 912 years
- then he died

ULT

⁸ So all Seth's days were 912 years, then he died.

Genesis 5:9

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

ninety years

“90 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [90 years](#)

ULT

⁹ And Enosh [lived 90 years](#), then he fathered Kenan.

Genesis 5:10

815 years

“eight hundred and fifteen years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 807 years
- 807 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁰ Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived 807 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:11

905 years

“nine hundred and give years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [s days](#)
- [905 years](#)
- [905 years](#)
- [then he died](#)

ULT

11 So all Enosh's [days](#) were [905 years](#),
[then he died](#).

Genesis 5:12

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

seventy years

“70 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [70 years](#)

ULT

¹² And Kenan [lived 70 years](#), then he fathered Mahalalel.

Genesis 5:13

840 years

“eight hundred and forty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 840 years
- 840 years
- other sons

ULT

¹³ Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan [lived 840 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 5:14

910 years

“nine hundred and ten years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [s days](#)
- [910 years](#)
- [910 years](#)
- [then he died](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So all Kenan's [s days](#) were [910 years](#),
[then he died](#).

Genesis 5:15

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [65 years](#)
- [65 years](#)

ULT

15 And Mahalalel [lived 65 years](#), then he fathered Jared.

Genesis 5:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 830 years
- 830 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁶ Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel **lived 830 years**, and he fathered **other sons** and daughters.

Genesis 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- s days
- 895 years
- 895 years
- then he died

ULT

¹⁷ So all Mahalalel's days were 895 years, then he died.

Genesis 5:18

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [162 years](#)
- [162 years](#)
- [Enoch](#)

ULT

18 And Jared [lived 162 years](#), then he fathered [Enoch](#).

Genesis 5:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Enoch
- Then...lived
- 800 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁹ Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived 800 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- s days
- 962 years
- 962 years
- then he died

ULT

²⁰ So all Jared's days were 962 years,
then he died.

Genesis 5:21

he became the father of Methuselah

“he had his son Methuselah”

Methuselah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Enoch](#)
- [And...lived](#)
- [65 years](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Enoch lived 65 years](#), then he fathered Methuselah.

Genesis 5:22

Enoch walked with God

To walk with someone is a metaphor for being in a close relationship with him. Alternate translation: "Enoch had a close relationship with God" or "Enoch lived in union with God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He became the father of more sons and daughters

"He had more sons and daughters"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Enoch](#)
- [Then...walked](#)
- [God](#)
- [300 more years](#)
- [other sons](#)

ULT

²² Then after he fathered Methuselah, [Enoch walked](#) with [God 300 more years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 5:23

Enoch lived 365 years

“Enoch lived three hundred and sixty-five years.” Enoch lived a total of 365 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

²³ So all [Enoch's days](#) were [365 years](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Enoch](#)
- [s days](#)
- [365 years](#)
- [365 years](#)

Genesis 5:24

then he was gone

The word “he” refers to Enoch. He was no longer on earth.

for God took him

This means that God took Enoch to be with himself (God).

Translation Words - ULT

- Enoch
- And...walked
- God
- God

ULT

²⁴ And Enoch walked with God, then he was not there, because God took him away.

Genesis 5:25

General Information:

The records in Genesis 5:6-27 have the same format. Translate them according to the notes in [Genesis 5:6-8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Lamech

This Lamech is different from the Lamech in [Genesis 4:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [187 years](#)
- [187 years](#)
- [Lamech](#)

ULT

²⁵ And Methuselah [lived 187 years](#), then he fathered [Lamech](#).

Genesis 5:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lamech
- Then...lived
- 782 years
- 782 years
- other sons

ULT

²⁶ Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 5:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- s days
- 969 years
- 969 years
- then he died

ULT

²⁷ So all Methuselah's days were 969 years, then he died.

Genesis 5:28

182 years

“one hundred and eighty-two years” (See: [Numbers](#))

became the father of a son

“had a son”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lamech](#)
- [And...lived](#)
- [182 years](#)
- [182 years](#)
- [a son](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [Lamech](#) lived [182 years](#), then he fathered [a son](#),

Genesis 5:29

Noah

Translators may want to add a footnote that says: "This name sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'rest.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from our work and from the painful labor of our hands

Lamech says the same thing twice to emphasize how hard the work was. Alternate translation: "from working so hard with our hands" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [will comfort us](#)
- [from our labors](#)
- [our hands](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has cursed](#)

ULT

²⁹ [and he called his name Noah](#), because he said, "This son [will comfort us from our labors](#) and from the toil of [our hands](#) because of the ground which [Yahweh has cursed](#)."

Genesis 5:30

595 years

“five hundred and ninety-five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Noah](#)
- [Lamech](#)
- [Then...lived](#)
- [595 years](#)
- [595 years](#)
- [other sons](#)

ULT

³⁰ Then after he fathered [Noah](#), [Lamech](#) lived [595 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 5:31

Lamech lived 777 years

“Lamech lived seven hundred seventy-seven years.” Lamech lived a total of 777 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Lamech
- s days
- 777 years
- 777 years
- then he died

ULT

³¹ So all Lamech's days were 777 years, then he died.

Genesis 5:32

he became the father of

“he had his sons.” This does not tell us whether the sons were born on the same day or in different years.

Shem, Ham, and Japheth

These sons may not be listed in the order of their birth. There is disagreement about which one was the oldest. Avoid translating this in a way that implies that the list is in the order of their ages.

ULT

³² And Noah was a son of 500 years, then Noah fathered Shem, Ham and Japheth.

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- Noah
- a son of
- years
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

Genesis 6

Genesis 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Beginning in 6:22, the author gives statements summarizing events he tells about again in the text that follows. In the next chapter, the author sometimes gives summary statements that introduce events for the first time. If these statements, and the surrounding events, are not carefully translated, readers can believe that the same events happened twice or three times instead of only one time. Translators should be careful not to give this impression.

Genesis 6:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

daughters were born to them

This can be active. Alternate translation: "the women bore daughters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [mankind](#)
- [to multiply](#)
- [were born](#)

ULT

¹ Now it happened when [mankind](#) began [to multiply](#) on the surface of the earth and daughters [were born](#) to them,

Genesis 6:2

sons of God

Translators could add a footnote saying: "It is not clear whether this refers to heavenly beings or human beings. In either case, they were beings that God created." Some believe these words refer to angels who rebelled against God, that is, evil spirits or demons. Others think this may refer to powerful political rulers, and others think this may refer to the descendants of Seth.

ULT

² then **the sons of God** saw the daughters of **mankind** that they **were beautiful**, so they took wives for themselves from any of them that they chose.

Translation Words - ULT

- **the sons of**
- **God**
- **mankind**
- **were beautiful**

Genesis 6:3

My spirit

Here Yahweh is talking about himself and his spirit, which is the Spirit of God.

flesh

This means that they have physical bodies that will one day die.

They will live 120 years

“They will live one hundred and twenty years.” Possible meanings are (1) the normal lifespan of people would decrease to 120 years. Alternate translation: “They will not live more than 120 years” or (2) in 120 years everyone would die. Alternate translation: “They will live only 120 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [My Spirit](#)
- [with mankind](#)
- [forever](#)
- [are...flesh](#)
- [their days](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

³ Then [Yahweh](#) said, "My [Spirit](#) will not strive [with mankind forever](#), because they are indeed [flesh](#). So [their days](#) will be 120 [years](#)."

Genesis 6:4

Giants

very tall, large people

This happened when

“The giants were born because”

sons of God

See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:2](#).

These were the mighty men of old

“These giants were the mighty men who lived long ago” or “These children grew to become the powerful fighters who lived long ago”

mighty men

men who are courageous and victorious in battle

men of renown

“famous men”

Translation Words - ULT

- [on the earth](#)
- [in...days](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [God](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [and they bore children](#)
- [were the mighty men](#)
- [renown](#)

ULT

⁴ The Nephilim were [on the earth](#) in those [days](#) and also after that, when [the sons of God](#) went to the daughters of [mankind](#), and they bore children for them. They [were the mighty men](#) who were from long ago, men of [renown](#).

Genesis 6:5

every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts

“everything their hearts wanted to think about”

the thoughts of their hearts

The writer speaks of the heart as if it were the part of the body that thinks. Your language may use a word other than “heart” to talk about the part of people that thinks. Alternate translation: “their inner, secret thoughts” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh saw that the wickedness of mankind was great on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts was only evil all day long.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the wickedness of
- evil
- mankind
- on the earth
- their hearts
- day long

Genesis 6:6

it grieved him to his heart

The writer speaks of the heart as if it were the part of the body that feels sadness. Your language may use a word other than “heart” to talk about the emotions. Alternate translation: “he was very, very sad about it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [on the earth](#)
- [his heart](#)

ULT

⁶ So [Yahweh](#) was sorry that he had made [mankind on the earth](#), and he was grieved in [his heart](#).

Genesis 6:7

I will wipe away mankind...from the surface of the earth

The writer speaks of God killing people as if God were wiping dirt off a flat surface. Alternate translation: "I will destroy mankind...so that there will not be any people on the earth" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created

Some languages would need to translate this as two sentences. Alternate translation: "I created mankind. I will wipe them away" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

wipe away

"completely destroy." Here "wipe away" is used in a negative sense, for God is talking about destroying the people because of their sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [I will wipe away](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [both mankind](#)
- [I created](#)
- [animals](#)
- [the sky](#)

ULT

⁷ Then [Yahweh](#) said, " I will wipe away [mankind](#) whom I [created](#) off the surface of the ground--[both mankind](#) and [animals](#), and creatures that crawl and the birds of [the sky](#)--because I am sorry that I made them."

Genesis 6:8

Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “Yahweh looked favorably on Noah” or “Yahweh was pleased with Noah” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

8 But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [But Noah](#)
- [favor](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Genesis 6:9

General Information:

This begins the story of Noah, which continues into chapter 9.

These were the events concerning Noah

“This is the account of Noah”

walked with God

See how you translated this in [Genesis 5:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the generations of
- in his generation
- Noah
- Noah
- Noah
- righteous
- without blemish
- walked
- God

ULT

⁹ These are [the generations of Noah](#):
[Noah](#) was a [righteous](#) man. He was
[without blemish in his generation](#). [Noah](#)
[walked with God](#).

Genesis 6:10

Noah became the father of three sons

“Noah had three sons” or “Noah’s wife had three sons”

Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Translators may add the following footnote: “The sons are not listed in the order in which they were born.”

ULT

¹⁰ And Noah fathered three sons: Shem, Ham and Japheth.

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- sons
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

Genesis 6:11

The earth

Possible meanings are (1) the people who lived on the earth or (2) "The earth itself." (See: [Metonymy](#))

was corrupt

The people doing what is evil is spoken of as if they were food that has become rotten. Alternate translation: "was rotten" or "was completely evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

before God

Possible meanings are (1) "in God's sight" or (2) "in the presence of Yahweh" as in [Genesis 4:16](#).

and it was filled with violence

The writer speaks of violence as if it were something that could be put into a container and of the earth as a container. Alternate translation: "and there were very many violent people on the earth" or "because it was full of people who did evil things to each other" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now...was corrupt](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the earth](#) (2)
- [God](#)

ULT

11 [Now the earth was corrupt](#) before [God](#), and [the earth](#) was filled with violence.

Genesis 6:12

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

all flesh

Possible meanings for what “all flesh” represents are (1) all human beings or (2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

had corrupted their way

How a person behaves is spoken of as if it were a way or road. Alternate translation: “had stopped living the way God wanted” or “had behaved in an evil way” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [it was corrupt](#)
- [had corrupted](#)
- [flesh](#)

ULT

12 And [God](#) saw [the earth](#) and behold it [was corrupt](#), because all [flesh](#) on [the earth](#) had [corrupted](#) their ways.

Genesis 6:13

all flesh

See how you translated these words in [Genesis 6:12](#).

the earth is filled with violence through them

“people everywhere on earth are violent”

I will destroy them with the earth

“I will destroy both them and the earth” or “I will destroy them when I destroy the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [to Noah](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [will destroy them](#)

ULT

13 So [God](#) said [to Noah](#), "The end of all [flesh](#) has come before me, because [the earth](#) is filled with violence because of them, so behold, I [will destroy them](#) with [the earth](#)."

Genesis 6:14

an ark

This refers to a very large box that would be able to float on water even in a very bad storm. “a large boat” or “a ship” or “a barge”

cypress wood

People do not know exactly what kind of tree this was. “wood used for building boats” or “good wood”

cover it with pitch

The reason for doing this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “spread pitch on it” or “paint tar on it” or “cover it with pitch to make it waterproof” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pitch

This is a thick, sticky or oily liquid that people put on the outside of a boat to stop water from going through gaps in the wood into the boat.

Translation Words - ULT

- an ark...out of
- the ark
- inside

ULT

14 Make **an ark** for yourself **out of** gopher wood. Make **the ark** with rooms, and cover it **inside** and outside with pitch.

Genesis 6:15

cubits

A cubit was a unit of measure, a little less than half a meter long.
(See: [Biblical Distance](#))

three hundred cubits

“138 meters.” You may use the Hebrew measuring units from the ULT or the metric units from the UST or your own culture’s units if you know how they compare to the metric units. You may also write a footnote that says: “Three hundred cubits is about 138 meters.” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

fifty cubits

“twenty-three meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

thirty cubits

“fourteen meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ark](#)

ULT

15 And this is how you must make it: the length of [the ark](#) must be 300 cubits, its width 50 cubits and its height 30 cubits.

Genesis 6:16

a roof for the ark

This was probably a peaked or slanted roof. Its purpose was to protect everything in the ark from the rain.

cubit

A cubit was a little less than half a meter long. See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:15](#). (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a lower, a second, and a third deck

“a lower deck, a middle deck, and an upper deck” or “three decks inside”

deck

“floor” or “level”

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the ark](#)
- [the ark](#)

ULT

16 Make a roof [for the ark](#) and finish the walls of it to within one cubit from the roof. And put the door of [the ark](#) in its side. Make a lower, a second and a third deck.

Genesis 6:17

Listen

God said this in order to emphasize that he would do what he was about to say. "Pay attention" or "Listen to what I am saying"

I am about to bring the flood of waters

In some languages it may be better to say "to send" instead of "to bring. It is also possible to avoid the direction and say "to cause." Alternate translation: "I am about to send a flood of waters" or "I am about to cause a flood" (See: [Go and Come](#))

all flesh

Here "flesh" represents all physical beings, including humans and animals. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that has in it the breath of life

Here "breath" represents life. Alternate translation: "that lives" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [floodwaters](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [is on the earth](#)
- [to destroy](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [the breath of](#)
- [life](#)
- [the heavens](#)

ULT

17 And behold, I am bringing [floodwaters](#) on [the earth](#) to [destroy](#) all [flesh](#) that has [the breath of life](#) in it from under [the heavens](#). Everything that [is on the earth](#) will die!

Genesis 6:18

establish my covenant with you

“make a covenant between you and me”

with you

with Noah

You will come into the ark

“You will enter the ark.” Some translations say “You will go into the ark.”

Translation Words - ULT

- But I will establish
- my covenant
- the ark
- and your sons
- your sons

ULT

18 But I will establish my covenant with you, so you must go into the ark — you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you.

Genesis 6:19

Of every living creature of all flesh, two of every kind you must bring into the ark

“You must bring into the ark two of every kind of living creature”

creature

an animal God created

all flesh

See how you translated these words in [Genesis 6:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creature](#)
- [to keep alive](#)
- [flesh](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And from every [living creature](#), from all [flesh](#), you must bring two from each kind into the ark [to keep alive](#) with you. They must be male and female.

Genesis 6:20

after their kind

“of each different kind”

creeping thing of the ground

This refers to small animals that move on the ground .

two of every sort

This refers to two of every kind of bird and animal.

to you

This refers to Noah and so is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

to keep them alive

“so you can keep them alive”

Translation Words - ULT

- [according to their kinds](#)
- [according to their kinds](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [the animals](#)
- [to keep alive](#)

ULT

²⁰ From the birds [according to their kinds](#), and from [the animals according to their kinds](#), from every creature that moves on the ground [according to its kind](#), two from every kind will come to you [to keep alive](#).

Genesis 6:21

yourself...you

These refer to Noah and are singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

food that is eaten

“food that people and animals eat”

ULT

²¹ And you must take with you some of every food that is eaten and store it with you, and it will be food for you and for them.”

Genesis 6:22

So Noah did this. According to all that God commanded him, so he did

These two sentences mean the same thing. The second sentence explains the first and emphasizes that Noah obeyed God. These parallel sentences can be combined into one. Alternate translation: "So Noah did everything that God commanded him to do" (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

²² So [Noah](#) did that; according to all that [God had commanded](#) him, so he did.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Noah](#)
- [God](#)
- [had commanded](#)

Genesis 7

Genesis 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

In this chapter, the author continues his pattern of statements that summarize events already described, and of repeating events that have already happened. Again, careful translation is necessary so that readers do not think that the same events happened more than one time in the story. Special attention in this regard should be given to 7:5,10,13, and 17.

Special concepts in this chapter

Clean animals and birds

Noah sacrificed to Yahweh some of the “clean” animals and birds that he had with him (8:20). These were animals and birds that the Hebrew people would later consider to be fit to eat and to sacrifice to God. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

Water underneath and over the earth

The flood is presented as occurring because of rain pouring out of the sky and because of seawater rising from under the earth. This is because the ancient Hebrews pictured the earth as resting on top of the sea. They also pictured the sky as containing water above the earth that poured down through windows in the sky when God allowed it to rain. Translators should not try to change this picture in order to suit what readers believe about the world. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Genesis 7:1

General Information:

The events in this chapter take place after Noah built the ark, gathered the food, and put it in the ark.

Come...into the ark

“Enter...into the ark.” Many translations read “Go...into the ark.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

you

The word “you” refers to Noah and is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

your household

“your family”

righteous before me

This means that God saw Noah as righteous.

in this generation

This refers to all the people who were living at that time. Alternate translation: “among all the people who are now living”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Noah](#)
- [the ark](#)
- [your household](#)
- [are righteous](#)
- [in...generation](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Yahweh](#) said [to Noah](#), "Go into [the ark](#), you and all [your household](#), because I have seen that you [are righteous](#) before me in this [generation](#)."

Genesis 7:2

you will bring

“take.” Many translations read “you will take.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

clean animal

This was an animal that God allowed his people to eat and to sacrifice.

animals that are not clean

These were animals that God did not allow people to eat or to sacrifice.

Translation Words - ULT

- [clean](#)
- [is...clean](#)
- [animal](#)
- [animal](#)

ULT

² Take with you seven male and female pairs of every [clean animal](#), and a male and female pair of every [animal](#) that is not [clean](#),

Genesis 7:3

to preserve their offspring

“so that they will have offspring that will live” or “so that, after the flood, animals will continue to live”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sky
- to keep...alive
- their offspring
- the...earth

ULT

³ also seven male and female pairs of every bird of the sky, to keep their offspring alive on the surface of the whole earth,

Genesis 7:4

forty days and forty nights

This was a full forty days. It was not a total of eighty days. Alternate translation: "forty days and nights"

living

This refers to physical life.

Translation Words - ULT

- in...days
- days
- the earth
- and I will wipe away

ULT

⁴ because in seven more days I will cause it to rain on the earth for forty days and forty nights, and I will wipe away every living thing that I have made off the surface of the ground."

Genesis 7:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- Yahweh
- had commanded him

ULT

⁵ Then Noah did all that Yahweh had commanded him.

Genesis 7:6

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

came upon the earth

“happened” or “came on the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Noah](#)
- [years](#)
- [when the flood](#)
- [waters](#)
- [the earth](#)

ULT

⁶ [Now Noah](#) was a son of 600 [years](#) [when the flood-waters](#) came on the [earth](#).

Genesis 7:7

because of the waters of the flood

“because of the flood that would come” or “to escape the flood water”

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- and his sons
- his sons
- the waters of
- the flood

ULT

⁷ And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark from the presence of the waters of the flood.

Genesis 7:8

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

ULT

8 Clean animals and animals that are not clean and birds and everything that moves on the ground

clean animals

These were animals that God allowed people to eat and to give to him as sacrifices.

unclean animals

These were animals that God did not allow people to eat or to give to him as sacrifices.

Translation Words - ULT

- Clean
- clean
- animals
- animals

Genesis 7:9

two by two

The animals entered the boat in pairs of one male and one female.

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- Noah
- the ark
- God
- had commanded

ULT

⁹ went in pairs to Noah into the ark, male and female pairs, just as God had commanded Noah.

Genesis 7:10

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story: the start of the flood. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

after the seven days

“after seven days” or “seven days later”

the waters of the flood came upon the earth

The implicit information, “it started to rain” can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “it started to rain and the waters of the flood came upon the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the...days
- then the waters of
- the flood
- the earth

ULT

¹⁰ So it was after the seven days, then the waters of the flood came on the earth.

Genesis 7:11

General Information:

Verses 6-12 repeat for a second time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

In the six hundredth year of Noah's life

"When Noah was 600 years old" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month

Since Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the second month of the Hebrew calendar. But this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

on the same day

This refers to the specific day when the rain began. This phrase emphasizes how all of these major events happened quickly when the time arrived.

the fountains of the great deep burst open

"water from under the earth rushed up to the earth's surface"

the great deep

This refers to the sea that was thought to be under the earth.

the windows of heaven were opened

This refers to rain. It describes the sky as a ceiling that keeps the waters above it from falling down to the earth. When the windows, or doors, in the sky were opened, the water came down through them. Alternate translation: "the sky opened" or "the doors in the sky opened"

Translation Words - ULT

- [In the six hundredth](#)
- [year](#)
- [the...deep](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [of...s life](#)
- [in the...month](#)
- [of the month](#)
- [day](#)
- [on...day](#)
- [the springs of](#)

ULT

11 [In the six hundredth year](#) of [Noah's life](#), [in the second month](#) on the [seventeenth day of the month](#), on that [day](#) all [the springs of the great deep](#) burst open, and the windows of [the heavens](#) were opened,

Genesis 7:12

rain

If your language has a word for a great amount of rain, it would be appropriate here.

Translation Words - ULT

- the earth
- days

ULT

¹² so that the rain fell on the earth forty days and forty nights.

Genesis 7:13

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

On that very same day

“On that exact day.” This refers to the day that the rain started. Verses 13-16 tell what Noah did immediately before the rain began.

ULT

13 On that same [day Noah and Shem, and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah](#), and the wife of Noah and the three wives of [his sons](#) with them, went into [the ark](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [and Shem](#)
- [and Ham](#)
- [and Japheth](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [the ark](#)

Genesis 7:14

wild animal...livestock...creeping thing...bird

These four groups are listed to show that every kind of animal was included. If your language has another way of grouping all the animals, you can use that, or you can use these groups. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:24](#).

creeping thing

This refers to animals that crawl on the ground, like rodents, insects, lizards, and snakes.

according to its kind

“so that each kind of animal will produce more of its own kind.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creature](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [according to its kind](#)
- [livestock](#)
- [the earth](#)

ULT

¹⁴ they and every [living creature according to its kind](#), and every [livestock according to its kind](#), and every creature that moves on [the earth according to its kind](#), and every bird [according to its kind](#), every bird of every wing.

Genesis 7:15

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

ULT

¹⁵ So pairs of all [flesh](#) that have [the breath of life](#) in them went to [Noah](#) into the ark.

Two of all flesh

Here “flesh” represents animals. (See: [Metonymy](#))

in which was the breath of life

Here “breath” represents life. Alternate translation: “that lived” (See: [Metonymy](#))

came to Noah

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

of all flesh

Here “flesh” represents animals. Alternate translation: “of every kind of animal” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [the breath of](#)
- [life](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [the ark](#)

Genesis 7:16

after them

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “after they entered the ark” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [God](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 And those that went in were male and female from all [flesh](#); they went in just as [God had commanded](#) him. Then [Yahweh](#) shut him in.

Genesis 7:17

General Information:

Verses 13-18 repeat for a third time and give more detail about how Noah went into the ark with his family and the animals in [Genesis 7:1-5](#). This is not a new event.

the water increased

“the water became very deep.” This happened during the forty days while the water kept coming.

lifted the ark

“it caused the ark to float”

raised it above the earth

“causes the ark to rise up high over the ground” or “he ark floated on top of the deep water”

Translation Words - ULT

- the flood
- the earth
- the earth
- days
- the waters
- and...increased
- the ark
- so that it rose up

ULT

17 Then the flood came on the earth for forty days, and the waters increased and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth.

Genesis 7:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the waters
- the waters
- and increased
- the earth
- the ark

ULT

¹⁸ So the waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the waters.

Genesis 7:19

The waters rose greatly on the earth

“The water totally overwhelmed the earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- And the waters
- the earth
- heavens

ULT

¹⁹ And the waters rose very greatly on the earth, so that all the high mountains that were under the entire heavens were covered.

Genesis 7:20

fifteen cubits

“six meters.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [The waters](#)

ULT

²⁰ [The waters](#) rose fifteen cubits above them, so that the mountains were covered.

Genesis 7:21

moved upon

“moved about” or “roamed”

all the living creatures that lived in great numbers upon the earth

This refers to all the animals that move around on the ground in large groups.

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- the earth
- the earth
- and the livestock
- and the living creatures
- mankind

ULT

²¹ Then all flesh that moved on the earth died, including the birds, and the livestock, and the living creatures, and all the creatures that swarm on the earth, and all mankind.

Genesis 7:22

who breathed the breath of life through their noses

Here “noses” represent the whole animal or human. Alternate translation: “everyone that breathed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the breath of life

The words “breath” and “life” represent the power that causes people and animals to be alive. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [had the breath of](#)
- [the spirit of](#)
- [life](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

²² Everything that [had the breath of the spirit of life](#) in its nostrils, everything that lived on dry land, [died](#).

Genesis 7:23

So every living thing...was wiped out

If necessary, this can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So every living thing...perished" or "So the flood completely destroyed every living thing" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They were all destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God destroyed them all" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the earth

"so they were no longer on the earth"

those with him

"the people and animals that were with him"

were left

"remained" or "lived" or "remained alive"

Translation Words - ULT

- [So he wiped away](#)
- [They were wiped](#)
- [including mankind](#)
- [livestock](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [in the ark](#)

ULT

²³ [So he wiped away](#) every living thing that was on the surface of the ground, [including mankind](#) and [livestock](#) and creatures that crawl and also the birds of [the sky](#). [They were wiped off the earth](#), and only [Noah](#) was left and those who were with him [in the ark](#).

Genesis 7:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the waters
- the earth
- days

ULT

²⁴ And the waters prevailed over the earth for 150 days.

Genesis 8

Genesis 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 8:22, which is part of what Yahweh was telling Noah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Flood waters

The waters receded after this great flood. Because there was so much water, and it came from God, it is described in a unique way.

The mountains of Ararat

It is unclear where Ararat was located. Many people believe it is located in the modern country of Turkey.

Genesis 8:1

considered Noah

“remembered Noah” or “decided to help Noah”

ark

This refers to a very large box that would be able to float on water even in a very bad storm. See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:14](#). Alternate translation: “a large boat” or “a ship” or “a barge”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Noah
- the living creatures
- the livestock
- in the ark
- a wind
- the earth
- the waters

ULT

¹ But God remembered Noah and all the living creatures and all the livestock that were with him in the ark. So God caused a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided.

Genesis 8:2

The fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven were closed

“The water stopped coming out of the ground and the rain stopped falling.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God closed the fountains of the deep and the windows of heaven” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

² And [the springs of the deep](#) and the windows of [the heavens](#) were closed, and the rain from [the heavens](#) was stopped.

fountains of the deep

“water from under the earth.” See how this is translated in [Genesis 7:11](#).

the windows of heaven were closed

This refers to the rain stopping. It describes the sky as a ceiling that keeps the waters above it from falling down to the earth. When the windows, or doors, in the sky were closed, the water stopped coming through them. See how “the windows of heaven” is translated in [Genesis 7:11](#). Alternate translation: “the sky closed” or “the doors in the sky closed”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the springs of](#)
- [the deep](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Genesis 8:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the waters
- the waters
- Then...receded
- the earth
- days

ULT

³ Then the waters receded steadily from the earth, and at the end of the 150 days the waters had decreased,

Genesis 8:4

came to rest

“landed” or “stopped on solid ground”

in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month

Because Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴ [so that](#) in the seventh [month](#), on the seventeenth [day of the month](#), the ark [rested](#) on the mountains of [Ararat](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [so that...rested](#)
- [in...month](#)
- [of the month](#)
- [day](#)
- [the ark](#)
- [Ararat](#)

Genesis 8:5

tenth month

Because Moses wrote this book, it is possible he is referring to the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

On the first day of the month

“On the first day of the tenth month”

appeared

This can be made more explicit: “appeared above the surface of the water.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then the waters](#)
- [month](#)
- [of the month](#)
- [the tops of](#)

ULT

⁵ [Then the waters](#) continued to decrease until the tenth [month](#). In the tenth month, on the first [of the month](#), [the tops of](#) the mountains could be seen.

Genesis 8:6

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. Alternate translation: “It happened that”

It came about...the window of the ark which he had made

The phrase “which he had made” tells about the window. Some languages may need to make this phrase a separate sentence: “Noah had made a window in the boat. It came about after forty days that he opened the window” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [the ark](#)

ULT

⁶ Then it happened at the end of forty [days](#) that [Noah](#) opened the window of [the ark](#) that he had made,

Genesis 8:7

raven

a black bird that eats mainly the flesh of dead animals

it flew back and forth

This means that the raven kept leaving the boat and returning.

until the waters were dried up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “until the wind dried up the waters” or “until the waters dried up” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and he sent out
- and it kept flying out
- and returning
- the waters
- the earth

ULT

⁷ and he sent out a raven, and it kept flying out and returning until the waters dried up from the earth.

Genesis 8:8

he sent out a dove

If you use masculine pronouns for the word “dove,” you may need to insert Noah’s name here to avoid confusion: “Noah sent out a dove.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he sent out
- a dove
- the waters

ULT

8 Then he sent out a dove from him to see if the waters had subsided from the surface of the ground.

Genesis 8:9

to rest her foot

“to land” or “to perch.” It means to land on something in order to rest from flying.

her foot...she returned...and brought her

The word “dove” is feminine in the author’s language. You could translate these phrases with the pronouns “its...it...it” or “his...he...him,” depending on how your language refers to a dove.

he...him

If you use masculine pronouns for the word “dove,” you may need to insert Noah’s name here to avoid confusion: “Noah sent out a dove,” “Noah stretched forth his hand,” etc.

Translation Words - ULT

- the dove
- so it returned
- the ark
- the ark
- the waters
- the...earth
- his hand

ULT

⁹ But **the dove** did not find a resting place for the sole of its feet, **so it returned** to him in **the ark**, because **the waters** were over the surface of the entire **earth**. And he reached out **his hand** and took it and brought it to him into **the ark**.

Genesis 8:10

He waited another seven days

“He again waited for seven days”

Translation Words - ULT

- days
- sent out
- the dove
- the ark

ULT

¹⁰ Then he waited another seven days and again sent out the dove from the ark.

Genesis 8:11

Look

“Pay attention” or “This is important”

a freshly plucked olive leaf

“a leaf that she had just plucked from an olive tree”

plucked

“broken off”

Translation Words - ULT

- the dove
- olive
- So...knew
- Noah
- the waters
- the earth

ULT

11 Then the dove returned to him in the evening, and behold there was a freshly picked olive leaf in its beak. So Noah knew that the waters had receded from the earth.

Genesis 8:12

She did not return again to him

If people would not understand, you could state the reason explicitly: "She did not return again to him because she found a place to land." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [and he sent out](#)
- [the dove](#)
- [return](#)

ULT

12 Then he waited another seven [days](#), [and he sent out the dove](#), but it did not [return](#) to him again.

Genesis 8:13

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the six hundred and first year

“when Noah was 601 years old” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the first month, on the first day of the month

Since Moses wrote this book it is possible he is referring to the first month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the waters were dried up from off the earth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the waters covering the earth dried up” or “the wind dried up the waters covering the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the covering of the ark

This refers to a cover that kept the rain water from going into the ark.

behold

The word “behold” tells us to pay attention to the important information that comes next.

Translation Words - ULT

- [year](#)
- [of the month](#)
- [the waters](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [the ark](#)

ULT

13 So it happened in the 601st [year](#), in the first month, on the first [of the month](#), [the waters](#) were drying up from [the earth](#). Then [Noah](#) removed the covering of [the ark](#) and looked around, and behold the surface of the ground was becoming dry.

Genesis 8:14

In the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month

“On the twenty seventh day of the second month.” This may refer to the second month of the Hebrew calendar, but this is uncertain. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the earth was dry

“the ground was completely dry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then in...month](#)
- [of the month](#)
- [day](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

¹⁴ [Then in](#) the second [month](#), on the twenty-seventh [day of the month](#), the [land](#) was dry.

Genesis 8:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Noah

ULT

¹⁵ Then God said to Noah, saying,

Genesis 8:16

Go out of

“Leave.” Some translations read “Come out.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ark](#)
- [and your sons](#)
- [your sons](#)

ULT

16 "Go out of [the ark](#), you and your wife, [and your sons](#) and the wives of [your sons](#) with you.

Genesis 8:17

Take out

"Take." Some translations read "Bring out." (See: [Go and Come](#))

every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living creature." See how "all flesh" is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#).

be fruitful and multiply

This is an idiom. See how this is translated in [Genesis 1:28](#). God wanted the humans and animals to reproduce, so there would be many of them. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [living creature](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [and the livestock](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [on the earth](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [and be fruitful](#)
- [and multiply](#)

ULT

17 Bring out with you every [living creature](#) that is with you, all [flesh](#), including the birds [and the livestock](#) and every creature that moves on [the earth](#), so that they will abound [on the earth and be fruitful and multiply](#) over [the earth](#)."

Genesis 8:18

Noah went out

Some translations read “Noah came out.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- and his sons
- his sons

ULT

18 Then Noah went out, and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him.

Genesis 8:19

according to their families

“in groups of their own kinds”

Translation Words - ULT

- living thing
- the earth
- the ark

ULT

¹⁹ Every living thing, every crawling thing and every bird, everything that moves on the earth went out of the ark by their families.

Genesis 8:20

built an altar to Yahweh

“built an altar dedicated to Yahweh” or “built an altar for worshiping Yahweh.” He may have built it with stones.

clean animals...clean birds

Here “clean” means that God allowed these animals to be used in sacrifice. Some animals were not used for sacrifices and were called “unclean.”

offered burnt offerings

Noah killed the animals and then completely burned them up as an offering to God. Alternate translation: “burned the animals as offerings to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- an altar
- on the altar
- to Yahweh
- clean
- clean
- animal
- burnt offerings

ULT

20 Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh, and he took from every clean animal and from every clean bird, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.

Genesis 8:21

pleasing aroma

This refers to the good smell of the roasted meat.

said in his heart

Here the word "heart" refers to God's thoughts and emotions.

curse the ground

"do very serious harm to the earth"

because of mankind

This can be made more explicit: "because mankind is sinful." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the intentions of their hearts is evil from childhood

"from their earliest years they tend to do evil things" or "when they are young, they want to do evil things"

the intentions of their hearts

Here the word "hearts" refers to people's thoughts, emotions, desires, and will. Alternate translation: "their tendency" or "their habit"

from childhood

This refers to an older child. Alternate translation: "from their youth"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- his heart
- s hearts
- curse
- mankind
- mankind
- is evil
- living thing

ULT

²¹ And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma, and Yahweh said in his heart, "Never again will I curse the ground because of mankind, though the inclination of mankind's hearts is evil from their youth. And never again will I destroy every living thing as I have done."

Genesis 8:22

While the earth remains

“While the earth lasts” or “As long as the earth exists”

seed time

“the season for planting”

cold and heat, summer and winter

These expressions both refer to two major weather conditions in the year. Translators may use local expressions. (See: [Merism](#))

summer

the hot, dry time of the year

winter

the cool, wet or snowy time of the year

will not cease

“will not cease to exist” or “will not cease to occur.” This can be expressed in a positive manner. Alternate translation: “will continue” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the days of](#)
- [and day](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [seed time](#)
- [and harvest](#)

ULT

²² While all of [the days of the earth](#) continue, [seed time and harvest](#), and cold and heat, and summer and winter, [and day](#) and night will not cease."

Genesis 9

Genesis 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULT and many other English translations set the lines of 9:6-7, which is the poetic part of the quotation, farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. They also set apart 9:25-27, which contains two quotations.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 9:6 and 9:25-27.

Special concepts in this chapter

Man's relationship to animals

There is a noticeable shift in man's relationship with the animals on the earth. Before the flood, there apparently was harmony between man and the animals. After the flood, the animals fear man and man is permitted to eat the animals, something he was not allowed to do previously. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Life in the blood

This chapter introduces the concept that there is life in the blood of an animal and in man. In Hebrew thought, blood represents the life present in a living thing. This is an image used throughout Scripture. (See: [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#) and [blood](#))

Covenant with Noah

God made a covenant with Noah. This covenant was an unconditional promise God made to never destroy the whole world with a flood. Rainbows are a perpetual sign of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

A father's nakedness

In Noah's culture, it was unacceptable to see a father's nakedness. It was wrong for Ham to show his brothers their father's nakedness. Ham's actions were insulting or disrespectful. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth"

This is a command that God gives. He expects Noah to obey him.

Genesis 9:1

Be fruitful, multiply, and fill the earth

This is God's blessing. He told Noah and his family to produce more humans like themselves, so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful." See how you translated these commands in [Genesis 1:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

ULT

¹ Then [God blessed Noah](#) and [his sons](#) and said to them, "[Be fruitful and multiply](#) and fill [the earth](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Then...blessed](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [Be fruitful](#)
- [and multiply](#)
- [the earth](#)

Genesis 9:2

The fear of you and the dread of you will be upon every living animal...and upon all the fish of the sea

The writer speaks of fear and dread as if they were physical objects that could be upon the animals. Alternate translation: "Every living animal...and all the fish of the sea will be dreadfully afraid of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

² And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living creature of the earth, including on every bird of the sky, on everything that moves on the ground, and on all the fish of the sea. They are given into your hand.

The fear of you and the dread of you

The words "fear" and "dread" mean basically the same thing and emphasize how afraid the animals will be of mankind. Alternate translation: "A dreadful fear of you" or "A terrible fear of you" (See: [Doublet](#))

every living animal on the earth

This is the first of the four categories of animals that the writer lists, and not a summary of the rest of the animals that he mentions next.

bird

This is a general term for things that fly. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:21](#).

upon everything that goes low on the ground

This includes all types of small animals. See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:25](#).

They are given into your hand

The hand represents control. This can be made active. Alternate translation: "They are given into your control" or "I have put them under your control" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the fear of you](#)
- [and the dread of you](#)
- [living creature of](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the sky](#)
- [into your hand](#)

Genesis 9:3

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [lives](#)

ULT

³ Every moving creature that [lives](#) will be food for you. Just as the green plants, I give you everything.

Genesis 9:4

life...blood

Translators may add a footnote such as this: "The blood is a symbol for life." They may also add a footnote that says something like this: "God was commanding people not to eat meat while the blood was still in it. They had to drain out the blood first."

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- with its life
- that is, its blood

ULT

⁴ But you must not eat flesh with its life, that is, its blood.

Genesis 9:5

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

But for your blood

This contrasts man's blood with the blood of animals ([Genesis 9:4](#)).

for your blood, the life that is in your blood

It is implied that the blood is shed, or poured out, or spilled out. Alternate translation: "if anyone causes your blood to pour out" or "if anyone spills your blood" or "if anyone kills you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

life

This refers to physical life.

I will require payment

This payment refers to the death of the murderer, not to money. Alternate translation: "I will require anyone who kills you to pay"

from the hand

Here the word "hand" refers to the one who is responsible for something happening. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

From the hand of every animal I will require it

"I will require any animal that takes your life to pay"

From the hand of any man, that is, from the hand of one who has murdered his brother, I will require an accounting for the life of that man

"I will require anyone who takes the life of another person to pay"

From the hand of

This phrase refers to the person in a very personal way. Alternate translation: "From that very man" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brother

Here "brother" is used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.

ULT

⁵ And surely I will demand your blood for your lives. From the hand of every living creature I will demand it. Also, from the hand of mankind--from the hand of a man regarding his brother--I will demand the life of the man.

Translation Words - ULT

- I will demand
- I will demand it
- I will demand
- your blood
- for your lives
- living creature
- the life of
- From the hand of
- Also, from the hand of
- from the hand of
- mankind
- the man
- regarding his brother

Genesis 9:6

Whoever sheds man's blood, by man will his blood be shed

The shedding of blood is a metaphor for killing someone. This means that if a person murders someone, someone else must kill the murderer. However, "blood" is very significant in this passage and should be used in the translation if possible. Translate "sheds blood" with words that indicate a major loss of blood that causes death. (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁶ The one shedding [the blood of a man](#), [by mankind his blood](#) must be shed, because [in the image of God](#) he made [mankind](#).

for it was in the image of God that he made man

"because God made people to be like him" or "because I made people in my own image"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the blood of](#)
- [his blood](#)
- [a man](#)
- [by mankind](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [in the image of](#)
- [God](#)

Genesis 9:7

be fruitful and multiply

This is God's blessing. He told Noah and his family to produce more humans like themselves, so that there would be many of them. The word "multiply" explains how they are to be "fruitful." See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:28](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- be fruitful
- and multiply
- and multiply
- on the earth

ULT

7 " And you, [be fruitful and multiply](#).
Abound [on the earth and multiply](#) on it.
"

Genesis 9:8

Then God spoke to Noah and to his sons with him

God was already speaking to them. This phrase marks a change in what God was going to speak about. Alternate translation: "God continued speaking to Noah and his sons" or "Then God went on to say"

ULT

⁸ Then God said to Noah and to his sons with him, saying,

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Noah
- his sons

Genesis 9:9

As for me

This phrase is used in English to mark the change from God talking about what Noah and his sons must do to talking about what God would do.

confirm my covenant with you

“make a covenant between you and me.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 6:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [am establishing](#)
- [my covenant](#)
- [your offspring](#)

ULT

9 " And I, behold I [am establishing my covenant](#) with you and with [your offspring](#) after you,

Genesis 9:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- creature
- living
- living creature of
- living creature of (2)
- with the livestock
- the earth
- the earth
- the ark

ULT

¹⁰ and with every living creature that is with you: with the birds, with the livestock, and with every living creature of the earth with you, from all that came out of the ark, to every living creature of the earth.

Genesis 9:11

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

I hereby confirm my covenant with you

“By saying this, I make my covenant with you.” See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 6:18](#).

all flesh

Possible meanings for what “all flesh” represents are (1) all human beings or (2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. See how this is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth

“There will never again be a flood that destroys the earth.” There would be floods, but they would not destroy the whole earth.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And I am establishing](#)
- [my covenant](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [by the waters of](#)
- [a flood](#)
- [a flood](#)
- [to destroy](#)
- [the earth](#)

ULT

11 [And I am establishing my covenant](#) with you that never again will all [flesh](#) be cut off [by the waters of a flood](#), and never again will there be [a flood to destroy the earth](#).”

Genesis 9:12

sign

This means a reminder of something that was promised.

covenant...for all future generations

The covenant applies to Noah and his family and also to all generations that follow.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the sign of
- the covenant
- living
- creature
- for generations
- forever

ULT

¹² Then God said, "This is the sign of the covenant that I am making between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for generations forever:

Genesis 9:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- my rainbow
- the sign of
- the covenant
- the earth

ULT

¹³ I have set my rainbow in the clouds,
and it will be the sign of the covenant
between me and the earth.

Genesis 9:14

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

It will come about when

“Whenever.” It is something that would happen many times.

the rainbow is seen

It is not clear who will see the rainbow, but because the covenant is between Yahweh and people, if you need to say who it is who will see the rainbow, it would be best to name both Yahweh and people. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people and I see the rainbow” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

rainbow

the colorful strip of light that appears in the rain when the sun shines from behind the viewer

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [the rainbow](#)

ULT

14 And it will be when I bring clouds over [the earth](#) and [the rainbow](#) is seen in the clouds,

Genesis 9:15

I will call to mind my covenant

This does not mean that God would first forget. Alternate translation: "I will think about my covenant"

me and you

The word "you" is plural. God was speaking to Noah and Noah's sons.

every living creature of all flesh

"every kind of living being"

all flesh

Possible meanings for what "all flesh" represents are (1) all human beings or (2) all physical beings, including humans and animal. See how this is translated in [Genesis 6:12](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my covenant](#)
- [creature](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [waters](#)
- [a flood](#)
- [to destroy](#)

ULT

15 then I will remember [my covenant](#) that is between me and you and every living [creature](#) among all [flesh](#), that never again will [waters](#) become [a flood to destroy](#) all [flesh](#).

Genesis 9:16

General Information:

God continues speaking to Noah and his sons.

in order to remember

“so that I will remember” or “so that I will think about”

between God and every living creature

God is speaking here. Alternate translation: “between me and every living creature”

every living creature of all flesh

“every kind of living being.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 9:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the rainbow](#)
- [everlasting](#)
- [the...covenant](#)
- [God](#)
- [creature](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [the earth](#)

ULT

16 So [the rainbow](#) will be in the clouds, and I will see it to remember the [everlasting covenant](#) between [God](#) and every living [creature](#), with all [flesh](#) that is on [the earth](#)."

Genesis 9:17

Then God said to Noah

God was already talking to Noah. This phrase marks the final part of what God was saying. Alternate translation: "God finished by saying to Noah" or "So God said to Noah"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Noah
- the sign of
- the covenant
- I have established
- flesh
- the earth

ULT

17 Then God said to Noah, "That is the sign of the covenant that I have established between me and all flesh that is on the earth."

Genesis 9:18

General Information:

Verses 18-19 introduce the three sons of Noah, who will be an important part of the next story.

father

Ham was Canaan's true father.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Noah
- the ark
- Shem
- and Ham
- and Ham
- and Japheth
- was the father of
- Canaan

ULT

18 And the sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem, and Ham and Japheth; and Ham, he was the father of Canaan.

Genesis 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- were the sons of
- Noah
- the...earth
- was overspread

ULT

¹⁹ Those three were the sons of Noah, and from them the whole earth was overspread.

Genesis 9:20

farmer

person who raises plants for food

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- and planted
- a vineyard

ULT

²⁰ Now Noah began to be a man of the soil and planted a vineyard.

Genesis 9:21

became drunk

“drank too much wine”

uncovered

The text does not specify how much of Noah’s body was uncovered as he lay drunk. His sons’ reactions show us that it was shameful.

ULT

²¹ Then he drank some of [the wine](#), and [he became drunk](#), and he uncovered himself inside [his tent](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the wine](#)
- [and he became drunk](#)
- [his tent](#)

Genesis 9:22

his father

This refers to Noah.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ham
- the father of
- his father
- Canaan
- and he told
- his...brothers

ULT

²² Then Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his father's nakedness, and he told his two brothers outside.

Genesis 9:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Shem
- and Japheth
- a garment
- and walked
- their father
- their father
- and their faces

ULT

²³ But Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them and walked backward and covered their father's nakedness, and their faces were turned away so that they did not see their father's nakedness.

Genesis 9:24

General Information:

In verses 25-27 Noah pronounced a curse on Ham's son and blessings on Ham's brothers. What Noah said about them also applied to their descendants, as shown in the UST. Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in Noah's curse and blessings in verses 25-27.

ULT

²⁴ Then Noah woke up from his wine, and he learned what his youngest son had done to him,

awoke from his wine

He awoke after drinking wine and becoming drunk. He "became sober."

his youngest son

This refers to Ham. Alternate translation: "his youngest son, Ham"

Translation Words - ULT

- Noah
- from his wine
- and he learned
- his...son

Genesis 9:25

Cursed be Canaan

"I curse Canaan" or "May bad things happen to Canaan"

Canaan

This was one of Ham's sons. Alternate translation: "Ham's son Canaan"

a servant to his brothers' servants

"the lowest servant of his brothers" or "the least important servant of his brothers"

his brothers

This could refer either to Canaan's brothers or to his relatives in general.

Translation Words - ULT

- Cursed be
- Canaan
- a slave of
- slaves
- for his brothers

ULT

²⁵ and he said, "Cursed be Canaan! He will be a slave of slaves for his brothers."

Genesis 9:26

General Information:

If you can, format these verses as they are formatted here to show your readers that this is poetry.

May Yahweh, the God of Shem, be blessed

“Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem,” or “Yahweh, the God of Shem, is worthy of praise” or “I praise Yahweh, the God of Shem”

Translation Words - ULT

- Praised be
- Yahweh
- the God of
- Shem
- Canaan
- a slave

ULT

²⁶ Then he said, "Praised be Yahweh, the God of Shem! And may Canaan be a slave for him."

Genesis 9:27

May Canaan be his servant

“And let Canaan be Shem’s servant.” This includes Canaan’s and Shem’s descendants.

May God extend the territory of Japheth

Possible meanings are (1) “May God make Japheth’s territory larger” or (2) “May God cause Japheth to have many descendants.”

let him make his home in the tents of Shem

“let him leave peacefully with Shem.” This includes Japheth’s and Shem’s descendants.

May Canaan be his servant

“Let Canaan be Japheth’s servant.” This includes Canaan’s and Japheth’s descendants.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Japheth
- Shem
- in...s tents
- Canaan
- a slave

ULT

²⁷ May God enlarge Japheth, and may he live in Shem's tents. And may Canaan be a slave for him."

Genesis 9:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the flood
- Noah
- And...lived
- 350 years
- 350 years

ULT

²⁸ And after the flood, Noah lived 350 years.

Genesis 9:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the days of
- Noah
- 950 years
- 950 years
- then he died

ULT

²⁹ So all the days of Noah were 950 years, then he died.

Genesis 10

Genesis 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a genealogical record. It also records the location of ancient people groups.

Special concepts in this chapter

Assyria and Nineveh

While these places may be located in the same area as the Assyria mentioned later in Scripture, they are not the same kingdom.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Sons were born to”

This is an unusual phrase meaning “were sons of.” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Genesis 10:1

These were the descendants of the sons of Noah

“This is the account of Noah’s sons.” This sentence introduces the account of Noah’s descendants in Genesis 10:1-11:9.

Translation Words - ULT

- the generations of
- Noah
- s sons
- sons
- Shem
- Ham
- and Japheth
- and...were born
- the flood

ULT

¹ Now these are the generations of Noah's sons Shem, Ham and Japheth; and sons were born to them after the flood.

Genesis 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Japheth
- and Madai
- and Javan
- and Tubal

ULT

² The sons of Japheth were Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.

Genesis 10:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)

ULT

³ [And the sons of](#) Gomer were
Ashkenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah.

Genesis 10:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- Javan
- and Tarshish

ULT

⁴ And the sons of Javan were Elishah and Tarshish, the Kittim and the Dodanim.

Genesis 10:5

From these the coastland peoples separated and went into their lands

“Javan’s sons and descendants separated and moved to the coastlands and islands”

coastland peoples

This refers to people who lived along the coast and on the islands.

their lands

“their homelands.” These are the places that the people moved to and lived in.

every one with its own language

“Each people group spoke its own language” or “The people groups divided themselves according to their languages”

Translation Words - ULT

- peoples
- in their nations
- into their lands
- with its own language
- according to their clans

ULT

⁵ From those the coastland peoples spread out into their lands, each with its own language, according to their clans, in their nations.

Genesis 10:6

Mizraim

Mizraim is the Hebrew name for "Egypt."

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- Ham
- were Cush
- and Mizraim
- and Canaan

ULT

⁶ And the sons of Ham were Cush, and Mizraim, and Put and Canaan.

Genesis 10:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- And the sons of
- Cush
- were Sheba

ULT

⁷ And the sons of Cush were Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabteca. And the sons of Raamah were Sheba, and Dedan.

Genesis 10:8

conqueror

Possible meanings are (1) "mighty warrior" or (2) "mighty man" or (3) "powerful ruler."

Translation Words - ULT

- Cush also
- mighty
- on the earth

ULT

⁸ Cush also fathered Nimrod, who began to be mighty on the earth.

Genesis 10:9

before Yahweh

Possible meanings are (1) "in Yahweh's sight" or (2) "with Yahweh's help"

That is why it is said

This introduces a proverb. Your language may introduce proverbs and sayings in a different way. Alternate translation: "This is the reason people say" (See: [Proverbs](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a mighty
- mighty
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

ULT

⁹ He was a mighty hunter before Yahweh. For that reason it is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before Yahweh."

Genesis 10:10

The first centers

Possible meanings are (1) the first centers he developed or (2) the important cities.

Translation Words - ULT

- his kingdom
- Babel
- in the land of
- Shinar

ULT

10 And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Akkad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.

Genesis 10:11

he went to Assyria

“Nimrod went into Assyria”

Translation Words - ULT

- land
- to Asshur
- Nineveh

ULT

¹¹ From that land he went to Asshur and he built Nineveh, and Rehoboth-Ir and Calah,

Genesis 10:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nineveh](#)

ULT

¹² and Resen, between [Nineveh](#) and Calah, which is the great city.

Genesis 10:13

Mizraim became

The list of Noah's descendants continues.

Mizraim

Mizraim was one of Ham's sons. His descendants became the people of Egypt. Mizraim is the Hebrew name for Egypt.

ULT

¹³ And Mizraim fathered the Ludim, and the Anamim, and the Lehabim, and the Naphtuhim,

Translation Words - ULT

- And Mizraim

Genesis 10:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistim

ULT

¹⁴ and the Pathrusim, and the Casluhim (whom [the Philistim](#) came from), and the Capthorim.

Genesis 10:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And Canaan
- Sidon
- his firstborn
- Heth

ULT

¹⁵ And Canaan fathered Sidon his firstborn, then Heth,

Genesis 10:16

Jebusites...Amorites...Girgashites

These names refer to larger groups of people that descended from Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jebusites
- the Amorites
- the Girgashites

ULT

¹⁶ and the Jebusites, and the Amorites,
and the Girgashites,

Genesis 10:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Hivites](#)

ULT

¹⁷ and [the Hivites](#), and the Arkites, and the Sinites

Genesis 10:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Hamathites
- the clans of
- the Canaanites
- scattered

ULT

¹⁸ and the Arvadites, and the Zemarites, and the Hamathites. And afterward the clans of the Canaanites scattered,

Genesis 10:19

border

line between one person's land and another person's land

from Sidon, in the direction of Gerar, as far as Gaza

The direction south can be stated explicitly if needed. Alternate translation: "from Sidon city in the north as far south as Gaza town, which is near Gerar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as one goes toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim, as far as Lasha

The direction "east" or "inland" can be stated explicitly if needed. Alternate translation: "then east toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboyim towns, as far as Lasha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Canaanites](#)
- [from Sidon](#)
- [toward Gerar](#)
- [Gaza](#)
- [to Sodom](#)
- [and Gomorrah](#)

ULT

¹⁹ so the borders of [the Canaanites](#) were [from Sidon](#) then you go [toward Gerar](#) as far as [Gaza](#), then you go [to Sodom, and Gomorrah](#), and Admah and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha.

Genesis 10:20

These were the sons of Ham

The word “these” refers to the people and people groups who were listed in verses [Genesis 6-19](#).

by their languages

“broken up according to their different languages”

in their lands

“in their homelands”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Ham](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to their languages](#)
- [in their lands](#)
- [in their nations](#)

ULT

²⁰ Those are [the sons of Ham according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations.](#)

Genesis 10:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons were...born
- And...to Shem
- was the father of
- the sons of
- and the brother of
- Japheth

ULT

²¹ And sons were also born to Shem; he was the father of all the sons of Eber and the brother of Japheth the elder.

Genesis 10:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Shem
- were Elam
- and Asshur
- and Aram

ULT

²² The sons of Shem were Elam, and Asshur, and Arpachshad, and Lud, and Aram.

Genesis 10:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- Aram
- and Mash

ULT

²³ And the sons of Aram were Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Mash.

Genesis 10:24

Arphaxad

Arphaxad was one of Shem's sons.

ULT

²⁴ And Arpachshad fathered Shelah,
then Shelah fathered Eber.

Genesis 10:25

Peleg

Translators may add a footnote note that says: "The name Peleg means 'division.'"

the earth was divided

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "the people of the earth divided themselves" or "the people of the earth separated from one another" or "God divided the people of the earth" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁵ Then two [sons](#) were born to Eber: [the name of](#) the one was Peleg, because [in his days the earth](#) was divided. [And the name of his brother](#) was Joktan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [sons](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [And the name of](#)
- [in his days](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [his brother](#)

Genesis 10:26

Joktan

Joktan was one of Eber's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁶ And Joktan fathered Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,

Genesis 10:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁷ and Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,

Genesis 10:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sheba](#)

ULT

²⁸ and Obal, and Abimael, and [Sheba](#),

Genesis 10:29

All these

“These” here refers to the sons of Joktan.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of

ULT

²⁹ and Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab. All those were the sons of Joktan.

Genesis 10:30

Their territory

“The land they controlled” or “The land they lived in”

ULT

³⁰ And their dwelling was from Mesha, then you go to Sephar, the mountains of the east.

Genesis 10:31

These were the sons of Shem

The word “these” refers to the descendants of Shem ([Genesis 10:21-29](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Shem
- according to their clans
- according to their languages
- in their lands
- according to their nations

ULT

³¹ Those are the sons of Shem according to their clans, according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations.

Genesis 10:32

These were the clans

This refers back to all the people listed in [Genesis 10:1-31](#).

according to

“listed by”

From these the nations separated and went over the earth

“From these clans the nations divided and spread over the earth” or “These clans divided from each other and formed the nations of the earth”

after the flood

This can be stated clearly or more explicitly. Alternate translation: “after the flood destroyed the earth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the clans of
- the sons of
- Noah
- according to their generations
- in their nations
- the nations
- spread out
- on the earth
- the flood

ULT

³² Those are the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their generations, in their nations. And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood.

Genesis 11

Genesis 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a story traditionally referred to as the “Tower of Babel.”

This chapter seeks to answer the questions: why do people speak different languages? how did people become so dispersed across the earth? God’s punishment described in this chapter may also explain why the world has racial and ethnic divisions.

Special concepts in this chapter

Age of people when they die

After the flood, people began to live shorter lives. This chapter begins to record the shortening of the average lifespan.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Personification

The statement “Yahweh came down to see” is a type of personification. Yahweh always knows what happens on earth. This statement indicates that Yahweh is about to bring judgment on mankind. (See: [Personification](#) and [judge, judgment](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Let us build ourselves a city and a tower whose top will reach to the sky”

The people were very full of pride and rebelled against God in this action. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 11:1

Now

This word shows that the writer is beginning a new part of the story.

the whole earth

This represents all the people on the earth. Alternate translation: “all the people on the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

used one language and had the same words

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that all people spoke the same language. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...earth](#)

ULT

¹ Now the whole [earth](#) was one language and the same words.

Genesis 11:2

they journeyed

“they moved around”

in the east

Possible meanings are (1) “in the east” or (2) “from the east” or (3) “to the east.” The preferred choice is “in the east” because Shinar is to the east of where scholars believe the ark came to rest.

settled

stopped moving from one place to another and began to live at one location

Translation Words - ULT

- in the land of
- Shinar

ULT

² And it happened as they migrated from the east, then they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there.

Genesis 11:3

Come

If your language has a way of urging or commanding people to begin work, like the English "Come on!" you might use it here.

bake them thoroughly

People make bricks out of clay and heat them in a very hot oven to make them hard and strong.

tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground

mortar

This is a thick substance made of lime powder, clay, sand, and water used to make stones or bricks stick together.

Translation Words - ULT

- to each other

ULT

³ Then they said to each other, "Come, let us make bricks and bake them with fire." And they had bricks for stones, and they had tar for mortar.

Genesis 11:4

let us make a name for ourselves

“let us make our reputation great”

name

reputation

we will be scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we will separate from each other and live in different places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- with its top
- in the heavens
- a name
- we are...scattered
- the...earth

ULT

⁴ Then they said, "Come, let us build a city for ourselves and a tower [with its top in the heavens](#), and let us make [a name](#) for ourselves, so that [we are](#) not [scattered](#) over the face of the whole [earth](#)."

Genesis 11:5

the descendants of Adam

“the people”

came down

The information about where he came down from can be made explicit: “came down from heaven.” This does not tell how he came down. Use a general word meaning “came down.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to see

“to observe” or “to look more closely”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [mankind](#)

ULT

⁵ Then [Yahweh](#) came down to see the city and the tower that [the sons of mankind](#) had built,

Genesis 11:6

one people with the same language

All the people were one big group and they all spoke the same language.

they are beginning to do this

Possible meanings are (1) "they have begun to do this," meaning that they have begun to build the tower but it is not finished, or (2) "this is just the first thing they have done," meaning that in future they will do greater things.

ULT

⁶ and Yahweh said, "Behold, **they are** one **people** and they all have one language, so this is what they have begun to do, and now everything that they plan to do will not be withheld from them.

nothing that they intend to do will be impossible for them

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "anything they intend to do will be possible for them" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- they are...people

Genesis 11:7

Come

If your language has a way of urging or commanding people to begin work, like the English “Come on!” you might use it here. See how this is translated in [Genesis 11:3](#).

ULT

⁷ Come, let us go down and there confuse their language, so that they will not understand [each other's language](#).”

let us go down

The word “us” is plural even though it refers to God. Some translate it as “let me go down” or “I will go down.” If you do this, consider adding a footnote to say that the pronoun is plural. See the note on “Let us make” in [Genesis 1:26](#). (See: [Pronouns](#))

confuse their language

This means that Yahweh would cause the people all over the earth to stop speaking the same language. Alternate translation: “mix up their language” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that they may not understand each other

This was the purpose of confusing their language. Alternate translation: “so that they will not be able to understand what each other is saying” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [each other's language](#)

Genesis 11:8

from there

“from the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Then...scattered
- the...earth

ULT

⁸ Then Yahweh scattered them from there over the face of the whole earth, and they stopped building the city.

Genesis 11:9

its name was called Babel, because there Yahweh confused

The name "Babel" sounds like the word that means "confused."
Translators may want to add a footnote about this.

confused the language of the whole earth

It means that Yahweh caused the people all over the earth to no longer speak the same language. Alternate translation: "mixed up the language of the whole earth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- they called
- its name
- Babel
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the...earth
- the...earth
- scattered them

ULT

⁹ For that reason they called its name Babel, because there Yahweh confused the language of the whole earth, and from there Yahweh scattered them over the face of the whole earth.

Genesis 11:10

General Information:

The rest of this chapter lists the line of Shem's descendants down to Abram.

These were the descendants of Shem

This sentence begins the list of Shem's descendants.

flood

This is the flood from Noah's time when people had become so evil that God sent a worldwide flood to cover the earth.

became the father of Arphaxad

"had his son Arphaxad" or "his son Arphaxad was born"

Arphaxad

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a hundred...two

Translators may write the words or the numerals "100" and "2." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the generations of](#)
- [Shem](#)
- [Shem](#)
- [years](#)
- [two years](#)
- [the flood](#)

ULT

10 These are [the generations of Shem](#): [Shem](#) was the son of 100 [years](#), then he fathered Arpachshad [two years](#) after [the flood](#).

Genesis 11:11

five hundred

Translators may write the words or the numeral "500." (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Shem](#)
- [Then...lived](#)
- [years](#)
- [other sons](#)

ULT

11 Then after he fathered Arpachshad, [Shem lived 500 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 11:12

he became the father of Shelah

“his son Shelah was born”

Shelah

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lived
- years

ULT

¹² And Arpachshad lived 35 years, then he fathered Shelah.

Genesis 11:13

403 years

“four hundred and three years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 403 years
- 403 years
- other sons

ULT

¹³ Then after he fathered Shelah, Arpachshad [lived 403 years](#), and he fathered [other sons](#) and daughters.

Genesis 11:14

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lived](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

14 And Shelah [lived](#) 30 [years](#), then he fathered Eber.

Genesis 11:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 403 years
- 403 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁵ Then after he fathered Eber, Shelah lived 403 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:16

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

ULT

16 And Eber [lived](#) 34 [years](#), then he fathered Peleg.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)

Genesis 11:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 430 years
- 430 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁷ Then after he fathered Peleg, Eber lived 430 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:18

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

18 And Peleg [lived](#) 30 [years](#), then he fathered Reu.

Genesis 11:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 209 years
- 209 years
- other sons

ULT

¹⁹ Then after he fathered Reu, Peleg lived 209 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:20

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

²⁰ And Reu [lived](#) 32 [years](#), then he fathered Serug.

Genesis 11:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...lived
- 207 years
- 207 years
- other sons

ULT

²¹ Then after he fathered Serug, Reu lived 207 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:22

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

ULT

²² And Serug [lived](#) 30 [years](#), then he fathered [Nahor](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)
- [Nahor](#)

Genesis 11:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Nahor
- Then...lived
- years
- other sons

ULT

²³ Then after he fathered **Nahor**, Serug **lived 200 years**, and he fathered **other sons** and daughters.

Genesis 11:24

General Information:

The records in Genesis 11:12-25 have the same format. See how you translated them in [Genesis 11:12-13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁴ And [Nahor lived](#) 29 [years](#), then he fathered [Terah](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Nahor](#)
- [And...lived](#)
- [years](#)
- [Terah](#)

Genesis 11:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Terah
- Nahor
- Then...lived
- 119 years
- 119 years
- other sons

ULT

²⁵ Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived 119 years, and he fathered other sons and daughters.

Genesis 11:26

Abram, Nahor, and Haran

We do not know the birth order of his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- Terah
- And...lived
- years
- Abram
- Nahor
- Haran

ULT

²⁶ And Terah lived 70 years, then he fathered Abram, Nahor and Haran.

Genesis 11:27

Now these were the descendants of Terah

This sentence introduces the account of Terah's descendants. Genesis 11:27-25:11 tells about Terah's descendants, particularly his son Abraham. Alternate translation: "This is the account of Terah's descendants" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁷ Now these are [the generations of Terah](#): [Terah](#) fathered [Abram](#), [Nahor](#) and [Haran](#); and [Haran](#) fathered [Lot](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the generations of](#)
- [Terah](#)
- [Terah](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [Nahor](#)
- [Haran](#)
- [and Haran](#)
- [Lot](#)

Genesis 11:28

Haran died in the presence of his father Terah

This means that Haran died while his father was still living. Alternate translation: "Haran died while his father, Terah, was with him" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Later...died](#)
- [Haran](#)
- [Terah](#)
- [his father](#)
- [in the land of](#)
- [his birth](#)
- [in Ur of](#)
- [the Kasdim](#)

ULT

²⁸ [Later Haran died](#) in the presence of [Terah his father, in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Kasdim.](#)

Genesis 11:29

took wives

“married wives”

Iskah

This is a female name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- Abram
- and Nahor
- Nahor
- The name of
- and the name of
- was Sarai
- Haran
- the father of
- and the father of

ULT

²⁹ Then Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves. The name of Abram's wife was Sarai, and the name of Nahor's wife was Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah and the father of Iscah.

Genesis 11:30

Now

This word is used to introduce new information about Sarai that will become important in later chapters.

ULT

³⁰ But Sarai was barren; she did not have a child.

barren

This term describes a woman who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarai
- barren
- a child

Genesis 11:31

his

Here the word “his” refers to Terah.

Sarai his daughter-in-law, his son Abram’s wife

“his daughter-in-law Sarai, who was the wife of his son Abram”

Haran...Haran

These are two different names and they are spelled differently in Hebrew. One refers to a person and the other refers to a city. (The “h” sound in the city’s name is louder than the “h” sound in the person’s name.) You might choose to spell them differently in your language to show this.

Translation Words - ULT

- Terah
- his son
- s son
- s son (2)
- his son
- his son
- from Ur of
- the Kasdim
- to the land of
- Canaan
- Abram
- Abram (2)
- Lot
- Haran
- Haran

ULT

³¹ Then Terah took his son Abram and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son, and his daughter-in-law Sarai, the wife of his son Abram, and they went out together from Ur of the Kasdim to go to the land of Canaan. But they came to Haran, and they settled there.

Genesis 11:32

205 years

“two hundred and five years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Terah
- Terah
- s days
- 205 years
- 205 years
- then...died
- in Haran

ULT

³² And when Terah's days were 205 years, then Terah died in Haran.

Genesis 12

Genesis 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abram

When God said, “Go from your country, and from your relatives,” he established several new people groups. These groups descended from Abram.

God’s covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. (See: [covenant](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“They will kill me”

Abram was afraid the Egyptians would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Sarai to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Abram’s sister, they would have shown favor to him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 12:1

Now

This word is used to mark a new part of the story.

Go from your country, and from your relatives

“Go from your land, from your family”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Abram
- from your country
- the land
- and from your relatives
- and from...s house
- your father

ULT

¹ Then Yahweh said to Abram, "You yourself must go from your country and from your relatives and from your father's house, to the land that I will show you."

Genesis 12:2

I will make of you a great nation

Here “you” is singular and refers to Abram, but Abram represents his descendants. Alternate translation: “I will start a great nation through you” or “I will make your descendants become a great nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

make your name great

The word “name” represents the person’s reputation. Alternate translation: “make you famous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will be a blessing

The words “to other people” are understood. Alternate translation: “you will be a blessing to other people” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [into a...nation](#)
- [and I will bless you](#)
- [a blessing](#)
- [your name](#)

ULT

² And I will make you [into a great nation, and I will bless you](#), and I will make [your name](#) great, and you will be [a blessing](#).

Genesis 12:3

whoever dishonors you I will curse

"I will curse whoever treats you in a shameful way" or "if anyone treats you as worthless, I will curse him"

Through you will all the families of the earth be blessed

This can be made active. Alternate translation: "I will bless all the families of the earth through you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Through you

"Because of you" or "Because I have blessed you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And I will bless](#)
- [those who bless you](#)
- [And...will be blessed](#)
- [but whoever curses you](#)
- [I will curse](#)
- [the families of](#)

ULT

³ [And I will bless those who bless you, but whoever curses you I will curse.](#) And through you, all [the families of the earth will be blessed.](#)"

Genesis 12:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- And Abram
- Yahweh
- Lot
- 75 years
- 75 years
- from Haran

ULT

⁴ Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was the son of 75 years when he set out from Haran.

Genesis 12:5

possessions

This includes animals and non-living property.

the people that they had acquired

Possible meanings are (1) “slaves that they had accumulated” or (2) “the people whom they had gathered to be with them.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- Sarai
- Lot
- the son of
- his brother
- the people
- in Haran
- to the land of
- to the land of
- Canaan
- Canaan

ULT

⁵ And Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot the son of his brother, and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they set out to go to the land of Canaan. And when they came to the land of Canaan,

Genesis 12:6

Abram passed through the land

Only Abram's name is mentioned because he was the head of the family. God had given him the command to take his family and go there. Alternate translation: "So Abram and his family went through the land" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the land

"the land of Canaan"

the oak of Moreh

Moreh was probably the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abram](#)
- [through the land](#)
- [were in the land](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [the terebinth tree of](#)
- [And the Canaanites](#)

ULT

6 then [Abram](#) passed [through the land](#) as far as the place of [Shechem](#), to [the terebinth tree of Moreh](#). [And the Canaanites were in the land](#) at that time.

Genesis 12:7

Yahweh, who had appeared to him

"Yahweh, because he had appeared to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Yahweh
- Abram
- land
- to your offspring
- an altar

ULT

⁷ Then Yahweh appeared to Abram and said, "I will give this land to your offspring." So he built an altar there to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.

Genesis 12:8

he pitched his tent

Abram had many people with him as he traveled. People who moved from place to place lived in tents. Alternate translation: “they set up their tents”

called on the name of Yahweh

“prayed in the name of Yahweh” or “worshiped Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- of Bethel
- of Bethel
- with Bethel
- with Bethel
- his tents
- and Ai
- an altar
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and he called
- on the name of

ULT

8 Then from there he went on to the mountains to the east of Bethel and pitched his tents, with Bethel on the west and Ai on the east. And there he built an altar to Yahweh, and he called on the name of Yahweh.

Genesis 12:9

Then Abram continued journeying

You may need to make explicit that he took his tent with him. "Then Abram took his tent and continued journeying." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ Then [Abram](#) set out and continued to travel [toward the Negev](#).

toward the Negev

"toward the Negev region" or "toward the south" or "south to the Negev desert"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abram](#)
- [toward the Negev](#)

Genesis 12:10

There was a famine

The crops did not grow well that season. This can be made explicit.
Alternate translation: "There was a shortage of food" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the land

"in the area" or "in the land where Abram was living"

went down into

Possible meanings are (1) "went further south" or (2) "went away from Canaan into." It would be best to translate this using your usual words for going from a higher place to a lower place.

Translation Words - ULT

- a famine
- the famine
- in the land
- in the land
- Abram
- to Egypt

ULT

10 Then there was a famine in the land, so Abram went down to Egypt to sojourn there because the famine was severe in the land.

Genesis 12:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt
- Sarai
- I know

ULT

11 And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt, then he said to Sarai his wife, "Behold now, I know that you are a woman beautiful in appearance."

Genesis 12:12

they will kill me...you alive

The reason they would kill Abram can be made explicit: “they will kill me so that they can marry you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Egyptians
- and they will kill
- let...live

ULT

¹² So it will happen when [the Egyptians](#) see you, then they will say, 'This is his wife!' [and they will kill](#) me but let you [live](#).

Genesis 12:13

so that my life will be spared because of you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that, because of you, they will not kill me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my sister](#)
- [it will go well](#)
- [and...will live](#)
- [my life](#)

ULT

¹³ Please say that you are [my sister](#), so that [it will go well](#) for me for your sake and [my life will live](#) because of you."

Genesis 12:14

It came about that

Possible meanings are (1) This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts, and if your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here, or (2) "And that was what happened" .

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- into Egypt
- the Egyptians

ULT

14 Then it happened, when Abram came into Egypt, then the Egyptians saw the woman that she was very beautiful.

Genesis 12:15

The princes of Pharaoh saw her

“Pharaoh’s officials saw Sarai” or “the king’s officials saw her”

the woman was taken into Pharaoh’s household

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Pharaoh took her into his household” or “Pharaoh had his soldiers take her into his household” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the woman

Sarai

Pharaoh’s household

Possible meanings are (1) “Pharaoh’s family,” that is, as a wife, or (2) “Pharaoh’s house” or “Pharaoh’s palace,” a euphemism for Pharaoh making her one of his wives. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the officials of](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [Pharaoh](#)
- [then they praised](#)
- [into...s house](#)

ULT

15 And when [the officials of Pharaoh](#) saw her, [then they praised](#) her to [Pharaoh](#), and the woman was taken into [Pharaoh's house](#).

Genesis 12:16

for her sake

“for Sarai’s sake” or “because of her”

Translation Words - ULT

- he treated...well
- Then...Abram
- sheep
- and cattle
- and male donkeys
- and female donkeys
- and male slaves
- and female slaves
- and camels

ULT

16 Then he treated Abram well for her sake, so that he had sheep and cattle, and male donkeys, and male slaves and female slaves, and female donkeys and camels.

Genesis 12:17

because of Sarai, Abram's wife

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "because Pharaoh intended to take Sarai, Abram's wife, to be his own wife" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Pharaoh
- his house
- Sarai
- Abram

ULT

¹⁷ But Yahweh struck Pharaoh and his house with great plagues on account of Sarai the wife of Abram.

Genesis 12:18

Pharaoh summoned Abram

“Pharaoh called Abram” or “Pharaoh ordered Abram to come to him”

What is this that you have done to me?

Pharaoh used this rhetorical question to show how angry he was about what Abram had done to him. It can also be stated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: “You have done a terrible thing to me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

18 So Pharaoh called for Abram and said, "What is this you have done to me? Why did you not tell me that she was your wife?"

Translation Words - ULT

- So...called
- Pharaoh
- for Abram

Genesis 12:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- my sister

ULT

¹⁹ Why did you say, 'She is my sister,' so that I took her to me as a wife? Now then, behold your wife. Take her and go!"

Genesis 12:20

Then Pharaoh gave orders to his men concerning him

“Then Pharaoh directed his officials concerning Abram”

they sent him away, along with his wife and all that he had

“the officials sent Abram away from Pharaoh, with his wife and all his possessions”

ULT

²⁰ Then **Pharaoh commanded** his men concerning him, **and they sent** him **away** and his wife and everything that belonged to him.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh
- Then...commanded
- and they sent...away

Genesis 13

Genesis 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abram's faith

Since the land could not support both Lot's and Abraham's family, they each went their own way. Even though good land was not plentiful, Abraham allowed Lot to choose the better land because he trusted in God to fulfill his promises. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

God's covenant with Abram

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. This chapter continues the covenant which began in the previous chapter. (See: [covenant](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Built an altar

Abram would have built an altar in order to offer sacrifices to Yahweh. There is an implicit understanding that building an altar was an act of worship. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 13:1

went up from

“left” or “departed from”

went into the Negev

The Negev was a desert region in southern Canaan, west of Egypt.

This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “went back to the Negev desert” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹ Then Abram went up from Egypt to the Negev, he and his wife and everything that belonged to him, and Lot with him.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- from Egypt
- to the Negev
- and Lot

Genesis 13:2

Abram was very rich in animals, in silver, and in gold

“Abram had many animals, much silver, and much gold”

animals

“livestock” or “cattle”

Translation Words - ULT

- And Abram
- in livestock
- in silver
- and in gold

ULT

² And Abram was very wealthy in livestock, in silver and in gold.

Genesis 13:3

He continued on his journey

Abram and his family traveled by stages, going from place to place. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They continued on their journey" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to the place where his tent had been before

Translators may add a footnote that says "See Genesis 12:8." The time of his travel can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to the place where he had set up his tent before he went to Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the Negev](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [his tents](#)
- [Ai](#)

ULT

³ Then [from the Negev](#) he went on his journey as far as [Bethel](#), to the place where [his tents](#) had been at the beginning, between [Bethel](#) and [Ai](#),

Genesis 13:4

called on the name of Yahweh

“prayed in the name of Yahweh” or “worshiped Yahweh.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 12:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the altar](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [and...called](#)
- [on the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁴ to the place of [the altar](#) that he had made there at first, and there [Abram](#) [called on the name of Yahweh](#).

Genesis 13:5

Now

This word is used to show what follows is background information to help the reader understand the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lot](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [and cattle](#)
- [and tents](#)

ULT

⁵ Now [Lot](#), who was traveling with [Abram](#), also had [sheep and cattle and tents](#).

Genesis 13:6

The land was not able to support them

There was not enough grazing land and water for all their animals.

their possessions

This includes livestock, which need pasture and water.

could not stay together

“could not live together”

Translation Words - ULT

- the land

ULT

⁶ But the land could not support them while they stayed together, because their possessions were great so that they were not able to stay together.

Genesis 13:7

The Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land at that time

This is another reason that the land could not support them all.

Translation Words - ULT

- strife
- the herdsmen of
- the herdsmen of (2)
- Abram
- s livestock
- s livestock
- Lot
- And the Canaanites
- and the Perizzites
- in the land

ULT

⁷ Then there was *strife* between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. And the Canaanites and the Perizzites were living in the land at that time.

Genesis 13:8

Let there be no strife between you and me

“Let’s not quarrel”

strife

arguments or fights

between your herdsmen and my herdsmen

“let’s stop the men who take care of our animals from quarreling”

after all, we are family

“because we are family”

family

“kinsmen” or “relatives.” Lot was Abraham’s nephew.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- Lot
- strife
- my herdsmen
- your herdsmen
- brothers

ULT

⁸ So Abram said to Lot, "Please do not let there be **strife** between me and you, or between **my herdsmen** and **your herdsmen**, because we are men, **brothers**."

Genesis 13:9

Is not the whole land before you?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "The whole land is available for you to use." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Go ahead and separate yourself from me

Abraham was speaking kindly to Lot and encouraging him to do something that would help them both. "Let's separate."

If you go to the left, then I will go to the right

Possible meanings are (1) "If you go one way, then I will go the other" or (2) "If you go to the north, I will go to the south." Abram let Lot choose the part of the land he wanted, and Abram would take what remained.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...land](#)

ULT

⁹ Is not the whole [land](#) before you?
Please separate from me. If you go to the left, then I will go right, or if you go to the right, then I will go left."

Genesis 13:10

the whole plain of the Jordan

This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

was well watered

“had much water”

like the garden of Yahweh, like the land of Egypt

“like the garden of Yahweh or like the land of Egypt.” These were two different places.

the garden of Yahweh

This is another name for the garden of Eden.

garden

Use the same word for “garden” as you used in [Genesis 2:8](#).

This was before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah

This anticipates something that would happen later. It is important here because it explains why Lot settled in a region that later was not fertile.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lot](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [to Zoar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [like the land of](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [destroyed](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)

ULT

10 Then [Lot](#) lifted his eyes and saw the entire Plain of [the Jordan](#) as you go to [Zoar](#), that all of it was well watered, like the garden of [Yahweh](#), like the land of [Egypt](#), before [Yahweh](#) destroyed [Sodom](#) and [Gomorrah](#).

Genesis 13:11

the relatives

“the kinsmen” or “the families.” This refers to Lot and Abram with their households.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lot
- Lot
- the Jordan
- from each other

ULT

11 So Lot chose for himself the entire Plain of the Jordan, and Lot traveled to the east, and they separated from each other.

Genesis 13:12

Abram lived

“Abram made his home” or “Abram stayed”

the land of Canaan

“the land of the Canaanites”

He set up his tents as far away as Sodom

Possible meanings are (1) “He set up his tents near Sodom” or (2) “He moved his tents around in an area that reached all the way to Sodom.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- in the land of
- Canaan
- and Lot
- and moved his tents
- Sodom

ULT

¹² Abram settled in the land of Canaan, and Lot settled in the cities of the plain and moved his tents as far as Sodom.

Genesis 13:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sodom
- were...wicked
- and sinful
- against Yahweh

ULT

¹³ Now the men of Sodom were exceedingly wicked and sinful against Yahweh.

Genesis 13:14

after Lot had departed from him

“after Lot left Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- Then Yahweh
- Abram
- Lot
- and to the south

ULT

¹⁴ Then Yahweh said to Abram, after Lot had separated from him, "Lift your eyes now from the place where you are there, and look to the north, and to the south, and to the east and to the west,

Genesis 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- and to your offspring
- forever

ULT

¹⁵ because all the land that you see, I will give to you and to your offspring forever.

Genesis 13:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your offspring
- your offspring (2)
- the earth
- the earth

ULT

¹⁶ And I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, which if anyone were able to count the dust of the earth, your offspring could also be counted.

Genesis 13:17

walk through the length and breadth of the land

“walk around all over the whole land”

Translation Words - ULT

- Get up
- and walk
- through the land

ULT

¹⁷ Get up and walk through the land, through its length and through its width, because I am giving it to you."

Genesis 13:18

Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hebron

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

an altar to Yahweh

“an altar for worshiping Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...moved his tents](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [near the terebinth trees of](#)
- [were near Hebron](#)
- [an altar](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

18 So Abram moved his tents and went and settled near the terebinth trees of Mamre that were near Hebron, and there he built an altar to Yahweh.

Genesis 14

Genesis 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 14:19-20.

Special concepts in this chapter

Names of places

Sometimes the names of places in Scripture are referred to by the name used during the time of the writer. For example, the location referred to as Dan was not yet known by that name because Dan had not yet come to live there. Moses, the author of Genesis, would have known this location as Dan.

Melchizedek

Melchizedek was both a priest and a king. Because of this, he parallels the roles of Jesus. Melchizedek is an important figure in the book of Hebrews. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God Most High

Melchizedek worshiped the God Most High. This is probably a reference to the true and only God who created the heavens and the earth and came to be known as Yahweh. (See: [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

Genesis 14:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the days of

“in the time of”

Amraphel...Arioch...Kedorlaomer...Tidal

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shinar...Ellasar...Elam...Goiim

These are names of places. See how you translated “Shinar” in [Genesis 10:10](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the days of](#)
- [king of](#)
- [king of](#)
- [king of \(2\)](#)
- [king of](#)
- [Shinar](#)
- [Elam](#)

ULT

¹ Now it happened [in the days of](#) Amraphel [king of Shinar](#), Arioch [king of](#) Ellasar, Kedorlaomer [king of Elam](#), and Tidal [king of](#) the Goiim,

Genesis 14:2

they made war

“they went to war” or “they started a war” or “they prepared for war”

Translation Words - ULT

- king of
- king of (2)
- king of (3)
- king of (4)
- and the king of
- Sodom
- Gomorrah
- is Zoar

ULT

² they made war against Bera king of Sodom, and against Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which is Zoar.

Genesis 14:3

These latter five kings joined together

The information that their armies were with them can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "These latter five kings and their armies joined together" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...Sea](#)

ULT

³ All these joined together in the Siddim Valley, which is now the Salt [Sea](#).

Genesis 14:4

Twelve years they had served

The events in verses 4-7 happened before verse 3. Your language may have a way of showing this.

they had served Kedorlaomer

They probably had to pay him taxes and serve in his army. Alternate translation: “they had been under the control of Kedorlaomer” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

they rebelled

“they refused to serve him” or “they stopped serving him”

Translation Words - ULT

- years
- year
- they had served
- they rebelled

ULT

⁴ For twelve years they had served Kedorlaomer, but the thirteenth year they rebelled.

Genesis 14:5

came and attacked

They did this because the other kings rebelled.

the Rephaim...the Zuzites...the Emites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ashteroth Karnaim...Ham...Shaveh Kiriathaim

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ham

This name in Hebrew is different from the name of Noah's son, which is spelled the same way in English.

Translation Words - ULT

- year
- and the kings

ULT

⁵ Then in the fourteenth [year](#) Kedorlaomer [and the kings](#) who were with him went and struck the Rephaim in Ashteroth-Karnaim, and the Zuzim in Ham, and the Emim in Shaveh-Kiriathaim,

Genesis 14:6

the Horites

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Seir...El Paran

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

El Paran, which is near the desert

This phrase helps readers understand where El Paran was. It can be translated as a separate sentence if necessary. Alternate translation: "El Paran. El Paran is near the desert" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [El](#)
- [the wilderness](#)

ULT

6 and the Horites in their hill country of Seir as far as [El Paran](#), which is by [the wilderness](#).

Genesis 14:7

General Information:

Verses 8 and 9 repeats what was said in [Genesis 14:3](#) and continues to tell what happened when the kings came together to fight.

they turned and came

The word “they” refers to the four foreign kings who were attacking the region of Canaan. Their names were Amraphel, Arioch, Chedorlaomer, and Tidal. Alternate translation: “they turned and went” (See: [Go and Come](#))

the Amorites who lived in Hazon Tamar

This phrase tells which Amorite people were defeated. There were other Amorite people who lived in other places.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they turned back](#)
- [the Amalekites](#)
- [the Amorites](#)
- [in Hazon](#)

ULT

7 [Then they turned back](#) and came to En Mishpat, which is Kadesh, and they struck the entire territory of [the Amalekites](#) and also [the Amorites](#) who were living [in Hazon Tamar](#).

Genesis 14:8

the king of Bela (also called Zoar)

The city of Bela was also called Zoar. This information could also be put at the end of the sentence. "the king of Bela went out and prepared for battle. Bela is also called Zoar."

prepared for battle

"joined battle" or "drew up battle lines." Some translators may need to also say that the armies fought, as the UST does in verse 9. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁸ Then [the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim](#), and the king of Bela, which [is Zoar](#), went out into the Siddim Valley and arranged themselves for battle

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [and the king of](#)
- [and the king of](#)
- [and the king of \(2\)](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)
- [is Zoar](#)

Genesis 14:9

four kings against the five

Since the five kings were listed first, some languages might prefer to translate this as “five kings against four.”

Translation Words - ULT

- king of
- king of (2)
- king of (3)
- king of (4)
- kings
- Elam
- Shinar

ULT

⁹ against Kedorlaomer [king of Elam](#), and Tidal [king of Goiim](#), and Amraphel [king of Shinar](#), and Arioch [king of Ellasar](#), four [kings](#) against the five.

Genesis 14:10

Now

This word introduces background information about the valley of Siddim. Your language may have another way of introducing background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

was full of tar pits

“had many tar pits.” These were holes in the ground that had tar in them.

tar

a thick, sticky, black liquid that comes up from the ground. See how this is translated in [Genesis 11:3](#).

the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah

Here the kings represent themselves and their armies. Alternate translation: the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they fell in there

Possible meanings are (1) some of their soldiers fell in the tar pits or (2) the kings themselves fell in the tar pits. Since [Genesis 14:17](#) says that the king of Sodom went to meet Abram, the first meaning is more likely correct. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Those who were left

“Those who did not die in battle and did not fall in the pits”

Translation Words - ULT

- [had many](#)
- [pits](#)
- [the kings of](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [and Gomorrah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now the Siddim Valley [had many tar pits](#), and [the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah](#) fled, and they fell there, and those who remained fled to the hill country.

Genesis 14:11

the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah

The words “Sodom” and “Gomorrah” are metonyms for the people who lived in those cities. Alternate translation: “the wealth of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah” or “the property of the people of Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

their provisions

“their food and drink”

went their way

“they went away”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they took](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [and Gomorrah](#)

ULT

11 [Then they took](#) all the possessions of [Sodom and Gomorrah](#) and all their food and left.

Genesis 14:12

they also took Lot, Abram's brother's son, who was living in Sodom, along with all his possessions

The phrases "Abram's brother's son" and "who was living in Sodom" remind the reader of things that were written earlier about Lot.

Alternate translation: "they also took Lot, along with all his possessions. Lot was Abram's brother's son and was living in Sodom at that time" (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

ULT

¹² And they took Lot and his possessions, the son of Abram's brother, when they left, since he was living in Sodom.

Translation Words - ULT

- And they took
- Lot
- the son of
- Abram
- s brother
- in Sodom

Genesis 14:13

One who had escaped came

“A man escaped from the battle and came”

He was living

“Abram was living.” This introduces background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

were all allies of Abram

“were treaty-partners with Abram” or “had a peace agreement with Abram”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and reported](#)
- [to Abram](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [the Hebrew](#)
- [by the terebinth trees of](#)
- [the Amorite](#)
- [the brother of](#)
- [and the brother of](#)
- [a covenant with](#)

ULT

13 Then someone who escaped came and reported to Abram the Hebrew. And he was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre the Amorite, the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner, and they were owners of a covenant with Abram.

Genesis 14:14

his relative

This is a reference to Abram's nephew Lot.

318 trained men

"three hundred and eighteen trained men" (See: [Numbers](#))

trained men

"men who were trained to fight"

men who had been born in his house

"men who were born in Abram's household." They were children of Abram's servants.

pursued them

"chased them"

Dan

This is a city in the far north of Canaan, far from Abram's camp.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abram](#)
- [his relative](#)
- [had been taken captive](#)
- [who had been born in](#)
- [his house](#)
- [Dan](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And when [Abram](#) heard that [his relative had been taken captive](#), then he led out his 318 trained men [who had been born in his house](#), and he pursued his enemies as far as [Dan](#).

Genesis 14:15

He divided his men against them at night and attacked them

This probably refers to a battle strategy. "Abram divided the men into several groups, and they attacked their enemies from various directions"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his servants](#)
- [of Damascus](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then he divided against them during the night, he [and his servants](#), and struck them and pursued them to Hobah, which is north [of Damascus](#).

Genesis 14:16

all the possessions

This refers to the things that the enemies had stolen from the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.

his goods

“Lot’s property that the enemies had stolen from Lot”

as well as the women and the other people

“as well as the women and other people that the four kings had captured”

Translation Words - ULT

- And he brought back
- he...brought back
- his relative
- Lot
- the other people

ULT

16 And he brought back all the possessions, and he also brought back his relative Lot and his possessions, and also the women and the other people.

Genesis 14:17

returned

The implied information about where he was returning to can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “returned to where he was living” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- the kings
- the King
- Sodom
- he returned

ULT

17 Then [the king of Sodom](#) came out to meet him in the Shaveh Valley, which is [the King's Valley](#), after [he returned](#) from striking Kedorlaomer and [the kings](#) who were with him.

Genesis 14:18

Melchizedek, king of Salem

This is the first time this king is mentioned.

bread and wine

People commonly ate bread and wine. See how you translated “bread” in [Genesis 3:19](#) and “wine” in [Genesis 9:21](#).

ULT

18 Then Melchizedek the king of Salem brought out bread and wine. And he was a priest to God Most High,

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Melchizedek](#)
- [Then Melchizedek](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [bread](#)
- [and wine](#)
- [was a priest](#)
- [to God](#)
- [Most High](#)

Genesis 14:19

He blessed him

King Melchizedek blessed Abram.

Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Creator of heaven and earth

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God Most High, the Creator of heaven and earth, bless Abram" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he blessed him](#)
- [May...be blessed](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [by God](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [and earth](#)

ULT

¹⁹ [and he blessed him](#) and said, "May [Abram be blessed by God Most High](#), the Possessor of [heaven and earth](#)!"

Genesis 14:20

God Most High, who has given

“God Most High, because he has given.” The phrase starting with “who has given” tells us something more about God Most High.

Blessed be God Most High

This is a way of praising God. See how you translated “blessed be” in [Genesis 9:26](#).

into your hand

“into your control” or “into your power”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And praised be](#)
- [God](#)
- [Most High](#)
- [delivered](#)
- [your enemies](#)
- [into your hand](#)
- [a tenth](#)

ULT

20 [And praised be God Most High](#), who [delivered your enemies into your hand!](#) Then he gave to him [a tenth](#) of everything.

Genesis 14:21

Give me the people

The phrase “the people” may refer to the people of Sodom that the enemies had captured. Abram rescued them when he rescued Lot.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- Sodom
- the people

ULT

21 Then the king of Sodom said to Abram, " Give to me the people, but the possessions take for yourself."

Genesis 14:22

I have lifted up my hand

This means "I have taken an oath" or "I have made a promise."

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- the king of
- Sodom
- my hand
- Yahweh
- God
- Most High
- heaven
- and earth

ULT

²² But Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I have raised my hand to Yahweh, God Most High, the Possessor of heaven and earth,

Genesis 14:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sandal
- Abram

ULT

²³ that I will not take from a thread even to a sandal strap, and I will not take from anything that belongs to you, so that you will not say, 'I made Abram rich.'

Genesis 14:24

I will take nothing except what the young men have eaten

“I take from you only what my young men have already eaten.”
Abram was refusing to accept anything for himself, but acknowledged that the soldiers had eaten some of the supplies during the journey back to Sodom after the battle.

ULT

²⁴ I will take nothing, except what the young men have eaten and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol and Mamre. Let them take their share.”

the share of the men that went with me

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the share of the recovered property that belongs to the men who helped me get it back” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre

These are the allies of Abram ([Genesis 14:13](#)). Because they were Abram’s allies they fought battles alongside him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “my allies Aner, Eshkol, and Mamre” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 15

Genesis 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Inheritance

In the ancient Near East, a person's children inherited the property and land of their parents. Abraham doubted the fulfillment of God's covenant because he did not have any children to whom to give his land. This showed a lack of faith. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#), [covenant](#) and [faith](#))

Fulfilling a promise

In the ancient Near East, two people performed a similar sacrifice by dividing animals in half. It was a way to say to the other person, "may this happen to me if I do not fulfill my promise." The event recorded here indicates that God will fulfill his promise and only he is responsible for bringing it about. (See: [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

God's covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. This covenant has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety.

Genesis 15:1

After these things

“These things” refers to when the kings fought and Abram rescued Lot.

the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying, “Fear

The idiom “the word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave a message to Abram in a vision. He said, ‘Fear’ or “Yahweh spoke this message to Abram in a vision: ‘Fear’” (See: [Idiom](#))

shield...reward

God used these two metaphors to tell Abram about his character and his relationship to Abram. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am your shield

Soldiers use a shield to protect themselves from their enemies. Alternate translation: “I will protect you like shield” or “I am your shield to protect you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am...your very great reward

Possible meanings are (1) “I myself will be all that you need” or (2) “I will give you all you need.”

reward

the result of a person’s actions. This seems to be a metonym for the gracious blessing God would give Abram. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [in a vision](#)
- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [a shield](#)
- [your reward](#)

ULT

¹ After those things, the word of [Yahweh](#) came to [Abram in a vision](#), saying, "Do not [be afraid, Abram!](#) I am [a shield](#) for you, [your reward](#) will be very great."

Genesis 15:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- My Lord
- Yahweh
- and the son of
- my house
- is...of Damascus

ULT

² But Abram said, " My Lord, Yahweh, what will you give to me, since I go childless, and the son of the inheritance of my house is Eliezer of Damascus?"

Genesis 15:3

Abram said, "Since you have given me

"Abram continued speaking and said, 'Since you have given me'"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- a child
- a servant of
- my house
- will inherit

ULT

³ Then Abram said, "Behold, you have not given a child to me, so that behold, a servant of my house will inherit what is mine!"

Genesis 15:4

Then, behold

The word “behold” emphasizes the fact that the word of Yahweh came to Abraham again.

the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, “This

The idiom “The word of Yahweh came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. See how you translated this idiom in [Genesis 15:1](#). Alternate translation: “Yahweh gave him a message. He said, ‘This’ or “Yahweh spoke this message to him: ‘This’ (See: [Idiom](#))

This man

This refers to Eliezer of Damascus.

the one who will come from your own body

“the one that you will father” or “your very own son.” Abram’s own son would become his heir.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [will...be your heir](#)
- [will be your heir](#)

ULT

⁴ Then behold, the word of [Yahweh](#) came to him, saying, " That man will not [be your heir](#), but rather a son who comes from your bowels, he [will be your heir](#)."

Genesis 15:5

number the stars

“count the stars”

So will your descendants be

Just as Abram would not be able to count all the stars, he would not be able to count all his descendants because there would be so many.

Translation Words - ULT

- at the heavens
- your offspring

ULT

⁵ Then he brought him outside and said, "Look now [at the heavens](#) and count the stars, if you are able to count them." Then he said to him, " So will [your offspring](#) be."

Genesis 15:6

He believed Yahweh

This means he accepted and trusted what Yahweh said was true.

he counted it to him as righteousness

“Yahweh counted Abram’s belief as righteousness” or “Yahweh considered Abram righteous because Abram believed him”

ULT

⁶ And he trusted in Yahweh, and he counted it to him as righteousness.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he trusted
- in Yahweh
- as righteousness

Genesis 15:7

I am Yahweh, who brought you out of Ur

Yahweh was reminding Abraham of what he had already done so that Abraham would know that Yahweh had the power to give Abram what he promised him.

to inherit it

“to receive it” or “so that you will possess it”

Translation Words - ULT

- am Yahweh
- of Ur of
- the Kasdim
- land
- to possess it

ULT

⁷ Then he said to him, "I am Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of the Kasdim to give to you this land to possess it."

Genesis 15:8

how will I know

Abram was asking for more proof that Yahweh would give him the land.

Translation Words - ULT

- My Lord
- Yahweh
- will I know
- I will possess it

ULT

⁸ Then he said, " My Lord, Yahweh, how will I know that I will possess it?"

Genesis 15:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a...heifer
- and a...she-goat
- and a...ram
- and a turtledove

ULT

⁹ Then he said to him, "Bring to me a three-year-old heifer, and a three-year-old she-goat, and a three-year-old ram, and a turtledove and a young pigeon."

Genesis 15:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁰ So he brought all those to him. Then he cut them in two down the middle and laid the halves opposite to each other, but the birds he did not cut in two.

Genesis 15:11

the carcasses

“the dead bodies of the animals and birds”

Abram drove them away

“Abram chased the birds away.” He made sure the birds did not eat the dead animals.

ULT

11 Then birds of prey came down on [the carcasses](#), and [Abram](#) drove them away.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the carcasses](#)
- [Abram](#)

Genesis 15:12

Abram fell sound asleep

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Abraham slept deeply" (See: [Idiom](#))

a deep and terrifying darkness

"an extreme darkness that terrified him"

overwhelmed him

"surrounded him"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abram](#)
- [terror](#)
- [darkness](#)

ULT

12 Then it happened, the sun was setting and a deep sleep fell on [Abram](#), and behold, [terror](#), great [darkness](#) fell on him.

Genesis 15:13

strangers

people who are at home in one place but have to live in another place

will be enslaved and oppressed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the owners of that land will enslave your descendants and oppress them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Abram
- for certain
- Know
- your offspring
- in a land
- and they will serve them
- and * they will oppress
- years

ULT

13 Then he said to Abram, " Know for certain that your offspring will be strangers in a land * that is not theirs, and they will serve them, and * they will oppress them 400 years.

Genesis 15:14

General Information:

Yahweh continued to speak to Abram while Abram dreamed.

I will judge

Here “judge” is a metonym for what will happen after God makes the judgment. Alternate translation: “I will punish” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that they will serve

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “that your descendants will serve” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

abundant possessions

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “many possessions” or “great wealth” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the nation](#)
- [they serve](#)
- [will judge](#)

ULT

¹⁴ But also, [the nation](#) that [they serve](#) I [will judge](#), and after that they will come out with great possessions.

Genesis 15:15

you will go to your fathers

This is a polite way of saying “you will die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

fathers

The word “fathers” is a synecdoche for all ancestors. Alternate translation: “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

you will be buried in a good old age

“you will be very old when you die and your family buries your body”

Translation Words - ULT

- [your fathers](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [you will be buried](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

15 And you, you will go to [your fathers in peace](#); [you will be buried](#) at a [good old age](#).

Genesis 15:16

In the fourth generation

Here one generation refers to a lifespan of 100 years. "After four hundred years"

they will come here again

"your descendants will come back here." Abraham's descendants would come to the land where Abram was then living, the land that Yahweh had promised to give to him.

has not yet reached its limit

"is not yet complete" or "will get much worse before I punish them"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then in the...generation
- they will come back
- the sin of
- the Amorites

ULT

16 Then in the fourth generation they will come back here, because the sin of the Amorites will not be complete until then."

Genesis 15:17

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch passed between the pieces

God did this to show Abram that he was making a covenant with him.

passed between the pieces

“passed through between the two rows of animal pieces”

Translation Words - ULT

- flaming

ULT

17 Then it happened, the sun went down and darkness came, and behold, there was a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch that passed between those pieces.

Genesis 15:18

covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, and he will continue to bless him as long as Abram follows him.

I hereby give this land

By saying this, God was giving the land to Abram's descendants. God was doing this then, but the descendants would not go into the land until many years later.

ULT

18 On that day Yahweh cut a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your offspring I have given this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates River,

Translation Words - ULT

- On...day
- Yahweh
- a covenant
- Abram
- To your offspring
- land
- Egypt
- Euphrates

Genesis 15:19

the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

19 the land of the Kenites, and the
Kenizzites, and the Kadmonites,

Genesis 15:20

the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁰ and [the Hittites](#), and [the Perizzites](#), and the Rephaim,

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Hittites](#)
- [the Perizzites](#)

Genesis 15:21

the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites

These are the names of groups of people who lived in that land. God would allow Abraham's descendants to conquer these people and take their land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²¹ and [the Amorites](#), and [the Canaanites](#), and [the Girgashites](#) and [the Jebusites.](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Amorites](#)
- [the Canaanites](#)
- [the Girgashites](#)
- [the Jebusites](#)

Genesis 16

Genesis 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 16:11-12.

Special concepts in this chapter

Plural marriage

Abram married Hagar while he was also married to Sarai. Even though Abram had his wife's permission, this was an immoral and sinful action. It also showed a lack of faith in God. Sarai quickly became jealous of Hagar. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [faith](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 16:1

Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and background information about Sarai. (See: [Background Information](#))

female servant

“slave-girl.” This type of slave would serve the woman of the household.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Sarai](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [had...born children](#)
- [Egyptian](#)
- [an...maidservant](#)
- [and her name](#)
- [was Hagar](#)

ULT

¹ [Now Sarai](#), the wife of [Abram](#), had not [born children](#) for him, but she had an [Egyptian maidservant](#), and her name was [Hagar](#).

Genesis 16:2

from having children

"from giving birth to children"

I will have children by her

"I will build my family through her"

Abram listened to the voice of Sarai

"Abram did what Sarai said"

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarai
- Sarai
- Abram
- Abram
- Yahweh
- from bearing children
- go
- my maidservant
- to the voice of

ULT

² So Sarai said to Abram, "Behold, Yahweh has prevented me from bearing children. Please go to my maidservant. Perhaps I can be built up from her." And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.

Genesis 16:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarai
- Abram
- Abram
- to Abram
- Hagar
- her...maidservant
- Egyptian
- years
- in the land of
- Canaan

ULT

³ So Sarai Abram's wife took Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant, at the end of ten years that Abram had lived in the land of Canaan, and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him.

Genesis 16:4

she looked with contempt on her mistress

“she despised her mistress” or “she thought that she was more valuable than her mistress”

her mistress

Here this refers to Sarai. A mistress has authority over her slave. Alternate translation: “her owner” or “Sarai”

Translation Words - ULT

- Then he went
- Hagar
- and she conceived
- she had conceived

ULT

⁴ Then he went to Hagar and she conceived. And she saw that she had conceived, and her mistress was despised in her eyes.

Genesis 16:5

This wrong on me

“This injustice against me”

is because of you

“is your responsibility” or “is your fault”

I gave my servant woman into your embrace

Sarai used the word “embrace” here to refer to him sleeping with her. Alternate translation: “I gave you my servant so that you would sleep with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

I was despised in her eyes

This can be active. Alternate translation: “she hated me” or “she began to hate me” or “she thought she was better than me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Let Yahweh judge between me and you

“I want Yahweh to say whether this is my fault or your fault” or “I want Yahweh to decide which one of us is right.” The phrase “to judge between” means to decide which person is right in a dispute between them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sarai](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [My wrong](#)
- [my maidservant](#)
- [she has conceived](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [May...judge](#)

ULT

⁵ Then [Sarai](#) said to [Abram](#), “[My wrong](#) is on you! I myself put [my maidservant](#) into your arms, but she sees that [she has conceived](#), and I am despised in her eyes! May [Yahweh judge](#) between me and you!”

Genesis 16:6

See here

"Listen to me" or "Pay attention"

in your power

"under your authority"

Sarai dealt harshly with her

"Sarai treated Hagar very badly"

she fled from her

"Hagar fled from Sarai"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- Sarai
- Sarai
- your maidservant
- is in your hand
- what is good
- Then...mistreated her

ULT

⁶ Then Abram said to Sarai, " Behold, your maidservant is in your hand. Do to her what is good in your eyes." Then Sarai mistreated her, and she fled from her presence.

Genesis 16:7

The angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are (1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or (2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or (3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel."

ULT

⁷ Then [an angel of Yahweh](#) found her at [a spring of water in the wilderness](#), at [the spring](#) beside the road of Shur.

wilderness

The wilderness area she went to was a desert. Alternate translation: "desert"

Shur

This was the name of a place south of Canaan and east of Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- [an angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [a spring of](#)
- [the spring](#)
- [water](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

Genesis 16:8

my mistress

Here this refers to Sarai. A mistress has authority over her slave. See how "her mistress" is translated in [Genesis 16:4](#). Alternate translation: "my owner"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hagar](#)
- [maidservant of](#)
- [Sarai](#)
- [Sarai](#)

ULT

⁸ And he said, "[Hagar, maidservant of Sarai](#), where have you come from, and where are you going?" And she said, " I am fleeing from the face of my mistress [Sarai](#)."

Genesis 16:9

The angel of Yahweh said to her

“The angel of Yahweh said to Hagar”

your mistress

Sarai. See how “her mistress” is translated in [Genesis 16:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Return](#)
- [and submit](#)
- [her hands](#)

ULT

⁹ Then [the angel of Yahweh](#) said to her, "[Return](#) to your mistress [and submit](#) under [her hands](#)."

Genesis 16:10

the angel of Yahweh

See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

the angel of Yahweh said to her, “I

When he said “I,” he was referring to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the word “I” when referring to Yahweh.

I will greatly multiply your descendants

“I will give you very many descendants”

too numerous to count

“so many that no one will be able to count them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I will...increase](#)
- [your offspring](#)

ULT

10 Then [the angel of Yahweh](#) said to her, " [I will](#) greatly [increase your offspring](#), so that they can not be counted because of their abundance."

Genesis 16:11

The angel of Yahweh

See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention”

bear a son

“give birth to a son”

you will call his name

“you will name him.” The word “you” refers to Hagar.

Ishmael, because Yahweh has heard

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name ‘Ishmael’ means ‘God has heard.’”

affliction

She has been afflicted by distress and suffering.

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- you are pregnant
- and you will bear
- a son
- and you must call
- his name
- Ishmael
- your misery

ULT

11 Then the angel of Yahweh said to her, "Behold, you are pregnant, and you will bear a son, and you must call his name Ishmael, because Yahweh has listened to your misery."

Genesis 16:12

He will be a wild donkey of a man

This was not an insult. It may mean that Ishmael would be independent and strong like a wild donkey. Alternate translation: "He will be like a wild donkey among men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He will be hostile against every man

"He will be every man's enemy"

every man will be hostile to him

"everyone will be his enemy"

he will live apart from

This can also mean "he will live in hostility with."

his brothers

"his relatives" or "the other members of his family"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a wild donkey of](#)
- [a man](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [and...s hand](#)
- [his brothers](#)

ULT

¹² And he will be [a wild donkey of a man, his hand](#) against everyone, and everyone's [hand](#) against him, and he will live in the face of all of [his brothers.](#)"

Genesis 16:13

Yahweh who spoke to her

“Yahweh, because he spoke to her”

Do I really continue to see,...me?

Hagar used this rhetorical question to express her amazement that she was still alive even after she met God. People expected that if they met God, they would die. Here seeing represents living. Alternate translation: “I am surprised that I am still alive,...me.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

13 Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, " You are El Roi," because she said, "Have I really seen here the back of the One who sees me?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then she called
- the name of
- Yahweh
- to her

Genesis 16:14

Therefore the well was called Beer Lahai Roi

Translators may add a footnote that says “Beer Lahai Roi means ‘the well of the living one who sees me.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered

The word “behold” here draws attention to the fact that the well was in a place that the author and his readers knew. Alternate translation: “in fact, it is between Kadesh and Bered” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they call](#)
- [the well](#)

ULT

14 For that reason [they call the well](#) Beer Lahai Roi. Behold, it is between Kadesh and Bered.

Genesis 16:15

Hagar gave birth

Hagar's return to Sarai and Abram is implicit. You can make this more explicit. Alternate translation: "So Hagar went back and gave birth" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

named his son, whom Hagar bore

"named his son by Hagar" or "named his and Hagar's son"

Translation Words - ULT

- Hagar
- Hagar
- Then...bore
- bore
- Ishmael
- a son
- his son
- for Abram
- Abram
- and...called
- the name of

ULT

15 Then Hagar bore a son for Abram, and Abram called the name of his son whom Hagar bore Ishmael.

Genesis 16:16

Abram was

This introduces background information about Abram's age when these things happened. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: [Background Information](#))

ULT

16 And Abram was a son of 86 years when Hagar bore Ishmael for Abram.

bore Ishmael to Abram

This means "gave birth to Abram's son, Ishmael." The focus is on Abram having a son.

Translation Words - ULT

- And Abram
- for Abram
- was a son of
- 86 years
- 86 years
- when...bore
- Hagar
- Ishmael

Genesis 17

Genesis 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“The father of a multitude of nations”

Abram came to have many descendants. He had so many descendants that many of his immediate descendants became large people groups and nations.

God’s covenant with Abraham

God made a covenant with Abram. This covenant was not conditioned upon anything that Abraham needed to do, but the fulfillment of its promises is conditioned upon the actions of each generation of his descendants. It has not yet been fulfilled in its entirety. It is important to note in this chapter that Isaac is the son who receives the promises associated with the covenant and not Ishmael. (See: [covenant](#) and [fulfill, fulfilled, carried out](#) and [promise, promised](#))

Circumcision

Circumcision was an unusual practice in the ancient Near East. It served to separate the Hebrew people from the rest of the world. This chapter records the beginning of this practice among Abraham and his descendants. (See: [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#))

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person’s life. The beginning of the practice of circumcision was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Genesis 17:1

When Abram was ninety-nine years old

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

God Almighty

“the all-powerful God” or “the God who has all power”

Walk before me

Walking is a metaphor for living, and “before me” or “in my presence” here is a metaphor for obedience. Alternate translation: “Live the way I want you to” or “Obey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abram](#)
- [Abram](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [99 years](#)
- [99 years](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [am El](#)
- [Shaddai](#)
- [Walk](#)
- [without blemish](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Abram](#) was [a son of 99 years](#), and [Yahweh](#) appeared to [Abram](#) and said to him, "I [am El Shaddai](#). [Walk](#) before my face and be [without blemish](#)."

Genesis 17:2

Then I will confirm

“If you do this, then I will confirm”

I will confirm my covenant

“I will give my covenant” or “I will make my covenant”

covenant

In this covenant God promises to bless Abram, but he also requires Abram to obey him.

multiply you exceedingly

Here “multiply you” is an idiom that means he will give him more descendants. Alternate translation: “greatly increase the number of your descendants” or “give you very many descendants” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my covenant](#)
- [and I will multiply](#)

ULT

² And I will make [my covenant](#) between me and you, [and I will multiply](#) you very greatly.”

Genesis 17:3

Abram bowed low with his face to the ground

“Abram threw himself face down on the ground” or “Abraham immediately lay down with his face to the ground.” He did this to show that he respected God and would obey him.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abram
- God

ULT

³ Then Abram fell on his face, and God spoke with him saying,

Genesis 17:4

As for me

God used this phrase to introduce what he would do for Abram as part of his covenant with Abram.

behold, my covenant is with you

The word “behold” here says that what comes next is certain: “my covenant is certainly with you.”

the father of a multitude of nations

“the father of a great number of nations” or “the one after whom many nations name themselves”

Translation Words - ULT

- my covenant
- the father of
- nations

ULT

4 " I, behold, my covenant with you is that you will be the father of a multitude of nations.

Genesis 17:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your name
- your name
- will...be called
- Abram
- Abraham
- the father of
- nations

ULT

⁵ So **your name** will not **be called Abram** any more, rather **your name** will be **Abraham**, because I have made you **the father of a multitude of nations**.

Genesis 17:6

I will make you exceedingly fruitful

“I will cause you to have very many descendants”

I will make nations of you

“I will cause your descendants to become nations”

kings will descend from you

“among your descendants there will be kings” or “some of your descendants will be kings”

Translation Words - ULT

- So I will make...fruitful
- into nations
- and kings

ULT

⁶ So I will make you very, very fruitful, and I will make you into nations, and kings will come from you.

Genesis 17:7

General Information:

God continues speaking to Abraham.

throughout their generations

“for each generation”

for an everlasting covenant

“as a covenant that will last forever”

to be God to you and to your descendants after you

“to be your God and your descendants’ God” or “covenant”

Translation Words - ULT

- And I will establish
- my covenant
- as an...covenant
- your offspring
- and to your offspring
- throughout their generations
- eternal
- God

ULT

⁷ And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations as an eternal covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you.

Genesis 17:8

Canaan, for an everlasting possession

“Canaan, as an everlasting possession” or “Canaan, to possess forever”

Translation Words - ULT

- and to your offspring
- the land of
- the land of (2)
- Canaan
- as an...possession
- eternal
- God

ULT

⁸ And I will give to you and to your offspring after you the land of your sojournings, all the land of Canaan, as an eternal possession, and I will be God to them.”

Genesis 17:9

As for you

God uses this phrase to introduce what Abram would have to do as part of God's covenant with him.

keep my covenant

"observe my covenant" or "honor my covenant" or "obey my covenant"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham
- you must keep
- my covenant
- and your offspring
- throughout their generations

ULT

⁹ Then God said to Abraham, "And you, you must keep my covenant, you and your offspring after you throughout their generations."

Genesis 17:10

This is my covenant

“This is a requirement of my covenant” or “This is part of my covenant.” This sentence introduces the part of the covenant that Abram must do.

Every male among you must be circumcised

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: “You must circumcise every male among you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Every male

This refers to human males.

Translation Words - ULT

- [my covenant](#)
- [your offspring](#)
- [you must keep](#)
- [must be circumcised](#)

ULT

10 This is [my covenant](#) between me and you and [your offspring](#) after you which [you must keep](#): Every male among you [must be circumcised](#).

Genesis 17:11

You must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskin

Some communities may prefer a less descriptive expression such as “You must be circumcised.” If your translation of “be circumcised” already includes the word for “foreskin”, you do not need to repeat it. This can be made active. Alternate translation: “You must circumcise every male among you” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

11 Indeed you must be circumcised in the flesh of your foreskins, and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you.

the sign of the covenant

“the sign that shows that the covenant exists”

the sign

Possible meanings are (1) “the sign” or (2) “a sign.” The first means that there was one sign, and the second means that there may have been more than one sign. Here the word “sign” means a reminder of something that God had promised.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Indeed you must be circumcised](#)
- [the flesh of](#)
- [the sign of](#)
- [the covenant](#)

Genesis 17:12

General Information:

God continues speaking to Abraham.

Every male

“Every human male”

throughout your people’s generations

“in every generation”

him who is bought with money

This refers to slaves. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “any male that you buy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [days](#)
- [must be circumcised](#)
- [throughout your generations](#)
- [those born in](#)
- [your house](#)
- [money](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [foreigners](#)
- [your offspring](#)

ULT

¹² So a son of eight [days must be circumcised](#), every male among you [throughout your generations](#), [those born in your house](#) and those bought with [money](#) from any [sons of foreigners](#), who are not [your offspring](#).

Genesis 17:13

my covenant will be in your flesh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will mark my covenant in your flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for an everlasting covenant

“as a permanent covenant.” Because it was marked in flesh, no one could easily erase it.

Translation Words - ULT

- They must...be circumcised
- whether those born in
- your house
- your money
- my covenant
- as an...covenant
- in your flesh
- eternal

ULT

13 They must surely be circumcised, whether those born in your house or those bought with your money. So my covenant will be in your flesh as an eternal covenant.

Genesis 17:14

uncircumcised male who is not circumcised

This can be stated in active form, and you may leave out words that will give wrong meaning in your language. Alternate translation: "male whom you have not circumcised" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Any uncircumcised male...foreskin will be cut off from his people

Possible meanings are (1) "I will cut off any uncircumcised male...foreskin from his people" or (2) "I want you to cut off any uncircumcised male...foreskin from his people."

cut off from his people

Possible meanings are (1) "killed" or (2) "sent away from the community." (See: [Euphemism](#))

He has broken my covenant

"He has not obeyed the rules of my covenant." This is the reason that he would be cut off from his people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And as for an uncircumcised](#)
- [is...circumcised](#)
- [the flesh of](#)
- [indeed...must be cut off](#)
- [person](#)
- [from his people](#)
- [my covenant](#)

ULT

14 [And as for an uncircumcised](#) male who is not [circumcised](#) in [the flesh of](#) his foreskin, [indeed](#) that [person must be cut off from his people](#); he has broken [my covenant](#)."

Genesis 17:15

As for Sarai

The words “As for” introduce the next person God talks about.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham
- Sarai
- Sarai
- Sarah
- do...call
- her name
- her name will be

ULT

15 Then God said to Abraham, " Sarai your wife, do not call her name Sarai, rather her name will be Sarah.

Genesis 17:16

I will give you a son by her

“I will make her bear a son for you”

she will become the mother of nations

“she will be the ancestor of many nations” or “her descendants will become nations”

Kings of peoples will come from her

“Kings of peoples will descend from her” or “Some of her descendants will be kings of peoples”

Translation Words - ULT

- And I will bless
- Indeed I will bless her
- a son
- nations
- kings of
- peoples

ULT

16 And I will bless her, and I will also give to you a son from her. Indeed I will bless her and she will become nations; kings of peoples will come from her.”

Genesis 17:17

said in his heart

“thought to himself” or “said to himself silently”

Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old?

Abraham used this rhetorical question because he did not believe that this could happen. Alternate translation: “Surely a man who is a hundred years old cannot father a child!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

How can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?

Again Abraham used a rhetorical question because he did not believe this could happen. The phrase “who is ninety years old” tells why Abraham did not believe that Sarah could bear a son. Alternate translation: “Sarah is ninety years old. Could she bear a son?” or “Sarah is ninety years old. Surely she could not bear a son!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- in his heart
- Sarah
- years
- will...bear a child

ULT

17 Then Abraham fell on his face, and he laughed and said in his heart, "Will a child be born to a son of 100 years? And will Sarah who is a daughter of 90 years bear a child?"

Genesis 17:18

Oh that Ishmael might live before you

“Please let Ishmael inherit the covenant that you have made with me” or “Perhaps Ishmael could receive your covenant blessing.” Abraham suggested something that he believed really could happen.

ULT

18 Then Abraham said to God, " If only Ishmael might live before your face!"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- God
- Ishmael
- might live

Genesis 17:19

No, but Sarah your wife will bear

God said this to correct Abraham's belief that Sarah could not have a son.

you must name him

The word "you" refers to Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Sarah
- eternal
- for his offspring
- will bear
- a son
- and you must call
- his name
- Isaac
- And I will establish
- my covenant
- as an...covenant

ULT

19 Then God said, "No, Sarah your wife will bear a son for you, and you must call his name Isaac. And I will establish my covenant with him as an eternal covenant for his offspring after him.

Genesis 17:20

As for Ishmael

The words “As for” show that God is switching from talking about the baby that would be born to talking about Ishmael.

Behold

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

will make him fruitful

This is an idiom that means “will cause him to have many children.” (See: [Idiom](#))

will multiply him abundantly

“I will cause him to have many descendants”

princes

“chiefs” or “rulers.” Ishmael’s twelve sons are different from the twelve sons of Jacob who were the fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And as for Ishmael](#)
- [I will bless](#)
- [and I will make...fruitful](#)
- [and will multiply](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [into a...nation](#)

ULT

20 " [And as for Ishmael](#), I have heard you. Behold, [I will bless](#) him [and I will make](#) him [fruitful and will multiply](#) him very greatly. He will father twelve [rulers](#), and I will make him [into a great nation](#).

Genesis 17:21

But my covenant I will establish with Isaac

God returns to talking about his covenant with Abraham and emphasizes that he would fulfill his promise with Isaac, not with Ishmael.

Translation Words - ULT

- my covenant
- I will establish
- Isaac
- Sarah
- will bear
- by...time
- in the...year

ULT

²¹ However, my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear for you by this time in the next year."

Genesis 17:22

When he had finished talking with him

“When God had finished talking with Abraham”

God went up from Abraham

“God left Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham

ULT

²² Then he finished speaking with him,
and God went up from Abraham.

Genesis 17:23

every male among the men of Abraham's household

"every human male in Abraham's household" or "every male person in Abraham's household." It refers to human males of all ages: babies, boys, and men.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Abraham
- Ishmael
- day
- God
- his son
- those born of
- his house
- s house
- his money
- and he circumcised
- the flesh of

ULT

²³ Then Abraham took Ishmael his son and all those born of his house and all those bought with his money, every male among the men of Abraham's house, and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day, just as God had told him.

Genesis 17:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And Abraham
- years
- when he was circumcised
- in the flesh of

ULT

²⁴ And Abraham was a son of 99 years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin,

Genesis 17:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and Ishmael
- his son
- years
- when he was circumcised
- the flesh of

ULT

²⁵ and Ishmael his son was a son of thirteen years when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

Genesis 17:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- day
- Abraham
- was circumcised
- and Ishmael
- his son

ULT

²⁶ On that very day Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son.

Genesis 17:27

including those born into the household and those bought with money from a foreigner

“This includes those who were born in his household and those he had bought from foreigners”

those bought with money from a foreigner

This refers to servants or slaves.

those bought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom he had bought” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his house](#)
- [his house](#)
- [those born of](#)
- [money](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [foreigners](#)
- [were circumcised](#)

ULT

²⁷ And all the males of [his house](#), [those born of his house](#) and those bought with [money](#) from [sons of foreigners](#), [were circumcised](#) with him.

Genesis 18

Genesis 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Three men

The three men who visited Abraham were probably angels. This is evident from Abraham's reaction to them. Also, it appears Abraham knew that he was speaking directly to Yahweh through these men. (See: [angel](#), [archangel](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Disbelief

When Sarah heard the news that she was going to have a baby, she laughed in disbelief because she was considered too old to have a baby. She also asked a rhetorical question in order to further show her disbelief. This would have been considered an insult to God. (See: [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

In his exchange with God, Abraham did not show any sign of unbelief. Instead, he is asking God for mercy because he trusted in the character of God. He does not question God's power to accomplish things as Sarah had done. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Sarah's age

It should be apparent that Sarah was physically no longer able to have children because of her age. There is a natural period in a woman's life when she stops being able to have children. The text assumes the reader understands that Sarah has already experienced this event. In English, this is called "menopause." (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 18:1

Mamre

This was the name of the man who owned the oak trees.

in the tent doorway

“at the opening of the tent” or “at the entrance of the tent”

heat of the day

“hottest time of day”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- by the terebinth trees of
- the tent
- the day

ULT

¹ Then Yahweh appeared to him by the terebinth trees of Mamre, and he was sitting at the entrance of the tent in the heat of the day.

Genesis 18:2

He looked up and, behold, he saw three men standing

“He looked up and saw, and behold, three men were standing”

behold, he saw

“he was surprised because he saw”

across from him

“nearby” or “there.” They were near him, but far enough away for him to run to them.

bowed

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- then he ran
- the tent
- Then he bowed
- to the ground

ULT

² And he lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing nearby him. And when he saw them, then he ran from the entrance of the tent to meet them. Then he bowed to the ground,

Genesis 18:3

Lord

This is a title of respect. Possible meanings are (1) Abraham knew that one of these men was God or (2) Abraham knew that these men came on behalf of God.

ULT

³ and he said, "[My lords](#), if I have found [favor](#) in your eyes, please do not pass by [your servant](#)."

if I have found favor in your sight

Here "found favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that the Lord is pleased with him, and "your sight" is a metaphor representing the Lord's evaluation. Alternate translation: "if you have evaluated me and approve" or "if you are pleased with me" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

in your sight

Abraham is speaking to one of the men. (See: [Forms of You](#))

do not pass by

"please do not keep on going past"

your servant

"me." Abraham refers to himself this way in order to show respect to his guest.

Translation Words - ULT

- [My lords](#)
- [favor](#)
- [your servant](#)

Genesis 18:4

Let a little water be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let me bring you some water” or “My servant will bring you some water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴ Please let a little [water](#) be brought, [then you can wash](#) your feet, [and rest yourselves](#) under the tree.

a little water

“some water.” Saying “little” was a polite way of showing generosity. Abraham would give them more than enough water.

wash your feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances.

Translation Words - ULT

- [water](#)
- [then you can wash](#)
- [and rest yourselves](#)

Genesis 18:5

a little food

“some food.” Saying “little” was a polite way of showing generosity. Abraham would give them more than enough food.

your...you

Abraham speaks to all three of the men, so “you” and “your” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [your servant](#)

ULT

⁵ And I will bring a morsel of [bread](#), then you can refresh your hearts before you go away, since you have come to [your servant](#).” And they said, “ Very well, do as you have said.”

Genesis 18:6

three seahs

about 22 liters (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

bread

This bread was probably cooked quickly on a hot stone. It may have been flat or round like small loaves or rolls.

ULT

⁶ Then [Abraham](#) hurried [into the tent](#) to [Sarah](#) and said, "Hurry! Knead three seahs of fine flour, and make loaves."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [into the tent](#)
- [Sarah](#)

Genesis 18:7

he hurried

“the servant hurried”

to prepare it

“to cut it up and roast it”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- ran
- the herd
- a...calf
- and choice
- a servant

ULT

⁷ Then Abraham ran to the herd and selected a tender and choice calf. Then he gave it to a servant and he hurried to prepare it.

Genesis 18:8

curds

This refers to the solid part of fermented milk. It may have been yogurt or cheese.

the calf that had been prepared

“the roasted calf”

before them

“before the three visitors”

Translation Words - ULT

- and the calf

ULT

⁸ Then he took curds and milk and the calf that he had prepared, and he set it before them. Then he stood by them under the tree and they ate.

Genesis 18:9

They said to him

“Then they said to Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- in the tent

ULT

⁹ Then they said to him, " Where is Sarah your wife?" And he said, "Behold, in the tent."

Genesis 18:10

He said, “I will certainly return to you

The word “He” refers to the man whom Abraham called “Lord” in [Genesis 18:3](#).

in the springtime

“when this same season comes next year” or “about this time next year”

see

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

in the tent doorway

“at the opening of the tent” or “at the entrance of the tent”

Translation Words - ULT

- [I will...return](#)
- [Sarah will have](#)
- [Now Sarah](#)
- [a son](#)
- [the tent](#)

ULT

10 Then he said, " [I will](#) surely [return](#) to you at the time of life, and behold your wife [Sarah will have a son.](#)" [Now Sarah](#) was listening at the entrance of [the tent](#), and it was behind him.

Genesis 18:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Abraham](#)
- [and Sarah](#)
- [with Sarah](#)

ULT

¹¹ [And Abraham and Sarah](#) were old, advanced in days; the way of women had ceased to be [with Sarah](#).

Genesis 18:12

After I am worn-out and my master is old, will I now have this pleasure?

You may want to add "of having a baby." Sarah used this rhetorical question because she did not believe that she could have a child. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe that I will experience the joy of having a child. My master is also too old" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹² So Sarah laughed within herself and said, "After I am worn out, will I have pleasure? And my lord is old!"

my master is old

This means "since my husband is also old."

my master

This is a title of respect that Sarah gave to her husband Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- pleasure
- And my lord

Genesis 18:13

Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child, when I am old'?

God used this rhetorical question to show that he knew what Sarah was thinking and that he was not pleased with it. He repeats Sarah's rhetorical question ([Genesis 18:12](#)) using different words. Alternate translation: "Sarah was wrong to laugh and say, 'I will not bear a child because I am too old!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹³ But Yahweh said to Abraham, " Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Will I really bear a child when I am old?'

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Abraham
- Sarah
- Will I...bear a child

Genesis 18:14

Is anything too hard for Yahweh?

“Is there anything that Yahweh cannot do?” Yahweh speaks of himself as if he were speaking of someone else to remind Abraham that he, Yahweh, is great and can do anything. Alternate translation: “There is nothing that I, Yahweh, cannot do!” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

14 Is anything [too hard for Yahweh](#)? [At the appointed time I will return](#) to you, at the time of life, [and Sarah will have a son.](#)”

At the time appointed by me, in the spring

“At the time I have appointed, which is in the spring”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Is...too hard](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)
- [At the appointed time](#)
- [I will return](#)
- [and Sarah will have](#)
- [a son](#)

Genesis 18:15

Then Sarah denied it and said

"The Sarah denied it by saying"

He replied

"Yahweh replied"

No, you did laugh

"Yes, you did laugh." This means "No, that is not true; you did in fact laugh."

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- she was afraid

ULT

¹⁵ But Sarah denied it by saying, "I did not laugh," because she was afraid. But he said, " No, but you did laugh. "

Genesis 18:16

to see them on their way

“to send them on their way” or “to say ‘Farewell’ to them.” It was polite to go some distance with guests as they were leaving.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...got up
- Sodom
- and Abraham
- to send them off

ULT

16 Then the men **got up** from there and looked down toward **Sodom**, and **Abraham** went with them **to send them off**.

Genesis 18:17

Should I hide from Abraham what I am about to do

God used this rhetorical question to say that he was going to talk to Abraham about something very important and that it was best for him to do so. Alternate translation: "I should not and will not hide from Abraham what I am about to do" or "I should and will tell Abraham what I am about to do" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁷ And Yahweh said, " Should I hide from Abraham what I am doing?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Yahweh](#)
- [from Abraham](#)

Genesis 18:18

The rhetorical question that begins with the words “Should I hide” in verse 17 ends here. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

since Abraham...in him?

The rhetorical question that begins with the words “Should I hide” in verse 17 ends here. God uses this rhetorical question to say that he was going to talk to Abraham about something very important and that it was best for him to do so. “I should not and will not hide...since Abraham in him.” or “I should and will tell...since Abraham in him” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

18 And Abraham will surely become a great and mighty nation, and in him all the nations of the earth will be blessed.

since...him?

“This is because...him”

all the nations of the earth will be blessed in him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bless all the nations of the earth through Abraham” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will be blessed in him

“will be blessed because of Abraham” or “will be blessed because I have blessed Abraham.” For translating “in him” see how you translated “through you” in [Genesis 12:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- And Abraham
- and mighty
- a...nation
- the nations of
- the earth
- and...will be blessed

Genesis 18:19

that he may instruct

“that he will direct” or “so that he will command”

to keep the way of Yahweh...Yahweh may bring...he has said

Yahweh is speaking about himself as if he were another person.
Alternate translation: “to obey what I, Yahweh, require...I, Yahweh, may bring...I have said” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

to keep the way of Yahweh

“to obey the commands of Yahweh”

to do righteousness and justice

“by doing righteousness and justice.” This tells how to keep the way of Yahweh.

so that Yahweh may bring upon Abraham what he has said to him

“so that Yahweh may bless Abraham just as he said he would.” This refers to the covenant promise to bless Abraham and make him a great nation.

Translation Words - ULT

- [I have known him](#)
- [he will command](#)
- [his children](#)
- [his house](#)
- [and they will keep](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [righteousness](#)
- [and justice](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

19 For [I have known him](#) so that [he will command his children](#) and [his house](#) after him, [and they will keep](#) the way of [Yahweh](#) by doing [righteousness and justice](#), so that [Yahweh](#) will bring about for [Abraham](#) what he said to him.”

Genesis 18:20

the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is so great

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “outcry” is expressed as the verb “accuse.” Alternate translation: “so many people have been accusing the people of Sodom and Gomorrah of doing evil things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

their sin is so serious

“they have sinned so much”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the outcry of
- Sodom
- and Gomorrah
- and...their sin

ULT

²⁰ Then Yahweh said, "Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great and because their sin is very grievous,

Genesis 18:21

I will now go down there

"I will now go down to Sodom and Gomorrah"

go down there and see

"go down there to find out" or "go down there to decide"

see the outcry...that has come to me

Yahweh speaks as if he knew about this matter because he had heard the cries and accusations coming from the people who had suffered. This can be reworded so that the abstract noun "outcry" is expressed as the verb "accuse." Alternate translation: "as wicked as those who are accusing them say that they are" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

If not

"If they are not as wicked as the outcry suggests"

Translation Words - ULT

- [whether...according to its outcry](#)
- [I will know](#)

ULT

²¹ I will go down now and see [whether](#) they have done altogether [according to its outcry](#) that has come to me. And if not, [I will know](#)."

Genesis 18:22

turned from there

“went out from Abraham’s camp”

Abraham remained standing before Yahweh

“Abraham and Yahweh remained together”

Translation Words - ULT

- toward Sodom
- and Abraham
- Yahweh

ULT

²² Then the men turned away from there and went toward Sodom, and Abraham was still standing before Yahweh.

Genesis 18:23

approached and said

“approached Yahweh and said” or “stepped closer to Yahweh and said”

sweep away

Abraham speaks of destroying people as if it were sweeping dirt with a broom. Alternate translation: “destroy”
(See: [Metaphor](#))

the righteous with the wicked

“the righteous people with the wicked people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Will you...sweep away](#)
- [the righteous](#)
- [the wicked](#)

ULT

²³ Then [Abraham](#) approached him and said, " [Will you](#) really [sweep away the righteous](#) with [the wicked](#)?"

Genesis 18:24

General Information:

Abraham continues talking to Yahweh.

Perhaps there are

“Suppose there are”

Will you sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

Abraham was hoping that Yahweh would say, “I will not sweep it away.” Alternate translation: “I think you would not sweep it away. Instead, you would spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

sweep it away

“destroy it.” Abraham speaks of destroying people as if it were sweeping dirt with a broom. Alternate translation: “destroy the people who live there” (See: [Metaphor](#))

not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous that are there?

Abraham was hoping that God would say “I will spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous people there.”

spare the place

“let the people live”

for the sake of

“because of”

Translation Words - ULT

- [righteous](#)
- [righteous](#)
- [Will you...sweep away](#)
- [and not](#)

ULT

²⁴ Suppose there are 50 [righteous](#) in the city? [Will you](#) really [sweep away and not](#) spare the place for the sake of the 50 [righteous](#) who are in it?

Genesis 18:25

Far be it from you to do such a thing

Here “Far be it from you” is an idiom that means the person should never do something like that. Alternate translation: “I would never want you to do something like that” or “You should not want to do something like that” (See: [Idiom](#))

such a thing, killing

“such a thing as killing” or “such a thing, that is, killing”

the righteous should be treated the same as the wicked

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you should treat the righteous the same way you treat the wicked” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Will not the Judge of all the earth do what is just?

Abraham used this rhetorical question to say what he expected God to do. Alternate translation: “The Judge of all the earth will certainly do what is just!” or “Since you are the Judge of all the earth, you will surely do what is right!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Judge

God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.

Translation Words - ULT

- [killing](#)
- [the righteous](#)
- [the righteous](#)
- [the wicked](#)
- [like the wicked](#)
- [Will...the One who judges](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [justice](#)

ULT

²⁵ Far be it from you to do something like that, [killing the righteous](#) with [the wicked](#), so that [the righteous](#) are [like the wicked](#)! Far be it from you! Will not [the One who judges](#) all [the earth](#) do [justice](#)?”

Genesis 18:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- in Sodom
- righteous
- then I will spare

ULT

²⁶ Then Yahweh said, "If I find in Sodom 50 righteous in the city, then I will spare the whole place for their sake."

Genesis 18:27

Look

The phrase "Look" here draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

I have undertaken to speak

"Pardon me for being so bold as to speak to you" or "Excuse me for daring to speak"

to my Lord

Abraham shows his respect to Yahweh by speaking to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else. Alternate translation: "to you, my Lord" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

only dust and ashes

This metaphor describes Abraham as a human being, who will die and whose body will turn into to dust and ashes. Alternate translation: "only a mortal man" or "as unimportant as dust and ashes" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [my Lord](#)
- [and ashes](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [Abraham](#) spoke up and said, "Behold please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to [my Lord](#), although I am dust [and ashes](#)."

Genesis 18:28

five less than fifty righteous

“only forty-five righteous people”

for lack of five

“if there are five fewer righteous people”

I will not destroy it

“I will not destroy Sodom”

Translation Words - ULT

- the...righteous
- Will you destroy
- I will...destroy it

ULT

²⁸ Suppose the 50 **righteous** lack five? **Will you destroy** the whole city because of five?” And he said, “**I will not destroy it**, if I find 45 there.”

Genesis 18:29

He spoke to him

"Abraham spoke to Yahweh"

if there are forty found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "if you find forty righteous people there" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

for the forty's sake

"for the sake of the forty" or "if I find forty there." You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "for the sake of the forty righteous people" or "if I find forty righteous people there" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

He replied

"Yahweh answered"

I will not do it for the forty's sake

"I will not destroy the cities if I find forty righteous people there"

ULT

²⁹ Then he continued again to speak to him and said, " Suppose 40 are found there?" And he said, "I will not do it for the sake of the 40."

Genesis 18:30

thirty will be found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "you will find thirty righteous people there" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my Lord](#)

ULT

³⁰ Then he said, " Please do not let [my Lord](#) be angry, and let me speak: Suppose 30 are found there?" And he said, "I will not do it, if I find 30 there."

Genesis 18:31

Look

The phrase "Look" here draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

I have undertaken to speak

"Pardon me for being so bold as to speak to you" or "Excuse me for daring to speak." See how this is translated in [Genesis 18:27](#).

twenty will be found there

This can be translated in active form. You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "you will find twenty righteous people there" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

for the twenty's sake

"for the sake of the twenty" or "if I find twenty there." You may have to fill in the ellipsis, "righteous people." Alternate translation: "for the sake of the twenty righteous people" or "if I find twenty righteous people there" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- my Lord
- I will...destroy it

ULT

³¹ Then he said, " Behold please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to [my Lord](#): Suppose 20 are found there?" And he said, "[I will](#) not [destroy it](#) for the sake of the 20."

Genesis 18:32

Perhaps ten will be found there

"Perhaps you will find ten righteous people there"

Perhaps ten

"Perhaps ten righteous people" or "ten good people"

Then he said

"And Yahweh answered"

for the ten's sake

"if I find ten righteous people there"

Translation Words - ULT

- my Lord
- I will...destroy it

ULT

³² Then he said, " Please do not let my Lord be angry, and let me speak just once more: Suppose ten are found there?" And he said, "I will not destroy it for the sake of the ten."

Genesis 18:33

Yahweh went on his way

Here “went on his way” is an idiom that means he left, or he continued his journey. Yahweh appeared to Abraham in human form as a traveler. Alternate translation: “Yahweh departed” or “Yahweh continued on his journey” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [and Abraham](#)
- [returned](#)

ULT

³³ Then [Yahweh](#) left as soon as he finished speaking to [Abraham, and Abraham returned](#) to his place.

Genesis 19

Genesis 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The evil desires of the Sodomites

The men of Sodom desired to forcibly have sexual relations with the angels who came to the city appearing as men. Such action is known as “rape.” Their desire was viewed as especially evil because Lot was obligated to protect his guests at all costs, even that of sacrificing his own children for his guests. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

Hospitality

Hospitality, or being kind to a visitor, was very important in the Ancient Near East. Lot showed his guests loyalty by doing his utmost to protect them from the people of Sodom.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Contrasts

It is probable that Abraham’s faith and actions in chapter 18 are intended to contrast with the actions of the worldly Sodomites. (See: [faith](#))

Genesis 19:1

The two angels

The two men who have gone to Sodom ([Genesis 18:22](#)) are really angels.

the gate of Sodom

“the entrance to the city of Sodom.” The city had a wall around it, and people had to go through a gate to get into it. This was a very important place in a city. Important people often spent time there.

bowed down with his face to the ground

He put his knees on the ground then touched his forehead and nose to the ground.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...angels](#)
- [to Sodom](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [and Lot](#)
- [Lot](#)
- [at the gate of](#)
- [and he got up](#)
- [and bowed](#)
- [to the ground](#)

ULT

¹ Then the two [angels](#) came [to Sodom](#) in the evening, [and Lot](#) was sitting [at the gate of Sodom](#). And [Lot](#) saw them, [and he got up](#) to meet them [and bowed](#) his face [to the ground](#).

Genesis 19:2

my masters

This was a term of respect Lot used for the angels.

I urge you to turn aside into your servant's house

"Please come and stay in your servant's house"

your servant's house

Lot refers to himself as their servant in order to show them respect. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

wash your feet

People liked to wash their feet after traveling.

rise up early

"wake up early"

we will spend the night

When the two angels said this, they were referring only to themselves, not to Lot. The two of them planned to spend the night in the square. Some languages would use the exclusive form of "we" here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

town square

This is a public, outdoor place in the town.

Translation Words - ULT

- [my lords](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [your servant](#)
- [and wash](#)

ULT

² Then he said, "Behold please, [my lords](#). Please turn aside to [the house of your servant](#) and spend the night, [and wash](#) your feet, then you can get up early and go on your way." But they said, " No, rather we will spend the night in the street."

Genesis 19:3

they went with him

“they turned and went with him”

Translation Words - ULT

- his house
- a feast
- and...unleavened bread

ULT

³ But he urged them strongly, so that they turned aside with him and entered into his house. Then he prepared a feast for them, and he baked unleavened bread, and they ate.

Genesis 19:4

before they lay down

“before the people in Lot’s house lay down to go to sleep”

the men of the city, the men of Sodom

“the men of the city, that is, the men of Sodom” or just “the men of the city of Sodom”

the house

“Lot’s house”

both young and old

“from the youngest to the oldest.” This means “men of all ages” and refers to the men of Sodom who were surrounding Lot’s house.

Translation Words - ULT

- Sodom
- the house
- the people

ULT

⁴ Before they lay down, then the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, from the young and to the old, all the people from the edges.

Genesis 19:5

that came in to you

“that went into your house”

we may know them

These words literally mean “we may know who they are,” but the men meant them as a euphemism for “we may have sexual relations with them” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then they called](#)
- [Lot](#)
- [so that we can know](#)

ULT

⁵ [Then they called](#) to [Lot](#) and said to him, “Where are the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us [so that we can know](#) them!”

Genesis 19:6

after himself

“behind him” or “after he went through”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lot

ULT

⁶ Then Lot went out to them at the entrance and shut the door behind him,

Genesis 19:7

I beg you, my brothers

"I plead with you, my brothers"

my brothers

Lot spoke in a friendly way to the men of the city hoping that they would listen to him. Alternate translation: "my friends" (See: [Idiom](#))

do not act so wickedly

"do not do something so wicked" or "do not do such a wicked thing"

Translation Words - ULT

- [my brothers](#)
- [do evil](#)

ULT

⁷ and he said, " Please, [my brothers](#), do not [do evil](#)!

Genesis 19:8

Look

“Pay attention” or “Look here”

who have not known any man

This is a polite way of saying that the daughters had not had sexual relations with any man. You may need to use another euphemism in your language. See how you translated similar words in [Genesis 4:1](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

whatever is good in your eyes

“whatever you desire” or “whatever you think is right”

under the shadow of my roof

The two men were guests in Lot’s home, so he needed to protect them. The word “roof” is a synecdoche for the whole house and a metaphor for Lot protecting them. Alternate translation: “into my house, and God expects me to protect them” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [have...known](#)
- [under the shadow of](#)

ULT

⁸ Behold please, I have two daughters who have not [known](#) a man. Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them as is good in your eyes. But do not do anything to these men, because for that reason they have come [under the shadow of](#) my rafters.”

Genesis 19:9

Stand back!

“Step aside!” or “Get out of our way!”

This one came here to live as a foreigner

“This one came here as an outsider” or “This foreigner came to live here”

This one

“Lot.” The men are speaking to each other. If this would be unclear in your language, you may have the men speak to Lot here, as in UST.

and now

The speaker would not expect a foreigner to judge the people of that land. Alternate translation: “but even though he has no good reason to” (See: [Idiom](#))

he has become our judge

Here “has become our judge” is an idiom that means Lot is acting as if he can tell the men what actions are right or wrong. Alternate translation: “he acts as if he has the authority to tell us what is right and what is wrong” (See: [Idiom](#))

Now we

“Because you are telling us that what we are doing is wrong, we”

we will deal worse with you than with them

The men are angry that Lot said, “Do not act so wickedly” ([Genesis 19:7](#)), so they are threatening to act more wickedly than Lot had feared at first. Alternate translation: “we will act more wickedly with you than we will with them” (See: [Idiom](#))

They pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and came near to break down the door

Possible meanings are (1) “They kept coming closer to the man, to Lot, until they were close enough to break down the door” or (2) they physically pushed Lot up against the wall or door of the house and were about to break the door down.

the man...Lot

This is two ways of referring to Lot.

ULT

⁹ But they said, "Get back!" Then they said, " This one came to sojourn, and now [he is judging us!](#) [We will treat](#) you [worse](#) than them!" Then they pressed hard against the man [Lot](#) and came near to break down the door.

Translation Words - ULT

- and...he is judging us
- We will treat...worse
- Lot

Genesis 19:10

But the men

“But Lot’s two guests” or “But the two angels”

the men reached out their hands and brought...them and shut

Your language may need to add that the men opened the door first. Alternate translation: “the men opened the door far enough so they could reach out their hands and pull...them, and then they shut” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ But the men reached out [their hands](#) and brought [Lot](#) into [the house](#) to them and shut the door.

Translation Words - ULT

- [their hands](#)
- [Lot](#)
- [the house](#)

Genesis 19:11

Lot's visitors struck with blindness the men

The phrase "struck with blindness" is a metaphor; the visitors did not physically hit the men. Alternate translation: "Lot's visitors blinded the men" or "they took away their sight" (See: [Metaphor](#))

both young and old

"men of all ages." This merism emphasizes that the visitors blinded all the men. This could indicate social standing rather than age. Alternate translation: "both small and great" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house](#)

ULT

11 Then they struck the men who were at the entrance of [the house](#) with blindness, from the small and to the great, so that they became weary trying to find the door.

Genesis 19:12

Then the men said

“Then the two men said” or “Then the angels said”

Do you have anyone else here?

“Are there any other members of your family in the city?” or “Do you have any other family members in this place?”

whoever you have in the city

“any other members of your family living in this city”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lot
- and your sons

ULT

¹² Then the men said to Lot, "Who else is here with you? Sons-in-law and your sons and your daughters and anyone who is with you in the city, take them out from this place,

Genesis 19:13

we are about to destroy

The word “we” here is exclusive. Only the two angels would destroy the city; Lot would not destroy it. If your language has an exclusive form of “we,” use it here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

the accusations against it before Yahweh have become so loud

This can be reworded so that the abstract noun “accusations” is expressed as a verb. See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 18:20](#). Alternate translation: “so many people have been telling Yahweh that the people of this city are doing evil things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are destroying](#)
- [their outcry](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is great](#)
- [so...has sent us](#)

ULT

¹³ because we [are destroying](#) this place.
For [their outcry](#) before [Yahweh is great](#),
so [Yahweh has sent us](#) to destroy it.”

Genesis 19:14

Lot went out

“So Lot left the house”

his sons-in-law, the men who had promised to marry his daughters

The phrase “the men who had promised to marry his daughters” explains what “sons-in-law” means here. Alternate translation: “the men who were going to marry his daughters” or “his daughters’ fiancés” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Lot](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is destroying](#)

ULT

14 Then [Lot](#) went out and spoke to his sons-in-law who were to take his daughters, and he said, " [Get up](#), get out of this place, because [Yahweh is destroying](#) the city!" But it seemed like he was joking in the eyes of his sons-in-law.

Genesis 19:15

When the morning dawned

"Just before the sun came up"

Get going

"Go now"

ULT

¹⁵ Then when the dawn came, [the angels](#) urged [Lot](#) by saying, "[Get up](#), take your wife and your two daughters who are here, so that [you are](#) not [swept away](#) in the punishment of the city."

you are not swept away in the punishment of the city

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so Yahweh does not also destroy you when he punishes the people of this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

not swept away in the punishment

God destroying the people of the city is spoken of as if a person were sweeping away dust. (See: [Metaphor](#))

of the city

Here "city" stands for the people. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angels](#)
- [Lot](#)
- [Get up](#)
- [you are...swept away](#)

Genesis 19:16

But he lingered

“But Lot hesitated” or “But Lot did not start to leave”

So the men grabbed

“So the two men grabbed” or “So the angels grabbed”

was merciful to him

“had compassion on Lot.” Yahweh is described as being “merciful” because he was sparing the lives of Lot and his family instead of destroying them when he destroyed the people of Sodom for the wrong they had done.

Translation Words - ULT

- so...grabbed
- his hand
- and the hand of
- and the hands of
- Yahweh

ULT

16 But he lingered, so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hands of his two daughters, because of Yahweh's mercy for him, and brought him out and set him outside the city.

Genesis 19:17

When they had brought them out

“When the two men had brought Lot’s family out”

Run for your lives!

This is a way of telling them to run so that they do not die. Alternate translation: “Run away and save your lives!” (See: [Idiom](#))

Do not look back

The phrase “at the city” is understood. Alternate translation: “Do not look back at the city” or “Do not look back at Sodom” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

on the plain

This means the plain of the Jordan River. This refers to the general region of the Jordan River.

so you are not swept away

It is understood that they would swept away with the people of the city. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “or else God will destroy you along with the people of the city” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

not swept away

God destroying the people of the city is spoken of as if a person were sweeping away dust. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your life](#)
- [you are...swept away](#)

ULT

17 And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside, then he said, " Flee for [your life!](#) Do not look behind you, and do not stop anywhere in the plain! Escape to the mountains, so that [you are not swept away!](#)"

Genesis 19:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lot
- my lords

ULT

¹⁸ Then Lot said to them, "Please, no, my lords!"

Genesis 19:19

Your servant has found favor in your eyes

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “You have been pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Your servant has

Lot was showing respect by referring to himself as “your servant.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant, have” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

you have shown me great kindness in saving my life

The abstract noun “kindness” can be stated as “kind.” Alternate translation: “you have been very kind to me by saving my life” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

I cannot escape to the mountains, because the disaster will overtake me, and I will die

Being unable to get far enough away from Sodom when God destroys the city is spoken of as if “disaster” is a person that will chase and catch up with Lot. Alternate translation: “My family and I will certainly die when God destroys the people of Sodom, because the mountains are too far away for us to get there safely” (See: [Personification](#))

my life...I cannot escape...overtake me, and I will die

It is implied that Lot’s family would die along with him. Alternate translation: “our lives...we cannot escape...overtake us, and we will die” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your servant](#)
- [favor](#)
- [my life](#)
- [the disaster](#)
- [and I will die](#)

ULT

19 Behold please, [your servant](#) has found [favor](#) in your eyes, and you have magnified your mercy that you have shown to me by saving [my life](#). But I am not able to escape to the mountains because [the disaster](#) will overtake me [and I will die](#).

Genesis 19:20

let me escape there (is it not a little one?), and my life will be saved

Lot used this rhetorical question to get the angels to notice that the city really is a small one. Alternate translation: “let me escape there. You can see how small it is. If you let us go there we will live” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁰ Behold please, that town there is near to flee to, and it is a little one. Please let me escape there. Isn't it a little one? Then my life **will live.**”

let me escape there

Lot's full request can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “instead of destroying that city, let me escape there” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my life will be saved

It is implied that the lives of Lot's family will be saved along with his. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that we will live” or “so that we will survive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then...will live](#)

Genesis 19:21

I am granting this request also

"I will do what you have asked"

ULT

²¹ Then he said to him, " Behold, I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing, so I will not overthrow the town that you are talking about.

Genesis 19:22

cannot do anything

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “cannot destroy the other cities” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Zoar

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name Zoar sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘little.’ Lot called this town ‘little’ in Genesis 19:20.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Zoar](#)

ULT

²² Hurry up, escape there, because I am not able to do a thing until you go there.” For that reason [he called the name of](#) the town [Zoar](#).

Genesis 19:23

The sun had risen upon the earth

“The sun had risen over the earth.” The phrase “upon the earth” can be left implicit as it is in the UST where it is not translated. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²³ The sun rose over [the land](#) and Lot came [to Zoar](#).

when Lot reached Zoar

It is implied that Lot’s family is with him. Alternate translation: “when Lot and his family arrived at Zoar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [and Lot](#)
- [to Zoar](#)

Genesis 19:24

Yahweh rained down upon Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from Yahweh out of the sky

The phrase “from Yahweh” stands for God’s power to cause the sulfur and fire to fall on the city. Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused sulfur and fire to fall from the sky onto Sodom and Gomorrah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²⁴ Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire from Yahweh out of the heavens,

sulfur and fire

These two words are used together to describe one object. Alternate translation: “burning sulfur” or “fiery rain” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sodom](#)
- [Gomorrah](#)
- [and fire](#)
- [the heavens](#)

Genesis 19:25

those cities

This refers primarily to Sodom and Gomorrah, but also to three other towns.

the inhabitants of the cities

“the people who lived in the cities”

ULT

²⁵ and he overthrew those cities and the entire plain, including all the inhabitants of the cities and the vegetation of the ground.

Genesis 19:26

she became a pillar of salt

“she became like a statue of salt” or “her body became like a tall stone of salt.” Because she disobeyed the angel who told them not to look back at the city, God caused her to become something like a statue made out of rock salt.

Translation Words - ULT

- a pillar of

ULT

²⁶ But his wife from behind him looked back and she became a pillar of salt.

Genesis 19:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁷ Abraham got up early in the morning and went to the place where he had stood before Yahweh,

Genesis 19:28

behold

The word “behold” draws attention to the surprising information that follows.

like the smoke of a furnace

This shows that it was a very large amount of smoke. Alternate translation: “like the smoke from a very large fire” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sodom](#)
- [and Gomorrah](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

28 and he looked down toward [Sodom and Gomorrah](#) and toward all the surface of [the land of](#) the plain, and he looked and behold, smoke was rising from [the land](#) like smoke from a furnace.

Genesis 19:29

General Information:

Verse 29 is a summary of this chapter.

God called Abraham to mind

This tells why God rescued Lot. To “call to mind” is a way of saying “remember.” This does not imply that God forgot about Abraham. It means he considered Abraham and had mercy on him. Alternate translation: “God thought about Abraham and had mercy on him” (See: [Idiom](#))

out of the midst of the destruction

“away from the destruction” or “away from danger”

Translation Words - ULT

- [when...destroyed](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [and he sent](#)
- [Lot](#)
- [Lot](#)

ULT

²⁹ So it was [when God destroyed](#) the cities of the plain that [God remembered Abraham, and he sent Lot](#) out of the middle of the overthrow when he overthrew the cities which [Lot](#) had lived in.

Genesis 19:30

Lot went up from Zoar to live in the mountains

The phrase “went up from” is used because Lot went to a higher elevation in the mountains.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lot
- from Zoar
- in Zoar
- he was afraid

ULT

³⁰ Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountains, and his two daughters were with him, because he was afraid to settle in Zoar. So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.

Genesis 19:31

The firstborn...the younger

Here “firstborn” and “younger” are nominal adjectives that refer to Lot’s two daughters according to their birth order. Alternate translation: “Lot’s first daughter...Lot’s last daughter” or “The older daughter...the younger daughter” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

to lie with us

These words are a euphemism for sexual relations. (See: [Euphemism](#))

according to the way of all the world

Here “the world” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “as people everywhere do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Our father](#)
- [on the earth](#)
- [the earth](#)

ULT

³¹ Then the firstborn said to the younger, "Our father is old and there is not a man [on the earth](#) to come to us as is the way of all [the earth](#)."

Genesis 19:32

drink wine

It can be made explicit that their goal was to get him drunk.
Alternate translation: “drink wine until he gets drunk” or “get drunk with wine” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

we will lie with him

To “lie with” someone is a euphemism for having sexual relations with that person. Alternate translation: “we will have sexual relations with him” (See: [Euphemism](#))

so that we may extend our father’s line

This speaks about giving Lot descendants as if his family were a line that they are making longer. Alternate translation: “so that we can bear children who will be our father’s descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [our father](#)
- [through our father](#)
- [wine](#)
- [then let us lie](#)
- [so that we will give life](#)
- [to offspring](#)

ULT

³² Come on, let us get [our father](#) to drink [wine](#), then let us lie with him, so that we will give life to offspring through our father.”

Genesis 19:33

lay with her father

This is probably a euphemism for sexual activity. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with her father" (See: [Euphemism](#))

when she lay down

Possible meanings are (1) these words are literal, a complement to "when she got up," or (2) they are a euphemism for sexual relations. Alternate translation: "when she had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their father](#)
- [her father](#)
- [wine](#)
- [and lay](#)
- [he did...know](#)
- [or when she got up](#)

ULT

³³ So they got [their father](#) to drink [wine](#) on that night, and the firstborn went [and lay](#) with [her father](#), but [he did](#) not [know](#) when she lay down [or when she got up](#).

Genesis 19:34

Let us make him drink wine...father's line

See how you translated these phrases in [Genesis 19:32](#).

drink wine

It can be made explicit that their goal was to get him drunk.
Alternate translation: "drink wine until he gets drunk" or "get drunk with wine" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that we may extend our father's line

This speaks about giving Lot descendants as if his family were a line that they are making longer. Alternate translation: "so that we can bear children who will be our father's descendants" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I lay
- lie
- my father
- through our father
- wine
- so that we will give life
- to offspring

ULT

³⁴ Then it happened on the next day that the firstborn said to the younger, "Behold, last night I lay with my father. Let us get him to drink wine again tonight, then you go lie with him, so that we will give life to offspring through our father."

Genesis 19:35

So they made...or when she got up

See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 19:33](#).

lay with him

This is probably a euphemism for sexual activity. Alternate translation: "had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

when she lay down

Possible meanings are (1) these words are literal, a complement to "when she got up," or (2) they are a euphemism for sexual relations. See how these words are translated in [Genesis 19:33](#). Alternate translation: "when she had sexual relations with him" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their father](#)
- [wine](#)
- [Then...went](#)
- [or when she got up](#)
- [and lay](#)
- [he did...know](#)

ULT

³⁵ So on that night also they got [their father](#) to drink [wine](#). Then the younger [went and lay](#) with him, but [he did](#) not [know](#) when she lay down [or when she got up](#).

Genesis 19:36

were pregnant by their father

“became pregnant by their father” or “conceived children with their father”

Translation Words - ULT

- So...became pregnant
- Lot
- from their father

ULT

³⁶ So both of the daughters of Lot became pregnant from their father.

Genesis 19:37

He became

“He is”

the Moabites of today

“the Moab people who are now living”

of today

The word “today” refers to the time when the author of Genesis was living. The author was born and wrote this many years after Lot’s family lived and died.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...bore
- a son
- and she called
- his name
- Moab
- the Moabites
- is the father of
- this day

ULT

³⁷ Then the firstborn bore a son, and she called his name Moab. He is the father of the Moabites to this day.

Genesis 19:38

Ben-Ammi

This is a male name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the people of Ammon

“the descendants of Ammon” or “the Ammon people”

Translation Words - ULT

- bore
- a son
- and she called
- his name
- is the father of
- Ammon
- this day

ULT

³⁸ Then the younger, she also bore a son, and she called his name Ben-Ammi. He is the father of the sons of Ammon to this day.

Genesis 20

Genesis 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“She is my sister”

Abraham was afraid the people of Gerar would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Sarah to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Abraham’s sister, they would have shown favor to him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor, favorable, favoritism](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Irony

Abraham believed that the people of Gerar did not fear Yahweh, but when confronted by Yahweh, the king showed that he feared Yahweh. Instead, it was Abraham who did not show any fear of Yahweh when he sinned. This is irony. (See: [fear, afraid, frighten](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Genesis 20:1

Shur

This is a desert region on the eastern border of Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [to the land of](#)
- [the Negev](#)
- [Kadesh](#)
- [in Gerar](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Abraham](#) traveled from there [to the land of the Negev](#), and he settled between [Kadesh](#) and Shur, and sojourned [in Gerar](#).

Genesis 20:2

sent for Sarah and took her

“made his men go get Sarah and bring her to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Sarah
- Sarah
- my sister
- So...sent for
- Abimelech
- the king of
- Gerar

ULT

² And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, "She is my sister." So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her.

Genesis 20:3

God came to Abimelech

“God appeared to Abimelech”

Behold

“pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: ”

you are a dead man

This is a strong way of saying the king will die. Alternate translation: “you will certainly die soon” or “I will kill you” (See: [Idiom](#))

a man’s wife

“a married woman”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Abimelech](#)
- [in a dream of](#)
- [are dead](#)

ULT

³ But [God](#) came to [Abimelech](#) in a [dream of](#) the night and said to him, “Behold, you [are dead](#) because of the woman whom you have taken, because she is married to a husband!”

Genesis 20:4

Now...her

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to information about Abimelech. (See: [Background Information](#))

Abimelech had not come near her

This is a polite way of saying he did not have sex with her. Alternate translation: "Abimelech had not slept with Sarah" or "Abimelech had not touched Sarah" (See: [Euphemism](#))

even a righteous nation

Here "nation" stands for the people. Abimelech is worried that God will punish not only him, but his people also. Alternate translation: "even a people who are innocent" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Now Abimelech](#)
- [My Lord](#)
- [will you kill](#)
- [a nation](#)
- [it is righteous](#)

ULT

⁴ [Now Abimelech](#) had not gone near to her, so he said, "[My Lord](#), [will you kill a nation](#) even though [it is righteous](#)?"

Genesis 20:5

Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?' Even she herself said, 'He is my brother.'

This has quotations within a quotation. They can be stated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Did he himself not tell me that she is his sister? Even she herself told me that he is her brother." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁵ Did not he himself say to me, 'She is **my sister**'? And she herself also said, 'He is **my brother**'. I did this **in the integrity of my heart and in the innocence of my hands!**"

Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister?'

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to remind God of something God already knew. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Abraham himself told me, 'She is my sister.'" or "Abraham said that she is his sister." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did he not himself say...Even she herself

The words "he himself" and "she herself" are used for emphasis to bring attention to Abraham and Sarah and to blame them for what happened. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands

Here "heart" stands for his thoughts or intentions. Also "hands" stands for his actions. Alternate translation: "I have done this with good intentions and actions" or "I have done this with no evil thoughts or actions" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my sister](#)
- [my brother](#)
- [in the integrity of](#)
- [my heart](#)
- [and in the innocence](#)
- [of my hands](#)

Genesis 20:6

God said to him

“God said to Abimelech”

in the integrity of your heart you did this

Here “heart” stands for his thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: “you did this with good intentions” or “you did this without evil intentions” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to touch her

This is a euphemism for having sex with Sarah. Alternate translation: “to sleep with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [in the dream](#)
- [know](#)
- [in the integrity of](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [from sinning](#)

ULT

⁶ Then [God](#) said to him [in the dream](#), "Yes, I [know](#) that [in the integrity of your heart](#) you did this, and indeed I kept you [from sinning](#) against me. For that reason I did not allow you to touch her."

Genesis 20:7

the man's wife

"Abraham's wife"

you will live

"I will let you live"

all who are yours

"all of your people"

Translation Words - ULT

- you must return
- return her
- a prophet
- and he will pray
- and you will live
- know
- will...die, you

ULT

⁷ So now **you must return** the wife of the man, because he is **a prophet, and he will pray** for you, **and you will live**. But if you do not **return her, know** that you will surely **die, you** and all who belong to you!"

Genesis 20:8

He told all these things to them

“He told them everything that God had told him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abimelech
- and called
- his servants
- and...were...afraid

ULT

⁸ So **Abimelech** got up early in the morning **and called** for all of **his servants**, and he told all those things in their ears, and the men were very **afraid**.

Genesis 20:9

What have you done to us?

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to accuse Abraham. Alternate translation: "You have done something bad to us!" or "Look what you have done to us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to us

The word "us" here is exclusive and does not include Abraham and Sarah. If your language uses an exclusive form of "we" or "us," use it here. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

ULT

⁹ Then [Abimelech called for Abraham](#) and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how [have I sinned](#) against you so that you brought a great [sin](#) on me and on [my kingdom](#)? You have done deeds to me that should not be done!"

How have I sinned against you, that you have brought...sin?

Abimelech used this rhetorical question to remind Abraham that he had not sinned against Abraham. Alternate translation: "I have done nothing against you to cause you to bring...sin." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin

To cause someone to be guilty of sinning is spoken of as if "sin" was a thing that could be placed on a person. Alternate translation: "that you should make me and my kingdom guilty of such a terrible sin" (See: [Metaphor](#))

on my kingdom

Here "kingdom" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "on the people of my kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

You have done to me that which ought not to be done

"You should not have done this to me"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [Then...called](#)
- [for Abraham](#)
- [have I sinned](#)
- [a...sin](#)
- [my kingdom](#)

Genesis 20:10

What prompted you to do this thing?

“What caused you to do this?” or “Why did you do this?” What Abraham did can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “Why did you tell me that Sarah is your sister?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Then [Abimelech](#) said to [Abraham](#), "What were you looking for when you did this thing?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [Abraham](#)

Genesis 20:11

Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me because of my wife.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Because I thought that since no one here fears God, someone may kill me so they can take my wife." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

no fear of God in this place

Here "place" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "no one here in Gerar fears God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

fear of God

This means to deeply respect God and show that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [fear of](#)
- [God](#)
- [so they will kill me](#)

ULT

¹¹ And [Abraham](#) answered, "Because I said, 'Surely there is no [fear of God](#) in this place, [so they will kill me](#) because of my wife.'

Genesis 20:12

Besides, she is indeed my sister

“Also, it is true that Sarah is my sister” or “Also, Sarah really is my sister”

the daughter of my father, but not the daughter of my mother

“we have the same father, but we have different mothers”

Translation Words - ULT

- my sister
- my father

ULT

¹² And also she truly is [my sister](#), the daughter of [my father](#) but not the daughter of my mother, and she became my wife.

Genesis 20:13

General Information:

Verse 13 is a continuation of Abraham's answer to Abimelech.

my father's house

Here "house" stands for Abraham's family. Alternate translation: "my father and the rest of my family" or "my father's household" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

13 And it happened when God caused me to wander from the house of my father, then I said to her, 'This is your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother." "'

I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, "He is my brother."'

This has quotations within quotations. They can be stated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "I said to Sarah that I wanted her to be faithful to me by telling people everywhere we go that I am her brother" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- from the house of
- my father
- your kindness
- my brother

Genesis 20:14

Abimelech took

“Abimelech brought some”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abimelech
- flocks
- and herds
- and men slaves
- and women slaves
- to Abraham
- and he returned
- Sarah

ULT

14 Then Abimelech brought flocks and herds and men slaves and women slaves and gave them to Abraham, and he returned Sarah his wife to him.

Genesis 20:15

Abimelech said

“Abimelech said to Abraham”

Look

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

my land is before you

This is a way of saying “I make all of my land available to you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Settle wherever it pleases you

“Live wherever you want”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [my land](#)
- [wherever is good](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then [Abimelech](#) said, "Behold, [my land](#) is before your face. Settle [wherever is good](#) in your eyes."

Genesis 20:16

a thousand

“1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

It is to cover any offense against you in the eyes of all who are with you

Giving money to prove to others that Sarah is innocent is spoken of as if he is placing a cover over an offense so no one can see it.

Alternate translation: “I am giving this to him, so that those who are with you will know that you have done nothing wrong” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “in the opinion” or “in the judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

before everyone, you are completely made right

The passive phrase “made right” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “everyone will know that you are innocent” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to Sarah](#)
- [silver](#)
- [to your brother](#)

ULT

16 [And to Sarah](#) he said, " Behold, I am giving 1,000 shekels of [silver to your brother](#). Behold, that is for you a covering of the eyes before all who are with you, so that you are vindicated for everything."

Genesis 20:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Then...prayed
- God
- God
- and...healed
- Abimelech
- and his slave women
- so that they bore children

ULT

¹⁷ Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech and his wife and his slave women, so that they bore children,

Genesis 20:18

completely infertile

“totally unable to have children”

because of Sarah, Abraham’s wife

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation:

“because Abimelech had taken Abraham’s wife Sarah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁸ because [Yahweh](#) had completely closed up every [womb in the house of Abimelech](#) because of [Sarah](#), the wife of [Abraham](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [womb](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [Abimelech](#)
- [Sarah](#)
- [Abraham](#)

Genesis 21

Genesis 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sarah's anger

After Sarah was able to have her own child, and he survived infancy, she began to get angry with Abraham's other son, Ishmael. He would have been a constant reminder of her own sin. God blessed Ishmael, but he was not able to inherit the promises given to Abraham. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Abandoning Ishmael

According to the law at this time, Hagar was able to gain her freedom from slavery by abandoning any claim to receive an inheritance. This is why Hagar would have abandoned her son under the tree. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Treaty

The Gentile king, Abimelech, made a covenant or treaty with Abraham. It is possible that he did this because he recognized the power of Abraham's God, but his exact reasons are unknown. (See: [covenant](#))

Genesis 21:1

Yahweh paid attention to Sarah

Here the phrase “paid attention to” refers to Yahweh helping Sarah have a baby. Alternate translation: “Yahweh helped Sarah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sarah](#)
- [for Sarah](#)

ULT

¹ [Then Yahweh](#) visited [Sarah](#) just as he had said, and [Yahweh](#) did [for Sarah](#) just as he had said,

Genesis 21:2

bore a son to Abraham

“gave birth to Abraham’s son”

in his old age

“when Abraham was very old”

at the set time of which God had spoken to him

“at the exact time that God had told him it would happen”

Translation Words - ULT

- so that...conceived
- Sarah
- and bore
- a son
- for Abraham
- at the appointed time
- God

ULT

² so that Sarah conceived and bore a son for Abraham in his old age, at the appointed time which God had told him.

Genesis 21:3

Abraham named his son, the one who had been born to him, whom Sarah bore to him, Isaac

“Abraham named his newborn son, the one Sarah gave birth to, Isaac” or “Abraham named their newborn son Isaac”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- And...called
- the name of
- his son
- who was born
- bore
- Sarah
- Isaac

ULT

³ And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him, whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac.

Genesis 21:4

Abraham circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old

“When his son Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him”

eight days

“8 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

had commanded him

“had commanded Abraham to do”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [And...circumcised](#)
- [his son](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [days](#)
- [God](#)
- [had commanded](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Abraham circumcised his son Isaac](#), a son of eight [days](#), just as [God had commanded](#) him.

Genesis 21:5

one hundred

“100” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Abraham](#)
- [years](#)
- [when...was born](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [his son](#)

ULT

⁵ [And Abraham](#) was a son of 100 [years](#) when [Isaac](#) his son was born to him.

Genesis 21:6

God has made me laugh

Sarah was laughing because she was surprised and happy. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God has caused me to laugh joyfully" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

every one who hears

What people would hear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "everyone who hears about what God has done for me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- God

ULT

⁶ And Sarah said, "God has brought laughter to me! Everyone who hears will laugh with me!"

Genesis 21:7

Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one would have ever said to Abraham that Sarah will nurse children" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁷ And she said, "Who would have said to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children? Yet I have born a son in his old age!"

nurse children

This is a polite way of referring to breast-feeding babies. Alternate translation: "feed a baby her own milk" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Abraham
- Sarah
- children
- a son
- I have born

Genesis 21:8

The child grew and...Isaac was weaned

“Wean” here is a polite way of saying the child was finished with breast feeding. Alternate translation: “Isaac grew, and when he no longer needed his mother’s milk, Abraham had a large feast” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the child](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [a...feast](#)
- [on the day](#)
- [Isaac](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [the child](#) grew and was weaned, and [Abraham](#) made a great [feast on the day Isaac](#) was weaned.

Genesis 21:9

the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham

The name of Hagar's son can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "Ishmael, the son of Hagar the Egyptian and Abraham" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham, was mocking,

mocking

It can be stated explicitly that he was jeering or laughing at Isaac. Alternate translation: "laughing at Isaac" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- the son of
- Hagar
- the Egyptian
- she had born
- for Abraham
- was mocking

Genesis 21:10

she said to Abraham

"Sarah said to Abraham"

Drive out

"send away" or "get rid of"

this slave woman and her son

This refers to Hagar and Ishmael. Sarah probably did not refer to them by name because she was angry with them.

with my son, with Isaac

"with my son Isaac"

Translation Words - ULT

- to Abraham
- Drive away
- slave woman
- slave woman
- her son
- the son of
- my son
- will...inherit
- Isaac

ULT

¹⁰ so she said to Abraham, "Drive away that slave woman and her son, because the son of that slave woman will not inherit with my son, with Isaac!"

Genesis 21:11

This thing was very grievous to Abraham

“Abraham was very unhappy about what Sarah said”

because of his son

“because it was about his son.” It is implied that this means his son, Ishmael. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...was...distressing](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [his son](#)

ULT

11 And the matter was very [distressing](#) in the eyes of [Abraham](#) on account of [his son](#).

Genesis 21:12

Do not be grieved because of the lad, and because of your servant woman

“Do not be upset about the boy and your handmaid”

Listen to her words in all she says to you about this matter

“Do everything that Sarah says to you about them”

it is through Isaac that your descendants will be named

The phrase “will be named” means those born through Isaac are the ones God considers to be the descendants that he promised Abraham. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Isaac is the one who will be the forefather of the descendants I promised to give you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham
- Do...be distressed
- your slave woman
- Sarah
- her voice
- in Isaac
- offspring
- will be called

ULT

¹² But God said to Abraham, "Do not be distressed in your eyes because of the boy and because of your slave woman. All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice, because in Isaac offspring will be called yours."

Genesis 21:13

I will also make the son of the servant woman into a nation

The word "nation" means God will give him many descendants so that they become a great nation of people. Alternate translation: "I will make the servant woman's son also become the father of a great nation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [the slave woman](#)
- [into a nation](#)
- [your offspring](#)

ULT

¹³ And I will also make [the son of the slave woman into a nation](#), because he is [your offspring](#)."

Genesis 21:14

took bread

Possible meanings are (1) this refers to food in general or (2) this refers to bread specifically. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a skin of water

“a bag of water.” The water container was made out of animal skin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [bread](#)
- [water](#)
- [Hagar](#)
- [the child](#)
- [he sent her away](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)

ULT

14 Then [Abraham](#) got up early in the morning, and took [bread](#) and a skin of [water](#) and gave them to [Hagar](#), putting them on her shoulder. Then with [the child he sent her away](#), and she left and wandered [in the wilderness of Beersheba](#).

Genesis 21:15

When the water in the waterskin was gone

“When the water bag was empty” or “When they had drank all of the water”

Translation Words - ULT

- the water
- the child

ULT

15 And when the water from the skin was gone, then she threw the child under one of the bushes,

Genesis 21:16

about the distance of a bowshot away

This refers to the distance that a person could shoot an arrow with a bow. This is about 100 meters.

Let me not look upon the death of the child

The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “die.” Alternate translation: “I do not want to watch the boy die” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

she lifted up her voice and wept

Here “voice” stands for the sound of her crying. To “lift up her voice” means to cry loudly. Alternate translation: “she cried out loudly and wept” or “she wept loudly” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a bow](#)
- [on the death of](#)
- [the child](#)
- [her voice](#)
- [and sobbed](#)

ULT

16 and she went and sat down by herself at a distance, as far away as they shoot [a bow](#), because she said, "Do not let me look [on the death of the child](#)." Then as she sat at a distance, she lifted [her voice and sobbed](#).

Genesis 21:17

the voice of the lad

“the boy’s voice.” Here “voice” stands for the sound of the boy crying or speaking. Alternate translation: “the sound of Ishmael” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the angel of God

“a messenger from God” or “God’s messenger”

out of heaven

Here “heaven” means the place where God lives.

What troubles you

“What is wrong” or “Why are you crying”

the voice of the lad where he is

Here “voice” stands for the sound of the boy crying or speaking. Alternate translation: “the sound of the boy lying over there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- God
- the voice of
- the voice of
- so...called
- the angel of
- Hagar
- Hagar
- heaven
- Do...be afraid

ULT

17 And God heard the voice of the boy, so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her, "What troubles you, Hagar? Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he is there."

Genesis 21:18

raise up the lad

“help the boy stand up”

I will make him into a great nation

To make Ishmael into a great nation means God will give him many descendants who will become a great nation. Alternate translation: “I will make his descendants become a great nation” or “I will make him become the ancestor of a great nation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁸ Get up, lift the boy and hold on to him with your hand, because I will make him into a great nation.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Get up
- your hand
- into a...nation

Genesis 21:19

God opened her eyes, and she saw

God making Hagar aware of the well is spoken of as if he literally opened her eyes. Alternate translation: “God caused Hagar to see” or “God showed her” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the skin

“the container made of skin” or “the bag”

the lad

“the boy” or “Ishmael”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [a well of](#)
- [water](#)
- [with water](#)

ULT

19 Then [God](#) opened her eyes and she saw [a well of water](#). So she went and filled the skin [with water](#), and gave the boy a drink.

Genesis 21:20

God was with the lad

Here the phrase “was with” is an idiom that means God helped or blessed the boy. Alternate translation: “God guided the boy” or “God blessed the boy” (See: [Idiom](#))

became an archer

“became very skilled at using a bow and arrows”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [a bow shooter](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [God](#) was with the boy. And he grew up, and he lived [in the wilderness](#) and he became [a bow shooter](#).

Genesis 21:21

got a wife

“found a wife”

Translation Words - ULT

- in the wilderness of
- Paran
- from the land of
- Egypt

ULT

²¹ And while he was living in the wilderness of Paran, then his mother took a wife for him from the land of Egypt.

Genesis 21:22

It came about at that time

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Phicol

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

captain of his army

“commander of his army”

his army

The word “his” refers to Abimelech.

God is with you in all that you do

Here the phrase “is with you” is an idiom that means God helps or blesses Abraham. Alternate translation: “God blesses everything you do” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [the commander of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

22 And it happened at that time that [Abimelech](#) and Phicol, [the commander of his army](#), said to [Abraham](#) saying, "[God](#) is with you in all that you do.

Genesis 21:23

Now therefore

The word "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows. Alternate translation: "Therefore" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

swear to me here by God

This is an idiom meaning to make a solemn oath witnessed by a higher authority, in this instance, God. Alternate translation: "promise me with God as your witness" (See: [Idiom](#))

that you will not deal falsely with me

"that you will not lie to me"

will not deal falsely...with my descendants

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will deal honestly with me and my descendants" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Show to me...covenant faithfulness that I have shown to you

The two men had made a covenant with each other. The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful" or "loyal." Alternate translation: "Be as faithful to me and to the land as I have been to you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to the land

Here "land" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "to the people of the land" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- swear
- by God
- with me
- or with my children
- or with my descendants
- According to the kindness
- the land

ULT

²³ So now swear to me here by God that you will not deal falsely with me or with my children or with my descendants. According to the kindness that I have done to you, do to me and to the land which you are sojourning in."

Genesis 21:24

I swear

This can be stated with the understood information. Alternate translation: "I swear to be as faithful to you and your people as you have been to me" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

²⁴ And [Abraham](#) said, "I [swear](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [swear](#)

Genesis 21:25

Abraham also complained to Abimelech

Possible meanings are (1) Abraham was complaining about what happened or (2) "Abraham also rebuked Abimelech"

concerning a well of water that Abimelech's servants had seized from him

"because Abimelech's servants had taken one of Abraham's wells"

seized from him

"taken from Abraham" or "had taken control of"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Then...complained to
- Abimelech
- Abimelech
- the well of
- water
- the servants of
- had seized

ULT

²⁵ Then Abraham complained to Abimelech on account of the well of water that the servants of Abimelech had seized.

Genesis 21:26

I have not heard of it until today

"This is the first time I have heard about it"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abimelech
- I do...know
- did...tell
- today

ULT

²⁶ Then Abimelech said, "I do not know who has done this thing. And also you did not tell me, and also I have not heard about it until today."

Genesis 21:27

Abraham took sheep and oxen and gave them to Abimelech

This is a sign of friendship and that Abraham agrees to make covenant with Abimelech. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [sheep](#)
- [and cattle](#)
- [to Abimelech](#)
- [a covenant](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [Abraham](#) took [sheep and cattle](#), and he gave them [to Abimelech](#), and the two of them cut [a covenant](#).

Genesis 21:28

Abraham set seven female lambs of the flock by themselves

“Abraham separated seven female lambs from the flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- ewe lambs from
- the flock

ULT

²⁸ Then Abraham set apart seven ewe lambs from the flock by themselves.

Genesis 21:29

What is the meaning of these seven female lambs that you have set by themselves?

"Why have you separated these seven lambs from the flock?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Abimelech
- Abraham
- ewe lambs

ULT

²⁹ So [Abimelech](#) said to [Abraham](#),
"What is the meaning of these seven
[ewe lambs](#) that you have set apart by
themselves?"

Genesis 21:30**you will receive**

“you will take”

from my hand

Here “hand” stands for Abraham. Alternate translation: “from me”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

it may be a witness

The word “it” refers to the gift of seven lambs.

so that it may be a witness for me

The abstract noun “witness” can be stated as “to prove.” Alternate translation: “to prove to everyone” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...ewe lambs](#)
- [from my hand](#)
- [well](#)

ULT

³⁰ And he said, "Because you must accept the seven [ewe lambs from my hand](#), so that it can be a witness for me that I dug this [well](#)."

Genesis 21:31

he called that place

“Abraham called that place”

Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying “Beersheba can mean either “well of the oath” or “well of seven.”

they both

“Abraham and Abimelech”

Translation Words - ULT

- he called
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- swore an oath

ULT

³¹ For that reason he called that place Beersheba, because there the two of them swore an oath.

Genesis 21:32

Phicol

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 21:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the covenant
- at Beersheba
- at Beersheba
- Abimelech
- the commander of
- Then...got up
- and returned
- the land of
- the Philistines

ULT

³² So they cut the covenant at Beersheba. Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up and returned to the land of the Philistines.

Genesis 21:33

a tamarisk tree

This is an evergreen tree that can grow in the desert. It can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "a tree" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the eternal God

"the God who lives forever"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then he planted](#)
- [at Beersheba](#)
- [at Beersheba](#)
- [and...he called](#)
- [on the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Eternal](#)
- [the...God](#)

ULT

33 [Then he planted](#) a tamarisk tree [at Beersheba](#), and there [he called on the name of Yahweh](#), the [Eternal God](#).

Genesis 21:34

many days

“for a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- in the land of
- the Philistines
- days

ULT

³⁴ Then Abraham sojourned in the land of the Philistines many days.

Genesis 22

Genesis 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sacrificing his son

Although Isaac was not Abraham's only son, he was the son who was to inherit Abraham's promised blessings. It is possible this parallels God's actual sacrifice of his son, Jesus, for the sins of man. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Covenant affirmation

After important events, it is common for Scripture to affirm the tenants of a covenant. This serves as a reminder of the covenant and affirms it. (See: [covenant](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God tests Abraham

Extra care should be taken when translating "testing." It is best to avoid using the same word used for "tempting" even though they overlap in meaning. This is because Scripture also says God does not tempt anyone. (See: [test](#), [tested](#), [testing](#), [testing in the fire](#) and [tempt](#), [temptation](#) and James 2:13)

Genesis 22:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

after these things

This phrase refers to the events in chapter 21.

God tested Abraham

It is implied that God tests Abraham to learn if Abraham will be faithful to him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "God tested Abraham's faithfulness" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?"

Translation Words - ULT

- [that God](#)
- [tested](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

¹ Then it happened after those things [that God tested Abraham](#). And he said to him, "[Abraham!](#)" And he said, "Behold me."

Genesis 22:2

your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "your only son whom I have promised" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

whom you love

This emphasizes Abraham's love for his son, Isaac.

the land of Moriah

"the land called Moriah" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your son](#)
- [you love](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [as a burnt offering](#)

ULT

2 Then he said, "Please take [your son](#), your only son whom [you love](#), [Isaac](#), and go yourself to [the land of](#) Moriah and sacrifice him there [as a burnt offering](#) on one of the mountains that I will tell to you."

Genesis 22:3

saddled his donkey

“loaded his donkey” or “put on his donkey what he needed for the journey”

young men

“servants”

set out on his journey

“started his journey” or “started traveling”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- his donkey
- his young men
- Isaac
- his son
- the burnt offering
- Then he got up
- God

ULT

³ So Abraham got up early in the morning and saddled his donkey. And he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son, and he cut wood for the burnt offering. Then he got up and left for the place that God had told to him.

Genesis 22:4

On the third day

The word “third” is the ordinal number for three. Alternate translation: “After traveling for three days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

saw the place afar off

“saw far away the place that God had spoken of”

Translation Words - ULT

- [On the...day](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

⁴ [On the](#) third [day](#) [Abraham](#) lifted his eyes and he saw the place from a distance.

Genesis 22:5

young men

“servants”

We will worship

The word “we” refers only to Abraham and Isaac, but not to the young men. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

come again to you

“return to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [his young men](#)
- [the donkey](#)
- [and bow down](#)
- [then we will come back](#)

ULT

⁵ Then [Abraham](#) said to [his young men](#),
" Stay here by yourselves with [the donkey](#), and I and the boy will go over there [and bow down](#), then [we will come back](#) to you."

Genesis 22:6

put it on Isaac his son

“had Isaac, his son, carry it”

He took in his own hand

Here “his own hand” emphasizes that Abraham himself carried these things. Alternate translation: “Abraham himself carried” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the fire

Here “fire” stands for a pan containing burning coals or a torch or lamp. Alternate translation: “something for starting a fire” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they went both of them together

“they left together” or “the two of them went together”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [the burnt offering](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [his son](#)
- [in his hands](#)
- [the fire](#)

ULT

⁶ Then [Abraham](#) took the wood for [the burnt offering](#) and put it on [Isaac his son](#), and he took [in his hands the fire](#) and the knife. Then the two of them went on together,

Genesis 22:7

My father

This is a loving way for a son to speak to his father.

Here I am

“Yes, I am listening” or “Yes, what is it?” See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

my son

This is a loving way for a father to speak to his son.

the fire

Here “fire” stands for a pan containing burning coals or a torch or lamp. See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:6](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the lamb for the burnt offering

“the lamb that you will give as a burnt offering”

ULT

⁷ and [Isaac](#) spoke to [Abraham his father](#) and said, “[My father?](#)” And he said, “Behold me, [my son.](#)” Then he said, “Behold [the fire](#) and the wood, but where is [the lamb for the burnt offering?](#)”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [his father](#)
- [My father](#)
- [my son](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [the lamb](#)
- [for the burnt offering](#)

Genesis 22:8

God himself

Here “himself” emphasizes that it is God who will provide the lamb.
(See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

will provide

“will give us”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [God](#)
- [the lamb](#)
- [for the burnt offering](#)
- [my son](#)

ULT

⁸ And [Abraham](#) said, " [God](#) will see for himself [the lamb for the burnt offering](#), [my son](#)." Then the two of them went on together.

Genesis 22:9

When they came to the place

“When Abraham and Isaac arrived at the place”

he bound

“he tied up”

on the altar, on top of the wood

“on top of the wood that was on the altar”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Abraham
- the altar
- the altar (2)
- Then he bound
- Isaac
- his son

ULT

⁹ Then they came to the place that God had told to him, and Abraham built the altar there and arranged the wood. Then he bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood.

Genesis 22:10

reached out with his hand and took up the knife

“picked up the knife”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- his hand
- to kill
- his son

ULT

¹⁰ Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife to kill his son.

Genesis 22:11

the angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are (1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or (2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or (3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel." See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

from heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?" See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [But...called](#)
- [an angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [heaven](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

11 [But an angel of Yahweh called](#) to him from [heaven](#) and said, "[Abraham!](#)" [Abraham!](#)" And he said, "Behold me."

Genesis 22:12

Do not lay your hand upon the lad, nor do anything to harm him

The phrase “Do no lay your hand upon” is a way of saying “do not harm.” God said basically the same thing twice to emphasize that Abraham should not hurt Isaac. Alternate translation: “Do not hurt the boy in any way” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Parallelism](#))

now I know...from me

The words “I” and “me” refer to Yahweh. When translating what is in the quote, do it as the angel of Yahweh did and use the words “I” and “me” when referring to Yahweh.

you fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

seeing that

“because I see that”

you have not withheld your son...from me

“you have not held back your son...from me.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “you were willing to offer your son...to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

your son, your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 22:2](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your hand](#)
- [I know](#)
- [fear](#)
- [God](#)
- [your son](#)

ULT

¹² Then he said, "Do not reach out [your hand](#) against the boy! And do not do anything to him, because now [I know](#) that you [fear God](#), since you have not withheld [your son](#), your only son, from me."

Genesis 22:13

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

was a ram caught in the bushes by his horns

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “was a ram whose horns were stuck in the bushes” or “was a ram stuck in the bushes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

went and took the ram

“Abraham went over to the ram and took it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [a ram](#)
- [by its horns](#)
- [as a burnt offering](#)
- [his son](#)

ULT

13 Then [Abraham](#) lifted his eyes and looked, and behold [a ram](#) was behind him, caught in the thicket [by its horns](#). So [Abraham](#) went and took the ram, and sacrificed it [as a burnt offering](#) instead of [his son](#).

Genesis 22:14

will provide...will be provided

Use the same word for "provide" as you used in [Genesis 22:8](#).

to this day

"even now." This means even to the time that the author was writing this book.

it will be provided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he will provide" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...called](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to this day](#)

ULT

14 So Abraham called the name of that place "Yahweh-Yireh," as it is said to this day, "On the mountain of Yahweh it will be seen."

Genesis 22:15

The angel of Yahweh

Possible meanings are (1) Yahweh made himself look like an angel or (2) this was one of Yahweh's angels or (3) this was a special messenger from God (some scholars think it was Jesus). Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "The angel of Yahweh" using the normal word that you use for "angel." See the note about this phrase in [Genesis 16:7](#).

ULT

15 Then [the angel of Yahweh](#) called to [Abraham](#) a second time from [heaven](#)

a second time

The word "second" is the ordinal number for two. Alternate translation: "again" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

from heaven

Here the word "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Then...called](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [heaven](#)

Genesis 22:16

said—this is Yahweh’s declaration

“spoke this message from Yahweh” or “declared these words of Yahweh.” This is a formal way of saying that the words that follow come directly from Yahweh.

by myself I have sworn

“I have promised and I am my witness.” To swear means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made. There is nothing more powerful for Yahweh to swear by than himself.

you have done this thing

“you obeyed me”

have not withheld your son

“have not kept back your son.” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “were willing to offer your son to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

your son, your only son

It is implied that God knows that Abraham has another son, Ishmael. This emphasizes that Isaac is the son that God promised to give Abraham. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 22:2](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I swear](#)
- [a declaration of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your son](#)

ULT

16 and said, " [I swear](#) by myself, [a declaration of Yahweh](#), that it is because you have done this thing and have not withheld [your son](#), your only son,

Genesis 22:17

surely bless

“certainly bless”

I will greatly multiply your descendants

“I will cause your descendants to increase again and again” or “I will cause your descendants to be very many”

ULT

¹⁷ that I will greatly bless you, and I will greatly multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens and as the sand that is on the shore of the sea, and your offspring will possess the gates of their enemies,

as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which is upon the seashore

God compared Abraham’s descendants to the stars and the sand. Just as people cannot count the huge number of stars or the grains of sand, so there would be so many of Abraham’s descendants that people would not be able to count them. Alternate translation: “beyond what you can count” (See: [Simile](#))

as the stars of the heavens

Here the word “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

will possess the gate of their enemies

Here “gate” represents the whole city. To “possess the gate of their enemies” means destroying their enemies. Alternate translation: “will completely triumph over their enemies” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...bless you
- I will...multiply
- your offspring
- your offspring
- the heavens
- and...will possess
- the gates of
- their enemies

Genesis 22:18

General Information:

The angel of Yahweh continues speaking to Abraham.

all the nations of the earth will be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I, the Lord, will bless all the people living everywhere” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

nations of the earth

Here “nations” stands for the people of the nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))

you have obeyed my voice

Here “voice” stands for what God said. Alternate translation: “you have obeyed what I said” or “you have obeyed me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [through your Offspring](#)
- [the nations of](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [and...will be blessed](#)
- [to my voice](#)

ULT

¹⁸ and [through your Offspring](#) all the [nations of the earth](#) will be [blessed](#), because you listened [to my voice](#).”

Genesis 22:19

Abraham returned

Only Abraham was named because he was the father, but it was implied that his son went with him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Abraham and his son went back" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

19 Then [Abraham returned](#) to [his young men, and they got up](#) and went together to [Beersheba](#). And [Abraham stayed at Beersheba](#).

young men

"servants"

they departed

"they left that place"

he lived at Beersheba

Only Abraham was mentioned because he was the leader of his family and servants, but it was implied that they were with him. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Abraham and his people stayed in Beersheba" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Then...returned](#)
- [his young men](#)
- [and they got up](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [at Beersheba](#)
- [at Beersheba](#)

Genesis 22:20

It came about after these things

“After these events.” The phrase “these things” refers to the events of Genesis 22:1-19. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Abraham was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone told Abraham” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Milka has borne children, as well

“Milka has also borne children”

Milka

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that it was told](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [has born](#)
- [sons](#)
- [for Nahor](#)
- [your brother](#)

ULT

20 Then it happened after those things [that it was told to Abraham](#) saying, "Behold, Milcah, she too, [has born sons for Nahor your brother](#):"

Genesis 22:21

They were Uz his firstborn, Buz his brother

“The name of his firstborn was Uz, and the names of the rest of his children were Buz his brother”

Uz...Buz...Kemuel...Aram

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these except Aram are the sons of Nahor and Milkah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- his firstborn
- his brother
- the father of
- Aram

ULT

²¹ Uz his firstborn, and Buz his brother,
and Kemuel the father of Aram,

Genesis 22:22

Kesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel

These are all names of men. Translate this so that it is clear that all of these are the sons of Nahor and Milkah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²² and Kesed, and Hazo, and Pildash, and Jidlaph, and [Bethuel](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethuel](#)

Genesis 22:23

Bethuel became the father of Rebekah

“Later Bethel became the father of Rebekah”

These were the eight children that Milkah bore to Nahor, Abraham’s brother

“These were the eight children of Milkah and Nahor, Abraham’s brother.” This refers to the children that were listed in [Genesis 22:21-22](#).

ULT

²³ And Bethuel fathered Rebekah. Those are the eight sons Milcah bore for Nahor, the brother of Abraham.

Translation Words - ULT

- And Bethuel
- Rebekah
- for Nahor
- the brother of
- Abraham

Genesis 22:24

His concubine

“Nahor’s concubine”

Reumah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

also bore

“also gave birth to”

Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And his concubine](#)
- [and her name was](#)
- [and...bore](#)
- [Maacah](#)

ULT

²⁴ [And his concubine, and her name was](#) Reumah, and she also [bore](#) Tebah, and Gaham, and Tahash and [Maacah](#).

Genesis 23

Genesis 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abraham's character

Abraham's interaction with the people show that he was greatly respected. This would have been unusual for a foreigner and indicates that Abraham was a man of great character. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Burial

Burial was a common practice when Abraham lived, but only the wealthy were able to bury their dead relatives in this way.

Genesis 23:1

Sarah lived a hundred and twenty-seven years

“Sarah lived 127 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

These were the years of the life of Sarah

Some translations do not include this sentence. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the life of](#)
- [the life of](#)
- [Sarah](#)
- [Sarah](#)
- [127 years](#)
- [127 years](#)
- [127 years](#)
- [the years of](#)

ULT

¹ Now [the life of Sarah](#) was [127 years](#);
[the years of the life of Sarah](#).

Genesis 23:2

Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abraham mourned and wept for Sarah

“Abraham was very sad and cried because Sarah died”

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- for Sarah
- Then...died
- Hebron
- in the land of
- Canaan
- Abraham
- to mourn
- and to weep for her

ULT

² Then Sarah died in Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan, and Abraham went to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her.

Genesis 23:3

rose up and went from his dead wife

“got up and left his wife’s body”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” or “the Hittites” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ Then [Abraham got up](#) from beside [his dead one](#) and he spoke to the sons of [Heth](#), saying,

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Then...got up](#)
- [his dead one](#)
- [Heth](#)

Genesis 23:4

among you

This idea may be expressed in terms of location. “in your country” or “here”

Please grant me a property

“Sell me some land” or “Allow me to buy a piece of land”

my dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as an adjective or a verb. Alternate translation: “my dead wife” or “my wife who has died” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a burial place](#)
- [so that I can bury](#)
- [my dead](#)

ULT

4 "I am a foreigner and a sojourner among you. Give to me property for a [burial place](#) among you, [so that I can bury my dead](#) from before me."

Genesis 23:5

The sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “The descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Heth](#)
- [to Abraham](#)

ULT

⁵ Then the sons of [Heth](#) replied to [Abraham](#) by saying to him,

Genesis 23:6

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

a prince of God

This is an idiom. This probably means “a powerful man” or “a mighty leader.” (See: [Idiom](#))

your dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “your wife who has died” or “your wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

the choicest of our tombs

“the best of our burial places”

refuse you his tomb

“withhold his burial place from you” or “refuse to give to you his tomb”

ULT

6 " Listen to us, [my lord](#). You are a [mighty prince](#) among us. [Bury your dead](#) in the choicest of [our burial places](#). Each of us will not refuse from you [his burial place to bury your dead](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [my lord](#)
- [mighty](#)
- [a...prince](#)
- [Bury](#)
- [to bury](#)
- [your dead](#)
- [your dead](#)
- [our burial places](#)
- [his burial place](#)

Genesis 23:7

bowed down

This means to bend over or kneel down very low to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth

“to the sons of Heth who lived in the area”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Then...got up](#)
- [and bowed](#)
- [before the people of](#)
- [the land](#)
- [Heth](#)

ULT

7 Then [Abraham got up and bowed before the people of the land](#), before the sons of [Heth](#),

Genesis 23:8

my dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “my wife who has died” or “my wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Ephron...Zohar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to bury
- my dead
- the son of

ULT

⁸ and he said to them, saying, "If it is your will [to bury my dead](#) from before me, listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, [the son of Zohar](#),

Genesis 23:9

the cave of Machpelah, which he owns, which is at the end of his field

“his cave that is at the end of his field in Machpelah”

the cave of Machpelah

“the cave in Machpela.” Machpela was the name of an area or region. Ephron owned a field in Machpela and the cave that was in the field. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which he owns

This tells something about the cave. Ephron owned the cave. (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

which is at the end of his field

This also tells something about the cave. The cave was at the end of Ephron’s field. (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

sell it to me publicly

“sell it to me in front of you all” or “sell it to me in your presence”

as a property

“as a piece of land that I may own and use”

Translation Words - ULT

- [For...price](#)
- [a burial place](#)

ULT

⁹ so that he will give to me the cave of Machpelah, which belongs to him, which is at the end of his field. For full [price](#) let him give it to me among you as property for [a burial place](#).”

Genesis 23:10

Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth

Here “Now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Ephron. (See: [Background Information](#))

Ephron

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the hearing of the sons of Heth

The abstract noun “the hearing” can be stated as “hear” or “listening.” Alternate translation: “so that all the sons of Heth could hear him” or “while all the sons of Heth were listening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all those who had come into the gate of his city

This tells which sons of Heth were listening. Alternate translation: “all those who had gathered at the gate of his city” (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

gate of his city

The city gate was where the leaders of the city would meet to make important decisions.

his city

“the city where he lived.” This phrase shows that Ephron belonged to that city. It does not mean that he owned it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Heth](#)
- [the Hittite](#)
- [Heth](#)
- [to Abraham](#)
- [to the gate of](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of [Heth](#), so Ephron [the Hittite](#) responded [to Abraham](#) in the ears of the sons of [Heth](#), for everyone who had come [to the gate of](#) his city, by saying,

Genesis 23:11

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

in the presence of the sons of my people

Here “presence” stands for the people serving as witnesses.
Alternate translation: “with my fellow countrymen as my witnesses”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

sons of my people

This means “my fellow countrymen” or “my fellow Hittites”

my people

This phrase shows that Ephron was part of that group of people. It does not mean that he was their leader.

I give it to you to bury your dead

“I give it to you. Bury your dead”

your dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “your wife who has died” or “your wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my lord](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [my people](#)
- [Bury](#)
- [your dead](#)

ULT

11 " No, [my lord](#). Listen to me: I give to you the field, and I give to you the cave that is in it. I give it to you before the eyes of [the sons of my people](#). [Bury your dead.](#)"

Genesis 23:12

bowed himself down

This means to bend over or kneel down very low to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

people of the land

“people who lived in that area”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Then...bowed](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Abraham bowed](#) before [the people of the land](#),

Genesis 23:13

in the hearing of the people of the land

The abstract noun “the hearing” can be stated as “hear” or “listening” Alternate translation: “so that the people who lived in the area could hear” or “while the people who lived in the area were listening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

But if you are willing

The word “but” shows a contrast. Ephron wanted to give the field to Abraham; Abraham wanted to pay for it. Alternate translation: “No, but if you are willing” or “No, but if you agree with this”

I will pay for the field

“I will give you money for the field”

my dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “my wife who has died” or “my wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people of](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the price of](#)
- [then I will bury](#)
- [my dead](#)

ULT

13 and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of [the people of the land](#), saying, "Rather if you would, please listen to me. I will give [the price of](#) the field. Take it from me, [then I will bury my dead](#) there."

Genesis 23:14

Ephron

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)

ULT

14 Then Ephron answered [Abraham](#) by saying to him,

Genesis 23:15

Please, my master, listen to me

“Hear me, my master” or “Listen to me, kind sir”

my master

This phrase is used to show respect to Abraham.

ULT

¹⁵ " [My lord](#), listen to me. [Land worth](#) 400 shekels of [silver](#)-between me and you, what is that? [So bury your dead.](#)"

A piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver, what is that between me and you?

Ephron meant that since he and Abraham were both so wealthy, 400 pieces of silver was a small amount. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “The piece of land is worth only four hundred shekels of silver. For you and me, that is nothing.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

four hundred shekels of silver

This is about 4.5 kilograms of silver. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

four hundred

“400” (See: [Numbers](#))

Bury your dead

The nominal adjective “dead” can be stated as a verb or simply as “wife.” Alternate translation: “Go bury your wife who has died” or “Go bury your wife” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [My lord](#)
- [Land worth](#)
- [silver](#)
- [So...your dead](#)
- [bury](#)

Genesis 23:16

Abraham weighed out to Ephron the amount of silver

“Abraham weighed the silver and gave Ephron the amount” or
“Abraham counted out to Ephron the amount of silver”

the amount of silver that he had spoken

“the amount of silver that Ephron had said”

in the hearing of the sons of Heth

The abstract noun “the hearing” can be stated as “hear” or “listening.” Alternate translation: “so that all the sons of Heth could hear him” or “while all the sons of Heth were listening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

according to the standard measurement of the merchants

“using the standard measurement of weight that merchants used.” This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “He weighed the silver the same way that the merchants used to weigh it”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [the price](#)
- [silver](#)
- [Heth](#)

ULT

¹⁶ So [Abraham](#) listened to Ephron, and [Abraham](#) weighed out to Ephron [the price](#) that he had mentioned in the ears of the sons of [Heth](#), 400 shekels of [silver](#), the currency among the merchants.

Genesis 23:17

Machpelah

Machpela was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that is, the field, the cave that was in it, and all the trees

This phrase explains what the author meant when he wrote “the field of Ephron.” It was not only the field, but also the cave and trees in the field.

passed

“became property that belonged”

ULT

17 So the field of Ephron that was in Machpelah which was before Mamre, the field and the cave that was in it, and every tree that was in the field that was within all of its surrounding borders, was deeded

Genesis 23:18

to Abraham by purchase

These words complete the idea that begins with the word “passed” in verse 17. “became Abraham’s possession when he purchased it” or “belonged to Abraham after he bought it”

in the presence of the sons of Heth

Here “presence” stands for the people serving as witnesses. Alternate translation: “with the people of Heth watching as witnesses” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all those who had come into the gate of his city

This tells which sons of Heth saw Abraham buy the property. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:10](#). (See: [Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#))

gate of his city

The city gate was where the leaders of the city would meet to make important decisions.

his city

“the city where he lived.” This phrase shows that Ephron belonged to that city. It does not mean that he owned it.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Abraham](#)
- [Heth](#)
- [to the gate of](#)

ULT

¹⁸ [to Abraham](#) as his possession before the eyes of the sons of [Heth](#), before everyone who had come [to the gate of](#) his city.

Genesis 23:19

After this

“After he bought the field”

the cave of the field

“the cave in the field”

the field of Machpelah

“the field in Machpelah”

that is, Hebron

Possible meanings are (1) Mamre was another name for Hebron or (2) Hebron was formerly called Mamre or (3) Mamre was very near the larger city of Hebron, so people usually called it Hebron.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- buried
- Sarah
- Hebron
- in the land of
- Canaan

ULT

¹⁹ Then after that, Abraham buried Sarah his wife in the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre, that is, Hebron, in the land of Canaan.

Genesis 23:20

passed to Abraham as a property for a burial place from the sons of Heth

“became Abraham’s property for a burial ground when he bought it from the sons of Heth”

the sons of Heth

Here “sons” stands for those who descended from Heth. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:3](#). Alternate translation: “the descendants of Heth” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Abraham](#)
- [a burial place](#)
- [Heth](#)

ULT

²⁰ So the field and the cave that was in it were deeded [to Abraham](#) as property for [a burial place](#) from the sons of [Heth](#).

Genesis 24

Genesis 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 24:60.

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage

Abraham would not allow his son to marry anyone from the people of Canaan. This is because it would cause his son to worship other gods. Intermarriage and worshiping false gods are things that frequently caused Abraham's descendants to struggle. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Abraham's wealth

There are many instances recorded in this chapter which highlight Abraham's significant wealth. He owned more than 10 camels and had large amounts of gold.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Put your hand under my thigh”

Many scholars believe this is a euphemism. Putting one's hand on a man's genitals was a way to make an important oath. It represented power and progeny. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Genesis 24:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Abraham
- Abraham
- in days
- and Yahweh
- had blessed

ULT

¹ Now Abraham was old, advanced in days, and Yahweh had blessed Abraham in everything.

Genesis 24:2

Put your hand under my thigh

Abraham was about to ask the servant to swear to do something. Putting his hand under Abraham's thigh would show that he would certainly do what he would swear to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [the...servant of](#)
- [his house](#)
- [who was in charge](#)
- [your hand](#)

ULT

² Then [Abraham](#) said to the oldest [servant of his house who was in charge](#) of everything that belonged to him, "Please put [your hand](#) under my thigh,

Genesis 24:3

I will make you swear

This can be expressed as a command. Alternate translation: “swear” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

swear by Yahweh

The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made. “promise me with Yahweh as your witness”

ULT

³ and I will have you swear by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth, that you will not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among,

the God of heaven and the God of the earth

“the God of heaven and earth.” The words “heaven” and “earth” are used together to mean every thing that God created. Alternate translation: “the God of everything in heaven and earth” (See: [Merism](#))

heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

from the daughters of the Canaanites

“from the Canaanite women” or “from the Canaanites.” This refers to Canaanite females.

among whom I make my home

“among whom I live.” Here, “I” stands for Abraham and all of his family and servants. Alternate translation: “among whom we live” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will have you swear](#)
- [by Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [and the God of](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [for my son](#)
- [the Canaanites](#)

Genesis 24:4

But you will go

This can be stated as a command. Alternate translation: “Swear that you will go” or “But go” (See: [Imperatives — Other Uses](#))

my relatives

“my family”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my country](#)
- [my relatives](#)
- [for my son](#)
- [for Isaac](#)

ULT

⁴ but you will go to [my country](#) and to [my relatives](#), and take a wife [for my son](#), [for Isaac](#).”

Genesis 24:5

What if

“What should I do if”

will not be willing to follow me

“will not follow me” or “refuses to come back with me”

Must I take your son back to the land from which you came

“Should I take you son to live in the land from which you came”

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant
- land
- the country
- I take...back
- your son

ULT

⁵ Then the servant said to him, "

Suppose the woman is not willing to

come with me to this land? Should I

take your son back to the country that

you came from?"

Genesis 24:6

Make sure that you do not take my son back there

The phrase “Make sure” emphasizes the command that follows. “Be careful not to take my son back there” or “You definitely must not take my son there”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- Be sure
- take...back
- my son

ULT

⁶ Then Abraham said to him, "Be sure that you do not take my son back there."

Genesis 24:7

who took me from my father's house

Here "house" stands for the people in his family. Alternate translation: "who took me from my father and the rest of my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

promised me with a solemn oath

"swore an oath to me"

saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land,'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "saying that he would give this land to my offspring" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

he will send his angel

The words "he" and "his" refer to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [will send](#)
- [his angel](#)
- [for my son](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [from the house of](#)
- [my father](#)
- [and from the land of](#)
- [land](#)
- [my relatives](#)
- [swore](#)
- [To your offspring](#)

ULT

⁷ [Yahweh, the God of the heavens](#), who took me [from the house of my father](#) and [from the land of my relatives](#) and who spoke to me and who [swore](#) to me saying, '[To your offspring](#) I will give this [land](#),' he [will send his angel](#) before you, and you will take a wife [for my son](#) from there.

Genesis 24:8

General Information:

Verse 8 is a continuation of the instructions Abraham gave his servant.

But if the woman is not willing to follow you

“But if the woman refuses to come with you.” Abraham was answering the servant’s question from [Genesis 24:5](#). (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

you will be free from this oath of mine

“you will be released from the oath you made to me.” Not having to fulfill an oath is spoken of as if the person is free from an object to which he was bound. Alternate translation: “you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from...oath of mine](#)
- [do...take...back](#)
- [my son](#)

ULT

⁸ But if the woman is not willing to come with you, then you are clear from this [oath of mine](#). Only do not [take my son back](#) there!”

Genesis 24:9

put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master

This was to show that he would certainly do what he was swearing to do. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

⁹ Then [the servant](#) put [his hand](#) under the thigh of [Abraham his master](#) and [swore](#) to him concerning this matter.

swore to him

“made an oath to him”

concerning this matter

“concerning Abraham’s request” or “that he would do what Abraham said”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servant](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [his master](#)
- [and swore](#)

Genesis 24:10

departed. He also took

The sentence starting with “He also took” gives additional information about what the servant took with him on the journey. He gathered them before he departed.

He also took with him all kinds of gifts from his master

This means he also took many good things that his master wanted to give to the woman’s family.

departed and went

“set out and went” or “he left and went”

the city of Nahor

Possible meanings are (1) the city where Nahor lived” or (2) “the city called Nahor.” If you can translate it without choosing a meaning, do so. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant
- camels
- from the camels of
- his master
- his master
- good things from
- were in his hand
- and he got up
- Naharaim
- Nahor

ULT

10 Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master and left, and all kinds of good things from his master were in his hand, and he got up and went to Aram Naharaim, to the city of Nahor.

Genesis 24:11

He made the camels kneel down

Camels are tall animals with long legs. He made them bend their legs and lower their bodies to the ground. "He made the camels lie down"

well of water

"water well" or "well"

draw water

"get water"

Translation Words - ULT

- the camels
- the well of
- water

ULT

11 Then he made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water at evening time, at the time the women who draw water come out.

Genesis 24:12

Then he said

"Then the servant said"

grant me success today and show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham

You can state this with the connecting word "by." This makes clear how the servant wants God to show covenant faithfulness. Alternate translation: "Show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham by granting me success today" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

grant me success

"give me success." The servant wanted to find a good wife for Abraham's son. The abstract noun "success" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "help me to succeed" or "make me able to do what I have come here to do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

show covenant faithfulness to my master Abraham

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithful." Alternate translation: "be faithful to the covenant you have with my master Abraham" or "be faithful to my master Abraham" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- God of
- my master
- my master
- Abraham
- Abraham
- today
- kindness

ULT

¹² Then he said, " Yahweh, God of my master Abraham, please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham.

Genesis 24:13

Look, here I am standing

“You can see me standing here”

the spring of water

“the spring” or “the well”

the daughters of the men of the city

“the young women of the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- this spring of
- water
- water

ULT

¹³ Behold, I am standing by [this spring of water](#), and the daughters of the people of the city are coming out to draw [water](#).

Genesis 24:14

Let it happen like this

“Let it happen this way” or “Make this happen”

When I say to a young woman, ‘Please lower your pitcher so that I may drink,’

This is a quotation within a quotation. This can be expressed with an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “When I ask a young woman to let me have a drink of water from her jar” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Please lower your pitcher

The women carried the pitchers on their shoulder. She would have to lower it to give the man a drink.

pitcher

a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids

that you have shown covenant faithfulness to my master

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “been faithful.” Alternate translation: “that you have been faithful to the covenant you have with my master Abraham” or “you have been faithful to my master Abraham” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your camels](#)
- [you have appointed](#)
- [for your servant](#)
- [for Isaac](#)
- [I will know](#)
- [kindness](#)
- [my master](#)

ULT

14 And let it be that the young woman whom I say to her, 'Please let down your jar so that I may drink,' and she says, 'Drink and I will also water [your camels](#),' let her be the one [you have appointed for your servant, for Isaac](#). And by her [I will know](#) that you have shown [kindness](#) toward [my master](#)."

Genesis 24:15

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Rebekah was born to Bethuel son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, Abraham’s brother

“Rebekah’s father was Bethuel. Bethuel’s parents were Milkah and Nahor. Nahor was Abraham’s brother”

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah’s father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahor

This is the name of a man. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 11:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Milkah

Milkah was Nahor’s wife and Bethuel’s mother. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 11:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rebekah](#)
- [was born](#)
- [to Bethuel](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Nahor](#)
- [the brother of](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

15 Then it happened before he had finished speaking, then behold [Rebekah](#) was coming out, who [was born to Bethuel, the son of Milkah, the wife of Nahor, the brother of Abraham](#). And her water jar was on her shoulder.

Genesis 24:16

She went down to the spring...and came up

The spring was somewhere lower in elevation than where the servant was standing.

Translation Words - ULT

- was...beautiful
- a...virgin
- had...known her

ULT

16 And the young woman was a very beautiful-looking virgin, and a man had not known her. And she went down to the spring, and filled her jar and came up.

Genesis 24:17

to meet her

“to meet the young woman”

a little drink of water

“a little water”

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servant](#)
- [Then...ran](#)

ULT

17 Then [the servant ran](#) to meet her and said, "Please let me drink a little water from your jar."

Genesis 24:18

my master

“sir.” Here the woman uses this term of respect to refer to the man, though she is not his slave.

she quickly let down her pitcher on her hand

“she quickly lowered her pitcher.” She was carrying the pitcher on her shoulder. She had to lower it to get water for the servant.

Translation Words - ULT

- my lord
- her hands

ULT

18 And she said, " Drink, [my lord](#)." Then she hurried and lowered her jar to [her hands](#) and gave him a drink.

Genesis 24:19

I will draw water

"I will get water"

Translation Words - ULT

- for your camels

ULT

¹⁹ And after she finished giving him a drink, then she said, "I will also draw water **for your camels** until they have finished drinking."

Genesis 24:20

So she hurried and emptied her pitcher

“So she quickly emptied her pitcher”

the trough

“the animals’ water trough.” A trough is a long open container for holding water for animals to drink.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the well](#)
- [his camels](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then she hurried and emptied her jar into the trough, and ran back to [the well](#) to draw water, and she drew water for all [his camels](#).

Genesis 24:21

The man

“The servant”

watched her

“watched Rebekah” or “watched the young woman”

to see

Learning something is often spoken of as if it were seeing. Alternate translation: “to know” or “to determine” (See: [Metaphor](#))

had prospered his journey

“had fulfilled the purpose of his journey” or “had made his journey successful.” You can make explicit what specifically the servant was trying to determine. Alternate translation: “was showing him the woman who would become Isaac’s wife” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

or not

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: “or not prospered his journey” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to know
- whether...had made...succeed
- Yahweh

ULT

²¹ And the man watched her silently to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not.

Genesis 24:22

a gold nose ring weighing half a shekel

“a gold nose ring that weighed six grams.” The weight indicates the value of the ring. Alternate translation: “an expensive gold nose ring” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

two gold bracelets for her arms weighing ten shekels

“two gold bracelets for her arms that weighed 110 grams.” The weight shows their size and value. Alternate translation: “two large gold bracelets for her arms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

²² Then it happened, when [the camels](#) had finished drinking, then the man took out a [gold](#) nose ring, its weight was a beka, and two [gold](#) bracelets for [her arms](#), their weight was ten shekels.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the camels](#)
- [gold](#)
- [gold](#)
- [her arms](#)

Genesis 24:23**Whose daughter are you**

“Who is your father”

is there room in your father’s house

“is there a place in your father’s house”

for us

Apparently other men went on this journey with Abraham’s servant. Here “us” refers to the servant and those traveling with him, but not to those to whom he was speaking. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

to spend the night

“to stay tonight” or “to stay for the night”

Translation Words - ULT

- [at the house of](#)
- [your father](#)

ULT

²³ And he said, " Whose daughter are you? Please tell me. Is there a place [at the house of your father](#) for us to lodge?"

Genesis 24:24

She said

“Rebekah said” or “the young woman said”

to him

“to the servant”

I am the daughter of Bethuel son of Milkah, whom she bore to Nahor

“Bethuel is my father, and his parents are Milkah and Nahor”

Translation Words - ULT

- Bethuel
- am...the son of
- she bore
- for Nahor

ULT

²⁴ Then she said to him, "I am the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milkah, whom she bore for Nahor."

Genesis 24:25

We have plenty of both straw and feed

It is understood that the straw and feed are for the camels. You can make clear this understood information. Alternate translation: "We have plenty of straw and feed for the camels" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

for you to spend the night

"for you to stay tonight" or "where you can stay for the night"

for you

Here "you" refers to the servant and those traveling with him. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ULT

²⁵ Then she said to him, " Plenty of both straw and fodder are with us. There is also a place to lodge."

Genesis 24:26

the man

“the servant”

bowed down

This is a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...bowed down
- and prostrated himself
- before Yahweh

ULT

²⁶ Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh,

Genesis 24:27

has not forsaken his covenant faithfulness and his trustworthiness toward my master

“has not stopped showing his covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness to my master.” The abstract nouns “faithfulness” and “trustworthiness” can be stated as “to be faithful and trustworthy.” Alternate translation: “has not stopped being faithful to his covenant and trustworthy toward my master” or “has not stopped being faithful and trustworthy to my master” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

has not forsaken

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “continues to show” (See: [Litotes](#))

my master’s relatives

“my master’s family” or “my master’s clan”

Translation Words - ULT

- Praised be
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to the home of
- the relatives of
- the God of
- my master
- my master
- my master
- Abraham
- has...abandoned
- his kindness
- and his faithfulness

ULT

²⁷ and said, "Praised be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master. As for me, Yahweh has led me on the road to the home of the relatives of my master!"

Genesis 24:28

ran and told her mother's household

Here "household" stands for all the people living in her mother's house. Alternate translation: "ran to the house and told her mother and everyone there" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all of these things

"everything that had just happened"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then...ran](#)
- [and told](#)
- [the household of](#)

ULT

28 Then the young woman [ran and told the household of](#) her mother about those things.

Genesis 24:29

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Rebekah. The author introduces her brother, Laban, to the story. (See: [Background Information](#) and [Introduction of New and Old Participants](#))

ULT

²⁹ Now Rebekah had a brother and his name was Laban, and Laban ran to the man outside at the spring.

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Rebekah had
- a brother
- and his name
- was Laban
- Laban
- and...ran
- outside
- the spring

Genesis 24:30

When he had seen the nose ring...and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister

These things happened before he ran out to the man. This tells why Laban ran out to the man. (See: [Order of Events](#))

when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, "This is what the man said to me,"

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "when he had heard his sister Rebekah tell what the man had said to her" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

behold, he

The word "behold" here adds emphasis to what follows. "it was just as she had said: he"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the arms of](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [his sister](#)
- [the camels](#)
- [the spring](#)

ULT

³⁰ And it was when he had seen the nose ring, and the bracelets on [the arms of](#) his sister, and when he had heard the words of [Rebekah his sister](#) saying, 'This is what the man said to me,' then he went to the man, and behold he was standing by [the camels](#) at [the spring](#).

Genesis 24:31

Come, you

“Come in, you” or “Enter, you”

you blessed of Yahweh

“you whom Yahweh has blessed”

you

Here the word “you” refers to Abraham’s servant. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Why are you standing outside?

Laban used this question to invite Abraham’s servant into his house. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You do not need to stay outside.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blessed of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the house](#)
- [for the camels](#)

ULT

³¹ Then he said, " Come, [blessed of Yahweh](#). Why are you standing out here? For I have prepared [the house](#) and a place [for the camels](#)."

Genesis 24:32

So the man came to the house

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

he unloaded the camels

It is not clear who did this work. This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Laban’s servants unloaded the camels” or “the camels were unloaded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³² So the man went [to the house](#). Then he unloaded [the camels](#) and gave straw and fodder [to the camels](#), and water [to wash](#) his feet and the feet of the men who were with him.

The camels were given straw and feed, and water was provided

This does not say who did the work. If you state this in active form use “Laban’s servants” as the subject. Alternate translation: “Laban’s servants gave straw and feed to the camels, and they provided water” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to wash his feet...him

“for Abraham’s servant and the men who were with him to wash their feet”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the house](#)
- [the camels](#)
- [to the camels](#)
- [and water](#)
- [to wash](#)

Genesis 24:33

They set

Here, the word “they” refers to Laban’s family members or to the household servants.

set food before him

“gave food to the servant”

said what I have to say

“spoken my words” or “told you why I am here”

ULT

³³ Then food was set before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have spoken my words." So he said, " Speak."

Genesis 24:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a servant of
- Abraham

ULT

³⁴ Then he said, "I am a servant of Abraham."

Genesis 24:35

he has become great

Here the word “he” refers to Abraham.

become great

“become very wealthy”

He has given

The word “he” refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- And Yahweh
- has...blessed
- and donkeys
- my master
- flocks
- and herds
- and silver
- and gold
- and men slaves
- and women slaves
- and camels

ULT

³⁵ And Yahweh has greatly blessed my master so that he has become great. And he has given him flocks and herds, and silver and gold, and men slaves and women slaves, and camels and donkeys.

Genesis 24:36

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

bore a son to my master

"gave birth to a son"

he has given...to him

"my master has given...to his son"

Translation Words - ULT

- Sarah
- my master
- for my master
- And...bore
- a son

ULT

³⁶ And Sarah, the wife of my master, bore a son for my master after her old age, and he has given to him everything that belongs to him.

Genesis 24:37

My master made me swear, saying

“My master made me swear that I would do what he told me to do. He said”

from the daughters of the Canaanites

This refers to Canaanite females. Alternate translation: “from the Canaanite women” or “from the Canaanites”

in whose land I make my home

“among whom I live.” Here, “I” stands for Abraham and all of his family and servants. Alternate translation: “among whom we live” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

37 And [my master made me swear](#) by saying, 'You must not take a wife [for my son](#) from the daughters of [the Canaanites whose land](#) I am living [in](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)
- [And...made me swear](#)
- [for my son](#)
- [the Canaanites](#)
- [whose land...in](#)

Genesis 24:38

to my relatives

“to my own clan”

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- my father
- my clan
- for my son

ULT

³⁸ but rather you must go to [the house of my father](#), and to [my clan](#), and take a wife [for my son](#).'

Genesis 24:39

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

Perhaps the woman will not follow me.

This is something that could possibly happen. Alternate translation: "What if the woman will not come back with me?" or "What should I do if the woman will not come back with me?" (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my master](#)

ULT

³⁹ Then I said to [my master](#), 'Suppose the woman will not come with me?'

Genesis 24:40

before whom I walk

Serving Yahweh is spoken of as if Abraham were walking in Yahweh's presence. Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will prosper your way

"he will make your journey successful"

family line

"family"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [will send](#)
- [his angel](#)
- [and make...succeed](#)
- [for my son](#)
- [from my clan](#)
- [and from the house of](#)
- [my father](#)

ULT

40 And he said to me, 'Yahweh, whom I walk before, [will send his angel](#) with you [and make](#) your journey [succeed](#), so that you will take a wife [for my son from my clan, and from the house of my father](#).

Genesis 24:41

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath

This is a hypothetical situation that Abraham did not think was likely to happen. Possible meanings are (1) "There is only one way for you to be free from my oath: if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you, then you will be free from my oath" or, (2) building on verse 40, "If you go to my father's family and ask for a girl, you will have done what I told you to do. If they will not give her to you, then you will be free from the oath you swore to me." (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

ULT

⁴¹ Then you will be clear [from my oath](#) when you go to [my clan](#). And if they will not give her to you, then you will be clear from [my oath](#).'

you will be free from my oath

"you will be released from the oath you made to me." Not having to fulfill an oath is spoken of as if the person is free from an object to which he was bound. Alternate translation: "you will not have to do what you swore to me that you would do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you come to my relatives

Languages use the words come and go differently. Alternate translation: "if you arrive at my relatives' home" or "if you go to my relatives" (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from my oath](#)
- [my oath](#)
- [my clan](#)

Genesis 24:42

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

the spring

"the well"

Translation Words - ULT

- today
- the spring
- Yahweh
- God of
- my master
- Abraham
- make...succeed

ULT

42 " Then **today** I came to **the spring**, and I said, 'Yahweh, **God of my master Abraham**, if it is your will, please **make** my journey **succeed** that I have come on.

Genesis 24:43

let the young woman who comes...the woman to whom I say

The servant goes back to stating his request. These are the first two things he has to say about the woman whom he hopes will come.

to draw water

“to get water”

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- of water
- water
- the young woman

ULT

⁴³ Behold, I am standing by this spring of water. And let it be that the young woman who comes out to draw water and I say to her, "Please give me a little water to drink from your jar,"

Genesis 24:44

the woman who says to me, “Drink...camels”

The thought that begins with the words “let the young woman who comes” in verse 43 ends here. This is the third of the three things the servant has to say about the woman whom he hopes will come.

let her be the woman

The servant finishes his request.

Translation Words - ULT

- for your camels
- Yahweh
- has chosen
- for the son of
- my master

ULT

⁴⁴ and she says to me, " Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels," let her be the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master.'

Genesis 24:45

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

speaking in my heart

To pray silently in one's mind is spoken of as if he were speaking in his heart. The word "heart" refers to his thoughts and his mind. Alternate translation: "praying" or "praying quietly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

behold, Rebekah came

"suddenly Rebekah came" or "I was surprised because I saw Rebekah coming"

pitcher

This is a medium-size jar made of clay used for holding and pouring liquids. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:14](#).

she went down to the spring

The phrase "went down" is used because the spring was somewhere lower than where the servant was standing.

spring

opening in the ground from which fresh water comes

Translation Words - ULT

- [my heart](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [to the spring](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ "Before I had finished speaking in [my heart](#), then behold [Rebekah](#) was coming out and her jar was on her shoulder, and she went down [to the spring](#) and drew water. Then I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'

Genesis 24:46

watered the camels

“gave water to the camels”

Translation Words - ULT

- your camels
- the camels

ULT

⁴⁶ And she hurried and lowered her jar from her and said, 'Drink and I will also water **your camels**.' So I drank, and she also watered **the camels**.

Genesis 24:47

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

The daughter of Bethuel, Nahor's son, whom Milkah bore to him

"My father is Bethuel. His parents are Nahor and Milkah"

ring...bracelets

In this story, all of these items were made of gold. See how you translated these in [Genesis 24:22](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bethuel](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [Nahor](#)
- [bore](#)
- [her arms](#)

ULT

47 Then I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter are you?' And she said, 'The daughter of [Bethuel, a son of Nahor](#) whom Milcah [bore](#) for him.' Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on [her arms](#),

Genesis 24:48

I bowed down

This is a sign of humility before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

led me by the right way

“brought me here”

who had led me

The connecting word “because” can be used to show this is why the servant worshiped God. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh led me” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

my master’s relative

This refers to Bethuel, the son of Abraham’s brother Nahor.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I bowed down](#)
- [and prostrated myself](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [for his son](#)
- [before Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and I praised](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [my master](#)
- [my master](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [right](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ and I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh and I praised Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who led me on the right way to take the daughter of my master's brother for his son.

Genesis 24:49

General Information:

Abraham's servant continues speaking to Rebekah's family.

Now therefore

"Now." Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

ULT

49 And now if it is your will to show kindness and faithfulness to my master, tell me, and if not, tell me, so that I will turn to the right or to the left."

if you are prepared to show covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness to my master, tell me

How they could show the covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "tell me if you will be faithful and trustworthy to my master by giving Rebekah to be his son's wife" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you

The word "you" refers to Laban and Bethuel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

faithfulness and trustworthiness

These abstract nouns can be stated as "faithful and trustworthy." (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

But if not

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But if you are not prepared to treat my master with family faithfulness and trustworthiness" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

so that I may turn to the right hand or to the left

Possible meanings are (1) deciding what to do is spoken of as if the person will physically turn one direction or another. Alternate translation: "so that I will know what do" or (2) the servant wants to know if he needs to travel somewhere else. Alternate translation: "so that I may continue on my journey" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- kindness
- and faithfulness
- to my master

Genesis 24:50

Bethuel

This was the father of Laban and Rebekah.

The thing has come from Yahweh

“Yahweh has caused all of this to happen”

we cannot speak to you either bad or good

They are saying they do not have the authority to decide whether what God has done is good or bad. Alternate translation: “we dare not judge what Yahweh is doing” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [and Bethuel](#)
- [from Yahweh](#)
- [bad](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Then [Laban and Bethuel](#) answered and said, " The thing has come [from Yahweh](#); we are not able to tell you [bad](#) or [good](#)."

Genesis 24:51

Look, Rebekah is

“You can see Rebekah here”

Rebekah is before you

“Here is Rebekah”

Translation Words - ULT

- Rebekah
- of the son of
- your master
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵¹ Behold, [Rebekah](#) is before you. Take her and go, and let her be the wife of [the son of your master](#), as [Yahweh](#) has spoken.”

Genesis 24:52

their words

“what Laban and Bethuel said”

he bowed himself down

Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant of
- Abraham
- then he bowed down
- to the ground
- before Yahweh

ULT

⁵² Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words, then he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh.

Genesis 24:53

articles of silver and articles of gold

“silver and gold items” or “things made of silver and gold”

precious gifts

“expensive gifts” or “valuable gifts”

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant
- Then...brought out
- silver
- gold
- to Rebekah
- and...valuable things
- to her brother

ULT

⁵³ Then the servant brought out jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah, and he gave valuable things to her brother and to her mother.

Genesis 24:54

he and the men who were with him

“Abraham’s servant and his men”

stayed there overnight

“slept there that night”

arose in the morning

“got up the next morning”

Send me away

“Let me leave and return”

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...they got up
- Send me
- to my master

ULT

⁵⁴ Then he and the men who were with him ate and drank and lodged. Then in the morning they got up, and he said, "Send me to my master."

Genesis 24:55

a few more days, at least ten

“at least ten more days”

After that

“Then”

Translation Words - ULT

- her brother
- a few days

ULT

⁵⁵ But her brother and her mother said,
" Let the young woman stay with us a
few days, at least ten. After that she will
go."

Genesis 24:56**he said**

“Abraham’s servant said”

to them

“to Rebekah’s brother and mother”

Do not hinder me

“Do not delay me” or “Do not make me wait”

Yahweh has prospered my way

Here “way” stands for a journey. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has caused me to succeed in the purpose my journey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Send me on my way

“Allow me to leave”

Translation Words - ULT

- [since Yahweh](#)
- [has made...succeed](#)
- [Send me off](#)
- [to my master](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ But he said to them, "Do not detain me, [since Yahweh has made](#) my journey [succeed](#). [Send me off](#) so that I will go [to my master](#)."

Genesis 24:57

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let's call](#)

ULT

⁵⁷ Then they said, " [Let's call](#) for the young woman and ask her mouth."

Genesis 24:58

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- So they called
- for Rebekah

ULT

⁵⁸ So they called for Rebekah and said to her, "Will you go with this man?" And she said, " I will go."

Genesis 24:59

So they sent their sister Rebekah

“So the family sent Rebekah”

their sister

Rebekah was Laban’s sister. Alternate translation: “their relative” or “Laban’s sister”

her female servant

This refers to the female servant who had fed Rebekah when she was a baby, cared for her when she was a child, and still served her.

Translation Words - ULT

- Then they sent off
- Rebekah
- their sister
- the servant of
- Abraham

ULT

⁵⁹ Then they sent off Rebekah their sister and her nurse and the servant of Abraham and his men.

Genesis 24:60

Our sister

Rebekah was not the sister to everyone in her family. But they called her this to show that they loved her. Alternate translation: "Our dear Rebekah"

may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands

Here "mother" stands for ancestor. Alternate translation: "may you be the ancestor of millions of people" or "may you have very many descendants"

thousands of ten thousands

This means a very large number or an uncountable number. (See: [Numbers](#))

may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them

Armies would break through the gate of their enemies' cities and conquer the people. Alternate translation: "may your descendants completely defeat those who hate them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they blessed](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [Our sister](#)
- [and may...possess](#)
- [your offspring](#)
- [the gates of](#)
- [those who hate them](#)

ULT

60 [And they blessed Rebekah](#) and said to her, "[Our sister](#), may you become thousands of myriads, [and may your offspring possess the gates of those who hate them!](#)"

Genesis 24:61

Then Rebekah arose, and she and her servant girls mounted the camels

“Then Rebekah and her servant girls went and got on the camels”

Thus the servant took Rebekah, and went his way

“In this way Abraham’s servant took Rebekah with him and returned to where he had come from”

ULT

⁶¹ Then [Rebekah got up](#) and her maids, and they mounted [the camels](#) and went with the man. So [the servant](#) took [Rebekah](#) and left.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rebekah](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [Then...got up](#)
- [the camels](#)
- [the servant](#)

Genesis 24:62

Now

This word marks a change in the story. It was telling about the servant finding a wife, and now it will tell about Isaac.

Beer Lahai Roi

This is the name of a water well in the Negev. See how you translated it in [Genesis 16:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Meanwhile Isaac](#)
- [in the land of](#)
- [the Negev](#)

ULT

⁶² [Meanwhile Isaac](#) came from going to Beer Lahai Roi, and he was living [in the land of the Negev](#).

Genesis 24:63

Isaac went out to meditate in the field in the evening

“One evening Isaac went out to the field to think.” This must have been a long time after the servant and Rebekah left her home since they had to travel a long distance.

ULT

⁶³ And Isaac went to meditate in the field as it was turning toward evening, and he lifted his eyes and saw that behold, camels were coming.

When he looked up and saw, behold, there were camels coming!

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. “When he looked up he was surprised to see camels coming”

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- to meditate
- camels

Genesis 24:64

Rebekah looked

“Rebekah looked up”

she jumped down from the camel

“she quickly got off the camel”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rebekah](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [the camel](#)

ULT

⁶⁴ And [Rebekah](#) lifted her eyes and saw [Isaac](#). Then she dismounted from [the camel](#),

Genesis 24:65

So she took her veil, and covered herself

“So she covered her face with her veil.” This is a sign of respect and modesty towards the man she will marry. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

veil

a piece of cloth used to cover a person’s head, shoulders and face

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant
- the servant
- is my master
- the veil

ULT

⁶⁵ and she said to the servant, " Who is that man in the field who is coming to meet us?" And the servant said, "He is my master." So she took the veil and covered herself.

Genesis 24:66

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the servant
- to Isaac

ULT

⁶⁶ Then the servant reported to Isaac all the things that he had done.

Genesis 24:67

took Rebekah, and she became his wife

Both of these phrases mean that Isaac married Rebekah. Alternate translation: “married Rebekah” or “took her as his wife” (See: [Doublet](#))

So Isaac was comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “So Rebekah comforted Isaac” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- Isaac
- into the tent of
- Sarah
- Rebekah
- And...loved her
- and he was comforted

ULT

67 Then Isaac brought her into the tent of Sarah his mother, and he took Rebekah, and she became a wife to him. And Isaac loved her and he was comforted after his mother.

Genesis 25

Genesis 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 25:23.

Special concepts in this chapter

Polygamy

Abraham married another wife. This was sinful of him. Many other Hebrew leaders came to marry multiple wives. This is known as “polygamy.” It has never been an acceptable practice. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Inheritance

In the ancient Near East, inheritance was passed on through the eldest son. Even though Esau and Jacob were twins, it is very important that Esau was born first. It was his birthright to receive his inheritance, but he foolishly gave it up. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [birthright](#) and [fool](#), [foolish](#), [folly](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

God fulfill's his promise

God begins to fulfill the promise he gave to Abraham about making his descendants numerous. Many of these children through his concubines would become large people groups. This may not be easy to understand without the remainder of the Old Testament and the history it records. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 25:1

General Information:

See [How to Translate Names](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Abraham](#) added and took a wife, and her name was Keturah.

Genesis 25:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [And she bore](#)
- [Midian](#)

ULT

² [And she bore](#) for him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and [Midian](#), and Ishbak, and Shuah.

Genesis 25:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Sheba
- And the descendants of
- the Asshurim

ULT

³ And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurim, and the Letushim, and the Leummim.

Genesis 25:4

All these

This refers to the people named in verses 2-4.

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of
- the descendants of
- Midian
- and Hanoch

ULT

⁴ And the sons of Midian were Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoch, and Abida, and Eldaah. All of those were the descendants of Keturah.

Genesis 25:5

Abraham gave all that he owned to Isaac

“Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned.” It was normal for the father to divide his wealth when he was old and not leave that for others to do after he died.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- to Isaac

ULT

⁵ And Abraham gave everything that belonged to him to Isaac.

Genesis 25:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And to the sons of
- his son
- the concubines
- Isaac
- belonged to Abraham
- Abraham
- gifts
- he was...alive
- and...he sent them...away
- the land of

ULT

⁶ And to the sons of the concubines who belonged to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts, and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem, away from Isaac his son.

Genesis 25:7

These were the days of the years of Abraham's life which he lived, 175 years

"These were...he lived, one hundred and seventy-five years."
Abraham lived 175 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the days of](#)
- [the years of](#)
- [175 years](#)
- [175 years](#)
- [175 years](#)
- [the life of](#)
- [he lived](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

⁷ And these are [the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years.](#)

Genesis 25:8

Abraham breathed his last and died

“Abraham took his last breath and died.” The phrases “breathed his last” and “died” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “Abraham died” (See: [Doublet](#))

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

at a good old age, an old man with a full life

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Abraham lived a very long time. Alternate translation: “when he had lived a very long time and was very old” (See: [Doublet](#))

an old man with a full life

Living a long life is spoken of as if life were a container that becomes full. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he was gathered to his people

This means that after Abraham died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he joined his family members who had already died” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [and died](#)
- [good](#)

ULT

⁸ Then [Abraham](#) exhaled [and died](#) at a [good](#) old age, elderly and full, and he was gathered to his people.

Genesis 25:9

the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron

Ephron owned a field in Machpelah and the cave that was in that field. Abraham bought the field from Ephron.

Machpelah

Machpelah was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephron...Zohar

These are names of men. See how you translated these men's names in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

which is near Mamre

Machpela was near Mamre.

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this place name in [Genesis 23:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [and Ishmael](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Then...buried](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

ULT

⁹ Then [Isaac and Ishmael his sons](#) [buried](#) him in the cave of Machpelah, in the field of Ephron [the son of Zohar the Hittite](#), which was before Mamre,

Genesis 25:10

This field Abraham had bought

“Abraham had bought this field”

sons of Heth

“the descendants of Heth” or “the Hittites.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:5](#).

Abraham was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They buried Abraham” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham \(2\)](#)
- [Heth](#)
- [was buried](#)
- [and Sarah](#)

ULT

¹⁰ the field that [Abraham](#) had bought from the sons of [Heth](#). There [Abraham was buried](#), and [Sarah](#) his wife.

Genesis 25:11

Beer Lahai Roi

This name means “the well of the living one who sees me.” See how you translated this place name in [Genesis 16:14](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the death of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [God](#)
- [then...blessed](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [his son](#)

ULT

11 And it happened after [the death of Abraham](#), then [God blessed Isaac his son](#), and [Isaac](#) lived near Beer Lahai Roi.

Genesis 25:12

Now

This word is used in English to introduce a new part of the story and information about Ishmael.

Translation Words - ULT

- the generations of
- Ishmael
- the son of
- Abraham
- for Abraham
- Hagar
- the Egyptian
- the maidservant of
- Sarah
- had born

ULT

¹² Now these are the generations of Ishmael the son of Abraham, whom Hagar the Egyptian, the maidservant of Sarah, had born for Abraham.

Genesis 25:13

General Information:

See [How to Translate Names](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the names of
- by their names
- the sons of
- Ishmael
- Ishmael
- according to their births
- the firstborn of
- then Kedar

ULT

¹³ And these are the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names according to their births: the firstborn of Ishmael was Nebaioth, then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,

Genesis 25:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁴ and Mishma, and Dumah, and Massa,

Genesis 25:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁵ Hadad, and Tema, Jetur, Naphish and Kedermah.

Genesis 25:16

These were Ishmael's sons, and these were their names, by their villages, and by their encampments; twelve princes according to their tribes

This can be stated as two sentences. "These were the names of Ishmael's twelve sons. They led tribes that were named after them, and they each had their own villages and campsites"

twelve

"12" (See: [Numbers](#))

princes

Here the word "princes" means that the men were leaders or rules of the tribes; it does not mean that they were the sons of a king.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Ishmael](#)
- [their names](#)
- [by their settlements](#)
- [rulers](#)
- [according to their tribes](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Those were [the sons of Ishmael](#), and those are [their names by their settlements](#) and by their camps, twelve [rulers according to their tribes](#).

Genesis 25:17

These were the years of the life of Ishmael, 137 years

“These were...Ishmael, one hundred and thirty-seven years.”
Ishmael lived 137 years. (See: [Numbers](#))

breathed his last and died

The terms “breathed his last” and “died” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “died” (See: [Doublet](#))

was gathered to his people

This means that after Ishmael died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he joined his family members who had already died” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the years of](#)
- [137 years](#)
- [137 years](#)
- [137 years](#)
- [the life of](#)
- [Ishmael](#)
- [and died](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And these are [the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years](#). Then he exhaled [and died](#), and was gathered to his people.

Genesis 25:18

They lived

“His descendants settled”

from Havilah to Ashhur

“between Havilah and Ashhur”

Havilah

Havilah was located somewhere in the Arabian Desert. See how you translated this in [Genesis 2:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

as one goes toward

“in the direction of”

They lived in hostility with each other

Possible meanings are (1) “they did not live in peace together,” or (2) “they lived away from their other relatives.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)
- [Asshur](#)
- [his brothers](#)

ULT

18 And they settled from Havilah to Shur that is near [Egypt](#) as you go toward [Asshur](#). He fell in the face of all [his brothers](#).

Genesis 25:19

These were the events concerning Isaac, Abraham's son

This sentence introduces the account of Isaac's descendants in Genesis 25:19-35:29. Alternate translation: "This is the account of the descendants of Isaac, Abraham's son" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁹ And these are [the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham: Abraham](#) fathered [Isaac](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [the generations of](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)

Genesis 25:20**forty years old**

“40 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

when he took as his wife Rebekah

“when he married Rebekah”

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah’s father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [years](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [Bethuel](#)
- [the Aramean](#)
- [the Aramean](#)
- [from Paddan](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [the sister of](#)
- [Laban](#)

ULT

²⁰ then [Isaac](#) was a son of 40 years when he took [Rebekah](#) for himself as a wife, the daughter of [Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram](#), the sister of [Laban the Aramean](#).

Genesis 25:21

she was childless

“she was unable to become pregnant”

Rebekah his wife conceived

It can be made explicit that Rebekah was pregnant with two babies at the same time: “Rebekah, his wife, became pregnant with twins” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²¹ And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she was barren. So Yahweh was entreated by him, and Rebekah his wife conceived.

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- And...entreated
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- was barren
- Rebekah
- and...conceived

Genesis 25:22

The children struggled together within her

“the babies inside her kept bumping against each other” or “The babies pushed against each other within her”

The children...within her

Rebekah was pregnant with twins. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

She went to ask Yahweh about this

“She went and asked Yahweh about this.” It is not clear where she went. She may have gone somewhere private to pray, or she may have gone somewhere to offer a sacrifice.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the children](#)
- [to inquire of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²² And [the children](#) struggled against each other inside her, so she said, "Why is this so? Why am I like this?" And she went [to inquire of Yahweh](#).

Genesis 25:23

said to her

“said to Rebekah”

Two nations...serve the younger

This is poetic language. If your language has a way to indicate poetry, you could use it here. (See: [Poetry](#))

Two nations are in your womb

Here “two nations” stands for the two children. Each child will be the father of a nation. Alternate translation: “Two nations will come from the twins within you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

two peoples will be separated from within you

Here “two peoples” stands for the two children. Each child will be the father of a people. This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: “when you give birth to these two children they will be rivals” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the older will serve the younger

Possible meanings are (1) “the older son will serve the younger son” or (2) “the descendants of the older son will serve the descendants of the younger son.” If possible, translate it so that people could understand either meaning.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [nations](#)
- [are inside your womb](#)
- [peoples](#)
- [And one people](#)
- [than the other people](#)
- [will be stronger](#)
- [will serve](#)

ULT

²³ And [Yahweh](#) said to her, " Two [nations are inside your womb](#), and two [peoples](#) will be divided from inside your womb. [And one people will be stronger than the other people](#), and the older [will serve](#) the younger."

Genesis 25:24

behold, there

“she was surprised to learn that there”

Translation Words - ULT

- her days
- to deliver
- were inside her womb

ULT

²⁴ Then her days were fulfilled to deliver, and behold, twins were inside her womb.

Genesis 25:25

red all over like a hairy garment

Possible meanings are (1) his skin was red and he had a lot of hair on his body or (2) he had a lot of red hair on his body. Alternate translation: "red and hairy like a garment made of animal hair" (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

²⁵ And the first came out red, all of him was like a garment of hair, [so they called his name Esau](#).

Esau

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Esau sounds like the word 'hairy.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [so they called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Esau](#)

Genesis 25:26

grasping Esau's heel

"holding the back part of Esau's foot"

Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.'"

sixty years old

"60 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his brother](#)
- [and his hand](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [so he called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [And Isaac](#)
- [was a son of](#)
- [years](#)
- [when she bore](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then after that, [his brother](#) came out [and his hand](#) was grabbing on to the heel of [Esau](#), [so he called his name Jacob](#). [And Isaac was a son of 60 years when she bore them](#).

Genesis 25:27

became a skillful hunter

“became good at hunting and killing animals for food”

a quiet man

“a peaceful man” or “a less active man”

who spent his time in the tents

This speaks about time as if it were a commodity that someone could spend. Alternate translation: “who remained in the tents much of the time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [who knew](#)
- [and Jacob](#)
- [among the tents](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then the boys grew up, and [Esau](#) became a man [who knew](#) hunting, a man of the field, [and Jacob](#) was a quiet man who stayed [among the tents](#).

Genesis 25:28

Now

This word is used to mark a change in focus, shifting from the story to background information about Isaac and Rebekah. (See: [Background Information](#))

Isaac loved

Here the word “loved” means “favored” or “preferred.”

because he ate the animals that he had hunted

“because he ate the animals that Esau had hunted” or “because he enjoyed eating the wild animal meat that Esau caught”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [And...loved](#)
- [loved](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [but Rebekah](#)
- [Jacob](#)

ULT

28 And [Isaac loved Esau](#), because he liked game meat in his mouth, [but Rebekah loved Jacob](#).

Genesis 25:29

Jacob cooked

Since this is the beginning of a story about something that happened one time, some translators may want to start it with a phrase like “One day, Jacob cooked” in a similar manner to the UST.

ULT

²⁹ Now [Jacob](#) was cooking stew, and [Esau](#) came in from the field and he was exhausted.

cooked some stew

“boiled some food” or “cooked some soup.” This stew was made of boiled lentils ([Genesis 25:34](#)).

he was weak from hunger

“he was weak because he was very hungry” or “he was very hungry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Esau](#)

Genesis 25:30

I am exhausted

"I am weak from hunger" or "I am very hungry"

Edom

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Edom means 'red.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Jacob
- they called
- his name
- Edom

ULT

³⁰ Then Esau said to Jacob, "Please let me devour some of that very red stuff because I am exhausted!" For that reason they called his name Edom.

Genesis 25:31

birthright

right as firstborn to inherit most of the father's wealth

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [On this day](#)
- [your birthright](#)

ULT

³¹ But [Jacob](#) said, " [On this day](#) sell your [birthright](#) to me."

Genesis 25:32

I am about to die

Esau was exaggerating to emphasize how hungry he was. Alternate translation: "I am so hungry I feel like I could die" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

What good is the birthright to me?

Esau used a question to emphasize that eating was more important than a birthright. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "My inheritance is no good to me if I die of hunger!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³² And Esau said, "Behold, I am about to die! So for what use is that to me, a birthright?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- to die
- a birthright

Genesis 25:33

First swear to me

What Jacob wanted Esau to swear can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "First swear to me that you will sell me your birthright" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [to Jacob](#)
- [Swear](#)
- [So he swore](#)
- [on this day](#)
- [his birthright](#)

ULT

³³ But [Jacob](#) said, " [Swear](#) to me [on this day!](#)" [So he swore](#) to him and sold [his birthright](#) to [Jacob](#).

Genesis 25:34

lentils

These are like beans, but their seeds are very small, round, and somewhat flat. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Esau despised his birthright

“Esau showed that he did not value his birthright”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Jacob](#)
- [to Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [bread](#)
- [and got up](#)
- [So...despised](#)
- [his birthright](#)

ULT

³⁴ [Then Jacob](#) gave to [Esau bread](#) and lentil stew, and he ate and drank, [and got up](#) and left. [So Esau despised his birthright](#).

Genesis 26

Genesis 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

When things in the land were bad, Isaac did not trust in Yahweh. Instead, he ran to the safety of Egypt. Even when Abraham's descendants did not trust in Yahweh's faithfulness to fulfill his covenant, Yahweh remained faithful to his covenant and blessed Isaac. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#) and [covenant](#))

Wells

In the ancient Near East, wells were very important strategically. Therefore, they were a sign of power and a sign of God's blessing being upon Isaac.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"She is my sister"

Isaac was afraid the Egyptians would see him as a foreigner and upon seeing his beautiful wife, they would try to kill him. This would free Rebekah to marry someone else. Apparently, it would have been easy for them to kill a foreigner without punishment. If she was Isaac's sister, they would have shown favor to him. This is the same thing his father, Abraham, did. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 26:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

a famine happened

“there was a famine” or “there was another famine”

in the land

You can state explicitly the land to which this refers. Alternate translation: “in the land where Isaac and his family lived” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

that had been in the days of Abraham

“that had happened during Abraham’s life” or “that had happened while Abraham was alive”

Translation Words - ULT

- a famine
- the...famine
- in the land
- in the days of
- Abraham
- Isaac
- Abimelech
- the king of
- the Philistines
- in Gerar

ULT

¹ Then there was a famine in the land, besides the earlier famine that was in the days of Abraham. So Isaac went to Abimelech the king of the Philistines in Gerar.

Genesis 26:2

General Information:

Yahweh begins to speak to Isaac.

appeared to him

“appeared to Isaac”

Do not go down to Egypt

It was common to speak of leaving the promised land as “going down” to another place. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Egypt](#)
- [in the land](#)

ULT

² Then [Yahweh](#) appeared to him and said, "Do not go down [to Egypt](#); live [in the land](#) that I tell you.

Genesis 26:3

for to you and to your descendants, I will give all these lands

“for I will give all these lands to you and your descendants”

I will fulfill the oath that I swore to Abraham your father

“I will do what I promised Abraham your father I would do”

ULT

³ Sojourn in this land and I will be with you and I will bless you. For I will give to you and to your offspring all these lands, and I will confirm the oath that I swore to Abraham your father:

Translation Words - ULT

- in...land
- lands
- and I will bless you
- and to your offspring
- and I will confirm
- I swore
- to Abraham
- your father

Genesis 26:4

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Isaac.

I will multiply your descendants

“I will cause you to have very many descendants.”

like the stars of heaven

This speaks about the number of Isaac’s descendants as if they were the same as the number of stars. See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:17](#). (See: [Simile](#))

heaven

This refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars.

all the nations of the earth will be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will bless all the nations of the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [that I will multiply](#)
- [your offspring](#)
- [to your offspring](#)
- [and through your Offspring](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [lands](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the nations of](#)
- [will be blessed](#)

ULT

⁴ [that I will multiply your offspring](#) as the stars of [the heavens](#), and I will give [to your offspring](#) all these [lands](#), and [through your Offspring](#) all the nations of the earth will be [blessed](#),

Genesis 26:5

Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws

The phrases “obeyed my voice” and “kept my instructions, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws” mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: “Abraham obeyed me and did everything I commanded him to do” (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

⁵ because Abraham obeyed my voice and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees and my laws.”

obeyed my voice

Here “voice” stands for Yahweh. Alternate translation: “obeyed me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- my voice
- and kept
- my commands
- my decrees
- and my laws

Genesis 26:6

So Isaac settled in Gerar

Only Isaac is mentioned because he is the leader of the family, but his whole family was with him. Alternate translation: "So Isaac and his family settled in Gerar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- in Gerar

ULT

⁶ So Isaac stayed in Gerar.

Genesis 26:7

He feared to say

Here “fear” refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others. “He was afraid to say”

to get Rebekah

“in order to take Rebekah”

Translation Words - ULT

- my sister
- he was afraid
- might kill me
- Rebekah
- beautiful in

ULT

7 Then the men of the place asked about his wife, and he said, " She is **my sister**," because **he was afraid** to say, "She is my wife." He thought, " The men of the place **might kill me** on account of **Rebekah** because she is **beautiful in** appearance."

Genesis 26:8

He saw, behold, Isaac

The word “behold” shows that what Abimelech saw surprised him.
Alternate translation: “And he was surprised to see that Isaac”

was caressing Rebekah

Possible meanings are (1) he was touching her the way a husband touches his wife or (2) he was laughing and talking with her the way a husband talks with his wife.

Translation Words - ULT

- the days
- Abimelech
- the king of
- the Philistines
- Isaac
- Rebekah

ULT

⁸ Then it happened when the days had been long for him there, then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down from a window and saw that behold, Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife.

Genesis 26:9

Abimelech called Isaac to him

Abimelech probably sent someone to tell Isaac that Abimelech wanted to see him. Alternate translation: "Abimelech sent someone to bring Isaac to him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why did you say, 'She is my sister'?

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Why did you say that she is your sister?" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to get her

"so he could take her"

Translation Words - ULT

- [So...called](#)
- [Abimelech](#)
- [for Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [my sister](#)
- [I...die](#)

ULT

⁹ So Abimelech called for Isaac and said, "Behold she is really your wife! So how could you say, 'She is my sister'?" And Isaac said to him, " Because I said, 'I might die because of her.' "

Genesis 26:10

What is this you have done to us?

Abimelech used this question to scold Isaac. Alternate translation: "You should not have done this to us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

might easily have lain with your wife

The word "lain" here is a euphemism for "had sexual relations." (See: [Euphemism](#))

you would have brought guilt upon us

This speaks about causing someone to be guilty as if "guilt" were an object that is placed on someone. Alternate translation: "you would have caused us to be guilty of taking a man's wife" (See: [Metaphor](#))

upon us

Here "us" refers to Abimelech and his people. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [the people](#)
- [might...have lain](#)
- [guilt](#)

ULT

10 Then [Abimelech](#) said, "What is this you have done to us? One of [the people](#) might easily [have lain](#) with your wife, and you would have brought [guilt](#) on us!"

Genesis 26:11

Whoever touches this man

Here “touches” means to touch in a harmful way. Alternate translation: “Whoever harms this man” (See: [Idiom](#))

will surely be put to death

Abimelech may have intended to tell someone to kill anyone who might harm Isaac or Rebekah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will put him to death” or “I will order my men to kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

11 Then [Abimelech](#) [ordered](#) all [the people](#) by saying, " Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely [be killed!](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [Then...ordered](#)
- [the people](#)
- [will...be killed](#)

Genesis 26:12

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story. It changes from telling about Isaac calling Rebekah his sister, and it starts to tell about how Isaac became very rich and the Philistines were jealous of him.

in that land

“in Gerar”

a hundredfold

This means “one hundred times as much as he planted.” It can be translated more generally as “a very large crop.” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [Then...sowed seeds](#)
- [in...land](#)
- [in...year](#)
- [and...he acquired](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and...blessed him](#)

ULT

¹² Then [Isaac sowed seeds](#) in that [land](#), and in that [year he acquired](#) a hundredfold, and [Yahweh blessed him](#).

Genesis 26:13

The man became rich

“Isaac became rich” or “He became rich”

grew more and more until he became very great

“he gained more and more until he became very wealthy”

ULT

¹³ And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater until he was exceedingly great.

Genesis 26:14

sheep

This may also include goats. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a large household

Here “household” stands for workers or servants. Alternate translation: “many servants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The Philistines envied him

“The Philistines were jealous of him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [flocks](#)
- [herds](#)
- [and...servants](#)
- [So...envied](#)
- [the Philistines](#)

ULT

14 And he had possession of [flocks](#) and possession of [herds](#) and many [servants](#).
[So the Philistines envied](#) him,

Genesis 26:15

Now

Here this word does not mean “at this moment.” It is indicating where the action in the story begins. It can be translated with the connecting word “So” to show that this is a result of what happened in [Genesis 26:12-14](#). (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

in the days of Abraham his father

The phrase “in the days of” stands for a person’s lifetime. Alternate translation: “when Abraham, his father, was living” or “during his father Abraham’s lifetime”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Philistines](#)
- [the wells](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father](#)
- [in the days of](#)
- [Abraham](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and [the Philistines](#) stopped up all [the wells](#) that [the servants of his father](#) had dug [in the days of Abraham his father](#) and filled them with dirt.

Genesis 26:16

Abimelech said

Possible meanings are (1) this is another action to force Isaac and his people to leave. Alternate translation: "Then Abimelech said" or "Finally Abimelech said" or (2) Abimelech made this decision because he saw that his people were jealous and acting in a hostile way towards Isaac. Alternate translation: "Therefore Abimelech said" (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

much mightier than we

"much stronger than we are"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abimelech](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [you are...powerful](#)

ULT

16 Then [Abimelech](#) said to [Isaac](#), "Go away from us, because [you are](#) more [powerful](#) than we are."

Genesis 26:17

So Isaac departed

Only Isaac is mentioned because he is the leader, but his family and servants went with him. Alternate translation: "So Isaac and his household left" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- Gerar

ULT

17 So Isaac went from there and camped in the Valley of Gerar and settled there.

Genesis 26:18

Isaac dug out

Here “Isaac” stands for Isaac and his servants. Alternate translation: “Isaac and his servants dug out” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

which they had dug

“which Abraham’s servants had dug”

in the days of Abraham his father

“during his father Abraham’s lifetime” or “when Abraham, his father, was living”

The Philistines had stopped them up

This was the reason that Isaac dug them out. Possible ways to translate this are: (1) Since this happened first, this sentence can come before the sentence about Isaac digging them out, as in the UST. or (2) This sentence can start with “Isaac did this because the Philistines had stopped them up.” (See: [Order of Events](#))

had stopped them up

“had filled them with earth”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [Then...again](#)
- [and he called](#)
- [had called](#)
- [names](#)
- [like the names](#)
- [water](#)
- [the...wells](#)
- [in the days of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father](#)
- [the Philistines](#)
- [the death of](#)

ULT

18 Then [Isaac again](#) dug out the [water wells](#) that they had dug [in the days of Abraham his father](#) and that [the Philistines](#) had stopped up after [the death of Abraham](#), and he called them [names like the names](#) that [his father](#) had called them.

Genesis 26:19

flowing water

This phrase refers to a natural spring they uncovered when they were digging a new well. It provided a continuous flow of fresh drinking water. Alternate translation: "fresh water" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the servants of](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [a well of](#)
- [water](#)

ULT

19 Then [the servants of Isaac](#) dug in the valley and found [a well of living water](#) there.

Genesis 26:20

herdsmen

men who tended livestock

This water is ours

Here “ours” refers to the herdsmen of Gerar. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Esek

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Esek means ‘quarrel’ or ‘argue.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But...quarreled](#)
- [the herdsmen of](#)
- [the herdsmen of](#)
- [Gerar](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [The water](#)
- [So he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [the well](#)

ULT

²⁰ But the herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with the herdsmen of Isaac by saying, "The water belongs to us!" So he called the name of the well Esek, because they disputed with him.

Genesis 26:21

Then they dug

“Then Isaac’s servants dug”

they quarreled

“the herdsmen of Gerar argued with Isaac’s herdsmen”

so he gave it

“so Isaac gave it”

Sitnah

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name Sitnah means ‘oppose’ or ‘accuse.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- well
- but they quarreled
- so he called
- its name

ULT

²¹ Then they dug another well, but they quarreled over it too, so he called its name Sitnah.

Genesis 26:22

Rehoboth

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Rehoboth means 'make room for' or 'empty place.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

us...we

Isaac was speaking about himself and his household.

Translation Words - ULT

- [so he called](#)
- [its name](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and we will be fruitful](#)
- [in the land](#)

ULT

22 Then he moved from there and he dug another well, and they did not quarrel over it, [so he called its name Rehoboth](#) and he said, "Because now [Yahweh](#) has made space for us [and we will be fruitful in the land.](#)"

Genesis 26:23

Isaac went up from there to Beersheba

Here “went up” is probably a reference to going north. Say that he departed in the most natural way for your language. Alternate translation: “Isaac left there and went to Beersheba”

ULT

²³ Then from there he went up to Beersheba.

Translation Words - ULT

- to Beersheba
- to Beersheba

Genesis 26:24

multiply your descendants

“will cause your descendants to increase greatly” or “will cause your descendants to be very many”

for my servant Abraham’s sake

“for my servant Abraham” or you can make the full meaning explicit. Alternate translation: “because I promised my servant Abraham that I would do this” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁴ And [Yahweh](#) appeared to him during that night and said, " I am the God of [Abraham your father](#). Do not be afraid, because I am with you. And I will bless you and I will multiply your offspring for the sake of [Abraham my servant](#)."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [am the God of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [your father](#)
- [Do...be afraid](#)
- [And I will bless you](#)
- [and I will multiply](#)
- [your offspring](#)
- [my servant](#)

Genesis 26:25

Isaac built an altar there

You can make explicit why Isaac built an altar. Alternate translation: "Isaac built an altar there to sacrifice to Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

called on the name of Yahweh

To "call on" means to pray or to worship. Here "name" stands for Yahweh. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh" or "worshiped Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an altar
- and he called
- on the name of
- Yahweh
- his tents
- the servants of
- Isaac
- a well

ULT

²⁵ Then he built an altar there and he called on the name of Yahweh. And he pitched his tents there, and the servants of Isaac dug a well there.

Genesis 26:26

went to him

“went to Isaac”

Ahuzzath

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his friend

Possible meanings are (1) “Abimelech’s friend” or (2) “Abimelech’s advisor.”

Phicol

This is the name of a man. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 21:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Abimelech](#)
- [from Gerar](#)
- [his friend](#)
- [the commander of](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then [Abimelech](#) came to him from [Gerar](#), and Ahuzzath [his friend](#) and Phicol [the commander of](#) his army.

Genesis 26:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- and you sent me away

ULT

²⁷ And Isaac said to them, "Why have you come to me, since you hate me and you sent me away from you?"

Genesis 26:28

they said

This refers to Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol. One of them spoke and the other two agreed with what he said. It does not mean they all spoke at the same time. Alternate translation: "one of them said"

We have clearly seen

"We know" or "We are certain"

So let us make a covenant

"So we want to make a covenant"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- an oath
- a covenant

ULT

28 And they said, " We have clearly seen that **Yahweh** has been with you, so we said, 'There should be **an oath** between us' — between us and you. So let us cut **a covenant** with you,

Genesis 26:29

and as we have treated you well

This can also be translated as the beginning of a new sentence. "We have done only good to you"

you are blessed by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has blessed you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil
- good
- and sent you away
- in peace
- are blessed by
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁹ that you will not do evil against us, just as we did not touch you, and just as we did only good to you and sent you away in peace. Now you are blessed by Yahweh."

Genesis 26:30

Isaac made a feast for them, and they ate and drank

Eating a meal together was a part of making a covenant with one another. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for them

Here “them” refers to “Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol”

they ate

Here “they” refers to Isaac, Abimelech, Ahuzzath, and Phicol. Alternate translation: “they all ate”

Translation Words - ULT

- a feast

ULT

³⁰ Then he made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.

Genesis 26:31

They rose early

“They awoke early”

Translation Words - ULT

- and swore
- to each other
- Isaac
- Then...sent them on their way
- in peace

ULT

³¹ Then they got up early in the morning and swore to each other. Then Isaac sent them on their way, and they left from him in peace.

Genesis 26:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- on...day
- the servants of
- Isaac
- and told
- the well
- water

ULT

³² Then it happened on that day, the servants of Isaac came and told him about the matter of the well that they had been digging and said to him, "We have found water!"

Genesis 26:33

He called the well Shibah

“So he called the well Shibah.” Translators may add a footnote that says “The name Shibah sounds like the word that means ‘oath.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Beersheba

Translators may add a footnote saying “Beersheba can mean either “well of the oath” or “well of seven.” (See note on [Genesis 21:32](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [is Beersheba](#)
- [is Beersheba](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

³³ [So he called](#) it Shebah. For that reason [the name of](#) the city is [Beersheba](#) to this day.

Genesis 26:34

General Information:

Most of Genesis 26 was about Isaac. These verses are about his older son Esau.

forty

“40” (See: [Numbers](#))

he took a wife

“he married.” You can state explicitly that he married two women. Alternate translation: “he took two wives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Judith...Basemath

These are the names of Esau’s wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Beeri...Elon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Hittite

“the descendant of Heth” or “a descendant of Heth.” The Hittite people were the descendants of Heth. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [years](#)
- [the Hittite](#)
- [the Hittite](#)

ULT

³⁴ And [Esau](#) was a son of 40 [years](#), and he took a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri [the Hittite](#), and Basemath the daughter of Elon [the Hittite](#).

Genesis 26:35

They brought sorrow to Isaac and Rebekah

Here “they” refers to Judith and Basemath. To make someone sorrowful or miserable is spoken of as if “sorrow” were an object that a person could bring to another person. Alternate translation: “They made Isaac and Rebekah sorrowful” or “Isaac and Rebekah were miserable because of them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [mind](#)
- [to Isaac](#)
- [and Rebekah](#)

ULT

³⁵ And they were a grief of [mind to Isaac and Rebekah](#).

Genesis 27

Genesis 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 27:27-29 and in 27:39-40.

Special concepts in this chapter

Blessing

In the ancient Near East, a father's blessing was very important. This spoken blessing was legally binding. Jacob previously received the birthright from Esau and was guaranteed the double portion of land money that was supposed to be inherited by the older son, Esau. In this chapter, Jacob tricks Isaac into giving him Esau's blessing. This means that he is to inherit the promises of the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [birthright](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#) and [covenant](#))

Genesis 27:1

his eyes were dim

This speaks about being nearly blind as if the eyes were a lamp and the light has nearly gone out. Alternate translation: "he was nearly blind" or "he was almost blind" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Here I am

"I am here" or "I am listening." See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [then he called](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [his...son](#)
- [My son](#)

ULT

¹ Then it happened, when Isaac was old and his eyes were too dim to see, [then he called Esau his older son](#) and said to him, "[My son.](#)" And he said to him, "Behold me. "

Genesis 27:2

See here

The phrase “see here” adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

² Then he said, " Behold please, I am old; I do not know the day of my death.

I do not know the day of my death

It is implied that Isaac knows he will die soon. Alternate translation: “I may die any day now” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

death

This refers to physical death.

Translation Words - ULT

- I do...know
- the day of
- my death

Genesis 27:3

General Information:

Isaac continues giving instructions to his older son Isaac.

your weapons

“your hunting equipment”

your quiver

A quiver is a case for holding arrows. Alternate translation: “your quiver of arrows” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

hunt game for me

“hunt a wild animal for me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and your bow](#)

ULT

³ So now, please take your weapons, your quiver [and your bow](#), and go out in the field and hunt game for me.

Genesis 27:4

Make delicious food for me, the sort that I love

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good.
Alternate translation: “Cook for me the tasty meat that I love” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴ Then prepare tasty food for me such as I love, and bring it to me so I can eat it, so that my soul can bless you before I die.”

bless you

In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.

Translation Words - ULT

- I love
- my soul
- can bless you
- I die

Genesis 27:5

This verse is background information for the description of the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Now

This verse is background information for the description of the events that follow. The word “now” shows that the author is going to begin to talk about Rebekah and Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

ULT

⁵ And [Rebekah](#) was listening while [Isaac](#) spoke to [Esau his son](#), then [Esau](#) went to the field to hunt game to bring it back.

Rebekah heard it when Isaac spoke to Esau his son

“Rebekah heard Isaac speaking to his son Esau”

to Esau his son

Esau was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Esau “his son” to emphasize that Isaac preferred Esau over Isaac.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Rebekah](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [his son](#)

Genesis 27:6

This verse continues the background information that begins with the words “Now Rebekah heard” in verse 5. It is background information for the description of the events that follow. (See: [Background Information](#))

Rebekah spoke to Jacob

This verse continues the background information that begins with the words “Esau went...bring it back” in verse 5. It is background information for the description of the events that follow. After Esau leaves, Rebekah speaks to Jacob because of what she has heard. “So when Esau went...bring it back, Rebekah spoke to Jacob” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#) and [Background Information](#))

to Jacob her son

Jacob was the son of both Isaac and Rebekah. The author calls Jacob “her son” here to emphasize that Rebekah preferred Jacob over Esau.

See here

The phrase “see here” adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then Rebekah](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [her son](#)
- [your father](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [your brother](#)

ULT

⁶ Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying, "Behold, I heard your father tell Esau your brother, saying,

Genesis 27:7

'Bring me game and make me delicious food, that I may eat it and bless you in the presence of Yahweh before my death.'

These are the words that the author introduces with the words "He said" in verse 6. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "He told Esau to hunt a wild animal, and to make the tasty meat that he loves. Then before he dies, your father will bless Esau in the presence of Yahweh." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁷ 'Bring game for me and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it [and I can bless you](#) in the presence of [Yahweh](#), before [my death](#).'

Bring me game

"Bring me a wild animal that you hunt and kill"

make me delicious food

"cook for me the tasty meat that I love." See how this was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

bless you in the presence of Yahweh

"bless you before Yahweh"

before my death

"before I die"

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I can bless you](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my death](#)

Genesis 27:8

General Information:

Rebekah continues to speak to her younger son Jacob.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

obey my voice as I command you

Rebekah said “my voice” to refer to what she was saying. Alternate translation: “obey me and do what I tell you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my son](#)
- [to my voice](#)
- [command](#)

ULT

⁸ So now, [my son](#), listen [to my voice](#), to what I [command](#) you.

Genesis 27:9

I will make delicious food from them for your father, just like he loves

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good. See how a similar sentence was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flock](#)
- [good](#)
- [kids of](#)
- [the goats](#)
- [for your father](#)
- [he loves](#)

ULT

⁹ Please go to [the flock](#) and bring to me from there two [good kids of the goats](#) so that I will prepare from them tasty food [for your father](#) such as [he loves](#).

Genesis 27:10

You will take it to your father

“Then take it to your father”

so that he may eat it, so that he may bless you

“and after he eats it, he will bless you”

he may bless you

The word “bless” refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

before his death

“before he dies”

Translation Words - ULT

- to your father
- he will bless you
- his death

ULT

¹⁰ Then you take it to your father and he will eat it, so that he will bless you before his death.”

Genesis 27:11

I am a smooth man

"I am a man with smooth skin" or "I am not hairy"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [my brother](#)

ULT

11 Then [Jacob](#) said to [Rebekah](#) his mother, " Behold, [Esau my brother](#) is a hairy man, but I am a smooth man.

Genesis 27:12

I will seem to him as a deceiver

“he will think that I am a liar” or “he will know that I am deceiving him”

I will bring a curse upon me and not a blessing

Being cursed or blessed is spoken of as if a curse and a blessing are objects that are placed on a person. Alternate translation: “Then because of this, he will curse me and not bless me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my father](#)
- [as a deceiver](#)
- [a curse](#)
- [a blessing](#)

ULT

¹² Suppose [my father](#) touches me? Then I will be in his eyes [as a deceiver](#), and I will bring [a curse](#) on me and not [a blessing](#).”

Genesis 27:13

My son, let any curse fall on me

“let your curse be on me, my son.” Being cursed is spoken of as if the curse were on object that is placed on the person. Alternate translation: “let your father curse me instead of you, my son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

13 But his mother said to him, “[Let your curse be](#) on me, [my son](#). Just listen to [my voice](#) and go get them for me.”

obey my voice

Rebekah said “my voice” to refer to what she was saying. Alternate translation: “obey what I tell you” or “obey me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

bring them to me

“bring me the young goats”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Let your curse be](#)
- [my son](#)
- [to my voice](#)

Genesis 27:14

made delicious food, just like his father loved

The word “delicious” refers to something that tastes very good. See how a similar sentence was translated in [Genesis 27:4](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [loved](#)

ULT

14 So he went and got them and brought them to his mother. Then his mother prepared tasty food such as [his father loved](#).

Genesis 27:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Rebekah
- best
- the...clothes of
- and put them on
- Esau
- her...son
- her...son
- in the house
- Jacob

ULT

¹⁵ Then Rebekah took the best clothes of Esau her older son that were with her in the house and put them on Jacob her younger son.

Genesis 27:16

She put the skins of the young goats on his hands

The goat skins still had the hair on them.

Translation Words - ULT

- she put
- kid
- the...goats
- his hands

ULT

¹⁶ And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over the smooth part of his neck.

Genesis 27:17

She put the delicious food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of her son Jacob

“She gave to her son Jacob the delicious food and bread which she had prepared”

ULT

¹⁷ Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into her son Jacob's hands,

Translation Words - ULT

- the bread
- her son
- Jacob
- into...s hands

Genesis 27:18

Here I am

“Yes, I am listening” or “Yes, what is it?” See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [his father](#)
- [My father](#)
- [my son](#)

ULT

18 and he went to [his father](#) and said, "[My father](#)." And he said, "Behold me. Who are you, [my son](#)?"

Genesis 27:19

I have done as you said to me

"I have done what you told me to do"

some of my game

The word "game" refers to wild animals that someone hunts and kills. See how "game" was translated in [Genesis 27:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [his father](#)
- [am Esau](#)
- [your firstborn](#)
- [get up](#)
- [your soul](#)
- [will bless me](#)

ULT

19 Then [Jacob](#) said to [his father](#), " I am [Esau, your firstborn](#). I have done as you told me. Please [get up](#), sit and eat some of my game, so that [your soul will bless me](#)."

Genesis 27:20

He said

"Jacob replied"

brought it to me

This is an idiom meaning that God caused it to happen. Alternate translation: "helped me to succeed while hunting" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [his son](#)
- [my son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then [Isaac](#) said to [his son](#), "How is this you were quick to find it, [my son](#)?" And he said, " Because [Yahweh your God](#) caused it to happen before me. "

Genesis 27:21

whether you are my true son Esau or not

“if you are really my son Esau”

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- Jacob
- my son
- my son
- Esau

ULT

²¹ Then Isaac said to Jacob, " Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son, and know whether you are really my son Esau or not."

Genesis 27:22

Jacob went over to Isaac his father

“Jacob approached Isaac his father”

The voice is Jacob’s voice

Here Issac speaks of Jacob’s voice as representing Jacob. Alternate translation: “You sound like Jacob” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but the hands are the hands of Esau

Here Issac speaks of Esau’s hands as representing Esau. Alternate translation: “but your hands feel like Esau’s hands” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [his father](#)
- [The voice](#)
- [is the voice of](#)
- [but the hands](#)
- [are the hands of](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

²² So [Jacob](#) went close to [Isaac his father](#), and he touched him and said, "[The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau.](#)"

Genesis 27:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his hands
- like the hands of
- Esau
- his brother
- and he was about to bless him

ULT

²³ So he did not recognize him because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother, and he was about to bless him.

Genesis 27:24

He said

Isaac asks this question before blessing his son. Alternate translation: "But first Isaac asked" (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my son](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

²⁴ But he said, " Are you really [my son Esau](#)?" And he said, "I am."

Genesis 27:25

eat of your game

The word "game" refers to a wild animal that people hunt and kill. See how "game" was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

he drank

"Isaac drank it"

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- my soul
- will bless you
- wine

ULT

25 Then he said, " Bring the food to me, and I will eat some of my son's game, so that my soul will bless you." Then he brought it to him and he ate, and he brought wine to him and he drank.

Genesis 27:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- his father
- and kiss
- my son

ULT

²⁶ Then Isaac his father said to him,
"Please come close and kiss me, my
son."

Genesis 27:27

he smelled the smell of his clothes and blessed him

It can be made explicit that the clothes smelled like Esau's clothes. Alternate translation: "he smelled his clothes and they smelled like Esau's clothes, so Isaac blessed him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁷ So he went close and kissed him. And he smelled the smell of his clothes, so he blessed him and said, " See, the smell of my son is like the smell of a field that Yahweh has blessed!

he smelled

"Isaac smelled"

the smell

"the scent"

blessed him

"then he blessed him." This refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

See, the smell of my son

The word "see" is used as an emphatic figure of speech to mean "it is true." Alternate translation: "Truly, the smell of my son"

that Yahweh has blessed

Here the word "blessed" means that Yahweh has caused good things to happen to the field and it has become fruitful. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh has caused to be very productive" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- and kissed
- his clothes
- so he blessed him
- has blessed
- my son
- Yahweh

Genesis 27:28

General Information:

This is Isaac's blessing. He thought he was speaking to Esau, but he was speaking to Jacob.

give you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Jacob. But the blessing would also apply to Jacob's descendants. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

dew of heaven

"Dew" is drops of water that form on the plants during the night. This can be made explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: "night mist from heaven to water your crops" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fatness of the earth

Having fertile land is spoken of as if the earth were fat or rich. Alternate translation: "good soil for producing crops" (See: [Metaphor](#))

plenty of grain and new wine

If "grain" and "wine" are unknown, this can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "plenty of food and drink" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [the heavens](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [grain](#)
- [and wine](#)

ULT

28 And may [God](#) give to you from the dew of [the heavens](#) and from the fatness of [the earth](#), and an abundance of [grain and wine](#).

Genesis 27:29

you...your

Here these pronouns are singular and refer to Jacob. But the blessing also applies to Jacob's descendants. (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

nations bow down

Here "nations" refers to the people. Alternate translation: "people from all nations bow down" (See: [Metonymy](#))

bow down

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Be master over your brothers

"Become a master over your brothers"

your brothers...your mother's sons

Isaac is speaking this blessing directly to Jacob. But, it also applies to Jacob's descendants who will rule over the descendants of Esau and the descendants of any other of Jacob's brothers that he may have. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

may your mother's sons bow down to you

"your mother's sons will bow down to you"

May every one who curses you be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God curse everyone who curses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

may every one who blesses you be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God bless everyone who blesses you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [peoples](#)
- [nations](#)
- [May...serve you](#)
- [those who curse you](#)
- [May...be cursed](#)
- [and...those who bless you](#)
- [may...be blessed](#)

ULT

²⁹ May [peoples serve you](#), and may [nations bow down](#) to you. Be [master over your brothers](#), and may the sons of your mother [bow down](#) to you. May [those who curse you be cursed](#), and may [those who bless you be blessed](#)."

- and may...bow down
- and may...bow down
- master
- over your brothers
- the sons of

Genesis 27:30

had scarcely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father

“had just left the tent of Isaac his father”

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- blessing
- Jacob
- Jacob
- his father
- when Esau
- his brother

ULT

³⁰ Then it happened just as Isaac finished blessing Jacob, and it happened scarcely had Jacob just left from the presence of Isaac his father when Esau his brother came in from his hunt.

Genesis 27:31

delicious food

“tasty meat that I love.” See how this was translated in [Genesis 27:3](#).

some of your son’s game

Here “your son’s” was a polite way of Esau referring to his own food he prepared. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

your son’s game

The word “game” refers to wild animals that people hunt to eat. See how “game” was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

bless me

This refers to the formal blessing a father pronounces on his children.

Translation Words - ULT

- [to his father](#)
- [to his father](#)
- [my father](#)
- [Let...get up](#)
- [his son](#)
- [your soul](#)
- [can bless me](#)

ULT

³¹ Then he too prepared tasty food, and he brought it [to his father](#) and said [to his father](#), "Let [my father get up](#) and eat from [his son's game](#), so that [your soul can bless me](#)."

Genesis 27:32

said to him

“said to Esau”

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- his father
- am your son
- your firstborn
- Esau

ULT

³² But Isaac his father said to him, "Who are you?" And he said, "I am your son, your firstborn Esau."

Genesis 27:33

Isaac trembled

“Isaac began to shake”

hunted this game

Game refers to a wild animal that people hunt and kill. See how “game” was translated in [Genesis 27:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- Then...trembled
- a...tremble
- and I blessed him
- blessed

ULT

³³ Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble and he said, " Then who was it that hunted game and brought it to me? And I ate from it all just before you came, and I blessed him. Indeed he will be blessed."

Genesis 27:34

he cried with a very great and bitter cry

Esau's anguish was similar to the taste of something bitter. Alternate translation: "he cried loudly" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- his father
- to his father
- my father
- then he cried out
- a...cry
- Bless me

ULT

³⁴ When Esau heard the words of his father, then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry and said to his father, "Bless me, me too, my father!"

Genesis 27:35

has taken away your blessing

This is a figure of speech meaning Jacob took what was Esau's. Alternate translation: "I have blessed him instead of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Your brother](#)
- [in deceit](#)
- [your blessing](#)

ULT

³⁵ And he said, " [Your brother](#) came [in deceit](#) and took [your blessing](#)."

Genesis 27:36

Is he not rightly named Jacob?

Esau uses a question to emphasize his anger at Jacob. Alternate translation: "Jacob is certainly the right name for my brother!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Jacob

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Jacob means 'he grasps the heel.' In the original language the name 'Jacob' also sounds like the word for 'he deceives.'"

He took away my birthright

This speaks about a birthright as if it were an object that a person could take away. Alternate translation: "What was once my birthright is now his because he tricked me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

now he has taken away my blessing

This speaks about a blessing as if it were an object that person could take away. Alternate translation: "now he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Have you not reserved a blessing for me

Esau knows that his father cannot bless him with the same things that he blessed Jacob. Esau is asking if there is anything left to say to him that Isaac did not say while blessing Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his name](#)
- [is called](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [my birthright](#)
- [my blessing](#)
- [a blessing](#)

ULT

³⁶ Then he said, "Is it because [his name is called Jacob](#) that he has defrauded me these two times? He took [my birthright](#), and behold now he has taken [my blessing!](#)" Then he said, " Have you not reserved [a blessing](#) for me?"

Genesis 27:37

What more can I do for you, my son?

Isaac uses a question to emphasize that there is nothing else he can do. Alternate translation: "There is nothing else I can do for you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- to Esau
- master
- his brothers
- as servants
- And...with grain
- and wine
- my son

ULT

37 But Isaac responded and said to Esau, "Behold, I have made him master over you, and I have given all his brothers to him as servants. And I have sustained him with grain and wine. So then, what can I do for you, my son?"

Genesis 27:38

Have you not even one blessing for me, my father

This can be stated in positive form. "My father, do you have one more blessing for me"

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Esau
- his father
- my father
- my father
- Is there...blessing
- Bless me
- his voice
- and sobbed

ULT

³⁸ But Esau said to his father, " Is there one blessing that you have, my father? Bless me, me too, my father!" Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed.

Genesis 27:39

said to him

“said to Esau”

Look, the place

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the place”

far from the richness of the earth

This is a figure of speech referring to the earth’s fertility. Alternate translation: “far from the fertile soil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

dew of the sky above

“Dew” is drops of water that form on the plants during the night. This can be made explicit in the translation. Alternate translation: “the night mist from the sky to water your crops” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [his father](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [heaven](#)

ULT

³⁹ Then [Isaac his father](#) responded and said to him, "Behold, your dwelling will be away from the fatness of [the earth](#) and away from the dew of [heaven](#) from above."

Genesis 27:40

your...you

In 27:39-40 these pronouns are singular and refer to Esau, but what Isaac says also applies to Esau's descendants (See: [Synecdoche](#))

By your sword you will live

Here "sword" stands for violence. Alternate translation: "You will rob and kill people in order to get what you need to live" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will shake his yoke from off your neck

This speaks about someone having a master as if the master's control over the person were a yoke that the person had to carry. Alternate translation: "you will free yourself from his control" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you will live](#)
- [your sword](#)
- [you will serve](#)
- [your brother](#)
- [your neck](#)

ULT

40 And [you will live](#) by [your sword](#), and [you will serve your brother](#). But when you become restless, then you will break his yoke off of [your neck](#)."

Genesis 27:41

Esau said in his heart

Here “heart” stands for Esau himself. Alternate translation: “Esau said to himself” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

days of mourning for my father are near

This refers to a number of days a person grieves when a family member dies.

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Esau
- Jacob
- Jacob
- my brother
- his father
- my father
- had blessed him with
- in his heart
- The days of
- the mourning of
- then I will kill

ULT

41 Then Esau hated Jacob because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with, and Esau said in his heart, " The days of the mourning of my father are near, then I will kill Jacob my brother."

Genesis 27:42

The words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Rebekah about Esau's plan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

is consoling himself

"is making himself feel better"

Translation Words - ULT

- [But...were told](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [your brother](#)
- [is consoling himself](#)
- [planning to kill you](#)
- [her...son](#)
- [her...son \(2\)](#)
- [to Rebekah](#)
- [so she sent](#)
- [and called](#)
- [for Jacob](#)

ULT

⁴² [But](#) the words of [Esau her older son](#) were told to [Rebekah](#), so she sent and called for [Jacob her younger son](#) and said to him, "Behold, [Esau your brother](#) is [consoling himself](#) about you, [planning to kill you](#)."

Genesis 27:43

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

flee to Laban

“leave here quickly and go to Laban”

Translation Words - ULT

- my son
- to my voice
- and get up
- Laban
- my brother
- in Haran

ULT

⁴³ So now, my son, listen to my voice and get up, flee for yourself to Laban my brother in Haran!

Genesis 27:44

for a while

“for a period of time”

until your brother’s fury subsides

“until you brother calms down”

Translation Words - ULT

- for...days
- the fury of
- your brother

ULT

⁴⁴ And stay with him for a few [days](#) until [the fury of your brother](#) turns away,

Genesis 27:45

until your brother's anger turns away from you

No longer being angry is spoken of as if the anger turns to a different direction away from the person. Alternate translation: "until he is no longer angry with you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why should I lose you both in one day?

Rebekah uses a question to emphasize her concern. Alternate translation: "I do not want to lose both of you in one day!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I lose you both in one day

It is implied that if Esau kills Jacob, then they will execute Esau as a murderer. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I lose

This is a polite way of referring to her sons dying. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your brother](#)
- [Then I will send](#)
- [in...day](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ until the anger of [your brother](#) turns away from you and he forgets what you have done to him. [Then I will send](#) and get you from there. Why should I also lose both of you in one [day](#)?"

Genesis 27:46

I am weary of life

Rebekah is exaggerating to emphasize how upset she is about the Hittite women that Esau married. Alternate translation: "I am terribly upset" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the daughters of Heth

"these Hittite women" or "descendants of Heth"

like these women, some of the daughters of the land

The phrase "daughters of the land" means the local females. Alternate translation: "like these women who live in this land" (See: [Idiom](#))

what good will my life be to me?

Rebekah uses a question to emphasize how upset she would be if Jacob marries a Hittite woman. Alternate translation: "My life will be awful!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rebekah](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [with my life](#)
- [would life be](#)
- [Heth](#)
- [Heth](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

46 Then [Rebekah](#) said to [Isaac](#), " I am disgusted [with my life](#) because of the daughters of [Heth](#)! If [Jacob](#) takes a wife from the daughters of [Heth](#) like these, from daughters of [the land](#), what [would life be](#) to me?"

Genesis 28

Genesis 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Even though Jacob tricked his father in order to receive Esau's blessing, the chapter repeats the blessing, ensuring he inherits the blessings promised to Abraham. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob's dream

Jacob had a dream or received a vision. The purpose of this dream is to show that, despite Jacob's sin, God is giving Abraham's covenant promises to Jacob and his descendants. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [covenant](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Bethel

This was an important city for Abraham and his descendants. It is possible that there is some theological significance to the city of Bethel.

Genesis 28:1

You must not take

“Do not take”

Translation Words - ULT

- Isaac
- Then...called
- Jacob
- and blessed
- and commanded him
- Canaan

ULT

¹ Then Isaac called for Jacob and blessed him, and commanded him and said to him, "Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan.

Genesis 28:2

Arise, go

“Go right away”

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

house of

This refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. Alternate translation: “family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah’s father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

your mother’s father

“your grandfather”

one of the daughters

“from the daughters”

your mother’s brother

“your uncle”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Get up](#)
- [to Paddan](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [to the home of](#)
- [Bethuel](#)
- [the father of](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [the brother of](#)

ULT

² [Get up](#), go to [Paddan Aram](#), to the [home of Bethuel the father of your mother](#), and take a wife for yourself from there, from the daughters of [Laban the brother of your mother](#).

Genesis 28:3

General Information:

Isaac continues speaking to Jacob

make you fruitful and multiply you

The word “multiply” explains how God would make Jacob “fruitful.”

Alternate translation: “give you many children and descendants” (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

³ And may God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and multiply you so that you become as a multitude of peoples.

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...God](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [may...bless](#)
- [and make you fruitful](#)
- [and multiply you](#)
- [as a multitude of](#)
- [peoples](#)

Genesis 28:4

May he give you the blessing of Abraham, to you, and to your descendants after you

This speaks about blessing someone as if a blessing were an object that a person can give. The abstract noun “the blessing” can be stated as “bless.” Alternate translation: “May God bless you and your descendants as he blessed Abraham” or “May God give to you and your descendants what he promised to Abraham” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

⁴ And may he give [the blessing of Abraham](#) to you, to you [and to your offspring](#) with you, [so that you possess the land of](#) your sojournings, which [God](#) gave to Abraham.”

that you may inherit the land

God giving the land of Canaan to Jacob and his descendants is spoken of as if a child were inheriting money or possessions from his father. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the land where you have been living

“the land where you have been staying”

which God gave to Abraham

“which God promised to Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the blessing of](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [and to your offspring](#)
- [so that you possess](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [God](#)

Genesis 28:5

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bethuel

Bethuel was Rebekah's father. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 22:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁵ Then [Isaac sent Jacob](#), and he went to [Paddan Aram](#), to [Laban](#), the son of [Bethuel the Aramean](#) and the brother of [Rebekah](#), the mother of [Jacob and Esau](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [Then...sent](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [and Esau](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [to Paddan](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Bethuel](#)
- [the Aramean](#)
- [and the brother of](#)

Genesis 28:6

General Information:

The story changes from Jacob to Esau

Now

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Esau. (See: [Background Information](#))

Paddan Aram

This was another name for the region of Mesopotamia, which about the same location as modern Iraq. See how this was translated in [Genesis 25:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to take a wife

“to take a wife for himself”

He also saw that Isaac had blessed him

“Esau also saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob”

You must not take

“Do not take”

women of Canaan

“daughters of Canaan” or “Canaanite women”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [had blessed](#)
- [and that when he blessed](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [and had sent](#)
- [to Paddan](#)
- [Aram](#)
- [then he commanded](#)
- [Canaan](#)

ULT

⁶ Now [Esau](#) saw that [Isaac](#) had [blessed](#) [Jacob](#) and had [sent](#) him to [Paddan Aram](#) to take a wife for himself from there, and that when he [blessed](#) him, then he [commanded](#) him, saying, " Do not take a wife from the daughters of [Canaan](#)!"

Genesis 28:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob
- his father
- to Paddan
- Aram

ULT

⁷ and that Jacob listened to his father and to his mother and went to Paddan Aram.

Genesis 28:8

General Information:

This continues the background information about Esau.

Esau saw

“Esau realized”

the women of Canaan did not please Isaac his father

“his father Isaac did not approve of the women of Canaan”

women of Canaan

“daughters of Canaan” or “the Canaanite women”

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- Canaan
- were displeasing
- Isaac
- his father

ULT

⁸ Then Esau saw that the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father.

Genesis 28:9

So he went

“Because of that, he went”

besides the wives that he had

“in addition to the wives that he already had”

Mahalath

This is the name of one of Ishmael’s daughters. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael’s sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)
- [Ishmael](#)
- [Ishmael](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [s son](#)
- [the sister of](#)

ULT

⁹ So [Esau](#) went to [Ishmael](#) and he took as a wife Mahalath, the daughter of [Ishmael Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth](#), in addition to his wives who belonged to him.

Genesis 28:10

General Information:

The story switches back to Jacob

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [from Beersheba](#)
- [for Haran](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [Jacob](#) left [from Beersheba](#) and set out [for Haran](#).

Genesis 28:11

He came to a certain place and stayed there all night, because the sun had set

“He came to a certain place and, because the sun had set, he decided to stay for the night”

ULT

¹¹ Then he reached a certain place, and he stopped there because the sun had gone. And he took one of the stones of the place and put it under his head, and he lay down in that place.

Genesis 28:12

He dreamed

“Jacob had a dream”

set up on the earth

“with the bottom of it touching the ground”

reached to heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- And he dreamed
- on the earth
- and its top
- to the heavens
- angels of
- God

ULT

¹² And he dreamed, and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth and its top reached to the heavens, and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it.

Genesis 28:13

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Yahweh stood above it

Possible meanings are (1) “Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway” or (2) “Yahweh was standing next to Jacob”

Abraham your father

Here “father” means “ancestor.” Alternate translation: “Abraham your ancestor” or “Abraham your forefather”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- am Yahweh
- the God of
- and the God of
- Abraham
- your grandfather
- Isaac
- The land
- and to your offspring

ULT

13 And behold, Yahweh was standing above it, and he said, "I am Yahweh, the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac. The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring."

Genesis 28:14

General Information:

God continues to talk to Jacob in a dream.

Your descendants will be like the dust of the earth

God compares Jacob's descendants to the dust of the earth to emphasize their huge number. Alternate translation: "You will have more descendants than you can count" (See: [Simile](#))

you will spread far out to the west

The word "you" is singular and refers to Jacob. Here Jacob represents his descendants. Alternate translation: "your descendants will spread out to the west" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will spread far out

This means the people will extend the borders of their land and occupy more territory.

to the west, to the east, to the north, and to the south

This phrases are used together to mean "all directions." Alternate translation: "in all directions" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Through you and through your descendants will all the families of the earth be blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will bless all families on the earth through you and your descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your offspring](#)
- [and through your offspring](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [and to the south](#)
- [the families of](#)
- [And...will be blessed](#)

ULT

14 And [your offspring](#) will be like the dust of [the earth](#), and you will spread out to the west and to the east and to the north [and to the south](#). And through you [and through your offspring](#), all [the families of](#) the earth will be [blessed](#).

Genesis 28:15

Behold, I am

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: I am”

for I will not leave you. I will do all

“for I will not leave you until I have done all”

I will keep you

“I will keep you safe” or “I will protect you”

I will bring you into this land again

“I will bring you back to this land”

Translation Words - ULT

- and I will watch over you
- and I will bring you back
- I will...leave you

ULT

15 And behold, I am with you and I will watch over you in every place that you go, and I will bring you back to this land. For I will not leave you until I have done what I have spoken to you.”

Genesis 28:16

awoke out of his sleep

“woke up from his sleep”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob
- Yahweh
- did...know it

ULT

16 Then **Jacob** woke up from his sleep and said, " Surely **Yahweh** is in this place, but I did not **know it!**"

Genesis 28:17

the house of God...the gate of heaven

The phrase “the gate of heaven” explains that this place is the entrance to “the house of God” and “the entrance to where God lives.” (See: [Doublet](#))

This is the gate of heaven

This speaks about the entrance to the place where God lives as if it were a literal kingdom that had a gate that someone has to open to let people in. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [So he was afraid](#)
- [awesome...is](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [God](#)
- [the gateway of](#)
- [heaven](#)

ULT

17 [So he was afraid](#) and said, "How [awesome](#) this place [is](#)! This is nothing other than [the house of God](#), and this is [the gateway of heaven](#)!"

Genesis 28:18

pillar

This is a memorial pillar, that is, simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

poured oil upon the top of it

This action symbolizes that Jacob is dedicating the pillar to God. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "poured oil on the top of it in order to dedicate the pillar to God" (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [and stood...up](#)
- [as a pillar](#)
- [oil](#)
- [its top](#)

ULT

18 Then in the morning [Jacob](#) got up early, and he took the stone that he had put under his head [and stood it up as a pillar](#), and he poured [oil](#) on [its top](#).

Genesis 28:19

Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

Luz

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [had been the name of](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)

ULT

19 [And he called the name of](#) that place [Bethel](#), even though Luz [had been the name of](#) the town at first.

Genesis 28:20

Connecting Statement:

Jacob begins to make a vow to Yahweh.

vowed a vow

“made a vow” or “solemnly promised God”

If God will...clothes to wear

Jacob is speaking to God in the third person. This can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “If you will...clothes to wear” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

on this road on which I am walking

This stands for Jacob’s journey to find a wife and to return home. Alternate translation: “on this journey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will give me bread to eat

Here “bread” stands for food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Then...vowed](#)
- [a vow](#)
- [God](#)
- [and watch over me](#)
- [bread](#)
- [and clothes](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then [Jacob](#) [vowed a vow](#) by saying, "If [God](#) will be with me [and watch over me](#) on this road that I am walking on and he gives to me [bread](#) to eat [and clothes](#) to wear,

Genesis 28:21

Connecting Statement:

The vow that began with the words “If God will...clothes to wear” in verse 20 continues here.

so that I return safely...then Yahweh will be my God

The vow that began with the words “If God will...clothes to wear” in verse 20 continues here. Jacob is speaking to God in the third person. This can be stated in the second person. “If you will...clothes to wear...so that I return safely...then you, Yahweh, will be the God that I will worship” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

to my father’s house

Here “house” stands for Jacob’s family. Alternate translation: “to my father and the rest of my family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I return](#)
- [in peace](#)
- [the home of](#)
- [my father](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

²¹ [and I return in peace to the home of my father](#), then [Yahweh](#) will be [God](#) to me,

Genesis 28:22

a sacred stone

This means that the stone will mark the place where God appeared to him and it will be a place where people can worship God.

Alternate translation: "God's house" or "God's place"

Translation Words - ULT

- as a pillar
- the house of
- God
- a tenth

ULT

²² and this stone that I have stood up as a pillar will be the house of God, and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you."

Genesis 29

Genesis 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the conflict between Jacob's wives, Rachel and Leah. This account continues into the next chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Shepherds

Although the exact reasoning for the shepherds' unwillingness to give water to the sheep is unknown, it is probable they were being lazy. The actions of these shepherds contrast Jacob's actions.

Kissing

It was common in the ancient Near East for relatives to greet each other with a kiss. There was nothing sexual about this type of kissing.

Marriage

It was customary in the ancient Near East for a man to work for a woman's father in order to earn the right to marry her. It is unknown how common it was for a father to have his younger daughter marry before an older daughter. It was also sinful for Jacob to marry more than one wife. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Genesis 29:1

the people of the east

This means the people of Paddan Aram, which is a land east of the land of Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [to the land of](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Jacob](#) lifted his feet and went [to the land of](#) the sons of the east.

Genesis 29:2

and, behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there by it

The word “behold” marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

For out of that well

“For from that well.” This phrase marks a change from the story to background information about how the shepherds watered the flocks. (See: [Background Information](#))

they would water

“the shepherds would water” or “those taking care of the sheep would water”

the well’s mouth

Here “mouth” is a way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: “the opening of the well” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a well
- well
- the well
- flocks of
- the flocks
- sheep

ULT

² And he looked and behold, a well was in the field, and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there near it, because from that well the flocks were watered, and the stone over the mouth of the well was large.

Genesis 29:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the flocks
- the well
- the well
- the sheep
- Then they would return

ULT

³ And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone from over the mouth of the well and water the sheep. Then they would return the stone to its place over the mouth of the well.

Genesis 29:4

Jacob said to them

"Jacob said to the shepherds"

My brothers

This is a polite way to greet a stranger.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [My brothers](#)
- [are from Haran](#)

ULT

⁴ Then [Jacob](#) said to them, "[My brothers](#), where are you from?" And they said, " We [are from Haran.](#)"

Genesis 29:5

Laban son of Nahor

Here “son” refers to a male descendant. Another possible meaning is “Laban the grandson of Nahor.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Do you know
- We know him
- Laban
- the grandson of
- Nahor

ULT

⁵ Then he said to them, "Do you know Laban the grandson of Nahor?" And they said, " We know him."

Genesis 29:6

and, look there, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep

“Now look! Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep”

Translation Words - ULT

- Are things well
- Things are well
- Rachel
- the sheep

ULT

⁶ Then he said to them, "Are things well for him?" And they said, " Things are well. And behold, Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep."

Genesis 29:7

it is the middle of the day

“the sun is still high in the sky” or “the sun is still shining brightly”

for the flocks to be gathered together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for you to gather the flocks” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be gathered together

This means to gather them together inside a fence for them to stay for the night. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let them graze

“let them eat grass in the field”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the day](#)
- [the livestock](#)
- [the sheep](#)
- [pasture them](#)

ULT

7 Then he said, "Behold, [the day](#) is still large. It is not time for [the livestock](#) to be gathered. Water [the sheep](#), and go [pasture them](#)."

Genesis 29:8

We cannot water them

“We have to wait to water them.” This has to do with timing, not permission.

until all the flocks are gathered together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “until the other shepherds gather their flocks” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the well’s mouth

Here “mouth” is way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: “from the well” or “from the opening of the well” (See: [Idiom](#))

and we will water the sheep

“then we will water the sheep”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flocks](#)
- [the well](#)
- [the sheep](#)

ULT

⁸ But they said, " We can't until all [the flocks](#) are gathered and they roll the stone from over the mouth of [the well](#). Then we will water [the sheep](#)."

Genesis 29:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- then Rachel
- the sheep
- belonged to her father
- was tending them

ULT

⁹ He was still talking with them, then Rachel came with the sheep that belonged to her father, because she was tending them.

Genesis 29:10

his mother's brother

"his uncle"

the well's mouth

Here "mouth" is a way of referring to an opening. Alternate translation: "the well" or "the opening of the well" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [Laban \(2\)](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [s brother \(2\)](#)
- [s brother](#)
- [the sheep of](#)
- [the sheep of \(2\)](#)
- [the well](#)

ULT

10 Then it happened, when [Jacob](#) saw [Rachel](#), the daughter of [Laban](#) his mother's brother, and [the sheep of Laban](#) his mother's brother, then [Jacob](#) went over and rolled the stone from over the mouth of [the well](#), and watered [the sheep of Laban](#) his mother's brother.

Genesis 29:11

Jacob kissed Rachel

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. However, it is normally done between men. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

wept loudly

Jacob weeps because he is so happy. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Then...kissed](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [his voice](#)

ULT

11 Then [Jacob kissed Rachel](#) and lifted [his voice](#) and cried.

Genesis 29:12

her father's relative

"related to her father"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob
- Then...told
- and told
- Rachel
- was a relative of
- her father
- her father
- was a son of
- Rebekah
- Then she ran

ULT

¹² Then Jacob told Rachel that he was a relative of her father and that he was a son of Rebekah. Then she ran and told her father.

Genesis 29:13**his sister's son**

“his nephew”

embraced him

“hugged him”

kissed him

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. However, it is normally done between men. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

Jacob told Laban all these things

“then Jacob told Laban everything he told Rachel”

Translation Words - ULT

- Laban
- Laban
- Jacob
- the son of
- his sister
- then he ran
- him
- his house

ULT

13 And it happened, when Laban heard the news about Jacob the son of his sister, then he ran to meet him. Then he hugged him and kissed him and brought him to his house. Then he told Laban all these things,

Genesis 29:14

my bone and my flesh

This phrase means they are directly related. Alternate translation: "my relative" or "a member of my family" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [and my flesh](#)
- [a month of](#)
- [days](#)

ULT

14 and [Laban](#) said to him, "You are indeed my bone [and my flesh!](#)" Then he stayed with him [a month of days](#).

Genesis 29:15

Should you serve me for nothing...my relative?

Laban uses a question to emphasize that he should pay Jacob for working for him. The question can be translated as a statement. This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "It is certainly right that I should pay you for working for me even though you are my relative." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [to Jacob](#)
- [are my relative](#)
- [should you then serve me](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Then [Laban](#) said [to Jacob](#), " Because you [are my relative](#), [should you then serve me](#) for nothing? Tell me, what are your wages?"

Genesis 29:16

Now Laban had

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Laban and his daughters. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Now Laban had
- The name of
- and the name of
- was Leah
- was Rachel

ULT

16 Now Laban had two daughters. The name of the older was Leah, and the name of the younger was Rachel.

Genesis 29:17

Leah's eyes were tender

Possible meanings are (1) "Leah's eyes were pretty" or (2) "Leah's eyes were plain"

Translation Words - ULT

- Leah
- but Rachel

ULT

17 And the eyes of Leah were delicate, but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance.

Genesis 29:18

Jacob loved Rachel

Here the word “loved” refers to a romantic attraction between a man and a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob
- And...loved
- Rachel
- for Rachel
- I will serve you
- years

ULT

18 And **Jacob loved Rachel**, so he said, "**I will serve you seven years for Rachel** your younger daughter."

Genesis 29:19

than that I should give her to another man

“rather than give her to another man”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [It is better](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And [Laban](#) said, " [It is better](#) for me to give her to you than for me to give her to another man. Stay with me."

Genesis 29:20

and they seemed to him only a few days

“but the time seemed to him to be only a few days”

for the love he had for her

“on account of the love he had for her” or “because of his love for her”

ULT

²⁰ So Jacob served seven years for Rachel, but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her.

Translation Words - ULT

- So...served
- Jacob
- years
- for Rachel
- like...days
- because of his love for

Genesis 29:21

Give me my wife, for my days have been completed—so that I may marry her!

The phrase “have been completed” can be stated in active form. The statement is emphatic. Alternate translation: Give me my wife, so that I may marry her, for I have completed the length of time that I was to work for you!” Give me Rachel so that I may marry her, for I have worked seven years for you!” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²¹ Then [Jacob](#) said to [Laban](#), "Give me my wife, because [my days](#) are completed, [then I will go](#) to her."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [my days](#)
- [then I will go](#)

Genesis 29:22

made a feast

“prepared a wedding feast.” Most likely Laban had others prepare the feast. Alternate translation: “had others prepare a wedding feast” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [a feast](#)

ULT

²² Then [Laban](#) gathered all the people of the place and made [a feast](#).

Genesis 29:23

who went in to her

“who had sexual relations with her.” You may need to use other, more polite words here. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Leah](#)
- [and he went](#)

ULT

²³ But it happened in the evening that he took [Leah](#) his daughter and brought her to him, [and he went](#) to her.

Genesis 29:24

Laban gave his female servant Zilpah...her servant

Here the author gives background information about Laban giving Zilpah to Leah. Most likely he gave Zilpah to Leah before the wedding. (See: [Background Information](#))

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [Zilpah](#)
- [his maidservant](#)
- [to be a maidservant](#)
- [to Leah](#)

ULT

²⁴ And [Laban](#) gave to her [Zilpah](#) his [maidservant](#), to [Leah](#) his daughter, to be a maidservant.

Genesis 29:25

behold, it was Leah

"Jacob was surprised to see it was Leah in bed with him." The word "behold" here shows that Jacob was surprised by what he saw.

What is this you have done to me?

Jacob uses a question to express his anger and surprise. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe you did this to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Did I not serve you for Rachel?

Jacob uses these questions to express his hurt that Laban had tricked him. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I served you for seven years to marry Rachel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was Leah](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [for Rachel](#)
- [that I served](#)
- [have you deceived me](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then it happened in the morning that behold she [was Leah](#)! So he said to [Laban](#), " What is this you have done to me? Was it not [for Rachel that I served](#) with you? So for what reason [have you deceived me](#)?"

Genesis 29:26

It is not our custom to give

"In our family we do not give"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [the firstborn](#)

ULT

²⁶ But [Laban](#) said, "It is not done so in our place to give the younger before [the firstborn](#)."

Genesis 29:27

Complete the bridal week of this daughter

“Finish celebrating Leah’s bridal week”

we will give you the other also

The full meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “next week we will give you Rachel also” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁷ Fulfill [the seven days](#) of this daughter, then we will also give you this one for service that [you will serve](#) with me for another seven [years](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the seven days](#) of
- [you will serve](#)
- [years](#)

Genesis 29:28

Jacob did so, and completed Leah's week

"And Jacob did what Laban asked, and finished celebrating Leah's bridal week"

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob
- s week
- Rachel

ULT

²⁸ So **Jacob** did so, and he fulfilled that daughter's **week**. Then he gave to him **Rachel** his daughter as a wife for him.

Genesis 29:29

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Laban
- Bilhah
- his maidservant
- as a maidservant
- to Rachel

ULT

²⁹ And Laban gave Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter as a maidservant for her.

Genesis 29:30

Jacob went in to Rachel

“Jacob had sexual relations with Rachel.” You may need to use other, more polite words here. See how similar words are translated in [Genesis 29:23](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

he loved Rachel

This refers to the romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then he...went](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [and he loved](#)
- [more than Leah](#)
- [And he served](#)
- [years](#)

ULT

30 Then he also went to Rachel, and he loved Rachel more than Leah. And he served him for another seven years.

Genesis 29:31

Leah was not loved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Jacob did not love Leah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

not loved

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that Jacob loved Rachel more than Leah. Alternate translation: “loved less than Rachel” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

so he opened her womb

God causing Leah to be able to become pregnant is spoken of as if God is opening her womb. (See: [Metaphor](#))

was childless

“was not able to become pregnant”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [her womb](#)
- [but Rachel](#)
- [was barren](#)

ULT

³¹ Now [Yahweh](#) saw that [Leah](#) was hated, so he opened [her womb](#), but [Rachel was barren](#).

Genesis 29:32

Leah conceived and bore a son

“Leah became pregnant and gave birth to a son”

she called his name Reuben

Translators may also add a footnote that says: “The name Reuben means ‘See, a son.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh has looked upon my affliction

Leah was experiencing emotional pain because Jacob had rejected her. The abstract noun “affliction” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “Yahweh saw that I was suffering” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Leah
- Then...conceived
- and bore
- a son
- and she called
- his name
- Reuben
- Yahweh
- on my misery
- will love me

ULT

³² Then Leah conceived and bore a son, and she called his name Reuben, because she said, " Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me."

Genesis 29:33

Then she conceived

"Then Leah became pregnant"

bore a son

"gave birth to a son"

Yahweh has heard that I am unloved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has heard that my husband does not love me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

she called his name Simeon

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Simeon means 'heard.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then she conceived](#)
- [and bore](#)
- [a son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So she called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Simeon](#)

ULT

³³ Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "Because Yahweh heard that I am hated, then he gave to me this son also." So she called his name Simeon.

Genesis 29:34

will my husband be attached to me

“my husband will embrace me”

I have borne him three sons

“I have given birth to three sons for him”

his name was called Levi

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Levi means ‘attached.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Then she conceived](#)
- [and bore](#)
- [I have born](#)
- [a son](#)
- [sons](#)
- [he called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

³⁴ [Then she conceived](#) again [and bore a son](#), and she said, " This time now my husband will be joined to me, because [I have born](#) three [sons](#) for him." For that reason [he called his name Levi](#).

Genesis 29:35

She conceived again

“Leah became pregnant again”

bore a son

“gave birth to a son”

she called his name Judah

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Judah means ‘praise.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- bearing
- a son
- I will praise
- Yahweh
- she called
- his name
- Judah

ULT

³⁵ Then she conceived again and bore a son, and she said, "This time I will praise Yahweh." For that reason she called his name Judah. Then she stopped bearing.

Genesis 30

Genesis 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the story of the conflict between Rachel and Leah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Women and their children

In the ancient Near East, it was important for a married woman to have many children. If a woman did not have many children, people believed it brought shame upon her. This is one of the reasons why Rachel and Leah were always jealous of each other. (See: [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Speckled and spotted

Speckled and spotted sheep were considered to be imperfect. Therefore, they were considered to be much less valuable than the spotless sheep. Despite Jacob's fair offer, Laban once again tried to cheat him out of something he deserved. Jacob anticipated Laban's cheating.

Genesis 30:1

When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children

“When Rachel realized that she was unable to become pregnant”

I will die

Rachel is exaggerating to show how upset she is about not having children. Alternate translation: “I will feel completely worthless” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Give me children

“Cause me to become pregnant”

Translation Words - ULT

- Rachel
- Rachel
- she was...bearing children
- will die
- for Jacob
- Jacob
- so...envied
- her sister
- children

ULT

¹ Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing children for Jacob, so Rachel envied her sister, and she said to Jacob, "Give me children, and if not, I will die!"

Genesis 30:2

Jacob's anger burned against Rachel

Jacob's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "Jacob was very angry with Rachel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Am I in the place of God, who has kept you from having children?

This is a rhetorical question that Jacob uses to scold Rachel. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am not God! I am not the one who is preventing you from having children!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [against Rachel](#)
- [God](#)
- [the fruit of](#)
- [the womb](#)

ULT

² And [Jacob](#)'s anger burned [against Rachel](#), and he said, " Am I in the place of [God](#), who has kept [the fruit of the womb](#) from you?"

Genesis 30:3

She said

“Rachel said”

See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

ULT

³ Then she said, “Behold **my servant woman Bilhah**. **Go** to her, **so that she will bear children** on my knees, and I also will be built up from her.”

there is my servant Bilhah...I will have children by her

At that time, this was an acceptable way for a barren woman to have children that would legally belong to her. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel’s female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#).

Go in to her

This is a polite way of talking about sexual relations. You may need to use different words in your language. Alternate translation: “Have sexual relations with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

on my knees

This is a way of saying that the child that Bilhah gives birth to will belong to Rachel. Alternate translation: “for me” (See: [Idiom](#))

I will have children by her

“and in this way she will cause me to have children”

Translation Words - ULT

- [my servant woman](#)
- [Bilhah](#)
- [Go](#)
- [so that she will bear children](#)

Genesis 30:4

Jacob went in to her

This is a polite way of talking about sexual relations. You may need to use different words in your language. Alternate translation: "Jacob had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bilhah](#)
- [her maidservant](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [and...went](#)

ULT

⁴ And she gave to him [Bilhah her maidservant](#) as a wife, and [Jacob went](#) to her.

Genesis 30:5

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#).

bore Jacob a son

"gave birth to a son for Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Bilhah](#)
- [Then...conceived](#)
- [and bore](#)
- [a son](#)
- [for Jacob](#)

ULT

⁵ Then [Bilhah conceived and bore a son for Jacob,](#)

Genesis 30:6

she called his name

“Rachel gave him the name”

called his name Dan

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Dan means ‘he judged.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁶ and Rachel said, " God has vindicated me, and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son!" For that reason she called his name Dan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Rachel
- God
- to my voice
- a son
- she called
- his name
- Dan

Genesis 30:7

Bilhah...conceived again

“Bilhah...became pregnant again”

bore Jacob a second son

“gave birth to a second son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- Bilhah
- the maidservant of
- Rachel
- Then...conceived
- and bore
- son
- for Jacob

ULT

⁷ Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again and bore a second son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:8

With mighty wrestlings have I wrestled with my sister

The phrase “wrestlings have I wrestled” is an idiom used for emphasis. It is also a metaphor that speaks of Rachel’s attempts to have a child like her sister as if she were having a physical fight with Leah. Alternate translation: “I have had a great struggle to have children like my older sister, Leah” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

have prevailed

“I have won” or “I have succeeded”

called his name Naphtali

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Naphtali means ‘my struggle.’”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Rachel](#)
- [mighty](#)
- [my sister](#)
- [And she called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

⁸ So [Rachel](#) said, * "With [mighty](#) wrestlings I have wrestled with [my sister](#). Indeed I have prevailed!" [And she called his name Naphtali](#).

Genesis 30:9

When Leah saw that

“When Leah became aware that”

she took Zilpah, her servant, and gave her to Jacob as a wife

“she gave Zilpah, her servant, to Jacob as a wife”

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah’s female servant. See how you translated this in [Genesis 29:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Leah](#)
- [from bearing children](#)
- [Zilpah](#)
- [her maidservant](#)
- [to Jacob](#)

ULT

⁹ Now [Leah](#) saw that she had ceased [from bearing children](#), so she took [Zilpah her maidservant](#) and gave her [to Jacob](#) as a wife.

Genesis 30:10

bore Jacob a son

“gave birth to a son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- Zilpah
- the maidservant of
- Leah
- Then...bore
- a son
- for Jacob

ULT

¹⁰ Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob,

Genesis 30:11

This is fortunate!

“How fortunate!” or “What good luck!”

called his name Gad

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Gad means ‘fortunate.’”

ULT

¹¹ and Leah said, " What good fortune!"

So she called his name Gad.

Translation Words - ULT

- Leah
- So she called
- his name
- Gad

Genesis 30:12

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

bore Jacob a second son

"gave birth to a second son for Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Zilpah](#)
- [the maidservant of](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [Then...bore](#)
- [a...son](#)
- [for Jacob](#)

ULT

12 Then [Zilpah](#) the maidservant of Leah bore a second son for Jacob,

Genesis 30:13

I am happy!

"How blessed I am!" or "How happy I am!"

the daughters

"the women" or "the young women"

called his name Asher

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Asher means 'happy.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Leah](#)
- [So she called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Asher](#)

ULT

¹³ and [Leah](#) said, "How blessed I am!
For women will call me blessed." [So she
called his name Asher.](#)

Genesis 30:14

Reuben went

“Reuben went out”

in the days of wheat harvest

Here the phrase “in the days of” is an idiom that refers to the season or time of year. Alternate translation: “at the time of year of the wheat harvest” or “during the wheat harvest” (See: [Idiom](#))

mandrakes

This is a fruit that was said to increase fertility and the desire to sleep with one’s lover. Alternate translation: “love fruit” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the days of](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [the...harvest](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [your son](#)

ULT

14 Then [in the days of](#) the [wheat harvest](#), [Reuben](#) went out and found mandrakes in the field, and he brought them to [Leah](#) his mother. Then [Rachel](#) said to [Leah](#), " Please give to me some of [your son's](#) mandrakes."

Genesis 30:15

Is it a small matter to you...my husband?

"Do you not care...my husband?" This is a rhetorical question used to scold Rachel. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is bad enough...my husband." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do you now want...too?

This is a rhetorical question, used to scold Rachel. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now you want...too!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Then he will lie with you

Here "lie with" is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob will have sexual intercourse with you" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my son](#)
- [your son](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [he may lie](#)

ULT

15 But she said to her, "Is it a small matter you have taken my husband? And would you also take [my son's](#) mandrakes?" Then [Rachel](#) said, "Therefore [he may lie](#) with you for the night for [your son's](#) mandrakes."

Genesis 30:16

You must come in to me

Here “come in to” is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “You must have sexual intercourse with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

with my son’s mandrakes

“for the price of my son’s mandrakes.” See how you translated “mandrake” in [Genesis 30:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [You must come](#)
- [So he lay](#)
- [my son](#)

ULT

16 Then [Jacob](#) came from the field in the evening, and [Leah](#) went out to meet him and said, "[You must come](#) to me, because I have surely hired you with [my son's mandrakes](#)." [So he lay](#) with her during that night,

Genesis 30:17

she conceived

“She became pregnant”

bore Jacob a fifth son

“gave birth to a fifth son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Leah
- and she conceived
- and bore
- a...son
- for Jacob

ULT

¹⁷ and God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore a fifth son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:18

God has given me my wages

God rewarding Leah is spoken of as if he were a boss paying wages to someone who works for him. Alternate translation: "God has given my due" or "God has rewarded me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

She called his name Issachar

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Issachar means 'there is a reward.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Leah](#)
- [God](#)
- [my maidservant](#)
- [So she called](#)
- [his name](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

18 Then [Leah](#) said, " [God](#) has given me my reward because I gave [my maidservant](#) to my husband." [So she called his name Issachar.](#)

Genesis 30:19

Leah conceived again

“Leah became pregnant again”

bore a sixth son to Jacob

“gave birth to a sixth son for Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- Leah
- Then...conceived
- and bore
- a...son
- for Jacob

ULT

¹⁹ Then Leah conceived again and bore a sixth son for Jacob.

Genesis 30:20

She called his name Zebulun

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Zebulun means 'honor.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- Leah
- God
- good
- will honor me
- I have born
- sons
- So she called
- his name
- Zebulun

ULT

²⁰ And Leah said, "God has presented me a good present. This time my husband will honor me because I have born six sons for him." So she called his name Zebulun.

Genesis 30:21

called her name Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she bore](#)
- [and called](#)
- [her name](#)

ULT

²¹ Then later [she bore](#) a daughter [and called her name](#) Dinah.

Genesis 30:22

God called Rachel to mind and listened to her

The phrase “call to mind” means to remember. This does not mean God forgot about Rachel. It means he considered her request. Alternate translation: “God considered Rachel and granted to her what she wanted” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

²² Then God remembered Rachel, and God listened to her and opened her womb.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Rachel
- her womb

Genesis 30:23

God has taken away my shame

God causing Rachel to no longer feel ashamed is spoken of as if “shame” were an object that person could take away from someone else. The abstract noun “shame” can be stated as “ashamed.” Alternate translation: “God has caused me to no longer feel ashamed” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

²³ Then she conceived and bore a son, and she said, " God has taken away my disgrace!"

Translation Words - ULT

- Then she conceived
- and bore
- a son
- God
- my disgrace

Genesis 30:24

She called his name Joseph

Translators may also add a footnote that says: "The name Joseph means 'may he add.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh has added to me another son

Rachel's first sons were through her female servant Bilhah.

Translation Words - ULT

- And she called
- his name
- Joseph
- Yahweh
- son

ULT

²⁴ And she called his name Joseph, saying, "May Yahweh add another son to me."

Genesis 30:25

After Rachel had borne Joseph

“After Rachel gave birth to Joseph”

Translation Words - ULT

- Rachel
- bore
- Joseph
- Jacob
- Laban
- Send me off
- and to my land

ULT

²⁵ Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph, then Jacob said to Laban, " Send me off, so that I may go to my place and to my land.

Genesis 30:26

and let me go

“so I can go”

you know the service I have given you

Jacob is reminding Laban of their contract ([Genesis Gen 29:27](#)). The abstract noun “service” can be stated as “served.” Alternate translation: “you know that I have served you long enough” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

²⁶ Give me my wives and my children whom I have served you for, so that I may go. For you yourself know the service that I have served you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- my children
- I have served
- I have served you
- you...know

Genesis 30:27**Laban said to him**

“Laban said to Jacob”

If now I have found favor in your eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “If I have found favor with you” or “If you are pleased with me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

found favor

This is an idiom that means that someone is approved of by someone else. (See: [Idiom](#))

wait, because

“please stay, because”

I have learned by using divination

“I have discovered by my own spiritual and magical practices”

for your sake

“because of you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [favor](#)
- [I have learned by divination](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [that...has blessed me](#)

ULT

²⁷ Then [Laban](#) said to him, "Please stay, if I have found [favor](#) in your eyes. [I have learned by divination](#) that [Yahweh](#) has [blessed me](#) because of you."

Genesis 30:28

Name your wages

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "Tell me how much I have to pay to keep you here" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁸ Then he said, " Name your wages to me, and I will give them."

Genesis 30:29

Jacob said to him

“Jacob said to Laban”

how your livestock have fared with me

“how well your livestock have done since I started taking care of them”

ULT

²⁹ And he said to him, “You yourself know how I have served you and how your livestock have been with me.”

Translation Words - ULT

- You...know
- I have served you
- your livestock

Genesis 30:30

For you had little before I came

“your herds were small before I worked for you”

and it has increased abundantly

“but now your wealth has greatly increased”

ULT

³⁰ For there was little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance, and **Yahweh has blessed** you at my feet. But now, when will I also do something **for my household?**”

Now when will I provide for my own household also?

“Now when will I take care of my own family?” Jacob uses a question to emphasize that he wants to start providing for his own family. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Now I want to take care of my family!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- **Yahweh**
- **and...has blessed**
- **for my household**

Genesis 30:31

What will I pay you

“What can I pay you” or “What can I give you.” This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “What can I pay you so that you stay and work for me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If you will do this thing for me

The connecting word “But” can be used at the beginning to show that what Jacob is about to say contrasts with what he just said. Alternate translation: “But if you will do this thing for me” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

this thing

The phrase “this thing” refers to what Jacob will propose in verse 32.

feed your flock and keep it

“feed and take care of your flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [tending](#)
- [your flocks](#)
- [watching over them](#)

ULT

31 Then he said, " What should I give to you?" And [Jacob](#) said, "Do not give anything to me. If you will do this thing for me, I will continue [tending your flocks watching over them](#):"

Genesis 30:32

removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every black one among the sheep, and the spotted and speckled among the goats

“and remove every sheep with spots, every black sheep, and every goat with spots”

These will be my wages

“This will be the cost of keeping me here”

Translation Words - ULT

- [your flocks](#)
- [today](#)
- [lamb](#)
- [lamb](#)
- [among the sheep](#)
- [among the goats](#)

ULT

³² I will pass through all [your flocks today](#) to remove from there every speckled and spotted [lamb](#) and every dark-colored [lamb among the sheep](#), and the spotted and speckled young [among the goats](#). And that will be my wages.

Genesis 30:33

My integrity will testify for me later on

The word “integrity” means “honesty.” This speaks about integrity as if it were a person who could testify for or against another person. Alternate translation: “And later you will know if I have been honest with you or not” (See: [Personification](#))

Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats, and black among the sheep, if any are found with me, will be considered to be stolen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you find any goats without spots or any sheep that are not black, you can consider them stolen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my righteousness](#)
- [in...days](#)
- [among the goats](#)
- [among the sheep](#)

ULT

33 So [my righteousness](#) will testify for me in future [days](#) when you go over my wages in front of you: any that is not speckled and spotted [among the goats](#) and dark-colored [among the sheep](#), it was stolen if it is with me.”

Genesis 30:34

Let it be according to your word

“Let it be as you say” or “We will do what you have said”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)

ULT

³⁴ And [Laban](#) said, " Behold, let it be according to your word."

Genesis 30:35**that were striped and spotted**

“that had stripes and spots”

that were speckled and spotted

“that had spots”

every one that had white in it

“every goat that had some white in it”

all the black ones among the sheep

“all the black sheep”

gave them into the hand

Here “hand” stands for control or care. Alternate translation: “had his sons take care of them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [on...day](#)
- [the male goats](#)
- [the female goats](#)
- [among the lambs](#)
- [into the hand of](#)
- [his sons](#)

ULT

³⁵ Then on that [day](#) he removed [the male goats](#) that were streaked and spotted, and all [the female goats](#) that were speckled and spotted, any that had white on it, and all the dark-colored ones [among the lambs](#). Then he gave them [into the hand of his sons](#),

Genesis 30:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- day
- Jacob
- And Jacob
- was tending
- Laban
- the...s flocks

ULT

³⁶ and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob. And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flocks.

Genesis 30:37

fresh poplar...almond...plane tree

These are all trees with white wood. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

peeled white streaks in them, and made the white inner wood appear that was in the sticks

“peeled off pieces of bark so that the white wood underneath would show”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)

ULT

³⁷ Then [Jacob](#) took for himself fresh-cut branches of poplar and almond and plane trees, and peeled white stripes in them, exposing the white that was inside the branches.

Genesis 30:38

the watering troughs

long open containers for holding water for animals to drink

Translation Words - ULT

- the flocks
- the flocks

ULT

³⁸ Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs where the flocks came to drink, in front of the flocks. And they were in heat when they came to drink,

Genesis 30:39

The flocks bred

“The animals of the flocks conceived” or “The animals mated”

produced striped, speckled, and spotted young

“gave birth to babies with stripes and spots”

Translation Words - ULT

- the flocks
- the flocks
- and...would bear

ULT

³⁹ and the flocks would mate by the branches, and the flocks would bear streaked, speckled and spotted young.

Genesis 30:40

Jacob separated

It can be made explicit that this happened over several years.
Alternate translation: "During the several years following, Jacob separated" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

face toward

"look toward"

he separated out his flocks for himself alone

"he set his flocks apart"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Then...set apart](#)
- [the flocks](#)
- [in the flocks of](#)
- [flocks](#)
- [the flocks of](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [Laban](#)

ULT

40 Then [Jacob set apart](#) the lambs, and he made the faces of [the flocks](#) look at the streaked and all the dark-colored animals [in the flocks of Laban](#). And he put [flocks](#) for himself by themselves, and he did not put them with [the flocks of Laban](#).

Genesis 30:41

before the eyes of the flock

Here the flock's "eyes" represent the sheep and emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: "so that the flock could see them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

among the sticks

"in front of the sticks"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...animals](#)
- [the flocks](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [so that they would mate](#)

ULT

41 So it happened whenever the strong [animals](#) were in heat, then [Jacob](#) put the branches in the troughs before the eyes of [the flocks so that they would mate](#) by the branches.

Genesis 30:42

the feebler animals

“the weaker animals”

So the feebler animals were Laban’s, and the stronger were Jacob’s

“So the weaker offspring belonged to Laban, while the stronger offspring belonged to Jacob.” You can make this even more explicit. Alternate translation: “So the weaker offspring did not have stripes or spots and so belonged to Laban, while the stronger offspring did have stripes or spots and so belonged to Jacob” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴² But when [the animals](#) were weak, he did not put them in. So it was the weak ones [went to Laban](#), and the strong ones [to Jacob](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [the animals](#)
- [went to Laban](#)
- [to Jacob](#)

Genesis 30:43

The man

“Jacob”

became very prosperous

“greatly prospered” or “became very wealthy”

Translation Words - ULT

- flocks
- and maidservants
- and menservants
- and camels
- and donkeys

ULT

⁴³ so that the man prospered very greatly, and he owned large flocks, and maidservants and menservants, and camels and donkeys.

Genesis 31

Genesis 31 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's blessing

When Jacob left Paddam Aram, he left very wealthy. Despite his punishment of exile from Canaan, God still blessed Jacob and his family. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Household gods

Although a few scholars believe the possession of the household gods was a sign of inheritance, this seems unlikely. It is probable that Rachel believed these idols would bring them "good luck" and would bring them great blessing. This was sinful because they were to trust in Yahweh, who already promised to bless them. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Irony

Laban's sons complained that Jacob cheated them out of their father's possessions. It was their father who tried to cheat Jacob out of what he promised to give Jacob. Jacob treated his brother Esau in the same way. Jacob cheated Esau out of their father's blessing.

Genesis 31:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

Jacob heard the words of Laban's sons, that they said

"Jacob heard that Laban's sons were saying"

Jacob has taken away all that was our father's

Laban's sons were exaggerating because they were angry. Alternate translation: "Everything that Jacob has taken belonged to our father" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹ Now Jacob heard the words of Laban's sons, that they said, "Jacob has taken away all that was our father's, and it is from our father's possessions that he has gotten all this wealth."

Genesis 31:2

Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed

These two sentences mean basically the same thing. The second explains the look that Jacob saw on Laban's face. Alternate translation: "Jacob noticed that Laban was no longer pleased with him" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [face, facial](#)

ULT

² Jacob saw the look on Laban's face. He saw that his attitude toward him had changed.

Genesis 31:3

your fathers

“your father Isaac and your grandfather Abraham”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- family, household
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

ULT

³ Then Yahweh said to Jacob, “Return to the land of your fathers and to your relatives, and I will be with you.”

Genesis 31:4

Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock

“Jacob sent for Rachel and Leah and told them to meet him out in the field with the flocks”

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Jacob, Israel
- Leah
- Rachel
- flock, herd
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁴Jacob sent and called Rachel and Leah to the field to his flock

Genesis 31:5

and said to them

You can start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He said to them" (See: [Sentence Structure](#))

I see your father's attitude toward me has changed

"I have noticed your father is no longer pleased with me"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- face, facial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁵ and said to them, "I see your father's attitude toward me has changed, but the God of my father has been with me."

Genesis 31:6

You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father

The word “you” here refers to both Rachel and Leah. It also adds emphasis. Alternate translation: “You yourselves know that I have served your father with all my strength” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁶You know that it is with all my strength that I have served your father.

Genesis 31:7

has deceived me

“has lied to me” or “has not treated me fairly”

my wages

“what he said he would pay me”

to hurt me

Possible meanings are (1) physical harm or (2) to cause Jacob to suffer in any way.

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- deceive, lie, deception, illusions
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁷ Your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times, but God has not permitted him to hurt me.

Genesis 31:8

The speckled animals

“The animals with spots”

the flock bore

“the flock gave birth to”

The striped

“The animals with stripes”

Translation Words - ULT

- bear, bearer, carry
- bear, bearer, carry (2)
- flock, herd
- flock, herd (2)

ULT

⁸ If he said, ‘The speckled animals will be your wages,’ then all the flock bore speckled young. If he said, ‘The striped will be your wages,’ then the whole flock bore striped young.

Genesis 31:9

In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me

“This is how God gave your father’s animals to me”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- livestock, animals

ULT

⁹ In this way God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me.

Genesis 31:10

General Information:

Jacob continues his story to his wives Leah and Rachel.

Once at the time of breeding season

“During the breeding season”

mating with the flock

Here “flock” represents only the female goats. Alternate translation: “mating with the female goats of the flock” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

were striped, speckled, and spotted

“had stripes, little spots, and big spots”

Translation Words - ULT

- [dream](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd \(2\)](#)
- [goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Once at the time of breeding season, I saw in a dream the male goats that were mating with the flock. The male goats were striped, speckled, and spotted.

Genesis 31:11

angel of God

Possible meanings are (1) God himself appeared as a man or (2) one of God's messengers appeared. Since the phrase is not well understood, it is best to simply translate it as "the angel of God," using the normal word that you use for "angel."

ULT

11 The angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob.' I said, 'Here I am.'

I said

"And I answered"

Here I am

"Yes, I am listening" or "Yes, what is it?" See how you translated this in [Genesis 22:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [dream](#)

Genesis 31:12

General Information:

The angel of the Lord continues to talk to Jacob ([Genesis 31:10](#)).

Lift up your eyes

This is a way of saying “Look up.” (See: [Idiom](#))

that are breeding with the flock

Here “flock” stands for only the female goats. Alternate translation: “that are breeding with the female goats of the flock” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

are striped, speckled, and spotted

“have stripes and spots”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Laban](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)

ULT

12 He said, ‘Lift up your eyes and see all the male goats that are breeding with the flock. They are striped, speckled, and spotted, for I have seen everything that Laban is doing to you.’

Genesis 31:13

where you anointed a pillar

Jacob poured oil on the pillar to dedicate it to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the land of your birth

“the land where you were born”

Translation Words - ULT

- anoint, anointed, anointing
- God
- vow
- vow
- Bethel
- Bethel
- earth, land
- earth, land
- family, household
- column, pillar
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- return, turn back

ULT

13 I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you made a vow to me. Now rise up and leave this land and return to the land of your birth.”

Genesis 31:14

Rachel and Leah answered and said to him

This does not mean they talked at the same time. It emphasizes they agreed with each other.

Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?

Rachel and Leah use a question to emphasize that there is nothing left for their father to give. Alternate translation: "There is absolutely nothing left for us to inherit from our father!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

14 Rachel and Leah answered and said to him, "Is there any portion or inheritance for us in our father's house?"

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- Leah
- Rachel
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household

Genesis 31:15

Are we not treated by him as foreigners?

They use a question to show their anger about how their father treats them. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Our father treats us like a foreign women instead of daughters!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

15 Are we not treated by him as foreigners? For he has sold us and has also completely devoured our money.

For he has sold us

This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: "He has sold us for his own gain" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has also completely devoured our money

Laban completely using up the money that he should have given to his daughters is spoken of as if he were a wild beast that ate the money as if it were food. Alternate translation: "he completely used up our money" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- alien, foreigner, sojourn
- silver

Genesis 31:16

are now ours and our children's

"belongs to us and to our children"

Now then

Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

whatever God has said to you, do it

"do all that God has told you"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

16 For all the riches that God has taken away from our father are now ours and our children's. Now then, whatever God has said to you, do it."

Genesis 31:17

his sons

Jacob took all of his children. It only mentions the sons because they are important as his heirs. Alternate translation: "his children" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- camel
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

ULT

17 Then Jacob arose and placed his sons and his wives upon the camels.

Genesis 31:18

He drove all his livestock

“He drove all his cattle.” Here “livestock” is referring to all his domesticated animals.

including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram

“and the other herd of cattle which he took ownership of when he was in Paddan Aram”

Then he set out to go to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan

“He went to the land of Canaan, where his father Isaac lived”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Paddan Aram
- Paddan Aram
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- livestock, animals
- livestock, animals

ULT

18 He drove all his livestock ahead of him, along with all his property, including the livestock he had acquired in Paddan Aram. Then he set out to go to his father Isaac in the land of Canaan.

Genesis 31:19

When Laban had gone to shear his sheep

“When Laban had left to cut the wool off of his sheep”

Translation Words - ULT

- Laban
- Rachel
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

¹⁹ When Laban had gone to shear his sheep, Rachel stole her father’s household gods.

Genesis 31:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

²⁰ Jacob also deceived Laban the Aramean, by not telling him that he was leaving.

Genesis 31:21

the River

This refers to the Euphrates River.

headed toward

“traveled toward”

the hill country of Gilead

“the mountains of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead”

Translation Words - ULT

- Gilead, Gileadite
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

ULT

²¹ So he fled with all that he had and quickly passed over the River, and headed toward the hill country of Gilead.

Genesis 31:22

On the third day

It was Jewish custom to count the day of departure as day one.
Alternate translation: "Two days after they had left"

Laban was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone told Laban" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that Jacob had fled

Only Jacob is mentioned because he is the leader of the family. It can be made explicit that his family went with him. Alternate translation: "that Jacob had fled with his wives and children" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [day](#)
- [report, reported, tell, reputation](#)

ULT

²² On the third day Laban was told that Jacob had fled.

Genesis 31:23

So he took

“So Laban took”

pursued him

“chased after Jacob”

for a seven days’ journey

Laban spent seven days walking to catch up to Jacob.

He overtook him

“He caught up to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite
- day
- caught up

ULT

²³ So he took his relatives with him and pursued him for a seven days’ journey. He overtook him in the hill country of Gilead.

Genesis 31:24

Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Laban. Alternate translation: “That night God came to Laban in a dream” (See: [Background Information](#))

ULT

²⁴ Now God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night and said to him, “Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.”

Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

The phrase “good nor bad” are used together to mean “anything.” Alternate translation: “Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- dream
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Genesis 31:25

Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jacob and Laban. Alternate translation: “When Laban caught up with Jacob, Jacob had set up camp in the hill country. Then Laban and his relatives also camped in the hill country of Gilead” (See: [Background Information](#))

ULT

²⁵ Laban overtook Jacob. Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country. Laban also camped with his relatives in the hill country of Gilead. ^[1]

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- Laban
- overtake
- tent, tentmakers

Genesis 31:26

carried away my daughters like prisoners of war

Laban speaks about Jacob taking his family with him back to the land of Canaan as if Jacob took them as prisoners after a battle and is forcing them to go with him. Laban is exaggerating because he is angry and is trying to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did. (See: [Simile](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

²⁶ Laban said to Jacob, “What have you done, that you deceived me and carried away my daughters like prisoners of war?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [captive, captivate, captivity, catch](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Genesis 31:27**flee secretly**

“run away in secret”

with celebration

“with joy”

with tambourine and with harps

These instruments stand for music. Alternate translation: “and with music” (See: [Metonymy](#))

tambourine

a musical instrument with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instrument is shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- joy, joyful, rejoice, glad
- lute, lyre
- report, reported, tell, reputation
- send, sent, send out

ULT

²⁷ Why did you flee secretly and trick me and did not tell me? I would have sent you away with celebration and with songs, with tambourine and with harps.

Genesis 31:28

to kiss my grandsons

Here “grandsons” would include all grandchildren whether male or female. Alternate translation: “to kiss my grandchildren” (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

Now you have done foolishly

“You have acted foolishly”

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- fool, foolish, folly
- son
- kiss

ULT

28 You did not allow me to kiss my grandsons and my daughters good bye. Now you have done foolishly.

Genesis 31:29

It is in my power to do you harm

The word “you” is plural and refers to everyone with Jacob. Alternate translation: “I have enough people with me to harm all of you” (See: [Forms of You](#))

Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad

The words “good nor bad” are used together to mean “anything.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 31:24](#). Alternate translation: “Do not say anything to try and stop Jacob from leaving” (See: [Merism](#))

ULT

29 It is in my power to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night and said, ‘Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.’

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Jacob, Israel
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Genesis 31:30

you have gone away

This “you” is singular and refers to Jacob. (See: [Forms of You](#))

to your father’s house

Here “house” stands for family. Alternate translation: “to be home with your father and the rest of your family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my gods

“my idols”

Translation Words - ULT

- [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [house](#), [household](#)

ULT

³⁰ Now you have gone away because you longed to return to your father’s house. But why did you steal my gods?”

Genesis 31:31

Because I was afraid and thought that you would take your daughters from me by force I left secretly

“I left in secret because I was afraid that you would take your daughters from me by force”

ULT

³¹ Jacob answered and said to Laban, “Because I was afraid and thought that you would take your daughters from me by force I left secretly.”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- seize, seizure, capture

Genesis 31:32

Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “We will kill whoever has stolen your gods” (See: [Litotes](#))

In the presence of our relatives

The word “our” refers to Jacob’s relatives and includes Laban’s relatives. All the relatives will watch to make sure everything is fair and honest. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

identify whatever with me is yours and take it

“look for whatever we have that is yours and take it”

For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them

This changes from the story to background information about Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- life, live, living, alive
- Jacob, Israel
- Rachel
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³² Whoever has stolen your gods will not continue to live. In the presence of our relatives, identify whatever with me is yours and take it.” For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.

Genesis 31:33

the two female servants

This refers to Zilpah and Bilhah.

he did not find them

“he did not find his idols”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- Leah
- Leah
- Rachel
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- tent, tentmakers
- tent, tentmakers
- tent, tentmakers
- tent, tentmakers
- tent, tentmakers (2)

ULT

³³ Laban went into Jacob’s tent, into Leah’s tent, and into the tent of the two female servants, but he did not find them. He went out of Leah’s tent and entered into Rachel’s tent.

Genesis 31:34

Now Rachel...upon them

The word “now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Rachel. (See: [Background Information](#))

saddle

a seat placed on the back of an animal so a person can ride on it

Translation Words - ULT

- Laban
- Rachel
- camel
- image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue
- tent, tentmakers

ULT

³⁴ Now Rachel had taken the household gods, put them in a camel's saddle, and sat upon them. Laban searched the whole tent, but did not find them.

Genesis 31:35

my master

Calling someone “my master” is a way of honoring them.

that I cannot stand up before you

“because I am unable to stand up in your presence”

for I am having my period

This refers to the time of the month when a woman bleeds from her womb. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- seek, search, look for

ULT

³⁵ She said to her father, “Do not be angry, my master, that I cannot stand up before you, for I am having my period.” So he searched but did not find his household gods.

Genesis 31:36

He said to him

“Jacob said to Laban”

What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?

ULT

³⁶ Jacob was angry and argued with Laban. He said to him, “What is my offense? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me?”

The phrases “What is my offense” and “What is my sin” mean basically the same thing. Jacob is asking Laban to tell him what he did wrong. Alternate translation: “What have I done wrong that you should pursue me like this?” (See: [Parallelism](#))

hotly pursued after me

Here the word “hotly” means Laban urgently chased Jacob intending to capture him. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [transgress, transgression](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [Laban](#)

Genesis 31:37

What have you found of all your household goods?

“What have you found that belongs to you?”

Set them here before our relatives

Here the word “our” refers to Jacob’s relatives and includes Laban’s relatives. Alternate translation: “Lay anything you have found in front of our relatives” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

they may judge between us two

Here “two of us” refers to Jacob and Laban. The phrase “to judge between” means to decide which person is right in a dispute. Alternate translation: “they may judge between the two of us” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- house, household

ULT

³⁷ For you have searched all my possessions. What have you found of all your household goods? Set them here before our relatives, so that they may judge between us two.

Genesis 31:38

General Information:

Jacob continues to speak to Laban.

twenty years

“20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

ewes

female sheep

have not miscarried

This means they have not had a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly with the lamb or kid born dead.

Translation Words - ULT

- [year](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

ULT

³⁸ For twenty years I have been with you. Your ewes and your female goats have not miscarried, nor have I eaten any rams from your flocks.

Genesis 31:39

What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When a wild animal killed one of your animals I did not bring it to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Instead, I bore the loss of it

For Jacob to count Laban’s dead animals as a loss from his own flock is spoken of as if it was a burden he would bear on his shoulders. Alternate translation: “Instead of counting it a loss from your flock, I counted it as a loss from my flock” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)
- [hand](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

ULT

³⁹ What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you. Instead, I bore the loss of it. You always made me pay for every missing animal, whether stolen by day or stolen by night.

Genesis 31:40

There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night

Suffering in the hot and cold temperatures is spoken of as if the temperatures were animals that were eating Jacob. Alternate translation: "I stayed with your flocks even during hottest part of the day and the coldest part of the night" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [day](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ There I was; in the day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night; and I went without sleep.

Genesis 31:41

General Information:

Jacob continues to speak to Laban.

These twenty years

“These last 20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

fourteen years

“14 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

changed my wages ten times

“changed what he said he would pay me ten times.” See how you translated “my wages” in [Genesis 31:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [year](#)
- [year](#)
- [year](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

41 These twenty years I have been in your household. I worked for you fourteen years for your two daughters, and six years for your flock. You have changed my wages ten times.

Genesis 31:42

Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me

Jacob is referring to the same God not to three different gods.
Alternate translation: "If the God of Abraham and Isaac, my father, had not been with me"

the God of my father

Here the word "father" refers to his parent, Isaac.

the one Isaac fears

Here the word "fears" refers to the "fear of Yahweh," which means to deeply respect him and show that respect by obeying him.

empty-handed

This stands for having nothing. Alternate translation: "with absolutely nothing" (See: [Metonymy](#))

God has seen my oppression and how hard I worked

The abstract noun "oppression" can be stated as "oppressed." Alternate translation: "God has seen how hard I worked and how you oppressed me" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, frighten](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [rebuke, reprove](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

⁴² Unless the God of my father, the God of Abraham, and the one Isaac fears, had been with me, surely now you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my oppression and how hard I worked, and he rebuked you last night."

Genesis 31:43

But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?

Laban uses a question to emphasize that there is nothing he can do. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But, there is nothing I can do to bring my daughters and grandchildren back with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- bear, bearer, carry
- day
- flock, herd
- flock, herd

ULT

⁴³ Laban answered and said to Jacob, "The daughters are my daughters, the grandchildren are my grandchildren, and the flocks are my flocks. All that you see is mine. But what can I do today to these my daughters, or to their children whom they have borne?"

Genesis 31:44

let it be for a witness

Here the word “witness” does not refer to a person, but it is used figuratively and refers to the covenant that Jacob and Laban are making. The covenant is spoken of as if it were a person who is there when they agree to act peacefully to one another. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#), [evidence](#)

ULT

44 So now, let us make a covenant, you and I, and let it be for a witness between you and me.”

Genesis 31:45

pillar

This means that a large stone was simply set up on its end to mark the place where this important event happened.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ So Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar.

Genesis 31:46

made a pile

“stacked them on top of each other”

Then they ate there by the pile

Eating a meal together was a part of making the covenant with one another. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ Jacob said to his relatives, “Gather stones.” So they took stones and made a pile. Then they ate there by the pile.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Jacob, Israel

Genesis 31:47

Jegar Saha Dutha

Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Jegar Saha Dutha means ‘heap of witness’ in Laban’s language.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

⁴⁷ Laban called it Jegar Saha Dutha, but Jacob called it Galeed.

Galeed

Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Galeed means ‘heap of witness’ in Jacob’s language. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban

Genesis 31:48

This pile is a witness between me and you

The stones do not actually bear witness as a person. Alternate translation: "This pile will be a reminder between me and you" (See: [Personification](#))

Galeed

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Galeed means 'heap of witness' in Jacob's language. See how you translated this in [Genesis 31:47](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Laban
- day

ULT

⁴⁸ Laban said, "This pile is a witness between me and you today." Therefore its name was called Galeed.

Genesis 31:49

Mizpah

Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Mizpah means ‘watchtower.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

when we are out of sight one from another

Here “out of sight” stands for no longer being in each other’s presence. Alternate translation: “when we are no longer with each other” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

49 It is also called Mizpah, because Laban said, “May Yahweh watch between you and me, when we are out of sight one from another.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Mizpah
- companion, fellow worker, friend
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Genesis 31:50

although no one else is with us

Here “us” refers to Laban and Jacob. Alternate translation: “even if no one else is there to see us”

see

“look” or “remember” or “pay attention to what i am about to tell you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)

ULT

50 If you mistreat my daughters, or if you take any wives besides my daughters, although no one else is with us, see, God is witness between you and me.”

Genesis 31:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

ULT

⁵¹ Laban said to Jacob, “Look at this pile, and look at the pillar, which I have set between you and me.”

Genesis 31:52

This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness

These piles of stones were to act as a remembrance and a boundary marker for Jacob and Laban regarding their peace agreement. They are spoken of as if they are human witnesses. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- column, pillar
- column, pillar

ULT

⁵² This pile is a witness, and the pillar is a witness, that I will not pass beyond this pile to you, and that you will not pass beyond this pile and this pillar to me, to do harm.

Genesis 31:53

May the God of Abraham, and the god of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us

Abraham is Jacob's grandfather. Nahor is Laban's grandfather. The father of Abraham and Nahor is Terah. Not all of them worshipped Yahweh.

ULT

⁵³ May the God of Abraham, and the god of Nahor, the gods of their father, judge between us." Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac.

the Fear of his father Isaac

Here the word "Fear" refers to Yahweh, who Isaac deeply respected and showed that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- judge, judgment
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- Nahor
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Genesis 31:54

called his relatives to eat a meal

Eating a meal together was part of making the covenant with one another. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- call, call out
- Jacob, Israel
- bread
- bread
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

⁵⁴ Jacob offered a sacrifice on the mountain and called his relatives to eat a meal. They ate and spent the entire night on the mountain.

Genesis 31:55

Early in the morning...returned home

Verse 55 is the first verse of chapter 32 in the original Hebrew text, but the last verse of chapter 31 in most modern Bibles. We suggest that you follow the numbering of Bibles in your national language.

blessed

This means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [son](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [kiss](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

55 Early in the morning Laban got up, kissed his grandsons and his daughters and blessed them. Then Laban left and returned home.

31:25 ^[1] .

Genesis 32

Genesis 32 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob does not trust Yahweh

Jacob does not trust in Yahweh. Instead, he fears that his brother Esau could kill him and his family. He should have known that Yahweh would continue to bless him and protect his family. He should have trusted in Yahweh's covenant faithfulness. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#))

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person's life. The return of Jacob to Canaan was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"A man wrestled with him"

Scholars are divided over the identity of the person Jacob wrestled with. It was probably an angel, but some believe he wrestled with Jesus before he came to earth. The translator will probably have difficulty trying to keep ambiguity in identifying this individual because the word "man" usually indicates a normal, living person. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 32:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- angel, archangel
- God
- Jacob, Israel

ULT

¹ Jacob also went on his way, and the angels of God met him.

Genesis 32:2

Mahanaim

Translators may also add a footnote that says “The name Mahanaim means ‘two camps.’”

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- Jacob, Israel

ULT

² When Jacob saw them, he said, “This is God’s camp,” so he called the name of that place Mahanaim.

Genesis 32:3

Seir

This is a mountainous area in the region of Edom. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- messenger
- send, sent, send out

ULT

³ Jacob sent messengers on ahead of him to his brother Esau in the land of Seir, in the region of Edom.

Genesis 32:4

**This is what you will say to my master Esau:
This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have
been...have delayed my return until now.**

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "'This is what I want you to tell my master Esau. Tell him that I have been...have delayed my return until now.'" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

my master Esau

Jacob is using polite language and refers to his brother as "my master."

your servant Jacob

Jacob is using polite language and refers to himself as "your servant."

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

⁴ He commanded them, saying, "This is what you will say to my master Esau: This is what your servant Jacob says: 'I have been staying with Laban, and have delayed my return until now.'

Genesis 32:5

I have oxen...in your eyes.

This continues the quotation within a quotation that begins with the words "I have been" in verse 4. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. "This is what I want you to tell my master Esau. Tell him that I have been...Tell him that I have oxen...in his eyes." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

⁵ I have oxen, donkeys, and flocks, male servants, and female servants. I have sent this message to my master, so that I may find favor in your eyes."

that I may find favor in your eyes

When a person finds favor in the eyes of another, the second person approves of the first person. Here "eyes" are a metonym for the person seeing something, and seeing a person is a metaphor for deciding whether what that person sees is good or bad. Alternate translation: "that you may approve of me" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- report, reported, tell, reputation
- send, sent, send out
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 32:6

four hundred men

“400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

⁶ The messengers returned to Jacob and said, “We went to your brother Esau. He is coming to meet you, and four hundred men are with him.”

Genesis 32:7

afraid

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

upset

distressed, troubled

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Jacob, Israel
- camel
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd
- people, people group

ULT

7 Then Jacob was very afraid and upset. So he divided the people who were with him into two camps, and also the flocks, the herds, and the camels.

Genesis 32:8

to one camp and attacks it, then the camp that is left will escape

Here “camp” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “to attack the people in one camp, then the people in the other camp will escape” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Esau](#)

ULT

⁸ He said, “If Esau comes to one camp and attacks it, then the camp that is left will escape.”

Genesis 32:9

God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh

This does not refer to different gods, but to the one God they all worship. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, who is God of my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ Jacob said, “God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh, who said to me, ‘Return to your country and to your kindred, and I will prosper you,’

Yahweh, who said to me, ‘Return to your country and to your kindred, and I will prosper you,’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, you who said that I should return to my country and to my kindred, and that you would prosper me,” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to your kindred

“to your family”

I will prosper you

“I will do good for you” or “I will treat you well”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [family, household](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather \(2\)](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

Genesis 32:10

I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant

The abstract nouns “faithfulness” and “trustworthiness” can be stated as “faithful” and “loyal.” Alternate translation: “I do not deserve for you to remain faithful to your covenant or for you to be loyal to me, your servant” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your servant

This is a polite way of saying “me.”

now I have become two camps

Here the phrase “I have become” is an idiom meaning what he now possesses. Alternate translation: “and now I have enough people, flocks, and possessions with me to make two camps” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#)
- [Jordan River](#), [Jordan](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

¹⁰ I am not worthy of all your acts of covenant faithfulness and of all the trustworthiness that you have done for your servant. For with only my staff I passed over this Jordan, and now I have become two camps.

Genesis 32:11

rescue me

“save me”

from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau

Here the word “hand” refers to power. The two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second clarifies that the brother whom Jacob intended was Esau. Alternate translation: “from the power of my brother, Esau” or “from my brother, Esau” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

I am afraid of him, that he will

“I am afraid that he will”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- fear, afraid, frighten
- son
- Esau
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- hand
- hand

ULT

11 Please rescue me from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, for I am afraid of him, that he will come and attack me and the mothers with the children.

Genesis 32:12

But you said, ‘I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants... number.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “But you said that you would certainly prosper me, and that you would make my descendants... number” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

¹² But you said, ‘I will certainly make you prosper. I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for their number.’”

make you prosper

“do good to you” or “treat you well”

I will make your descendants like the sand of the sea

This speaks about the very large number of Jacob’s descendants as if their number will be like the grains of sand on the seashore. (See: [Simile](#))

which cannot be numbered for their number

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which no one can count because of their number” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- seed, semen

Genesis 32:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- gift
- Esau
- hand

ULT

¹³ Jacob stayed there that night. He took some of what he had with him as a gift for Esau, his brother:

Genesis 32:14

two hundred

“200” (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty

“20” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

¹⁴ two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams,

Genesis 32:15

thirty...forty...ten

“30...40...10” (See: [Numbers](#))

their colts

“their young”

Translation Words - ULT

- camel
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- donkey, mule

ULT

¹⁵ thirty milking camels and their colts, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys.

Genesis 32:16

These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself

Here “into the hand” means to give control over them. Alternate translation: “He divided them into small herds, and gave each of his servants control over one herd” (See: [Idiom](#))

put a space between each of the herds

“let each herd travel at a distance from the other herds”

Translation Words - ULT

- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [flock, herd \(2\)](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [hand](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹⁶ These he gave into the hand of his servants, every herd by itself. He said to his servants, “Go on ahead of me and put a space between each of the herds.”

Genesis 32:17

He instructed

“He commanded”

asks you...that are in front of you?’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “asks you who your master is, where you are going, and who owns these animals that are ahead of you” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

To whom do you belong?

“Who is your master?”

Whose animals are these that are in front of you?

“Who owns these animals that are in front of you?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

17 He instructed the first servant, saying, “When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, saying, ‘To whom do you belong? Where are you going? Whose animals are these that are in front of you?’

Genesis 32:18

Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then I want you to tell him that all of these things belong to Jacob, his servant, and he is giving them to his master, Esau. And tell him that Jacob is on the way to meet him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

¹⁸ Then you will say, 'They are your servant Jacob's. They are a gift sent to my master Esau. See, he is also coming after us.'

your servant Jacob's

Jacob is referring to himself in a polite way as Esau's servant.

to my master Esau

Jacob is referring to Esau in a polite way as his master.

coming after us

Here "us" refers to the servant speaking and the other servants bringing herds to Esau. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Esau
- Jacob, Israel
- send, sent, send out
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 32:19

gave instructions to the second group

“commanded the second group”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [flock, herd](#)

ULT

19 Jacob also gave instructions to the second group, the third, and all the men who followed the herds. He said, “You will say the same thing to Esau when you meet him.”

Genesis 32:20

You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob'

Possible meanings are (1) "You will say also, 'Your servant Jacob'" or (2) "You will say, 'Also, Your servant Jacob.'"

I will appease him

"I will calm him down" or "I will make his anger go away"

he will receive me

"he will welcome me kindly"

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- Jacob, Israel
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

20 You must also say, 'Your servant Jacob is coming after us.'" For he thought, "I will appease him with the gifts that I am sending ahead of me. Then later, when I will see him, perhaps he will receive me."

Genesis 32:21

So the gifts went on ahead of him

Here “gifts” stands for the servants taking the gifts. (See: [Metonymy](#))

He himself stayed

Here “himself” emphasizes that Jacob did not go with the servants. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gift](#)

ULT

²¹ So the gifts went on ahead of him. He himself stayed that night in the camp.

Genesis 32:22

his two women servants

“his two servant wives.” This means Zilpah and Bilhah.

ford

a shallow place in a river that is easy to cross

Jabbok

This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²² Jacob got up during the night, and he took his two wives, his two women servants, and his eleven sons. He sent them across the ford of the Jabbok.

Genesis 32:23

all his possessions

“all that he had”

ULT

²³ In this way he sent them across the stream along with all his possessions.

Genesis 32:24

until daybreak

“until dawn”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)

ULT

²⁴ Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until daybreak.

Genesis 32:25

Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The man injured Jacob's hip as he wrestled with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hip

the place where the upper leg bone connects to the hip

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)

ULT

²⁵ When the man saw that he could not defeat him, he struck Jacob's hip. Jacob's hip was dislocated as he wrestled with him.

Genesis 32:26

for the dawn is breaking

“the sun will rise soon”

bless

Here “bless” means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

I will not let you go unless you bless me

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Absolutely not! You must bless me first, then I will let you go” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

²⁶ The man said, “Let me go, for the dawn is breaking.” Jacob said, “I will not let you go unless you bless me.”

Genesis 32:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Jacob, Israel

ULT

²⁷ The man said to him, "What is your name?" Jacob said, "Jacob."

Genesis 32:28

Israel

Translators may add a footnote that says “The name Israel means ‘He struggles with God.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with men

Here “men” means “people” in general.

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)

ULT

28 The man said, “Your name will no longer be called Jacob, but Israel. For you have struggled with God and with men and have prevailed.”

Genesis 32:29

He said, “Why is it that you ask my name?”

“He said, ‘Why would you ask about my name?’” This rhetorical question was meant to shock, rebuke and cause Jacob to ponder over what just happened between him and the other man he just wrestled with. Alternate translation: “Do not ask me for my name!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [report, reported, tell, reputation](#)

ULT

²⁹ Jacob asked him, “Please tell me your name.” He said, “Why is it that you ask my name?” Then he blessed him there.

Genesis 32:30

Peniel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Peniel means 'the face of God.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

face to face

Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.

and my life is delivered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "yet he spared my life" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- life, live, living, alive
- name
- Jacob, Israel
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- face, facial
- face, facial

ULT

³⁰ Jacob called the name of the place Peniel for he said, "I have seen God face to face, and my life is delivered."

Genesis 32:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³¹ The sun rose on Jacob as he passed Peniel. He was limping because of his hip.

Genesis 32:32

That is why to this day

This marks a change from the story to background information about the descendants of Israel. (See: [Background Information](#))

to this day

This means to the day that the author was writing this.

ligaments of the hip

This refers to the muscle that connects the thigh bone to the thigh socket.

hip joint

“thigh socket”

while dislocating

“while striking”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [day](#)

ULT

³² That is why to this day the people of Israel do not eat the ligaments of the hip which are at the hip joint, because the man injured those ligaments while dislocating Jacob's hip.

Genesis 33

Genesis 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jacob's fear

Jacob feared his brother. He showed Esau great respect and sought to protect his family from Esau's power. He did not fear and trust Yahweh. (See: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [frighten](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Favoritism

Jacob showed favoritism towards Rachel and Joseph. He arranged the family according to those he loved the most. Rachel and Joseph were the most protected from a potential attack by Esau. He would have rather had everyone else die, in order to spare their lives. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 33:1

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to a surprising new part of the story.

four hundred men

“400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jacob divided the children...female servants

This does not mean Jacob divided the children evenly so that each woman had the same amount of children with her. Jacob divided the children so that each one went with his or her mother. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

female servants

“servant wives.” This refers to Bilhah and Zilpah.

Translation Words - ULT

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹ Jacob looked up and, behold, Esau was coming, and with him were four hundred men. Jacob divided the children among Leah, Rachel, and the two female servants.

Genesis 33:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- Joseph (OT)
- Leah
- Rachel
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

² Then he put the female servants and their children in front, followed by Leah and her children, and followed by Rachel and Joseph last of all.

Genesis 33:3

He himself went on ahead of them

Here “himself” emphasizes that Jacob went alone in front of the others. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

He bowed

Here the word “bow” means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- earth, land

ULT

³ He himself went on ahead of them. He bowed toward the ground seven times, until he came near to his brother.

Genesis 33:4

meet him

“meet Jacob”

embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “Esau put his arms around Jacob, hugged him, and kissed him”

Then they wept

This can be translated more explicitly. Alternate translation: “Then Esau and Jacob cried because they were happy to see each other again” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- kiss
- run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

ULT

⁴ Esau ran to meet him, embraced him, hugged his neck, and kissed him. Then they wept.

Genesis 33:5

he saw the women and the children

“he saw the women and children who were with Jacob”

The children whom God has graciously given your servant

The phrase “your servant” is a polite way for Jacob to refer to himself. Alternate translation: “These are the children God has kindly given me, your servant” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

ULT

⁵ When Esau looked up, he saw the women and the children. He said, “Who are these people with you?” Jacob said, “The children whom God has graciously given your servant.”

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- God
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 33:6

female servants

“servant wives.” This refers to Bilhah and Zilpah.

bowed down

This is a sign of humility and respect before another person. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ Then the female servants came forward with their children, and they bowed down.

Genesis 33:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- Joseph (OT)
- Leah
- Rachel
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

ULT

⁷ Next Leah also and her children came forward and bowed down. Finally Joseph and Rachel came forward and bowed down.

Genesis 33:8

What do you mean by all these groups that I met?

The phrase “all these groups” refers to the groups of servants that Jacob sent to give gifts to Esau. Alternate translation: “Why did you send all of those different groups to meet me?”

ULT

⁸ Esau said, “What do you mean by all these groups that I met?” Jacob said, “To find favor in the sight of my master.”

To find favor in the sight of my master

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “So that you, my master, would be pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

my master

The phrase “my master” is a polite way of referring to Esau. (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- lord, Lord, master, sir

Genesis 33:9

I have enough

The word “animals” or “property” is understood. Alternate translation: “I have enough animals” or “I have enough property” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

⁹ Esau said, “I have enough, my brother. Keep what you have for yourself.”

Genesis 33:10

if I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase “found favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “if you are pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

my gift from my hand

Here “hand” refers to Jacob. Alternate translation: “this gift that I am giving to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

my hand, for indeed

This can be translated as a new sentence: “my hand. For certainly”

I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God

The meaning of this simile is unclear. Possible meanings are (1) Jacob is happy that Esau has forgiven him like God has forgiven him or (2) Jacob is amazed to see his brother again like he was amazed to see God or (3) Jacob is humbled to be in Esau’s presence like he was humbled to be in God’s presence. (See: [Simile](#))

I have seen your face

Here “face” stands for Esau. It may be best to translate as “face” because of the importance of the word “face” here with “face of God” and “face to face” in [Genesis 32:30](#). (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- gift
- God
- Jacob, Israel
- face, facial
- face, facial
- hand

ULT

10 Jacob said, “No, please, if I have found favor in your eyes, then accept my gift from my hand, for indeed, I have seen your face, and it is like seeing the face of God, and you have accepted me.”

Genesis 33:11

that was brought to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that my servants brought to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

God has dealt graciously with me

“God has treated me very well” or “God has blessed me very much”

Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it

It was customary to refuse a gift first, but then to accept the gift before the giver was offended.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

11 Please accept my gift that was brought to you, because God has dealt graciously with me, and because I have enough.” Thus Jacob urged him, and Esau accepted it.

Genesis 33:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² Then Esau said, "Let us be on our way. I will go before you."

Genesis 33:13

My master knows

This is a polite and formal way of referring to Esau. Alternate translation: "You, my master, know" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the children are young

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation: "the children are too young to travel fast" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If they are driven hard even one day

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If we force them to go too fast even for one day" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- die, dead, deadly, death
- flock, herd
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

13 Jacob said to him, "My master knows that the children are young, and that the sheep and the cattle are nursing their young. If they are driven hard even one day, all the animals will die."

Genesis 33:14

Please let my master go on ahead of his servant

This is a polite and formal way of Jacob referring to himself. Alternate translation: "My lord, I am your servant. Please go ahead of me" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

at the pace of the livestock that are before me

"at the speed the animals I am looking after can go"

Seir

This is a mountainous area in the region of Edom. See how you translated this in [Genesis 32:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [children, child, offspring](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir \(2\)](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Please let my master go on ahead of his servant. I will travel more slowly, at the pace of the livestock that are before me, and at the pace of the children, until I come to my master in Seir."

Genesis 33:15

Why do that?

Jacob uses a question to emphasize that Esau does not need to leave men. Alternate translation: "Do not do that!" or "You do not need to do that!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my lord

This is a polite and formal way of referring to Esau. Alternate translation: "you, my lord" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Esau
- people, people group

ULT

15 Esau said, "Let me leave with you some of my men who are with me." But Jacob said, "Why do that? Let me find favor in the sight of my lord."

Genesis 33:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- day
- return, turn back

ULT

¹⁶ So Esau that day started on his way back to Seir.

Genesis 33:17

Succoth

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name Succoth means 'shelters.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

built himself a house

It is implied that the house is also for his family. Alternate translation: "built a house for himself and his family" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for his livestock

"for the animals he looked after"

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Succoth](#)
- [Succoth](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)

ULT

17 Jacob traveled to Succoth, built himself a house, and made shelters for his livestock. Therefore the name of the place is called Succoth.

Genesis 33:18

General Information:

This starts a new part of the story. The author describes what Jacob did after he rested in Succoth.

When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

“After Jacob left Paddan Aram”

When Jacob...he arrived...He camped

This only mentions Jacob because he is the leader of the family. It is implied that his family was with him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

He camped near

“He set up his camp near”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Jacob, Israel
- Paddan Aram
- Paddan Aram
- Shechem
- earth, land
- face, facial

ULT

18 When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, he arrived safely at the city of Shechem, which is in the land of Canaan. He camped near the city.

Genesis 33:19

piece of ground

“piece of land”

Hamor

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shechem’s father

Shechem is the name of a city and the name of a man.

a hundred

“100” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Hamor](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [tent, tentmakers](#)

ULT

19 Then he bought the piece of ground where he had pitched his tent from the sons of Hamor, Shechem’s father, for a hundred pieces of silver.

Genesis 33:20

El Elohe Israel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Elohe Israel means 'God, the God of Israel.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- call, call out
- God
- God
- Israel, Israelites

ULT

20 There he set up an altar and called it El Elohe Israel.

Genesis 34

Genesis 34 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel

Jacob's name was changed to Israel. It is his descendants who inherited the promised blessings given to him and to Isaac and Abraham. This is the first time his descendants are collectively referred to as the people group Israel. The people group Israel is identified through the covenant of circumcision. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#), [promise](#), [promised](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [covenant](#) and [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

Jacob's reacted to the rape of Dinah with indifference. This is possibly because she was not a daughter of Rachel. His reaction was both unwise and improper. This action brought shame on the whole family. Therefore, Jacob's sons corrected this wrong and plotted against Hamor and Shechem.

Shechem raped Dinah, but then he said he loved her. By raping her, he ensured that no one else would want to marry her. This is not love. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#) and [love](#), [beloved](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Genesis 34:1

Now

Here this word is used to mark a new part of the story.

Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 30:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹ Now Dinah, Leah's daughter whom she bore to Jacob, went out to meet the young women of the land.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [earth, land](#)

Genesis 34:2

the Hivite

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated the similar word “Hivites” in [Genesis 10:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the prince of the land

This is referring to Hamor not Shechem. Also, “prince” here does not mean son of a king. It means Hamor was the leader of the people in that area.

He took her and lay with her

Possible meanings are (1) “took” and “lay with” are two separate actions. Alternate translation: “he grabbed her and had sexual relations with her” or (2) “took” and “lay with” are a hendiadys, two words used to describe one action, Alternate translation: “raped her” (See: [Hendiadys](#))

lay with her

This is a polite way of speaking of sexual relations. You may have to use other words in your translation. Alternate translation: “had sexual relations with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Hamor](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader](#)
- [had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with](#)

ULT

² Shechem son of Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the land, saw her. He took her and lay with her, and he humiliated her.

Genesis 34:3

He was drawn to Dinah

“He was very attracted to her.” This speaks about Shechem loving Dinah and wanting to be with her as if something were forcing him to come to Dinah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He wanted very much to be with Dinah” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³ He was drawn to Dinah, the daughter of Jacob. He loved the young woman and spoke tenderly to her.

spoke tenderly to her

He tried to convince her that he loved her and that he wanted her to love him also.

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- life, live, living, alive
- love, beloved
- Jacob, Israel

Genesis 34:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hamor
- Shechem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁴ Shechem spoke to his father Hamor, saying, "Get this young woman for me as a wife."

Genesis 34:5

Now Jacob

“Now” is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jacob. (See: [Background Information](#))

Jacob heard that he

The word “he” refers to Shechem.

he had defiled

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him.

held his peace

This is a way of saying that Jacob did not say or do anything about the matter. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [defile, defiled, desecrate](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)

ULT

⁵ Now Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter. His sons were with his livestock in the field, so Jacob held his peace until they came.

Genesis 34:6

Hamor...went out to Jacob

“Hamor...went to meet Jacob”

Translation Words - ULT

- Hamor
- Jacob, Israel
- Shechem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁶ Hamor the father of Shechem went out to Jacob to speak with him.

Genesis 34:7

The men were offended

“The men were very insulted” or “They were shocked”

he had disgraced Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to every member of Jacob’s family. Israel as a people group was disgraced. Alternate translation: “he had humiliated the family of Israel” or “he had brought shame on the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

lying with Jacob’s daughter

“having sexual relations with Jacob’s daughter”

for such a thing should not have been done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for he should not have done such a terrible thing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)

ULT

⁷ The sons of Jacob came in from the field when they heard of the matter. The men were offended. They were very angry because he had disgraced Israel by lying with Jacob’s daughter, for such a thing should not have been done.

Genesis 34:8

Hamor spoke with them

“Hamor spoke with Jacob and his sons”

loves your daughter

Here the word “love” refers to romantic love between a man and a woman. Alternate translation: “loves her and wants to marry her”

give her to him as a wife

In some cultures, the parents decide whom their children will marry.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Hamor
- Shechem

ULT

⁸ Hamor spoke with them, saying, “My son Shechem loves your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife.”

Genesis 34:9

Intermarry with us

To intermarry is to marry a member of a different racial, social, religious or tribal group. Alternate translation: "Allow marriages between your people and ours"

ULT

⁹ Intermarry with us, give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves.

Genesis 34:10

the land will be open to you

“the land will be available to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

ULT

10 You will live with us, and the land will be open to you to live and trade in, and to acquire property.”

Genesis 34:11

Shechem said to her father

“Shechem said to Dinah’s father Jacob”

Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “If you will approve of me, then I will give you whatever you ask” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

11 Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, “Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you tell me I will give.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Genesis 34:12

bride price

In some cultures, it is customary for a man to give money, property, cattle, and other gifts to the bride's family at the time of marriage.

Translation Words - ULT

- gift

ULT

12 Ask me for as great a bride price and gift as you will, and I will give whatever you say to me, but give me the young woman as a wife."

Genesis 34:13

The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit

The abstract noun “deceit” can be stated as the verb “lied.”
Alternate translation: “But the sons of Jacob lied to Shechem and Hamor when they answered them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

¹³ The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit, because Shechem had defiled Dinah their sister.

Shechem had defiled Dinah

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him. See how you translated “defiled” in [Genesis 34:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Hamor
- Jacob, Israel
- Shechem
- deceive, lie, deception, illusions
- defile, defiled, desecrate
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sister

Genesis 34:14

They said to them

“Jacob’s sons said to Shechem and Hamor”

We cannot do this thing, to give our sister

“We cannot agree to give Dinah in marriage”

for that would be a disgrace to us

“for that would cause us shame.” Here “us” refers to Jacob’s sons and all the people of Israel. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- sister

ULT

14 They said to them, “We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to anyone who is uncircumcised; for that would be a disgrace to us.”

Genesis 34:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Only on this condition will we agree with you: If you will become circumcised as we are, if every male among you is circumcised.

Genesis 34:16

give our daughters to you...take your daughters to ourselves

This means they will allow a person from Jacob's family to marry a person who lives in Hamor's land.

Translation Words - ULT

- [people, people group](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Then will we give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters to ourselves, and we will live with you and become one people.

Genesis 34:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [circumcise](#), [circumcised](#), [circumcision](#), [uncircumcised](#), [uncircumcision](#)

ULT

¹⁷ But if you do not listen to us and become circumcised, then we will take our sister and we will leave.”

Genesis 34:18

Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem

“Hamor and his son Shechem agreed with what Jacob’s sons said”

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- son
- Hamor
- Hamor
- Shechem

ULT

¹⁸ Their words pleased Hamor and his son Shechem.

Genesis 34:19**to do what they said**

“to become circumcised”

Jacob’s daughter

“Jacob’s daughter Dinah”

ULT

19 The young man did not delay to do what they said, because he delighted in Jacob’s daughter, and because he was the most honored person in all his father’s household.

because he was the most honored person in all his father’s household

This can be translated as a new sentence. It can be made explicit that Shechem knew the other men would agree to be circumcised because they greatly respected him. Alternate translation: “Shechem knew all the men in his father’s household would agree with him because he was the most honored among them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- honor
- Jacob, Israel
- delight
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 34:20

the gate of their city

It was common for leaders to meet at the city gate to make official decisions.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Hamor
- Shechem
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

²⁰ Hamor and Shechem his son went to the gate of their city and spoke with the men of their city, saying,

Genesis 34:21

These men

“Jacob, his sons, and the people of Israel”

peace with us

Here “us” includes Hamor, his son and all the people they spoke with at the city gate. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

let them live in the land and trade in it

“let them live and trade in the land”

for, really, the land is large enough for them

Shechem uses the word “really” to add emphasis to his statement. “because, certainly, the land is large enough for them” or “because, indeed, there is plenty of land for them”

take their daughters...give them our daughters

This refers to marriages between the women of one group and the men of the other group. See how you translated similar phrases in [Genesis 34:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)

ULT

21 “These men are at peace with us, so let them live in the land and trade in it for, really, the land is large enough for them. Let us take their daughters as wives, and let us give them our daughters.”

Genesis 34:22

General Information:

Hamor and Shechem his son continue to talk to the city elders.

Only on this condition will the men agree to live with us and become one people: If every male among us is circumcised, as they are circumcised

“Only if every man among us is circumcised, as the men of Israel are circumcised, will they agree to live among us and unite with us as one people”

Translation Words - ULT

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- people, people group

ULT

²² Only on this condition will the men agree to live with us and become one people: If every male among us is circumcised, as they are circumcised.

Genesis 34:23

Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours?

Shechem uses a question to emphasize that Jacob's livestock and property will belong to the people of Shechem. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "All of their animals and property will be ours." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²³ Will not their livestock and their property—all their animals be ours? So let us agree with them, and they will live among us."

Translation Words - ULT

- [beast](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)

Genesis 34:24

Every male was circumcised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Hamor and Shechem had someone circumcise all the men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- son
- Hamor
- Shechem
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

ULT

²⁴ All the men of the city listened to Hamor and Shechem, his son. Every male was circumcised.

Genesis 34:25

On the third day

“third” is the ordinal number for three. It can be stated without the ordinal number. Alternate translation: “After two days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

when they were still in pain

“when the men of the city were still in pain”

each took his sword

“took their swords”

they attacked the city

Here “city” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “they attacked the people of the city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

security, and they killed all the males

This can be translated as a new sentence. “security. Simeon and Levi killed all the men of the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [day](#)
- [slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

²⁵ On the third day, when they were still in pain, two of the sons of Jacob (Simeon and Levi, Dinah’s brothers), each took his sword and they attacked the city that was certain of its security, and they killed all the males.

Genesis 34:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Hamor
- Shechem
- Shechem
- house, household
- slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

²⁶ They killed Hamor and his son Shechem with the edge of the sword. They took Dinah from Shechem's house and went away.

Genesis 34:27

the dead bodies

“the dead bodies of Hamor, Shechem, and their men”

looted the city

“stole everything in the city that was valuable”

because the people had defiled their sister

Shechem alone had defiled Dinah, but Jacob’s sons considered Shechem’s entire family and everyone in the city responsible for this act.

had defiled

This means that Shechem had greatly dishonored and disgraced Dinah by forcing her to sleep with him. See how you translated “defiled” in [Genesis 34:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- defile, defiled, desecrate
- pierce, pierced
- sister

ULT

²⁷ The other sons of Jacob came to the dead bodies and looted the city, because the people had defiled their sister.

Genesis 34:28

They took their flocks

“Jacob’s sons took the people’s flocks”

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd

ULT

²⁸ They took their flocks, their herds, their donkeys, and everything in the city and in the surrounding fields with

Genesis 34:29

all their wealth

“all their possessions and money”

All their children and their wives, they captured

“They captured all their children and wives”

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch
- house, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

ULT

²⁹ all their wealth. All their children and their wives, they captured. They even took everything that was in the houses.

Genesis 34:30

brought trouble on me

Causing someone to experience trouble is spoken of as if trouble were an object that is brought and placed on a person. Alternate translation: “caused great problems for me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land

Causing the people in the surrounding areas to hate Jacob is spoken of as if Jacob’s sons made him smell bad physically. This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “You have made me repulsive to the people who live in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am few in number...against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household

Here the words “I” and “me” refer to all of Jacob’s household. Jacob only says “I” or “me” since he is the leader. Alternate translation: “My household is small...against us and attack us, then they will destroy all of us” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

gather themselves together against me and attack me

“form an army and attack me” or “form an army and attack us”

then I will be destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will destroy me” or “they will destroy us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Levi, Levite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity](#)

ULT

³⁰ Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, “You have brought trouble on me, to make me stink to the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites and the Perizzites. I am few in number. If they gather themselves together against me and attack me, then I will be destroyed, I and my household.”

Genesis 34:31

Should Shechem have dealt with our sister as with a prostitute?

Simeon and Levi use a question to emphasize that Shechem did what was wrong and deserved to die. Alternate translation: “Shechem should not have treated our sister as if she were a prostitute!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³¹ But Simeon and Levi said, “Should Shechem have dealt with our sister as with a prostitute?”

Translation Words - ULT

- prostitute, harlot, whored
- sister

Genesis 35

Genesis 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Name change

In Scripture, a change in name always occurs at a highly significant point in a person's life. The return of Jacob to Canaan was a significant event in the history of the Hebrew people.

Covenant

The covenant God made with Abraham is repeated here. It indicates that all of Jacob's descendants will inherit the promises of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Genesis 35:1

go up to Bethel

The phrase “go up” is used because Bethel is higher in elevation than Shechem.

Build an altar there to God

God speaks about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “Build an altar there to me, your God” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- brother
- God
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Esau
- Jacob, Israel
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

ULT

¹ God said to Jacob, “Arise, go up to Bethel, and stay there. Build an altar there to God, who appeared to you when you fled from Esau your brother.”

Genesis 35:2**said to his household**

“said to his family”

Put away the foreign gods that are among you

“Throw away your idols” or “Get rid of your false gods”

purify yourselves, and change your clothes

This was the custom of cleansing oneself morally and physically before going to worship God.

change your clothes

Putting on a new clothes was a sign that they had made themselves clean before approaching God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry
- pure, purify, purification
- Jacob, Israel
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- house, household

ULT

² Then Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, “Put away the foreign gods that are among you, purify yourselves, and change your clothes.”

Genesis 35:3

in the day of my distress

“in the time of my distress” or “when I was in trouble”

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Bethel
- Bethel
- day
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

ULT

³ Then let us depart and go up to Bethel. I will build an altar there to God, who answered me in the day of my distress, and has been with me wherever I have gone.”

Genesis 35:4

So they gave

“so everyone in Jacob’s household gave” or “so all of his family and servants gave”

that were in their hand

Here “in their hand” stands for what they own. Alternate translation: “that were in their possession” or “that they had” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the rings that were in their ears

“their earrings.” Possible meanings are (1) the gold in the earrings could have been used to make more idols or (2) they took these earrings from the city of Shechem after they attacked it and killed all the people. The earrings would have reminded them of their sin.

Translation Words - ULT

- [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [alien, foreigner, sojourn](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴ So they gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that were in their hand, and the rings that were in their ears. Jacob buried them under the oak that was near Shechem.

Genesis 35:5

God made panic to fall on the cities

God causing the people of the cities to be afraid of Jacob and his family is spoken of as if panic were an object that fell on the cities. The abstract noun “panic” can be stated as “afraid.” Alternate translation: “God made the people in the surrounding cities afraid of Jacob and those with him” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

⁵ As they traveled, God made panic to fall on the cities that were around them, so those people did not pursue the sons of Jacob.

on the cities

Here “cities” stands for the people who live in the cities. (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of Jacob

It is implied that no one attacked anyone in Jacob’s family. But two of the sons, Simeon and Levi had attacked the Canaanites relatives of Shechem after he seized and slept with Jacob’s daughter. Jacob was afraid they would seek revenge in [Genesis 34:30](#). Alternate translation: “Jacob’s family” or “Jacob’s household” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic](#)

Genesis 35:6

Luz

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in [Genesis 28:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Bethel
- Bethel
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- people, people group

ULT

⁶ So Jacob arrived at Luz (that is, Bethel), which is in the land of Canaan, he and all the people who were with him.

Genesis 35:7

El Bethel

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name El Bethel means 'God of Bethel.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

there God had revealed himself to him

"there God made himself known to Jacob"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- brother
- call, call out
- God
- God
- reveal, revealed, revelation
- Bethel
- Bethel

ULT

⁷ He built an altar there and called the place El Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him, when he was fleeing from his brother.

Genesis 35:8

Deborah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rebekah's nurse

A nurse is a woman who takes care of another woman's child. The nurse was highly honored and important to the family.

She was buried down from Bethel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They buried her down from Bethel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

down from Bethel

The phrase "down from" is used because they buried her in a place that was lower in elevation than Bethel.

Allon Bakuth

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Allon Bakuth means 'Oak tree where there is weeping.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Bethel](#)
- [Rebekah](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [oak](#)

ULT

⁸ Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died. She was buried down from Bethel under the oak tree, so it was called Allon Bakuth.

Genesis 35:9

When Jacob came from Paddan Aram

It can be made explicit that they were in Bethel. Alternate translation: "After Jacob left Paddan Aram, and while he was in Bethel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

blessed

Here "bless" means to pronounce a formal blessing on someone and to cause good things to happen to that person.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Paddan Aram](#)
- [Paddan Aram](#)

ULT

⁹ When Jacob came from Paddan Aram, God appeared to him again and blessed him.

Genesis 35:10

but your name will no longer be called Jacob

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but your name will no longer be Jacob” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- name
- name
- name
- name
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel

ULT

10 God said to him, “Your name is Jacob, but your name will no longer be called Jacob. Your name will be Israel.” So God called his name Israel.

Genesis 35:11

God said to him

“God said to Jacob”

Be fruitful and multiply

God told Jacob to produce children so that there would be many of them. The word “multiply” explains how he was to be “fruitful.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 1:22](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

A nation and a company of nations will come from you

Here “nation” and “nations” refer to Jacob’s descendants who will establish these nations. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [king, kingship](#)
- [loins, waist](#)
- [multiply, multiplied, multiplication](#)
- [nation](#)
- [nation](#)

ULT

11 God said to him, “I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and a company of nations will come from you, and kings will be among your descendants.”

Genesis 35:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- earth, land
- earth, land
- seed, semen

ULT

¹² The land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, I will give to you. To your descendants after you I also give the land.”

Genesis 35:13

God went up from him

Here “went up” is used because where God dwells is typically thought of as being up or above the world. Alternate translation: “God left him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

ULT

¹³ God went up from him in the place where he spoke with him.

Genesis 35:14

pillar

This is a memorial pillar which was simply a large stone or boulder set up on its end.

He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it

This is a sign that he is dedicating the pillar to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [oil](#)
- [column, pillar](#)
- [column, pillar](#)

ULT

14 Jacob set up a pillar in the place where God had spoken to him, a pillar of stone. He poured out a drink offering over it and poured oil on it.

Genesis 35:15

Bethel

Translators may also add a footnote that says "The name Bethel means 'house of God.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- Bethel
- Bethel
- Jacob, Israel

ULT

15 Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him, Bethel.

Genesis 35:16

Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem.

She had hard labor

“She was having a very difficult time giving birth to the child”

Translation Words - ULT

- Bethel
- Bethel
- Ephrath, Ephrathah
- Rachel
- bear, bearer, carry
- bear, bearer, carry
- earth, land

ULT

16 They journeyed on from Bethel. While they were still some distance from Ephrath, Rachel went into labor. She had hard labor.

Genesis 35:17

While she was in hardest labor

“When the labor pain was at its worst”

midwife

a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- son
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

17 While she was in hardest labor, the midwife said to her, “Do not be afraid, for now you will have another son.”

Genesis 35:18

As she was dying, with her dying breath

A “dying breath” is a person’s last breath before he or she dies.
Alternate translation: “Just before she died, as she was taking her last breath” (See: [Idiom](#))

Ben-Oni

Translator may add a footnote that says “The name Ben-Oni means ‘son of my sorrow.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Benjamin

Translator may add a footnote that says “The name Benjamin means ‘son of the right hand.’” The phrase “right hand” indicates a place of special favor.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- call, call out
- life, live, living, alive
- name
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

18 As she was dying, with her dying breath she named him Ben-Oni, but his father called him Benjamin.

Genesis 35:19

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they buried her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on the way

“alongside the road”

Translation Words - ULT

- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- Ephrath, Ephrathah
- Rachel
- bury, buried, burial
- die, dead, deadly, death

ULT

19 Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem).

Genesis 35:20

It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day

"It marks Rachel's grave still to this day"

to this day

"up to the present time." This means to the time that the author was writing this.

ULT

²⁰ Jacob set up a pillar upon her grave.
It is the marker of Rachel's grave to this day.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob, Israel
- Rachel
- day
- column, pillar
- column, pillar
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Genesis 35:21

Israel traveled on

It is implied that Israel's family and servants are with him. The full meaning of this information can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tent, tentmakers](#)

ULT

²¹ Israel traveled on and pitched his tent beyond the watchtower of the flock.

Genesis 35:22

lay with

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “had sexual relations with” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel’s female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Now Jacob had twelve sons

This sentence begins a new paragraph, which continues into the following verses.

twelve sons

“12 sons” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Bilhah](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [concubine](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with](#)

ULT

22 While Israel was living in that land, Reuben lay with Bilhah his father’s concubine, and Israel heard of it. Now Jacob had twelve sons.

Genesis 35:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/names/levites\]\]](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

²³ His sons by Leah were Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, and Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

Genesis 35:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Joseph (OT)
- Rachel

ULT

²⁴ His sons by Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

Genesis 35:25

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Bilhah
- Dan
- Naphtali
- Rachel
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²⁵ His sons by Bilhah, Rachel's female servant, were Dan and Naphtali.

Genesis 35:26

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were born to him in Paddan Aram

It is implied that this does not include Benjamin who was born in the land of Canaan near Bethlehem. It only mentions Paddan Aram since that is where most of them were born. The full meaning of this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "who were born to him in Paddan Aram, except Benjamin who was born in the land of Canaan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

26 The sons of Zilpah, Leah's female servant, were Gad and Asher. All these were the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan Aram.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Asher
- Gad
- Jacob, Israel
- Leah
- Paddan Aram
- Paddan Aram
- Zilpah
- bear, bearer, carry
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 35:27

Jacob came to Isaac

Here “came” can be stated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kiriath Arba

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Hebron](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁷ Jacob came to Isaac, his father, in Mamre in Kiriath Arba (the same as Hebron), where Abraham and Isaac had lived.

Genesis 35:28

one hundred eighty years

“180 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Isaac](#)
- [day](#)
- [year](#)
- [year](#)

ULT

²⁸ Isaac lived for one hundred eighty years.

Genesis 35:29

Isaac breathed his last and died

“Isaac took his last breath and died.” The phrases “breathed his last” and “died” mean basically the same thing. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 25:8](#). Alternate translation: “Isaac died” (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

29 Isaac breathed his last and died, and was gathered to his ancestors, an old man full of days. Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him.

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. See how you translated this in [Genesis 25:8](#). (See: [Euphemism](#))

was gathered to his ancestors

This means that after Isaac died, his soul went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he joined his family members who had already died” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

an old man full of days

The phrases “old man” and “full of days” mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that Isaac lived a very long time. Alternate translation: “after he had lived a very long time and was very old” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [day](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [people, people group](#)

Genesis 36

Genesis 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Esau's descendants

Esau's descendants became known as the Edomite people group. They also become a great nation. This nation is prominent in the rest of the Old Testament. God graciously blessed Esau and he had many descendants. (See: [grace, gracious](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Genesis 36:1

These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom)

“These are the descendants of Esau, who is also called Edom.” This sentence introduces the account of Esau’s descendants in Genesis 36:1-8. Alternate translation: “This is an account of the descendants of Esau, who is also called Edom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹ These were the descendants of Esau (also called Edom).

Translation Words - ULT

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- generation

Genesis 36:2

Adah...Oholibamah

These are names of Esau's wives. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Elon the Hittite

"Elon the descendant of Heth" or "Elon a descendant of Heth." This is the name of a man. See how you translate this in [Genesis 26:34](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah...Zibeon

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hivite

This refers to a larger group of people. See how you translated it in [Genesis 10:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Hivite](#)

ULT

² Esau took his wives from the Canaanites. These were his wives: Adah the daughter of Elon the Hittite; Oholibamah the daughter of Anah, the granddaughter of Zibeon the Hivite;

Genesis 36:3

Nebaioth

a man's name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of one of Esau's wives. See how you translated this in [Genesis 26:34](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nebaioth

This is the name of one of Ishmael's sons. See how you translated this in [Genesis 28:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ishmael, Ishmaelite](#)
- [sister](#)

ULT

³ and Basemath, Ishmael's daughter, sister of Nebaioth.

Genesis 36:4

Adah...Basemath

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2-3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Eliphaz...Reuel

These are names of Esau's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Esau
- bear, bearer, carry
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

⁴ Adah bore Eliphaz to Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel.

Genesis 36:5

Oholibamah

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush...Jalam...Korah

These are names of Esau's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- Korah, Korahite
- bear, bearer, carry
- bear, bearer, carry
- earth, land

ULT

⁵ Oholibamah bore Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. These were the sons of Esau who were born to him in the land of Canaan.

Genesis 36:6

which he had gathered in the land of Canaan

This refers to all of the things that he had accumulated while living in the land of Canaan. Alternate translation: “which he had accumulated while living in the land of Canaan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

went into a land

This means to moved to another place and live there. Alternate translation: “went to live in another land” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Esau
- Jacob, Israel
- beast
- earth, land
- earth, land
- house, household
- livestock, animals

ULT

6 Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters, and all the members of his household, his livestock—all his animals, and all his possessions, which he had gathered in the land of Canaan, and went into a land away from his brother Jacob.

Genesis 36:7

their possessions

“Esau’s and Jacob’s possessions”

could not support them because of their livestock

The land was not large enough to support all of the livestock that Jacob and Esau owned. Alternate translation: “was not big enough to support all of their livestock” or “was not big enough for both Esau’s flocks and Jacob’s flocks” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

where they had settled

The word “settled” means to move somewhere and live there. Alternate translation: “where they had moved to” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth, land](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)

ULT

⁷ He did this because their possessions were too many for them to stay together. The land where they had settled could not support them because of their livestock.

Genesis 36:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- Esau

ULT

⁸ So Esau, also known as Edom, settled in the hill country of Seir.

Genesis 36:9

These were the descendants of Esau

This sentence introduces the account of Esau's descendants in Genesis 36:9-43. Alternate translation: "This is an account of the descendants of Esau" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the hill country of Seir

This means that they lived in the hill country of Seir. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. Alternate translation: "who lived in the hill country of Seir" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- generation

ULT

⁹ These were the descendants of Esau, the ancestor of the Edomites in the hill country of Seir.

Genesis 36:10

Eliphaz...Reuel

These are names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adah...Basemath

These are names of Esau's wives. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:2-3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

10 These were the names of Esau's sons: Eliphaz son of Adah, the wife of Esau; Reuel son of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)
- [Esau](#)

Genesis 36:11

Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz

These are names of the sons of Eliphaz. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

11 The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz.

Genesis 36:12

Amalek

a son of Eliphaz (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Timna

This is the name of Eliphaz's concubine. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹² Timna, a concubine of Eliphaz, Esau's son, bore Amalek. These were the grandsons of Adah, Esau's wife.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Amalek, Amalekite
- Esau
- Esau
- bear, bearer, carry
- concubine

Genesis 36:13

Reuel

This is the name of a son of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahath...Zerah...Shammah...Mizzah

These are names of Reuel's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated this in [Genesis 36:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Esau](#)

ULT

13 These were the sons of Reuel:
Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.
These were the grandsons of Basemath,
Esau's wife.

Genesis 36:14

Oholibamah

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated these in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah...Zibeon

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush, Jalam, and Korah

These are names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau
- Esau
- Korah, Korahite
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

14 These were the sons of Oholibamah, Esau's wife, who was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon. She bore to Esau Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

Genesis 36:15

Eliphaz

This is the name of one of Esau's sons. See how you translated his name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz

These are names of Eliphaz's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Esau
- Esau
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)
- firstborn

ULT

15 These were the clans among Esau's descendants: the descendants of Eliphaz, the firstborn of Esau: Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,

Genesis 36:16

Korah, Gatam, and Amalek

These are names of Eliphaz's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adah

This is the name of one of Esau's wives. See how you translated her name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Korah, Korahite
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- earth, land

ULT

16 Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. These were the clans descended from Eliphaz in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Adah.

Genesis 36:17

Reuel

This is the name of a son of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah

These are the names of Reuel's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Edom

This means that they lived in the land of Edom. Alternate translation: "who lived in the land of Edom" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Basemath

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- Esau
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)
- chief, leader (2)
- chief, leader
- earth, land

ULT

17 These were the clans from Reuel, Esau's son: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, Mizzah. These were the clans descended from Reuel in the land of Edom. They were the grandsons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

Genesis 36:18

Oholibamah

This is the name of a wife of Esau. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeush, Jalam, Korah

These are the names of Esau's sons. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anah

This the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Esau
- Esau
- Korah, Korahite
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)
- chief, leader
- chief, leader

ULT

18 These were the clans of Oholibamah, Esau's wife: Jeush, Jalam, Korah. These are the clans that descended from Esau's wife Oholibamah, daughter of Anah.

Genesis 36:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- chief, leader

ULT

¹⁹ These were the sons of Esau (who was known as Edom), and these were their chiefs.

Genesis 36:20

Seir

The word “Seir” is the name of a man and of a country.

the Horite

The word “Horite” refers to a people group. See how you translated it in [Genesis 14:6](#).

the inhabitants of the land

“who lived in the land of Seir, which is also called Edom”

Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

²⁰ These were the sons of Seir the Horite, the inhabitants of the land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah,

Genesis 36:21

Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- chief, leader
- earth, land

ULT

²¹ Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. These were the clans of the Horites, the inhabitants of Seir in the land of Edom.

Genesis 36:22

Lotan...Hori and Heman

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Timna

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [sister](#)

ULT

²² The sons of Lotan were Hori and Heman, and Timna was Lotan's sister.

Genesis 36:23

Shobal

This is the name of man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

²³ These were the sons of Shobal: Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

Genesis 36:24

Zibeon

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Aiah and Anah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- desert, wilderness
- donkey, mule
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- fountain, source, spring

ULT

²⁴ These were the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. This is Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness, as he was pasturing donkeys of Zibeon his father.

Genesis 36:25

Anah...Dishon

These are names of men. See how you translated “Anah” in [Genesis 36:20](#).

Oholibamah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁵ These were the children of Anah:
Dishon and Oholibamah, the daughter
of Anah.

Genesis 36:26

Dishon...Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran

These are names of men. See how you translated "Dishon" in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁶ These were the sons of Dishon:
Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.

Genesis 36:27

Ezer...Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan

These are names of men. See how you translated "Ezer" in [Genesis 36:20-21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁷ These were the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

Genesis 36:28

Dishan...Uz and Aran

These are names of men. See how you translated "Dishan" in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

ULT

²⁸ These were the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

Genesis 36:29

the Horites

This is the name of a people group. See how you translated this in [Genesis 14:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites:
Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah,

Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)

Genesis 36:30

Dishon, Ezer, Dishan

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 36:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Seir

This means that they lived in the land of Seir. Alternate translation: “of those who lived in the land of Seir” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: These were clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir.

Translation Words - ULT

- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- earth, land

Genesis 36:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- earth, land
- king, kingship
- king, kingship
- reign, rule

ULT

³¹ These were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites:

Genesis 36:32

Bela...Beor

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: “the name of the city where he lived” (See: [Idiom](#))

Dinhabah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- son
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- reign, rule

ULT

³² Bela son of Beor, reigned in Edom, and the name of his city was Dinhabah.

Genesis 36:33

Bela...Jobab...Zerah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozrah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

ULT

³³ When Bela died, then Jobab son of Zerah of Bozrah, reigned in his place.

Genesis 36:34

Jobab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:33](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Husham who was of the land of the Temanites

This means that Husham lived in the land of the Temanites. Alternate translation: “Husham who lived in the land of the Temanites” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Temanites

descendants of a man named Teman (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death
- earth, land
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁴ When Jobab died, Husham who was of the land of the Temanites, reigned in his place.

Genesis 36:35

Husham...Hadad...Bedad

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: "The name of the city where he lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

Avith

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [son](#)
- [Midian, Midianite](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

ULT

³⁵ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad who defeated the Midianites in the land of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith.

Genesis 36:36

Hadad...Samlah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Samlah of Masrekah

“Samlah from Masrekah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Masrekah

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁶ When Hadad died, then Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his place.

Genesis 36:37

Samlah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 36:36](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

then Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place

Shaul lived in Rehoboth. Rehoboth was by the Euphrates river. This information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "then Shaul reigned in his place. He was from Rehoboth which is by the Euphrates River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Shaul

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboth

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Saul (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁷ When Samlah died, then Shaul of Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place.

Genesis 36:38

Shaul...Baal-Hanan...Akbor

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Saul (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁸ When Shaul died, then Baal-Hanan son of Akbor reigned in his place.

Genesis 36:39

Baal-Hanan...Akbor...Hadar...Matred...Me Zahab

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The name of his city

This means that this was the city where he lived. Alternate translation: "The name of the city where he lived" (See: [Idiom](#))

Pau

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mehetabel

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me Zahab

"she was the daughter of Matred, and the granddaughter of Me Zahab"

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- name
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death
- reign, rule

ULT

³⁹ When Baal-Hanan son of Akbor, died, then Hadar reigned in his place. The name of his city was Pau. His wife's name was Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the granddaughter of Me Zahab.

Genesis 36:40

the heads of clans

“the leaders of the clans”

according to their clans and their regions, by their names

The clans and the regions were named after the heads of the clans.

Alternate translation: “the names of their clans and the regions where they lived were named after them. These are their names” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Timna, Alvah, Jetheth

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- name
- Esau
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)
- chief, leader (3)
- clan

ULT

⁴⁰ These were the names of the heads of clans from Esau’s descendants, according to their clans and their regions, by their names: Timna, Alvah, Jetheth,

Genesis 36:41

Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader (2)

ULT

⁴¹ Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon,

Genesis 36:42

Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief, leader](#)
- [chief, leader](#) (2)
- [chief, leader](#) (3)

ULT

⁴² Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar,

Genesis 36:43

Magdiel, and Iram

These are names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

their settlements

“their dwelling places” or “the places they lived”

This was Esau

This list is said “to be” Esau, which means that it is the whole list of his descendants. Alternate translation: “This is the list of the descendants of Esau” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Esau
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- chief, leader
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

ULT

⁴³ Magdiel, and Iram. These were the clan heads of Edom, according to their settlements in the land they possessed. This was Esau, the father of the Edomites.

Genesis 37

Genesis 37 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins to record the account of Jacob's sons. The rest of the book of Genesis focuses on Jacob's sons, especially Joseph. This chapter also references Jacob as "Israel" beginning in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Favoritism

Jacob's favoritism became a great problem for his sons. They are always jealous of Joseph because he is the favorite son. The beautiful garment Jacob gave to Joseph greatly strained the relationship between Joseph and his brothers. Joseph dreams he will rule all of his brothers, even though he is not the oldest son. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Genesis 37:1

the land where his father was staying, in the land of Canaan

“in the land of Canaan where his father had lived”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- earth, land (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

¹ Jacob lived in the land where his father was staying, in the land of Canaan.

Genesis 37:2

These were the events concerning Jacob

This sentence introduces the account of Jacob's children in Genesis 37:1-50:26. Here "Jacob" refers to his whole family. Alternate translation: "This is the account of Jacob's family" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

seventeen years old

"17 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

wives

These women were servants of Leah and Rachel whom they had given to Jacob to produce children.

an unfavorable report about them

"a bad report about his brothers"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- son
- son (2)
- Bilhah
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Zilpah
- year
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- generation
- report, reported, tell, reputation
- shepherd, herder, pastor

ULT

² These were the events concerning Jacob. Joseph, who was a young man seventeen years old, was guarding the flock with his brothers. He was with the sons of Bilhah and with the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives. Joseph brought an unfavorable report about them to their father.

Genesis 37:3

Now

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Israel and Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

loved

This refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member. This is natural human love between friends or relatives.

of his old age

This means that Joseph was born when Israel was an old man. Alternate translation: “who was born when Israel was an old man” (See: [Idiom](#))

He made him

“Israel made Joseph”

a beautiful garment

“a beautiful robe”

Translation Words - ULT

- [love, beloved](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [tunic](#)

ULT

³ Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons because he was the son of his old age. He made him a beautiful garment.

Genesis 37:4

would not speak kindly to him

“could not speak in a courteous manner to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- love, beloved
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

⁴ His brothers saw that their father loved him more than all his brothers. They hated him and would not speak kindly to him.

Genesis 37:5

Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more

This is a summary of the events that will happen in 37:6-11.

They hated him even more

“And Joseph’s brothers hated him even more than they hated him before”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- dream
- dream
- dream

ULT

⁵ Joseph dreamed a dream, and he told his brothers about it. They hated him even more.

Genesis 37:6

Please listen to this dream which I dreamed

“Please listen to this dream that I had”

Translation Words - ULT

- dream
- dream

ULT

⁶ He said to them, “Please listen to this dream which I dreamed.

Genesis 37:7

General Information:

Joseph tells his brothers about his dream.

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

we were

The word “we” refers to Joseph and includes all of his brothers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

tying bundles of grain

When grain is reaped it is tied into bundles and stacked until it is time to separate the grain from the straw.

behold

Here the word “behold” here shows that Joseph was surprised by what he saw.

my bundle rose and stood upright...your bundles came around and bowed down

Here the bundles of grain are standing and kneeling as if they were people. These bundle represent Joseph and his brothers. (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)

ULT

⁷ Behold, we were tying bundles of grain in the field and behold, my bundle rose and stood upright, and behold, your bundles came around and bowed down to my bundle.”

Genesis 37:8

Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. Joseph's brothers are using questions to mock Joseph. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You will never be our king, and we will never bow down to you!" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁸ His brothers said to him, "Will you really reign over us? Will you actually rule over us?" They hated him even more for his dreams and for his words.

reign over us

The word "us" refers to Joseph's brothers but not Joseph. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

for his dreams and for his words

"because of his dreams and what he said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [dominion](#)
- [dream](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Genesis 37:9

He dreamed another dream

“Joseph had another dream”

eleven stars

“11 stars” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)

ULT

⁹ He dreamed another dream and told it to his brothers. He said, “Look, I have dreamed another dream: The sun and the moon and eleven stars bowed down to me.”

Genesis 37:10

his father rebuked him. He said to him

“Israel scolded him, saying”

What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother...to the ground to you?

Israel uses questions to correct Joseph. This can be written as statements. Alternate translation: “This dream you had is not real. Your mother, brothers, and I will not bow down before you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁰ He told it to his father just as to his brothers, and his father rebuked him. He said to him, “What is this dream that you have dreamed? Will your mother and I and your brothers actually come to bow down to the ground to you?”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- dream
- dream
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- rebuke, reprove

Genesis 37:11

jealous

This means being angry because someone else is successful or more popular.

ULT

11 His brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept the matter in mind.

kept the matter in mind

The means that he kept thinking about the meaning of Joseph's dream. Alternate translation: "kept thinking about what the dream might mean" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- jealous, jealousy
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Genesis 37:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Shechem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- shepherd, herder, pastor

ULT

¹² His brothers went to tend their father's flock in Shechem.

Genesis 37:13

Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem?

Israel uses a question to begin a conversation. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You brothers are tending the flock in Shechem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹³ Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers tending the flock in Shechem? Come, and I will send you to them."
Joseph said to him, "I am ready."

Come

Here it is implied that Israel is asking Joseph to prepare himself to leave and go see his brothers. Alternate translation: "Get ready" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I am ready

He is ready to leave. "I am ready to go" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Shechem
- send, sent, send out
- shepherd, herder, pastor

Genesis 37:14

He said to him

“Israel said to Joseph”

bring me word

Israel wants Joseph to come back and tell him about how his brother and flocks are doing. Alternate translation: “come tell me what you find out” or “give me a report” (See: [Idiom](#))

out of the Valley

“from the Valley”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Hebron](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

14 He said to him, “Go now, see whether it is well with your brothers and well with the flock, and bring me word.” So Jacob sent him out of the Valley of Hebron, and Joseph went to Shechem.

Genesis 37:15

A certain man found Joseph. Behold, Joseph was wandering in a field

“A certain man found Joseph wandering in a field”

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

What do you seek?

“What are you looking for?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [seek](#), [search](#), [look for](#)

ULT

¹⁵ A certain man found Joseph. Behold, Joseph was wandering in a field. The man asked him, “What do you seek?”

Genesis 37:16

Tell me, please, where

“Please tell me where”

tending the flock

“shepherding their flock”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- report, reported, tell, reputation
- seek, search, look for
- shepherd, herder, pastor

ULT

16 Joseph said, “I am seeking my brothers. Tell me, please, where they are tending the flock.”

Genesis 37:17

Dothan

This is the name of a place that is about 22 kilometers from Shechem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

17 The man said, "They left this place, for I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan.

Genesis 37:18

They saw him from a distance

“Joseph’s brothers saw him while he was far away”

they plotted against him to kill him

“they made plans to kill him”

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death

ULT

18 They saw him from a distance, and before he came near to them, they plotted against him to kill him.

Genesis 37:19

this dreamer is approaching

“here comes the one who has the dreams”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- dream

ULT

19 His brothers said to one another,
“Look, this dreamer is approaching.”

Genesis 37:20

Come now, therefore

This wording shows that the brothers acted upon their plans.
Alternate translation: "So now" (See: [Idiom](#))

wild animal

"dangerous animal" or "ferocious animal"

devoured

to eagerly have eaten

We will see what will become of his dreams

His brothers planned to kill him, therefore it is ironic that they would speak of his dream coming true, since he would be dead. Alternate translation: "That way we will make sure his dreams do not come true" (See: [Irony](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- life, live, living, alive
- cast out, driving out, throw out
- dream
- slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder
- cistern, well

ULT

²⁰ Come now, therefore, let us kill him and cast him into one of the pits. We will say, 'A wild animal has devoured him.' We will see what will become of his dreams."

Genesis 37:21

heard it

“heard what they were saying”

from their hand

The phrase “their hand” refers to the brothers’ plan to kill him. Alternate translation: “from them” or “from their plans” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let us not take his life

The phrase “take his life” is a euphemism for killing someone. Alternate translation: “Let us not kill Joseph” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Reuben
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- hand

ULT

²¹ Reuben heard it and rescued him from their hand. He said, “Let us not take his life.”

Genesis 37:22

Shed no blood

The negation can be placed on the verb. Also, “shedding blood” is a euphemism for killing someone. Alternate translation: “Do not spill any blood” or “Do not kill him” (See: [Litotes](#) and [Euphemism](#))

that he might rescue him

This can be translated as a new sentence: “Reuben said this so that he might rescue Joseph”

out of their hand

The phrase “their hand” refers to the brothers’ plan to kill him. Alternate translation: “from them” or “from their plans” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to bring him back

“and return him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [cast out, driving out, throw out](#)
- [deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [cistern, well](#)

ULT

22 Reuben said to them, “Shed no blood. Throw him into this pit that is in the wilderness, but lay no hand upon him”—that he might rescue him out of their hand to bring him back to his father.

Genesis 37:23

It came about that when

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

they stripped him of his beautiful garment

“they tore his beautiful garment off of him”

beautiful garment

“beautiful robe.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 37:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [tunic](#)
- [tunic](#)

ULT

²³ It came about that when Joseph reached his brothers, they stripped him of his beautiful garment.

Genesis 37:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- cast out, driving out, throw out
- water, deep
- cistern, well
- cistern, well

ULT

²⁴ They took him and threw him into the pit. The pit was empty with no water in it.

Genesis 37:25

They sat down to eat bread

“Bread” represents food in general. Alternate translation: “They sat down to eat food” or “Joseph’s brothers sat down to eat” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan

Here looking up is spoken of as if a person literally lifted up his eyes. Also, the word “behold” is used here to draw the reader’s attention to what the men saw. Alternate translation: “They looked up and they suddenly saw a caravan” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bearing

carrying

spices

seasonings

balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. “medicine”

traveling to carry them down to Egypt

“bringing them down to Egypt.” This can be made more explicit. Alternate translation: “bringing them down to Egypt to sell them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [myrrh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Gilead, Gileadite](#)
- [Ishmael, Ishmaelite](#)
- [bread](#)
- [camel](#)

ULT

²⁵ They sat down to eat bread. They lifted up their eyes and looked, and, behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead, with their camels bearing spices and balm and myrrh. They were traveling to carry them down to Egypt.

Genesis 37:26

What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “We do not gain a profit by killing our brother and covering up his blood” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁶ Judah said to his brothers, “What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood?”

cover up his blood

This is a figure of speech referring to hiding Joseph’s death. Alternate translation: “hide his murder” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- brother
- brother
- Judah
- profit, profitable, unprofitable
- slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Genesis 37:27**to the Ishmaelites**

“to these men who are descendants of Ishmael”

not lay our hands upon him

This means not to harm or injure him. Alternate translation: “not hurt him” (See: [Idiom](#))

he is our brother, our flesh

The word “flesh” is a metonym that stands for a relative. Alternate translation: “he is our blood relative” (See: [Metonymy](#))

His brothers listened to him

“Judah’s brothers listened to him” or “Judah’s brothers agreed with him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Ishmael, Ishmaelite](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

27 Come, and let us sell him to the Ishmaelites and not lay our hands upon him. For he is our brother, our flesh.”
His brothers listened to him.

Genesis 37:28

Midianite...Ishmaelites

Both names refer to the same group of traders that Joseph's brothers meet.

for twenty pieces of silver

"for the price of 20 pieces of silver" (See: [Numbers](#))

carried Joseph into Egypt

"took Joseph to Egypt"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Ishmael, Ishmaelite](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Midian, Midianite](#)
- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)
- [silver](#)
- [cistern, well](#)

ULT

28 The Midianite merchants passed by. His brothers drew Joseph up and lifted him up out of the pit. They sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver. The Ishmaelites carried Joseph into Egypt.

Genesis 37:29

Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit

“Reuben returned to the pit, and was surprised to see that Joseph was not there.” The word “behold” here shows that Reuben was surprised to find out Joseph was gone.

ULT

²⁹ Reuben returned to the pit, and, behold, Joseph was not in the pit. He tore his clothes.

He tore his clothes

This is an act of deep distress and grief. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “He was so grieved that he tore his clothes” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Reuben
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- return, turn back
- cistern, well
- cistern, well

Genesis 37:30

The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?

Reuben uses questions for emphasis the problem that Joseph was missing. These can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "The boy is gone! I cannot go back home now!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

³⁰ He returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is not there! And I, where can I go?"

Genesis 37:31

Joseph's garment

This refers to the beautiful garment that his father made for him.

the blood

"the goat's blood"

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Joseph (OT)
- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- slaughter, slaughtered
- tunic
- tunic

ULT

³¹ They slaughtered a goat and then took Joseph's garment and dipped it into the blood.

Genesis 37:32

they brought it

“they brought the garment”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- send, sent, send out
- tunic
- tunic

ULT

³² Then they brought it to their father and said, “We found this. Please see whether it is your son’s clothing or not.”

Genesis 37:33

has devoured him

“has eaten him”

Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces

Jacob thinks that a wild animal has torn Joseph’s body apart.

Alternate translation: “It has certainly torn Joseph to pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³³ Jacob recognized it and said, “It is my son’s clothing. A wild animal has devoured him. Joseph has certainly been torn to pieces.”

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- send, sent, send out
- tunic

Genesis 37:34

Jacob tore his garments

This is an act of deep distress and grief. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: “Jacob was so grieved that he tore his garments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

put sackcloth upon his loins

Here “loins” refers to the middle part of the body or the waist. Alternate translation: “put on sackcloth” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- day
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- loins, waist
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- sackcloth

ULT

³⁴ Jacob tore his garments and put sackcloth upon his loins. He mourned for his son many days.

Genesis 37:35

rose up

Here the childrens' coming to their father is spoke of as "rising up."
Alternate translation: "came to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

but he refused to be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but he would not let them comfort him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning

The means that he be mourning from now until when he dies. Alternate translation: "Indeed when I die and go down to Sheol I will still be mourning" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lament, lamentation](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)
- [comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [mourn, mourner, weeping](#)
- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)

ULT

35 All his sons and daughters rose up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted. He said, "Indeed I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son." His father wept for him.

Genesis 37:36

The Midianites sold him

“The Midianites sold Joseph”

the captain of the bodyguard

“the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king”

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Midian, Midianite
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Potiphar
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

³⁶ The Midianites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the bodyguard.

Genesis 38

Genesis 38 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter focuses on Jacob's son Judah.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Spilling his seed”

Onan was to provide for his brother's widow and give her an heir. This phrase indicates that he used Tamar to fulfill his own sexual desires rather than help her. This was sinful. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

God preserves Judah's line

The Canaanite woman, Tamar, deceived her father-in-law, Judah, into having sexual relations with her. If it had not been for this act, Judah would not have any descendants to carry on his family line. Although her actions were wrong, God used them to protect his people. (See: [people of God](#))

Genesis 38:1

It came about at that time that Judah

This introduces a new part of the story that focuses on Judah. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah

Hirah is the name of a man who lived in the village of Adullam. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

¹ It came about at that time that Judah left his brothers and stayed with a certain Adullamite, whose name was Hirah.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- name
- Judah

Genesis 38:2

whose name was Shua

Shua is a Canaanite woman who married Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he went in to her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “he had sexual relations with her” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Judah
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

ULT

² He met there a daughter of a Canaanite man whose name was Shua. He took her and he went in to her.

Genesis 38:3

She became pregnant

“Judah’s wife became pregnant”

He was named Er

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: “His father named him Er” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Er

Judah’s son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- son
- bear, bearer, carry
- conceive, conception

ULT

³ She became pregnant and had a son.

He was named Er.

Genesis 38:4

called his name

“named him”

Onan

Judah’s son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- son
- bear, bearer, carry
- conceive, conception

ULT

⁴ She became pregnant again and had a son. She called his name Onan.

Genesis 38:5

Shelah

Judah's son (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kezib

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- son
- bear, bearer, carry
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

⁵ She again had a son and called his name Shelah. It was at Kezib where she gave birth to him.

Genesis 38:6

Er

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

⁶Judah found a wife for Er, his firstborn.
Her name was Tamar.

Genesis 38:7

was wicked in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase “in the sight” refers to Yahweh seeing Er’s wickedness. Alternate translation: “was wicked and Yahweh saw it” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁷ Er, Judah’s firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him.

Yahweh killed him

Yahweh killed him because he was wicked. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: “So Yahweh killed him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- firstborn

Genesis 38:8

Onan

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Go in to your brother's wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with your brother's wife" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her

This refers to a custom that when the oldest brother dies before he and his wife have a son, the next oldest brother would marry and have sexual relations with the widow. When the widow gave birth to the first son, that son was considered the son of the oldest brother and he would receive the oldest brother's inheritance.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with](#)

ULT

⁸ Judah said to Onan, "Go in to your brother's wife. Do the duty of a brother-in-law to her, and raise up a child for your brother."

Genesis 38:9

he went in to

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- earth, land
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- seed, semen
- seed, semen
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

ULT

⁹ Onan knew that the child would not be his. Whenever he went in to his brother's wife, he spilled the semen on the ground so he would not have a child for his brother.

Genesis 38:10

was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The phrase “in the sight” refers to Yahweh seeing Onan’s wickedness. Alternate translation: “was evil and Yahweh saw it” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

10 What he did was evil in the sight of Yahweh. Yahweh killed him also.

Yahweh killed him also

Yahweh killed him because what he did was evil. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: “So Yahweh killed him also” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death

Genesis 38:11

his daughter-in-law

“his oldest son’s wife”

in your father’s house

This means her to live in here father’s house. Alternate translation: “and live in your father’s house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

until Shelah, my son, grows up

Judah intends for Tamar to marry Shelah when he grows up. Alternate translation: “and when Shelah, my son, grows up, he can marry you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Shelah

This is the name of one of Judah’s sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

For he feared, “He might also die, just like his brothers

Judah feared that if Shelah married Tamar he would also die like his brothers did. Alternate translation: “For he feared, ‘If he marries her he may also die like his brothers did’” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judah
- Tamar
- Tamar
- brother
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

11 Then Judah said to Tamar, his daughter-in-law, “Remain a widow in your father’s house until Shelah, my son, grows up.” For he feared, “He might also die, just like his brothers.” Tamar left and lived in her father’s house.

Genesis 38:12

Shua's

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Judah was comforted and

"When Judah was no longer grieving, he"

his sheepshearers at Timnah

"Timnah, where his men were shearing sheep"

Timnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite

"His friend Hiram, from Adullam, went with him"

Hirah the Adullamite

"Hiram" is the name of a man, and "Adullam" is the name of a village where he lived. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah
- day
- comfort, comforts, comforter, un comforted
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

ULT

12 After a long time, Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died. Judah was comforted and went up to his sheepshearers at Timnah, he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite.

Genesis 38:13

Tamar was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Tamar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Look, your father-in-law

"Listen." Here the word "look" is used to get Tamar attention.

your father-in-law

"your husband's father"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tamar](#)
- [report, reported, tell, reputation](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

ULT

13 Tamar was told, "Look, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep."

Genesis 38:14

Enaim

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of her widowhood

“that widows wear”

veil

a very thin material used to cover a woman’s head and face

wrapped herself

This means that she hid herself with her clothing so that people would not recognize her. Traditionally, part of women’s clothing were large pieces of cloth they wrapped themselves with. Alternate translation: “wrapped herself in her clothing so that people would not recognize her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

by the road

“along the road” or “on the way”

she had not been given to him as a wife

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Judah had not given her to Shelah as a wife” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [veil, veiled, unveiled](#)

ULT

14 She took off the clothing of her widowhood and covered herself with her veil and wrapped herself. She sat in the gate of Enaim, which is by the road to Timnah. For she saw that Shelah had grown up but she had not been given to him as a wife.

Genesis 38:15

When Judah saw her

The word “her” here refers to Tamar, but your reader should understand that Judah did not know that the woman he was looking at was Tamar.

because she had covered her face

Judah did not think she was a prostitute just because her face was covered but also because she was sitting in the gate. Alternate translation: “because she had covered her head and sat where prostitutes often sat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- face, facial
- prostitute, harlot, whored

ULT

15 When Judah saw her he thought that she was a prostitute because she had covered her face.

Genesis 38:16

He went to her by the road

Tamar was sitting by the road. Alternate translation: “He went to where she was sitting by the road” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Come, please

“Come with me, please” or “Come now, please”

Translation Words - ULT

- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

ULT

16 He went to her by the road and said, “Come, please let me lie with you”—for he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law—and she said, “What will you give me so you can lie with me?”

Genesis 38:17

from the flock

“from my flock of goats”

Translation Words - ULT

- flock, herd
- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- pledge, pledged
- send, sent, send out
- send, sent, send out

ULT

17 He said, “I will send you a young goat from the flock.” She said, “Will you give me a pledge until you send it?”

Genesis 38:18

seal and cord...staff

A "seal" is similar to a coin with a design engraved on it, used to imprint melted wax. The "cord" was put through the seal so the owner could wear it around his neck. A staff was long wooden stick that helped in walking over rough ground.

he went in to her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

she became pregnant by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he caused her to become pregnant" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [conceive, conception](#)
- [hand](#)
- [pledge, pledged](#)
- [seal, sealed, unsealed](#)
- [had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with](#)
- [staff, clubs](#)

ULT

18 He said, "What pledge can I give you?" She replied, "Your seal and cord, and the staff that is in your hand." He gave them to her and he went in to her, and she became pregnant by him.

Genesis 38:19

veil

This was a very thin material used to cover a woman's head and face. See how you translated these in [Genesis 38:14](#).

clothing of her widowhood

"clothing that widows wear." See how you translated these in [Genesis 38:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- veil, veiled, unveiled

ULT

19 She got up and went away. She took off her veil and put on the clothing of her widowhood.

Genesis 38:20

Adullamite

a person who lives in the village of Adullam. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

receive the pledge

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “take back the pledge”(See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the woman’s hand

Here “hand” emphasizes that they were in here possession. The woman’s hand refers to the woman. Alternate translation: “from the woman” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- companion, fellow worker, friend
- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- hand
- hand
- pledge, pledged
- send, sent, send out

ULT

20 Judah sent the young goat by his friend the Adullamite in order that he might receive the pledge back from the woman’s hand, but he did not find her.

Genesis 38:21

Adullamite

a person who lives in the village of Adullam. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the men of the place

“some of the men who lived there”

cultic prostitute

“prostitute who serves in the temple”

Enaim

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:14](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

21 Then the Adullamite asked the men of the place, “Where is the cultic prostitute who was at Enaim by the road?” They said, “There has not been a cultic prostitute here.”

Genesis 38:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- return, turn back

ULT

²² He returned to Judah and said, "I did not find her. Also, the men of the place said, 'There has not been a cultic prostitute here.'"

Genesis 38:23

that we not be put to shame

When people found out what had happened they would ridicule Judah and laugh at him. This can be made clear and stated in active form. Alternate translation: “or else people will laugh at us when they find out what happened” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to
- goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- send, sent, send out

ULT

²³ Judah said, “Let her keep the things, that we not be put to shame. Indeed, I sent this young goat, but you did not find her.”

Genesis 38:24

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

it was told to Judah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone told Judah” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Tamar your daughter-in-law

“Tamar, your oldest son’s wife”

she is pregnant by it

Here the word “it” refers to the “prostitution” that she committed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “it has made her pregnant” or “she is pregnant” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bring her here

“Bring her out”

let her be burned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “we will burn her to death” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah
- Tamar
- month, monthly
- conceive, conception
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- prostitute, harlot, whored
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

24 It came about after about three months that it was told to Judah, “Tamar your daughter-in-law has committed prostitution, and indeed, she is pregnant by it.” Judah said, “Bring her here and let her be burned.”

Genesis 38:25

When she was brought out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When they brought her out” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

her father-in-law

“her husband’s father”

seal and cords and staff

A “seal” is similar to a coin with a design engraved on it, used to make an impression in melted wax. The “cord” was put through the seal so the owner could wear it around his neck. A staff was long wooden stick that helped in walking over rough ground. See how you translated this in [Genesis 38:18](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [conceive, conception](#)
- [seal, sealed, unsealed](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)
- [staff, clubs](#)

ULT

25 When she was brought out, she sent to her father-in-law a message, “By the man who owns these I am pregnant.” She said, “Determine please whose these are, the seal and cords and staff.”

Genesis 38:26

Shelah

This is the name of one of Judah's sons. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 38:5](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

did not lie with her again

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "did not have sexual relations with her again" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- son
- Judah
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

26 Judah recognized them and said, "She is more righteous than I am, since I did not give her as a wife to Shelah, my son." He did not lie with her again.

Genesis 38:27

It came about at the time

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

behold

The word “behold” alerts us to the surprise that Tamar was carrying twins, which was previously unknown.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [womb](#)

ULT

27 It came about at the time for her to give birth that, behold, twins were in her womb.

Genesis 38:28

It came about as she was giving birth

This phrase “It came about” marks an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

one put out a hand

“one of the babies put out his hand”

midwife

This is a person who helps a woman when she is giving birth to a child. See how you translated this in [Genesis 35:17](#).

scarlet thread

“bright red thread”

on his hand

“around his wrist”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [bind, bond, bound](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

28 It came about as she was giving birth one put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his hand and said, “This one came out first.”

Genesis 38:29

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

How you have broken out!

This shows the midwife’s surprise to seeing the second baby come out first. Alternate translation: “So this is how you break your way out first!” or “You have burst out first!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he was named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “she named him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Perez

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: “The name Perez means ‘breaking out.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

²⁹ But then he drew back his hand, and, behold, his brother came out first. The midwife said, “How you have broken out!” So he was named Perez.

Genesis 38:30

Zerah

This is the name of a boy. Translators may add a footnote that says: "The name Zerah means 'scarlet or bright red.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

30 Then his brother came out, who had the scarlet thread upon his hand, and he was named Zerah.

Genesis 39

Genesis 39 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. This is a sign of Yahweh's covenant faithfulness. (See: [people of God](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. He chose to do what was right, even when it could cause him harm. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Genesis 39:1

Joseph was brought down to Egypt

Travelling to Egypt is always considered as going “down” in contrast to going “up” to the promised land. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Ishmaelites had taken Joseph to Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ishmael, Ishmaelite
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Potiphar
- administration, administrator, administering, officer, official, leader
- hand
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

¹ Joseph was brought down to Egypt. Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh who was captain of the guard and an Egyptian, bought him from the Ishmaelites, who had brought him down there.

Genesis 39:2

Yahweh was with Joseph

This means that Yahweh helped Joseph and was always with him.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh guided Joseph and helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

² Yahweh was with Joseph and he became a prosperous man. He lived in the house of his Egyptian master.

He lived in the house

Here the author speaks of working in the master's house as if it were living in the master's house. Only the most trusted servants were permitted to work in their master's house. AT : "he worked in the house" (See: [Metaphor](#))

his Egyptian master

Joseph was now Potiphar's slave.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- house, household
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Genesis 39:3

His master saw that Yahweh was with him

This means that the master saw how Yahweh was helping Joseph.
Alternate translation: "His master saw that Yahweh was helping him"
(See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³ His master saw that Yahweh was with him and that Yahweh prospered everything that he did.

that Yahweh prospered everything that he did

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Genesis 39:4

Joseph found favor in his sight

“To find favor” means to be approved by someone. The idiom “in his sight” refers to a person’s opinion. Possible meanings are (1) Alternate translation: “Potiphar was pleased with Joseph” or (2) Alternate translation: “Yahweh was pleased with Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁴ Joseph found favor in his sight. He served Potiphar. Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed, he put under his care.

He served Potiphar

This means that he was Potiphar’s personal servant.

Potiphar made Joseph manager over his house, and everything that he possessed

“Potiphar put Joseph in charge of his household and everything that belonged to Potiphar”

put under his care

When something is “put under someone’s care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “he had Joseph care for” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [favor, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [oversee, overseer, keeper](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 39:5

It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph

You may need to use the words "Joseph" and "the Egyptian" before using pronouns to refer to them. "The Egyptian made Joseph manager over his house and over everything he possessed, and it came about from the time that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph"

ULT

⁵ It came about from the time that he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed, that Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's house because of Joseph. The blessing of Yahweh was on everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field.

It came about

This phrase is used here to tell the reader that these two verses are background information for the next event. (See: [Background Information](#))

he made him manager over his house and over everything he possessed

"Potiphar put Joseph in charge of his household and everything that belonged to him"

blessed

Here "blessed" means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

The blessing of Yahweh was on

Here the author speaks of the blessing that Yahweh gave as if it were a physical covering put over something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

everything that Potiphar had in the house and in the field

This refers his household and his crops and livestock. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Potiphar's household and all of his crops and livestock" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [oversee, overseer, keeper](#)

Genesis 39:6

Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph's care

When something is “put under someone’s care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “So Potiphar put Joseph in charge of everything that he had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁶ Potiphar put everything that he had under Joseph’s care. He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome and attractive.

He did not have to think about anything except the food that he ate

He did not have to worry about anything in his household; he only had to make decisions about what he wanted to eat. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Potiphar only had to think about what he wanted to eat. He did not have to worry about anything else in his house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

Now

The word “now” marks a break in the story line as the author gives background information about Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

handsome and attractive

Both of the words have same meaning. They refer to Joseph’s pleasing appearance. He was likely good-looking and strong. Alternate translation: “handsome and strong” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [bread](#)
- [hand](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Genesis 39:7

It came about after this that

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “have sexual relations with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Joseph (OT)
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

ULT

⁷ It came about after this that his master's wife cast her eyes on Joseph and said, “Lie with me.”

Genesis 39:8

Look

“Listen.” Joseph uses this word to get Potiphar’s wife’s attention.

my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house

“my master has no concern about his household with me in charge.”

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “my master trusts me with his household” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

he has put everything that he owns under my care

When something is “put under someone’s care,” it means that the person is responsible for its care and safe-keeping. Alternate translation: “he has put me in charge of everything that belongs to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

⁸ But he refused and said to his master’s wife, “Look, my master does not pay attention to what I do in the house, and he has put everything that he owns under my care.

Genesis 39:9

No one is greater in this house than I am

Here the author speaks of authority as if it were greatness. Alternate translation: "I have more authority in this house than anyone else" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He has not kept back anything from me but you

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "He has given me everything except you" (See: [Litotes](#))

How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?

Joseph uses a question for emphasis. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I certainly cannot do such a wicked thing and sin against God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [God](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

⁹ No one is greater in this house than I am. He has not kept back anything from me but you, because you are his wife. How then can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?"

Genesis 39:10

She spoke to Joseph day after day

This means that she kept asking him to sleep with her. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "She kept on asking Joseph to sleep with her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ She spoke to Joseph day after day, but he refused to lie with her or to be with her.

to lie with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "to have sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

to be with her

"to be near her"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- day
- day
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

Genesis 39:11

It came about

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story.
(See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

None of the men of the house

“None of the other men who worked in the house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [work, works, deeds](#)
- [day](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

11 It came about one day that he went into the house to do his work. None of the men of the house were there in the house.

Genesis 39:12

Lie with me

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Have sexual relations with me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

fled, and went outside

"and quickly ran outside" or "and quickly ran out of the house"

Translation Words - ULT

- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- hand
- seize, seizure, capture
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

ULT

¹² She caught him by his clothes and said, "Lie with me." He left his clothing in her hand, fled, and went outside.

Genesis 39:13

It came about

“Then” The phrase “it came about” is used here to mark the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

had fled outside

“had quickly ran out of the house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [clothe](#), [clothed](#), [clothes](#), [clothing](#), [unclothed](#), [garments](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

13 It came about, when she saw that he had left his clothing in her hand and had fled outside,

Genesis 39:14

the men of her house

“the men who worked in her house”

See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”

He came in to me to lie with me

Here Potiphar’s wife is accusing Joseph of trying to seize her and have sexual relations with her. “He came into my room to have sexual relations with me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Hebrew
- cry, cry out, outcry
- house, household
- mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock
- had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with
- voice

ULT

14 that she called to the men of her house and told them, “See, Potiphar has brought in a Hebrew to mock us. He came in to me to lie with me, and I screamed.

Genesis 39:15

It came about when he heard me scream, that he

“When he heard me scream, he.” The phrase “it came about” is used here to mark the next event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

ULT

¹⁵ It came about when he heard me scream, that he left his clothing with me, fled, and went outside.”

Translation Words - ULT

- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- cry, cry out, outcry
- voice

Genesis 39:16

his master

“Joseph’s master.” This refers to Potiphar.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- house, household

ULT

16 She set his clothing next to her until his master came home.

Genesis 39:17

She told him this explanation

“She explained it like this”

brought to us

The word “us” refers to Potiphar, his wife, and includes the rest of the household. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

came in to mock me

“came in to make a fool of me.” Here, the word “mock” is a euphemism for “to seize and to sleep with.” Alternate translation: “came into where I was and tried to force me to sleep with him” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)
- [mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

17 She told him this explanation, “The Hebrew servant whom you brought to us, came in to mock me.”

Genesis 39:18

It came about that

“Then.” Potiphar’s wife uses this phrase to mark the next event in the account she is telling him about Joseph trying to sleep with her. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

fled outside

“ran quickly out of the house”

Translation Words - ULT

- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- cry, cry out, outcry
- voice

ULT

18 It came about that when I screamed, he left his clothing with me and fled outside.”

Genesis 39:19

It came about that

“And so.” This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

his master

“Joseph’s master.” This refers to Potiphar. This information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Joseph’s master, Potiphar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

heard the explanation his wife told him

“heard his wife explain to him.” The word “his” and “him” here refer to Potiphar.

he became very angry

“Potiphar became very angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

19 It came about that, when his master heard the explanation his wife told him, “This is what your servant did to me,” he became very angry.

Genesis 39:20

the place where the king's prisoners were confined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place where the king put his prisoners" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He was there

"Joseph stayed there"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Joseph (OT)
- king, kingship
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- prison, prisoner, imprison

ULT

²⁰ Joseph's master took him and put him in prison, the place where the king's prisoners were confined. He was there in the prison.

Genesis 39:21

But Yahweh was with Joseph

This refers to how Yahweh took care of Joseph and was kind to him. Alternate translation: “But Yahweh was kind to Joseph” or “But Yahweh took care of Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

showed covenant faithfulness to him

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “faithfully.” Alternate translation: “was faithful to his covenant with him” or “faithfully loved him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden

This means Yahweh caused the prison warden to approve of Joseph and to treat him well. Alternate translation: “Yahweh caused the prison warden to be pleased with Joseph” (See: [Idiom](#))

the prison warden

“the prison manager” or “the man in charge of the prison”

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#)
- [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [rule](#), [reign](#), [ruler](#), [prefect](#), [official](#), [leader](#)

ULT

21 But Yahweh was with Joseph and showed covenant faithfulness to him. He gave him favor in the sight of the prison warden.

Genesis 39:22

gave into Joseph's hand

Here "hand" represents Joseph's power or trust. Alternate translation: "put Joseph in charge of" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it

"Joseph was in charge of everything they did there"

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- hand
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

²² The prison warden gave into Joseph's hand all the prisoners who were in the prison. Whatever they did there, Joseph was in charge of it.

Genesis 39:23

because Yahweh was with him

This refers to how Yahweh helped Joseph and guided him. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh guided Joseph" (See: [Idiom](#))

Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered

"Yahweh caused everything that Joseph did to prosper"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

²³ The prison warden did not worry about anything that was in his hand, because Yahweh was with him. Whatever he did, Yahweh prospered.

Genesis 40

Genesis 40 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Interpretation of dreams

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. (See: [glory, glorious, glorify](#))

Genesis 40:1

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

the cupbearer

This is the person who brought drinks to the king.

king's baker

This is the person who made food for the king.

offended their master

“upset their master”

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cupbearer
- king, kingship
- king, kingship

ULT

¹ It came about that after these things, the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and king's baker offended their master, the king of Egypt.

Genesis 40:2

the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers

“the leading cupbearer and the leading baker”

Translation Words - ULT

- wrath, fury
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- administration, administrator, administering, officer, official, leader
- cupbearer
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

² Pharaoh was angry with his two officials, the chief of the cupbearers and the chief of the bakers.

Genesis 40:3

He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard

“He put them in the prison that was in the house that was overseen by the captain of the guard”

ULT

³ He put them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, in the same prison where Joseph was confined.

He put them

The king did not put them in prison but rather he commanded for them to be imprisoned. Alternate translation: “He had them put” or “He commanded his guard to put” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in the same prison where Joseph was confined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This was the same prison that Joseph was in” or “This was the same prison Potiphar put Joseph in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader](#)

Genesis 40:4

They remained in custody for some time

“They remained in prison for a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Joseph (OT)
- day
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁴ The captain of the guard assigned Joseph to them, and he served them. They remained in custody for some time.

Genesis 40:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- cupbearer
- dream
- dream
- dream
- dream
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter
- king, kingship
- prison, prisoner, imprison

ULT

⁵ Both of them dreamed a dream—the cupbearer and the baker of the king of Egypt who were confined in the prison—each man had his own dream in the same night, and each dream had its own interpretation.

Genesis 40:6

Joseph came to them

“Joseph came to the cupbearer and the baker”

Behold, they were sad

The word “behold” here shows that Joseph was surprised by what he saw. Alternate translation: “He was surprised to see that they were sad” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁶ Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them. Behold, they were sad.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Genesis 40:7

Pharaoh's officials who were with him

This refers to the cupbearer and the baker.

in custody in his master's house

"In prison in his master's house." "His master" refers to Joseph's master, the captain of the guard.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- face, facial
- house, household
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

⁷ He asked Pharaoh's officials who were with him in custody in his master's house, saying, "Why do you look so sad today?"

Genesis 40:8

Do not interpretations belong to God?

Joseph uses a question for emphasis. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Interpretations belong to God!" or "It is God who can tell the meaning of dreams!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Tell me, please

Joseph asks for them to tell him their dreams. Alternate translation: "Tell me the dreams, please" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

⁸ They said to him, "We have both dreamed a dream and no one can interpret it." Joseph said to them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Tell me, please."

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)

Genesis 40:9

The chief of the cupbearers

The most important person who brings drinks to the king. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:2](#).

In my dream, behold, a vine was in front of me

“In my dream, I saw a vine in front of me!” The cupbearer uses word “behold” here to show that he was surprised by what he saw in his dream and to alert Joseph to pay attention.

ULT

⁹ The chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph. He said to him, “In my dream, behold, a vine was in front of me.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- cupbearer
- dream
- dream
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- vine

Genesis 40:10

the clusters of grapes ripened

“its clusters ripened into grapes”

Translation Words - ULT

- grape, grapevine
- vine

ULT

¹⁰ In the vine were three branches. As it budded, its blossoms came out and the clusters of grapes ripened.

Genesis 40:11

squeezed them

This means that he squeezed the juice out of them. Alternate translation: "squeezed the juice from them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- grape, grapevine
- hand
- hand

ULT

11 Pharaoh's cup was in my hand. I took the grapes and squeezed them into Pharaoh's cup, and I placed the cup into Pharaoh's hand."

Genesis 40:12

This is the interpretation of it

“Here is what the dream means”

The three branches are three days

“The three branches represent three days”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- day
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter

ULT

¹² Joseph said to him, “This is the interpretation of it. The three branches are three days.”

Genesis 40:13**Within three days**

“In three more days”

will lift up your head

Here Joseph speaks of Pharaoh releasing the cupbearer from prison as if Pharaoh were causing him to lift up his head. Alternate translation: “will release you from prison” (See: [Metaphor](#))

restore you to your office

“will give you back your job”

just as when

“just as you did when”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [day](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [hand](#)
- [head](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

13 Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your office. You will put Pharaoh’s cup into his hand, just as when you were his cupbearer.

Genesis 40:14

please show kindness to me

“please be kind to me”

Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison

Joseph means for the cupbearer to tell Pharaoh about him so that Pharaoh will release him from prison. Alternate translation: “Help me get out of this prison by telling Pharaoh about me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

14 But think of me when it goes well with you, and please show kindness to me. Mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this prison.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Genesis 40:15

For indeed I was abducted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For indeed people took me” or “For indeed the Ishmaelites took me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the land of the Hebrews

“the land where the Hebrew people live”

Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon

“and also while I have been here in Egypt, I have done nothing for which I deserved to be put in prison”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern](#)

ULT

15 For indeed I was abducted out of the land of the Hebrews. Here also have I done nothing that they should put me in this dungeon.”

Genesis 40:16

the chief of the bakers

This refers to the leading person who made food for the king. See how this was translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

I also had a dream, and

“I also had a dream, and in my dream,”

behold, three baskets of bread were on my head

“there were three baskets of bread on my head!” The baker uses word “behold” here to show that he was surprised by what he saw in his dream and to alert Joseph to pay attention.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Joseph (OT)
- basket, basketfuls
- bread
- dream
- head
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

16 When the chief of the bakers saw that the interpretation was favorable, he said to Joseph, “I also had a dream, and, behold, three baskets of bread were on my head.”

Genesis 40:17

baked goods for Pharaoh

“baked foods for Pharaoh”

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- basket, basketfuls
- basket, basketfuls
- head

ULT

17 In the top basket there were all kinds of baked goods for Pharaoh, but the birds ate them out of the basket on my head.”

Genesis 40:18

This is the interpretation

“Here is what the dream means”

The three baskets are three days

“The three baskets represent three days”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- basket, basketfuls
- day
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter

ULT

18 Joseph answered and said, “This is the interpretation. The three baskets are three days.”

Genesis 40:19

will lift up your head from you

Joseph also used the phrase “will lift up your head” when he spoke to the cupbearer in [Genesis 40:13](#). Here it has a different meaning. Possible meanings are (1) “will lift up your head to put a rope around your neck” or (2) “will lift up your head to cut it off.”

flesh

Here “flesh” literally means the soft tissue on a person’s body.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [day](#)
- [hang, hung](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

19 Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and will hang you on a tree. The birds will eat your flesh off you.”

Genesis 40:20

It came about on the third day that

“Afterward, on the third day.” The phrase “it came about” is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

He made a feast

“He had a feast”

the chief of the cupbearers

This was the leading person who prepared and served drinks to the king. See how these were translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

the chief of the bakers

This refers to the leading person who made food for the king. See how this was translated in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- bear, bearer, carry
- day
- cupbearer
- feast, feasting
- head
- head
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

20 It came about on the third day that it was Pharaoh’s birthday. He made a feast for all his servants. He lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers, among his servants.

Genesis 40:21

He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility

The chief of the cupbearer's "responsibility" refers to his job as chief of the cupbearers. Alternate translation: "He gave the chief of the cupbearers his job back" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²¹ He restored the chief of the cupbearers to his responsibility, and he put the cup into Pharaoh's hand again.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- cupbearer
- cupbearer
- hand
- return, turn back
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Genesis 40:22

But he hanged the chief of the bakers

Pharaoh did not personally hang the baker, rather he commanded for him to be hanged. Alternate translation: “But he commanded for the chief of the bakers to be hanged” or “But he commanded his guards to hang the chief of the bakers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²² But he hanged the chief of the bakers, just as Joseph had interpreted to them.

just as Joseph had interpreted to them

This refers to when Joseph interpreted their dreams. Alternate translation: “just as Joseph had said would happen when he interpreted the two men’s dreams” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- hang, hung
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Genesis 40:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- cupbearer
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

²³ Yet the chief cupbearer did not remember Joseph, but forgot about him.

Genesis 41

Genesis 41 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Interpretation of dreams

The interpretation of dreams was important in the ancient Near East. It was seen as possible only through divine power. Yahweh gave Joseph the power to interpret dreams in order to bring himself glory and to protect Joseph and the Hebrew people. (See: [glory, glorious, glorify](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. It gained him great favor in the eyes of Pharaoh and helped to save his people. (See: [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#), [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#) and [save, saved, safe, salvation](#))

Genesis 41:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

ULT

¹ It came about at the end of two full years that Pharaoh had a dream. Behold, he stood by the Nile.

at the end of two full years

Two years passed after Joseph correctly interpreted the dreams of Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker, who had been in prison with Joseph.

Behold, he stood

The word "behold" here marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "He was surprised because he was standing"

he stood

"Pharaoh was standing"

Translation Words - ULT

- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- year
- dream

Genesis 41:2

desirable and fat

“healthy and fat”

grazed in the reeds

“were eating the grass along the side of the river”

reeds

tall, thin grasses that grow in wet areas

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- reed

ULT

² Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, desirable and fat, and they grazed in the reeds.

Genesis 41:3

Behold, seven other cows

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was again surprised by what he saw.

undesirable and thin

“sick and thin”

bank of the river

“beside the river” or “riverside.” This is the higher ground along the edge of a river.

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- flesh
- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

ULT

³ Behold, seven other cows came up after them out of the Nile, undesirable and thin. They stood by the other cows on the bank of the river.

Genesis 41:4

undesirable and thin

“weak and skinny.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

desirable and fat

“healthy and well-fed.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

woke up

“awakened”

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- flesh
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

ULT

⁴ Then the undesirable and thin cows ate the seven desirable and fat cows. Then Pharaoh woke up.

Genesis 41:5

a second time

The word “second” is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Behold, seven heads

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he saw.

heads of grain

The heads are parts of the corn plant on which the seeds grow.

came up on one stalk

“grew up on one stem.” The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant.

on one stalk, wholesome and good

“on one stock and they were healthy and beautiful”

Translation Words - ULT

- [good, right, pleasant, better, best](#)
- [dream](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [reed](#)

ULT

⁵ Then he slept and dreamed a second time. Behold, seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, wholesome and good.

Genesis 41:6

thin and scorched by the east wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that were thin and burned because of the hot wind from the east” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the east wind

Wind from the east blew in from the desert. The heat of the east wind was often very destructive.

sprouted up

“grew up” or “developed”

Translation Words - ULT

- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

⁶ Behold, seven heads, thin and scorched by the east wind, sprouted up after them.

Genesis 41:7

The thin heads

The words “of grain” are understood. Alternate translation: “The thin heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

swallowed up

“ate.” Pharaoh is dreaming that unhealthy corn could eat healthy corn just like a person eats food.

wholesome and full heads

“healthy and good heads.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:5](#).

woke up

“awakened”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he had seen.

it was a dream

“he had been dreaming”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [dream](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

7 The thin heads swallowed up the seven wholesome and full heads. Pharaoh woke up, and, behold, it was a dream.

Genesis 41:8

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

his spirit was troubled

Here the word “spirit” refers to his inner being or his emotions.

Alternate translation: “he was troubled in his inner being” or “he was troubled” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

He sent and called

It is understood that he sent servants. Alternate translation: “He sent his servants to call” or “He sent his servants to summon” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

all the magicians and wise men of Egypt

Ancient kings and rulers used magicians and wise men as advisers.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- spirit, wind, breath
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- dream
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter
- magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits
- send, sent, send out
- trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity
- wise men, advisor

ULT

⁸ It came about in the morning that his spirit was troubled. He sent and called for all the magicians and wise men of Egypt. Pharaoh told them his dreams, but there was no one who could interpret them to Pharaoh.

Genesis 41:9

chief cupbearer

The most important person who brings drinks to the king. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Today I am thinking about my offenses

The word “Today” is used for emphasis. His “offenses” are that he should have told Pharaoh something much earlier but he did not. Alternate translation: “I just realized that I forgot to tell you something”

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [day](#)
- [cupbearer](#)
- [rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader](#)

ULT

⁹ Then the chief cupbearer said to Pharaoh, “Today I am thinking about my offenses.”

Genesis 41:10

Pharaoh was angry

The cupbearer is referring to Pharaoh in third person. This is a common way for someone with less power to speak to someone with greater power. Alternate translation: “You, Pharaoh, were angry” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

with his servants

Here “his” refers to Pharaoh. Here “servants” refers to the cupbearer and the chief baker. Alternate translation: “with us, your servants” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me

“put the chief baker and me in the prison where the captain of the guard was in charge.” Here “house” refers to the prison.

the captain of the guard

The soldier in charge of the royal guards. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:3](#).

the chief baker

The most important person who made food for the king. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 40:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- house, household
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

10 Pharaoh was angry with his servants, and put me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, the chief baker and me.

Genesis 41:11

We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I

“One night we both had dreams”

We dreamed

Here “We” refers to the chief cupbearer and the chief baker. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream

“Our dreams had different meanings”

Translation Words - ULT

- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)

ULT

11 We dreamed a dream the same night, he and I. We dreamed each man according to the interpretation of his dream.

Genesis 41:12

General Information:

The chief cupbearer continues to speak to Pharaoh.

There was with us there

“In prison there was with the chief baker and me”

the captain of the guard

The soldier in charge of the royal guards. See how you translated this in [Genesis 40:3](#).

We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams

“We told him our dreams and he explained their meanings to us”

He interpreted for each of us according to his dream

Here “his” refers to the cupbearer and baker individually, not to the one interpreting the dream. Alternate translation: “He explained what was going to happen to both of us” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)
- [dream](#)
- [dream](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)
- [rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹² There was with us there a young Hebrew man, a servant of the captain of the guard. We told him and he interpreted for us our dreams. He interpreted for each of us according to his dream.

Genesis 41:13

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

as he interpreted for us, so it happened

“what he explained about the dreams is what later happened”

Pharaoh restored me to my post

Here the cupbearer uses Pharaoh’s title in speaking to him as a way of honoring him. Alternate translation: “You allowed me to return to my job” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

the other one

“the chief baker”

he hanged

Here “he” refers to Pharaoh. And, it stands for the soldiers that Pharaoh commanded to hang the chief baker. Alternate translation: “you ordered your soldiers to hang” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hang, hung](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

13 It came about as he interpreted for us, so it happened. Pharaoh restored me to my post, but the other one he hanged.”

Genesis 41:14

Pharaoh sent and called for

It is understood that Pharaoh sent servants. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh sent his servants to get Joseph" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

out of the dungeon

"out of the jail" or "out of the prison"

He shaved himself

It was common practice to shave both the facial and head hair when preparing to go before Pharaoh.

came in to Pharaoh

Here "came" can be stated as "went." Alternate translation: "went before Pharaoh" (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern
- run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows
- send, sent, send out

ULT

14 Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph. They quickly took him out of the dungeon. He shaved himself, changed his clothes, and came in to Pharaoh.

Genesis 41:15

there is no interpreter for it

“no one can explain the meaning”

you can interpret it

“you can explain its meaning”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- dream
- dream
- dream
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter
- interpret, interpretation, interpreter

ULT

¹⁵ Pharaoh said to Joseph, “I had a dream, but there is no interpreter for it. But I have heard about you, that when you hear a dream you can interpret it.”

Genesis 41:16

It is not in me

“I am not the one who can explain the meaning”

God will answer Pharaoh with favor

“God will answer Pharaoh favorably”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

16 Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, “It is not in me. God will answer Pharaoh with favor.”

Genesis 41:17

behold, I stood

Pharaoh uses the word “behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

bank of the Nile

This is the higher ground along the edge of the Nile River. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).
Alternate translation: “beside the Nile”

ULT

17 Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, “In my dream, behold, I stood on the bank of the Nile.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- dream

Genesis 41:18

Behold, seven cows

Pharaoh uses the word “Behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

fat and desirable

“well-fed and healthy.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

grazed among the reeds

“were eating the grass along the side of the river.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [reed](#)

ULT

18 Behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, fat and desirable, and they grazed among the reeds.

Genesis 41:19

Behold, seven other cows

Pharaoh uses the word “Behold” to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

undesirable, and thin

“weak, and skinny.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

such undesirableness

The abstract noun “undesirableness” can be translated with an adjective. Alternate translation: “such ugly cows” or “such worthless looking cows” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- flesh
- Egypt, Egyptian
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- earth, land

ULT

19 Behold, seven other cows came up after them, weak, very undesirable, and thin. I never saw in all the land of Egypt such undesirableness like them.

Genesis 41:20

fat cows

“well-fed cows.” See how you translated this phrase in [Genesis 41:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

ULT

²⁰ The thin and undesirable cows ate up the first seven fat cows.

Genesis 41:21

it could not be known that they had eaten them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one would have been able to tell that the thin cows had eaten the fat cows” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

²¹ When they had eaten them up, it could not be known that they had eaten them, for they were still as undesirable as before. Then I awoke.

Genesis 41:22

General Information:

Pharaoh continues telling Joseph his dreams.

I looked in my dream

This begins Pharaoh's next dream after he woke up and went back to sleep. Alternate translation: "Then I dreamed again" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²² I looked in my dream, and, behold, seven heads came up upon one stalk, full and good.

behold, seven heads

Pharaoh uses the word "Behold" to make Joseph pay attention to surprising information.

seven heads

The words "of grain" are understood. Alternate translation: "seven heads of grain" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

came up upon one stalk

"grew up on one stem." The stalk is the thick or tall part of a plant. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- dream
- grain, grainfields
- reed

Genesis 41:23

withered

dead and dried

sprang up

“grew up” or “developed”

Translation Words - ULT

- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

²³ Behold, seven more heads—withered, thin, and scorched by the east wind—sprang up after them.

Genesis 41:24

The thin heads

The words “of grain” are understood. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:7](#). Alternate translation: “The thin heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

swallowed up

“ate.” Pharaoh is dreaming that unhealthy corn could eat healthy corn just like a person eats food. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:7](#).

there was none that could

“there was not a single one that could” or “none of them could”

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- grain, grainfields
- grain, grainfields
- magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

24 The thin heads swallowed up the seven good heads. I told these dreams to the magicians, but there was none that could explain it to me.”

Genesis 41:25

The dreams of Pharaoh are the same

It is implied that the meanings are the same. Alternate translation: "Both dreams mean the same thing" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in the third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: "God is showing you what he will soon do" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

²⁵ Joseph said to Pharaoh, "The dreams of Pharaoh are the same. What God is about to do, he has declared to Pharaoh."

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- dream
- report, reported, tell, reputation

Genesis 41:26

seven good heads

The words “of grain” are understood. Alternate translation: “seven good heads of grain” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- year
- year
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- dream
- grain, grainfields

ULT

²⁶ The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven good heads are seven years. The dreams are the same.

Genesis 41:27

General Information:

Joseph continues his interpretation of Pharaoh's dreams

thin and undesirable cows

"skinny and weak cows." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:3](#).

seven thin heads scorched by the east wind

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "seven thin heads of grain scorched because of the hot wind from the east" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- year
- year
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- famine
- grain, grainfields

ULT

²⁷ The seven thin and undesirable cows that came up after them are seven years, and also the seven thin heads scorched by the east wind will be seven years of famine.

Genesis 41:28

That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh... revealed to Pharaoh

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in the third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "These events will happen just as I have told you... revealed to you, Pharaoh" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

he has revealed

"he has made known"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

ULT

²⁸ That is the thing which I spoke to Pharaoh. What God is about to do he has revealed to Pharaoh.

Genesis 41:29

Look, seven

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: seven”

seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt

This speaks about the years of abundance as if time is something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “there will be seven years in which there will be plenty of food throughout the land of Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- year
- earth, land

ULT

²⁹ Look, seven years of great abundance will come throughout all the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:30

General Information:

Joseph continues interpreting Pharaoh's dreams.

Seven years of famine will come after them

This speaks about the seven years of famine as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: "Then there will be seven years when there is very little food" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³⁰ Seven years of famine will come after them, and all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt, and the famine will devastate the land.

all the abundance will be forgotten...and the famine will devastate the land

Joseph expresses an idea in two ways to emphasize its importance. (See: [Parallelism](#))

all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt

Here "land" refers to the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Egypt will forget about the years in which there was plenty of food" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

will devastate the land

Here "land" refers to the soil, the people, and the entire country. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [year](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)
- [famine](#)

Genesis 41:31

The abundance will not be remembered... because of the famine that will follow

Joseph expresses an idea in two ways to emphasize its importance.
(See: [Parallelism](#))

because of the famine that will follow

This speaks about the famine as if it were a thing that travels and follows behind something else. Alternate translation: "because of the time of famine that will happen afterwards" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

³¹ The abundance will not be remembered in the land because of the famine that will follow, for it will be very severe.

Genesis 41:32

That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God gave you two dreams to show you that he will certainly cause these things to happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³² That the dream was repeated to Pharaoh is because the matter has been established by God, and God will soon do it.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- dream

Genesis 41:33

General Information:

Joseph continues to address Pharaoh

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let Pharaoh look

Joseph speaks to Pharaoh in third person. This is a way of showing respect. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “You, Pharaoh, should look” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

put him over the land of Egypt

The phrase “put him over” means to give someone authority. Alternate translation: “give him authority over the kingdom of Egypt” or “put him in charge of the kingdom of Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

land of Egypt

Here “land” stands for all the people and everything in Egypt. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [discern, discernment, distinguish](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

³³ Now let Pharaoh look for a man discerning and wise, and put him over the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:34

let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt

The word “fifth” is a fraction. Alternate translation: “let them divide the crops of Egypt into five equal parts, then take one of those parts” (See: [Fractions](#))

in the seven abundant years

“during the seven years in which there is plenty of food”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- year
- earth, land
- earth, land
- oversee, overseer, keeper

ULT

³⁴ Let Pharaoh appoint officials over the land, and let them take a fifth of the crops of Egypt in the seven abundant years.

Genesis 41:35

General Information:

Joseph continues to counsel Pharaoh

Let them gather

“Allow the overseers to gather”

of these good years that are coming

This speaks of years as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “during the good years that will soon happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh

The phrase “under the authority of Pharaoh” means Pharaoh gives them authority. Alternate translation: “use the authority of Pharaoh to store the grain” (See: [Idiom](#))

They should preserve it

The word “they” refers to the overseers and represents the soldiers that they should command to guard the grain. Alternate translation: “The overseers should leave soldiers there to guard the grain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- year
- grain, grainfields

ULT

³⁵ Let them gather all the food of these good years that are coming and store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh, for food to be used in the cities. They should preserve it.

Genesis 41:36

The food will be a supply for the land

Here “land” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “This food will be for the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine

Here “land” stands for the people. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This way the people will not starve during the famine” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³⁶ The food will be a supply for the land for the seven years of famine which will be in the land of Egypt. In this way the land will not be devastated by the famine.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- year
- cut off, cut down
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- famine
- famine

Genesis 41:37

This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh and his servants thought this was a good plan" (See: [Metaphor](#))

his servants

This means Pharaoh's officials.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³⁷ This advice was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants.

Genesis 41:38

such a man as this

“a man like the one Joseph described”

in whom is the Spirit of God

“in whom the Spirit of God lives”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- spirit, wind, breath
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³⁸ Pharaoh said to his servants, “Can we find such a man as this, in whom is the Spirit of God?”

Genesis 41:39

there is none so discerning

“no one else is as capable in making decisions.” See how you translated “discerning” in [Genesis 41:33](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- wise, wisdom
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- discern, discernment, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁹ So Pharaoh said to Joseph, “Since God has shown you all this, there is none so discerning and wise as you.”

Genesis 41:40

You will be over my house

Here “house” stands for Pharaoh’s palace and the people in the palace. The phrase “will be over” means Joseph will have authority over. Alternate translation: “You will be in charge of everyone in my palace” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

ULT

40 You will be over my house, and according to your word will all my people be ruled. Only in the throne will I be greater than you.”

according to your word will all my people be ruled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will rule over my people and they will do what you command” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Only in the throne

Here “throne” stands for Pharaoh’s rule as king. Alternate translation: “Only in my role as king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [house, household](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)

Genesis 41:41

See, I have put you

The word “See” adds emphasis to what Pharaoh says next. Alternate translation: “Look, I have put you”

ULT

41 Pharaoh said to Joseph, “See, I have put you over all the land of Egypt.”

I have put you over all the land of Egypt

The phrase “put you over” means to give authority. Here “land” refers to the people. Alternate translation: “I put you in charge of everyone in Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [earth, land](#)

Genesis 41:42

Pharaoh took off his signet ring...gold chain on his neck

All of these actions symbolize that Pharaoh is giving Joseph the authority to do everything that Joseph planned. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

signet ring

This ring had Pharaoh's seal engraved on it. This gave Joseph the authority and money needed to carry out his plans.

clothes of fine linen

"Linen" here is a smooth, strong cloth made from the blue-flowered flax plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments](#)
- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴² Pharaoh took off his signet ring from his hand and put it upon Joseph's hand. He clothed him with clothes of fine linen, and put a gold chain on his neck.

Genesis 41:43

He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed

This act makes clear to the people that Joseph is second only to Pharaoh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Bend the knee

“Bow down and honor Joseph.” To bend the knee and bow down was a sign of honor and respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Pharaoh put him over all the land

The phrase “put you over” means to give authority. Here “land” refers to the people. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Genesis 41:41](#). Alternate translation: “I put you in charge of everyone in Egypt”(See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- chariot, charioteers
- earth, land
- horse, warhorse, horseback

ULT

⁴³ He had him ride in the second chariot which he possessed. Men shouted before him, “Bend the knee.” Pharaoh put him over all the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:44

I am Pharaoh, and apart from you

Pharaoh is emphasizing his authority. Alternate translation: “As Pharaoh, I command that apart from you”

apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt

Here “hand” and “foot” stand for a person’s actions. Alternate translation: “no person in Egypt will do anything without your permission” or “every person in Egypt must ask your permission before they do anything” (See: [Metonymy](#))

no man

Here “man” refers to any person in general, whether male or female. (See: [When Masculine Words Include Women](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land

ULT

44 Pharaoh said to Joseph, “I am Pharaoh, and apart from you, no man will lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt.”

Genesis 41:45

Zaphenath-Paneah

Translators may add the following footnote: The name Zaphenath-Paneah means “a revealer of secrets.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife

Priests in Egypt were the highest and most privileged caste. This marriage signifies Joseph’s place of honor and privilege. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

gave him Asenath

“Asenath” is the name of the woman whom Pharaoh gave to Joseph as his wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter of Potiphera

“Potiphera” is the father of Asenath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was “the City of the Sun” and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joseph went out over the land of Egypt

Joseph traveled over the land to supervise the preparations for the coming drought.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- priest, priesthood
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land

ULT

⁴⁵ Pharaoh called Joseph’s name “Zaphenath-Paneah.” He gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, as a wife. Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:46

thirty years old

“30 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

when he stood before Pharaoh

Here “stood before” stands for Joseph starting to serve Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “when he started to serve Pharaoh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

went throughout all the land of Egypt

Joseph is inspecting the country as he prepares to carry out his plans.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [year](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ Joseph was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh, king of Egypt. Joseph went out from the presence of Pharaoh, and went throughout all the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:47

In the seven bountiful years

“During the seven good years”

the land produced abundantly

“the land produced big harvests”

Translation Words - ULT

- year
- earth, land

ULT

⁴⁷ In the seven bountiful years the land produced abundantly.

Genesis 41:48

He gathered up...He put

Here "He" stands for Joseph's servants. Alternate translation: "Joseph ordered his servants to gather...They put" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [year](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ He gathered up all the food of the seven years that was in the land of Egypt and put the food in the cities. He put into each city the food from the fields that surrounded it.

Genesis 41:49

Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea

This compares the grain to the sand of sea to emphasize its great quantity. Alternate translation: "The grain that Joseph stored was as plentiful as the sand on the seashore" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Joseph stored up...he stopped

Here "Joseph" and "he" stand for Joseph's servants. Alternate translation: "Joseph had his servants store up...they stopped" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)

ULT

49 Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, so much that he stopped counting, because it was beyond counting.

Genesis 41:50

before the years of famine came

This speaks about years as if they are something that travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: “before the seven years of the famine began” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Asenath

a woman’s name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

daughter of Potiphera

“Potiphera” is the father of Asenath. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was “the City of the Sun” and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [year](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ Joseph had two sons before the years of famine came, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On, bore to him.

Genesis 41:51

Manasseh

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Manasseh' means 'to cause to forget.'"

father's household

This refers to Joseph's father Jacob and his family.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn
- house, household
- trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

ULT

⁵¹ Joseph called the name of his firstborn Manasseh, for he said, "God has made me forget all my trouble and all my father's household."

Genesis 41:52

Ephraim

Translators may also add a footnote that says, "The name 'Ephraim' means 'to be fruitful' or 'to have children.'"

made me fruitful

Here "fruitful" means to prosper or to have children. (See: [Idiom](#))

in the land of my affliction

The abstract noun "affliction" can be stated as "I have suffered." Alternate translation: "in this land where I have suffered" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- God
- name
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- afflict, affliction, distress
- earth, land
- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

ULT

⁵² He called the name of the second son Ephraim, for he said, "God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction."

Genesis 41:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- year
- earth, land

ULT

⁵³ The seven years of abundance that was in the land of Egypt came to an end.

Genesis 41:54

in all lands

In all the surrounding nations beyond Egypt, including the land of Canaan.

but in all the land of Egypt there was food

It is implied that there was food because of Joseph commanded his people to store food during the seven good years. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁵⁴ The seven years of famine began, as Joseph had said. There was famine in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was food.

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- year
- bread
- earth, land
- earth, land
- famine
- famine

Genesis 41:55

When all the land of Egypt was famished

Here “land” stands for the people. Alternate translation: “When all the Egyptians were starving” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- bread
- cry, cry out, outcry
- earth, land
- people, people group

ULT

55 When all the land of Egypt was famished, the people loudly called on Pharaoh for food. Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians, “Go to Joseph and do what he says.”

Genesis 41:56

The famine was over all the face of the whole land

The word “face” refers to the surface of the land. Alternate translation: “The famine had spread throughout the land” (See: [Idiom](#))

Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians

Here “Joseph” stands for Joseph’s servants. Alternate translation: “Joseph had his servants open all the storehouses and sell grain to the Egyptians” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)
- [famine](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ The famine was over all the face of the whole land. Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold to the Egyptians. The famine was severe in the land of Egypt.

Genesis 41:57

All the earth was coming to Egypt

Here “earth” stands for the people from all regions. Alternate translation: “People were coming to Egypt from all the surrounding regions” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in all the earth

“throughout the land.” It is likely that all the different trading partners and nations that were part of the Egyptian trading routes effected by the drought came to Egypt for grain.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

ULT

57 All the earth was coming to Egypt to buy grain from Joseph, because the famine was severe in all the earth.

Genesis 42

Genesis 42 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Famine

Apparently this famine extended beyond Egypt and encompassed the land of Canaan too. Because of Egypt's size and power, it would not have been unusual for people to go there in times of need. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Joseph's test

Joseph tests his brothers to see if they are good. They treat their brother Benjamin better than they treated Joseph and tried to protect him.

Genesis 42:1

Now Jacob became

The word “Now” marks a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

Why do you look at one another?

Jacob uses a question to scold his sons for not doing anything about the grain. Alternate translation: “Do not just sit here!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹ Now Jacob became aware that there was grain in Egypt. He said to his sons, “Why do you look at one another?”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- grain, grainfields

Genesis 42:2

Go down there

It was common to speak of going from Canaan to Egypt as going "down."

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- die, dead, deadly, death
- grain, grainfields

ULT

² He said, "See here, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy for us from there so we may live and not die."

Genesis 42:3

went down

It was common to speak of going from Canaan to Egypt as going “down.”

from Egypt

Here “Egypt” refers to the people selling grain. Alternate translation: “from those selling grain in Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- grain, grainfields

ULT

³ Joseph’s ten brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.

Genesis 42:4

Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers

Benjamin and Joseph had the same father and mother; their mother was different from the mothers of the other brothers. Jacob did not want to risk sending Rachel's last son. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁴ But Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers, for he said, "I fear that harm might come to him."

Genesis 42:5

The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came

The word “came” can be translated as “went.” Also, the words “grain” and “Egypt” are understood. Alternate translation: “The sons of Israel went to buy grain along with other people who went to Egypt” (See: [Go and Come](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

⁵ The sons of Israel came to buy among those who came, for the famine was in the land of Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)

Genesis 42:6

Now Joseph

“Now” marks a change from the story to background information about Joseph. (See: [Background Information](#))

over the land

Here “land” refers to Egypt. Alternate translation: “over Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all the people of the land

Here “land” includes Egypt and other surrounding countries. Alternate translation: “all the people of all the nations that came to buy grain” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Joseph’s brothers came

Here “came” can be translated as “went.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

bowed down to him with their faces to the ground

This is a way of showing respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- people, people group
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

ULT

⁶ Now Joseph was the governor over the land. He was the one who sold to all the people of the land. Joseph’s brothers came and bowed down to him with their faces to the ground.

Genesis 42:7

Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them

“When Joseph saw his brothers, he recognized them”

he disguised himself to them

“he acted like he was not their brother” or “he did not let them know that he was their brother”

Where have you come from?

This was not a rhetorical question even though Joseph knew the answer. It was part of his choice to keep his identity from his brothers.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Joseph (OT)
- earth, land

ULT

⁷ Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he disguised himself to them and spoke harshly with them. He said to them, “Where have you come from?” They said, “From the land of Canaan to buy food.”

Genesis 42:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁸ Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.

Genesis 42:9

You are spies

Spies are people who secretly try to get information about a country to help another country.

You have come to see the undefended parts of the land

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "You have come to find out where we are not guarding our land so that you can attack us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ Then Joseph remembered the dreams he had dreamed about them, and he said to them, "You are spies! You have come to see the undefended parts of the land."

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- dream
- dream
- earth, land

Genesis 42:10

my master

This is a way to refer to someone to honor them.

Your servants have

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “We, your servants, have” or “We have” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁰ They said to him, “No, my master.
Your servants have come to buy food.”

Genesis 42:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

11 We are all one man's sons. We are honest men. Your servants are not spies."

Genesis 42:12

He said to them

“Joseph said to his brothers”

No, you have come to see the undefended parts of the land

The full meaning can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “No, you have come to find out where we are not guarding our land so that you can attack us” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² He said to them, “No, you have come to see the undefended parts of the land.”

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land

Genesis 42:13

twelve brothers

“12 brothers” (See: [Numbers](#))

See, the youngest

“Listen to us, the youngest.” The word “See” is used to emphasize what they say next.

the youngest is this day with our father

“right now our youngest brother is with our father”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [day](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

¹³ They said, “We your servants are twelve brothers, the sons of one man in the land of Canaan. See, the youngest is this day with our father, and one brother is no longer alive.”

Genesis 42:14

It is what I said to you; you are spies

“like I already said, you are spies.” See how you translated “spies” in [Genesis 42:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

ULT

14 Joseph said to them, “It is what I said to you; you are spies.”

Genesis 42:15

By this you will be tested

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This is how I will test you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

By the life of Pharaoh

This phrase indicates a solemn oath. Alternate translation: “I swear by the life of Pharaoh”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- life, live, living, alive
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

ULT

15 By this you will be tested. By the life of Pharaoh, you will not leave here, unless your youngest brother comes here.

Genesis 42:16

Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother

“Choose one of you to go get your brother”

You will remain in prison

“The rest of you will remain in prison”

that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that I may find out if you are telling the truth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- life, live, living, alive
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- prison, prisoner, imprison
- send, sent, send out

ULT

¹⁶ Send one of yourselves and let him get your brother. You will remain in prison, that your words may be tested, whether there is truth in you. Or else, by the life of Pharaoh, surely you are spies.”

Genesis 42:17

in custody

“in prison”

Translation Words - ULT

• [day](#)

ULT

17 He put them all in custody for three days.

Genesis 42:18

on the third day

The word “third” is an ordinal number. Alternate translation: “after the second day” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

18 Joseph said to them on the third day,
“Do this and live, for I fear God.”

Do this and live

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “If you will do what I say, I will let you live” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

fear God

This refers to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- life, live, living, alive
- Joseph (OT)
- day

Genesis 42:19

let one of your brothers be confined in this prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “leave one of your brothers here in prison” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but you go

Here “you” is plural and refers to all the brothers that will not stay in prison. Alternate translation: “but the rest of you go” (See: [Forms of You](#))

carry grain for the famine of your houses

Here “houses” stands for families. Alternate translation: “carry grain home to help your family during this famine” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [famine](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)

ULT

¹⁹ If you are honest men, let one of your brothers be confined in this prison, but you go, carry grain for the famine of your houses.

Genesis 42:20

so your words will be verified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so I may know what you say is true” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will not die

This implies that Joseph would have his soldiers execute the brothers if he finds out they are spies. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

ULT

20 Bring your youngest brother to me so your words will be verified and you will not die.” So they did so.

Genesis 42:21

in that we saw the distress of his soul

The word “soul” stands for Joseph. Alternate translation: “because we saw how distressed Joseph was” or “because we saw that Joseph was suffering” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Therefore this distress has come upon us

The abstract noun “distress” can be stated as the verb “suffering.”
Alternate translation: “That is why we are suffering like this now” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [plea, plead, please, beg, implore](#)
- [trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity](#)
- [trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity](#)

ULT

21 They said to one another, “We are truly guilty concerning our brother in that we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us and we would not listen. Therefore this distress has come upon us.”

Genesis 42:22

Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but you would not listen?

Reuben uses a question to scold his brothers. Alternate translation: "I told you not to hurt the boy, but you would not listen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²² Reuben answered them, "Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but you would not listen? Now, see, his blood is required of us."

Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy,' but

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Did I not tell you not to sin against the boy, but" or "I told you not to harm the boy, but" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Now, see

Here "Now" does not mean "at this moment," but both "Now" and "see" are used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

his blood is required of us

Here "blood" stands for Joseph's death. His brothers thought Joseph was dead. The phrase "is required of us" means they must be punished for what they did. Alternate translation: "we are getting what we deserve for his death" or "we are suffering for having killed him" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Genesis 42:23

They did not know...an interpreter between them

This shifts from the main story line to background information that explains why the brothers thought Joseph could not understand them. (See: [Background Information](#))

an interpreter

An “interpreter” is someone who translates what one person says into another language. Joseph placed an interpreter between himself and his brothers to make it seem like he did not speak their language.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [interpret, interpretation, interpreter](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

ULT

²³ They did not know that Joseph understood them, for there was an interpreter between them.

Genesis 42:24

He turned from them and wept

It is implied that Joseph wept because he was emotional after hearing what his brothers said. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

spoke to them

Joseph was still speaking a different language and using the interpreter to speak to his brothers. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bound him before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “bound him in their sight” or “bound him as they watched” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- Simeon
- return, turn back

ULT

²⁴ He turned from them and wept. He returned to them and spoke to them. He took Simeon from among them and bound him before their eyes.

Genesis 42:25

to give them provisions

“to give them the supplies they needed”

It was done for them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The servants did for them everything that Joseph commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill his brothers' bags with grain, and to put every man's money back into his sack, and to give them provisions for the journey. It was done for them.

Genesis 42:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- grain, grainfields

ULT

²⁶ The brothers loaded their donkeys with their grain and departed from there.

Genesis 42:27

As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack

“When they stopped at a place for the night, one of the brothers opened his sack to get food for his donkey. In the sack he saw his money!”

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- silver

ULT

²⁷ As one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed in the lodging place, he saw his money. Behold, it was in the opening of his sack.

Genesis 42:28

My money has been put back

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone has put my money back" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Look at it

"Look in my sack!"

Their hearts sank

To become afraid is spoken of as if their heart were sinking. Here "hearts" stands for courage. Alternate translation: "They became very afraid" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [silver](#)
- [tremble, stagger, shake](#)

ULT

28 He said to his brothers, "My money has been put back. Look at it; it is in my sack." Their hearts sank and they turned trembling to one another, saying, "What is this that God has done to us?"

Genesis 42:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

²⁹ They went to Jacob, their father in the land of Canaan and told him all that had happened to them. They said,

Genesis 42:30

lord of the land

“the lord of Egypt”

spoke roughly

“spoke harshly”

we were spies

Spies are people who secretly try to get information about a country to help another country. See how you translated “spies” in [Genesis 42:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- earth, land
- earth, land

ULT

³⁰ “The man, the lord of the land, spoke roughly with us and thought that we were spies in the land.”

Genesis 42:31

We said to him, 'We are honest men. We are not spies.

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "We told him that we are honest men and not spies." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

³¹ We said to him, 'We are honest men.
We are not spies.

Genesis 42:32

We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no longer alive...land of Canaan.'

The quotation within a quotation that began with the words "We said to him, 'We are honest men...not spies. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "We told him that we are honest men...not spies. We said that we are twelve brothers, sons of our father, and that one brother is no longer alive...land of Canaan" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

³² We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no longer alive, and the youngest is this day with our father in the land of Canaan.'

One is no longer alive

The word "brother" is understood. Alternate translation: "One brother is no longer alive" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

the youngest is this day with our father

The word "brother" is understood. Alternate translation: "the youngest brother is with our father right now" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [day](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Genesis 42:33

the lord of the land

“The lord of Egypt”

take grain for the famine in your houses

Here “houses” stands for “family.” Alternate translation: “take grain to help your family during the famine” (See: [Metonymy](#))

go your way

“go home” or “leave”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- earth, land
- house, household
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³³ The man, the lord of the land, said to us, ‘By this I will know that you are honest men. Leave one of your brothers with me, take grain for the famine in your houses, and go your way.’

Genesis 42:34

you will trade in the land

“I will allow you to buy and sell in this land”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- earth, land
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

³⁴ Bring your youngest brother to me. Then I will know that you are not spies, but that you are honest men. Then I will release your brother to you, and you will trade in the land.”

Genesis 42:35

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

behold, every

“they were surprised because every”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- silver
- silver

ULT

³⁵ It came about as they emptied their sacks, that, behold, every man's bag of silver was in his sack. When they and their father saw their bags of silver, they were afraid.

Genesis 42:36

You have bereaved me of my children

“you have deprived me of my children” or “you have caused me to lose two of my children”

All these things are against me

“all these things hurt me”

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Simeon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

³⁶ Jacob their father said to them, “You have bereaved me of my children. Joseph is no longer alive, Simeon is gone, and you will take Benjamin away. All these things are against me.”

Genesis 42:37

Put him in my hands

This is a request for Reuben to take Benjamin with him and to care for him on the journey. Alternate translation: “Put me in charge of him” or “Let me take care of him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Reuben
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

ULT

37 Reuben spoke to his father, saying, “You may kill my two sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you. Put him in my hands, and I will bring him to you again.”

Genesis 42:38

My son will not go down with you

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: “My son, Benjamin, will not go with you to Egypt”

with you

Here “you” is plural and refers to Jacob’s older sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

For his brother is dead and he alone is left

The full meaning can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “For my wife, Rachel, only had two children. Joseph is dead and Benjamin is the only one left” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

on the road in which you go

“while you are traveling to Egypt and back” or “while you are away.” Here “road” stands for traveling.

then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

my gray hair

This stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “me, an old man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)

ULT

38 Jacob said, “My son will not go down with you. For his brother is dead and he alone is left. If harm comes to him on the road in which you go, then you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.”

Genesis 43

Genesis 43 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's concern

Israel is concerned over his favored son, Benjamin. He is also confused about the reason the Egyptian official treated them so kindly. This caused him some concern. It is possible he thought his sons were lying to him. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#))

Genesis 43:1

The famine was severe in the land

The word “Canaan” is understood. This information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “The famine was severe in the land of Canaan” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

¹ The famine was severe in the land.

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)

Genesis 43:2

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

when they had eaten

“when Jacob and his family had eaten”

they had brought

“Jacob’s older sons had brought”

buy us

Here “us” refers to Jacob, his sons, and the rest of the family. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [grain, grainfields](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

² It came about when they had eaten the grain that they had brought out of Egypt, their father said to them, “Go again; buy us some food.”

Genesis 43:3

Judah told him

“Judah told his father Jacob”

The man

This refers to Joseph, but the brothers did not know it was Joseph. They referred to him as “the man” or “the man, the lord of the land” as in [Genesis 42:30](#).

ULT

³Judah told him, “The man solemnly warned us, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.’”

warned us, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.’

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “warned us that we would not see his face unless we brought our youngest brother with us” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

solemnly warned us

“was very serious when he warned us, saying”

You will not see my face

Judah uses this phrase twice in 43:3-5 to emphasize to his father that they cannot return to Egypt without Benjamin. The phrase “my face” refers to the man, who is Joseph. Alternate translation: “You will not see me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

your brother is with you

Judah is referring to Benjamin, Rachel’s last born before she died.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Genesis 43:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁴ If you send our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food.

Genesis 43:5

we will not go down

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- face, facial
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁵ But if you do not send him, we will not go down. For the man said to us, ‘You will not see my face unless your brother is with you.’”

Genesis 43:6

Why did you treat me so badly

“Why did you cause me so much trouble”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Jacob, Israel
- afflict, affliction, distress
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

⁶ Israel said, “Why did you treat me so badly by telling the man that you had another brother?”

Genesis 43:7

The man asked details

“The man asked many questions”

about us

Here “us” is exclusive and refers to the brothers who went to Egypt and spoke with “the man.” (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

He said, ‘Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “He asked us directly if our father was still alive and if we had another brother.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

We answered him according to these questions

“We answered the questions he asked us”

How could we have known that he would say...down?

The sons use a question emphasize that they did not know what the man would tell them to do. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “We did not know he would say...down!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

he would say, ‘Bring your brother down?’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “he would tell us to bring our brother down to Egypt.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Bring your brother down

It was common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- life, live, living, alive
- family, household
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

⁷ They said, “The man asked details about us and our family. He said, ‘Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?’ We answered him according to these questions. How could we have known that he would say, ‘Bring your brother down?’”

Genesis 43:8

We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children

The phrases “we may live” and “not die” mean the same thing. Judah is emphasizing that they have to buy food in Egypt in order to survive. Alternate translation: “We will go now to Egypt and get grain so our whole family will live” (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

⁸Judah said to Israel his father, “Send the boy with me. We will rise and go that we may live and not die, both we, you, and also our children.

We will rise

Here “We” refers to the brothers who will travel to Egypt. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

we may live

Here “we” refers to the brothers, Israel, and the whole family. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

both we

Here “we” refers to the brothers. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

we, you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

also our children

Here “our” refers to the brothers. This refers to the small children who were most likely to die during a famine. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/kt/chidren\]\]](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

Genesis 43:9

I will be a guarantee for him

The abstract noun “guarantee” can be stated as the verb “promise.”
Alternate translation: “I will promise to bring him back” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

You will hold me responsible

How Jacob will hold Judah responsible can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “You will make me answer to you about what happens to Benjamin” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let me bear the blame

This speaks about “blame” as if it were an object that a person has to carry. Alternate translation: “you may blame me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [day](#)
- [pledge, pledged](#)

ULT

⁹ I will be a guarantee for him. You will hold me responsible. If I do not bring him back to you and set him before you, then let me bear the blame forever.

Genesis 43:10

For if we had not delayed

Judah is describing something that could have happened in the past but did not. Judah is scolding his father for waiting so long to send his sons to Egypt to get more food. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

we would have come back here a second time

“we would have returned twice”

Translation Words - ULT

- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

10 For if we had not delayed, surely by now we would have come back here a second time.”

Genesis 43:11

If it be so, now do this

“If this is our only choice, then do it”

Carry down

It was common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

balm

an oily substance with a sweet smell used for healing and protecting skin. See how you translated this word in [Genesis 37:25](#). Alternate translation: “medicine”

spices

seasonings. See how you translated these words in [Genesis 37:25](#).

pistachio nuts

small, green tree nuts (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

almonds

tree nuts with a sweet flavor (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gift](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)

ULT

11 Their father Israel said to them, “If it be so, now do this. Take some of the best products of the land in your bags. Carry down to the man a gift—some balm and honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds.

Genesis 43:12

Take double money in your hand

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “Take double the money with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. The phrase “that was returned” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “take back to Egypt the money someone put in your sacks” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

12 Take double money in your hand. The money that was returned in the opening of your sacks, carry again in your hand. Perhaps it was a mistake.

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [return, turn back](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)

Genesis 43:13

Take also your brother

“Take also Benjamin”

go again

“return”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- return, turn back

ULT

¹³ Take also your brother. Rise and go again to the man.

Genesis 43:14

May God Almighty give you mercy before the man

The abstract noun “mercy” can be stated as the adjective “kind.”
Alternate translation: “May God Almighty cause the man to be kind to you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your other brother

“Simeon”

If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved

“If I lose my children, then I lose my children.” This means that Jacob knows he must accept whatever happens to his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [brother](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [God](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

¹⁴ May God Almighty give you mercy before the man, so that he may release to you your other brother and Benjamin. If I am bereaved of my children, I am bereaved.”

Genesis 43:15

in their hand they took

Here “hand” refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “they took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

went down to Egypt

It was common to use the phrase “went down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- hand
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- silver

ULT

15 The men took this gift, and in their hand they took double the amount of money, along with Benjamin. They got up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.

Genesis 43:16

Benjamin with them

“Benjamin with Joseph’s older brothers”

the steward of his house

The “steward” was responsible for managing Joseph’s household activities.

ULT

16 When Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the steward of his house, “Bring the men into the house, slaughter an animal and prepare it, for the men will eat with me at noon.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Joseph (OT)
- house, household
- house, household
- slaughter, slaughtered
- slaughter, slaughtered

Genesis 43:17

He brought the men

Here “brought” can be translated as “took.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

to Joseph’s house

“into Joseph’s house”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [house, household](#)

ULT

17 The steward did as Joseph said. He brought the men to Joseph’s house.

Genesis 43:18

The men were afraid

“Joseph’s brothers were afraid”

they were brought to Joseph’s house

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they were going into Joseph’s house” or “the steward was taking them into Joseph’s house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The steward is bringing us into the house because of the money that someone put back in our sacks” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “He is waiting for the opportunity to accuse us, so that he might arrest us”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- Joseph (OT)
- donkey, mule
- house, household
- return, turn back
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- silver

ULT

18 The men were afraid because they were brought to Joseph’s house. They said, “It is because of the money that was returned in our sacks the first time we were brought in, that he may seek an opportunity against us. He might arrest us and take us as slaves, and take our donkeys.”

Genesis 43:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

¹⁹ They approached the steward of Joseph's house, and they spoke to him at the door of the house,

Genesis 43:20

we came down

It is common to use the phrase “came down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir

ULT

²⁰ saying, “My master, we came down the first time to buy food.

Genesis 43:21

Connecting Statement:

The brothers continue speaking to the steward of the house.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when we reached the lodging place

“when we came to the place that we were going to stay for the night”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that the brothers were surprised by what they saw.

every man’s money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight

“each one of us found the full amount of his money in his sack”

We have brought it back in our hands

Here “hands” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “We have brought the money back with us” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- return, turn back
- silver
- silver

ULT

²¹ It came about, when we reached the lodging place, that we opened our sacks, and, behold, every man’s money was in the opening of his sack, our money in full weight. We have brought it back in our hands.

Genesis 43:22

Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food

Here “hand” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “We have also brought more money to buy food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brought down

It common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- silver
- silver

ULT

²² Other money we have also brought down in our hand to buy food. We do not know who put our money in our sacks.”

Genesis 43:23

Peace be to you

The abstract noun "Peace" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "Relax" or "Calm yourselves" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Your God and the God of your father

The steward is not speaking about two different Gods. Alternate translation: "Your God, the God your father worships"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- God
- Simeon
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- silver

ULT

²³ The steward said, "Peace be to you, do not fear. Your God and the God of your father must have put your money in your sacks. I received your money." The steward then brought Simeon out to them.

Genesis 43:24

washed their feet

This custom helped tired travelers to refresh themselves after walking long distances. The full meaning of this statement may be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

feed to their donkeys

“Feed” is dry food that is set aside for animals

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- Joseph (OT)
- donkey, mule
- house, household
- water, deep

ULT

²⁴ The steward took the men into Joseph's house. He gave them water, and they washed their feet. He gave feed to their donkeys.

Genesis 43:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- Joseph (OT)
- bread

ULT

²⁵ They prepared the gifts for Joseph's coming at noon, for they had heard that they would eat there.

Genesis 43:26

they brought the gifts which were in their hand

Here “hand” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “the brothers brought the gifts they had with them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

bowed down before him

This is a way of showing honor and respect. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gift
- Joseph (OT)
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- earth, land
- hand
- house, household
- house, household

ULT

²⁶ When Joseph came home, they brought the gifts which were in their hand into the house, and bowed down before him to the ground.

Genesis 43:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

²⁷ He asked them about their welfare and said, "Is your father well, the old man of whom you spoke? Is he still alive?"

Genesis 43:28

Your servant our father

They refer to their father as “Your servant” to show respect.
Alternate translation: “Our father who serves you”

They prostrated themselves and bowed down

These words basically mean the same thing. They laid down in front of the man to show him respect. Alternate translation: “They bowed down in front of him” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

²⁸ They said, “Your servant our father is well. He is still alive.” They prostrated themselves and bowed down.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- prostrate
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 43:29

he lifted up his eyes

This means "he looked up." (See: [Idiom](#))

his mother's son, and he said

This can be translated with a new sentence. Alternate translation: "his mother's son. Joseph said"

Is this your youngest brother...me?

Possible meanings are (1) Joseph is truly asking a question to confirm that this man is Benjamin, or (2) it is a rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "So this is your youngest brother...me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my son

This is a friendly way one man speaks to another man of lower rank. Alternate translation: "young man"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)

ULT

²⁹ When he lifted up his eyes he saw Benjamin his brother, his mother's son, and he said, "Is this your youngest brother of whom you spoke to me?" Then he said, "May God be gracious to you, my son."

Genesis 43:30

hurried to go out of the room

“hurried out of the room”

for he was deeply moved about his brother

The phrase “deeply moved” refers to having a strong feeling or emotion when something important happens. Alternate translation:

“for he had strong feelings of compassion for his brother” or “for he had strong feelings of affection for his brother” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

³⁰ Joseph hurried to go out of the room, for he was deeply moved about his brother. He sought somewhere to weep. He went to his room and wept there.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Genesis 43:31

saying

It can be made explicit to whom Joseph is speaking. Alternate translation: "and said to his servants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Serve the food

This means to distribute the food so that people may eat.

Translation Words - ULT

- clean, wash
- bread
- face, facial

ULT

³¹ He washed his face and came out. He controlled himself, saying, "Serve the food."

Genesis 43:32

The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves

This means that Joseph, the brothers, and the other Egyptians are eating in three different places within the same room. Alternate translation: "The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves and the Egyptians, who were eating with him, by themselves"

ULT

³² The servants served Joseph by himself and the brothers by themselves. The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians.

The Egyptians there ate with him by themselves

These are probably other Egyptian officials who ate with Joseph, but they still sat separately from him and the Hebrew brothers.

because the Egyptians could not eat bread with the Hebrews, for that is detestable to the Egyptians

This can be translated as a new sentence: "They did this because the Egyptians thought it was shameful to eat with the Hebrews"

could not eat bread

Here "bread" stands for food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [Hebrew](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)

Genesis 43:33

The brothers sat before him

It is implied that Joseph had arranged where each brother would sit. You can make clear the implied information. Alternate translation: “The brothers sat across from the man, according to how he arranged their places” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth

The “firstborn” and the “youngest” are used together to mean all the brothers were sitting in order according to their age. (See: [Merism](#))

The men were astonished together

“The men were very surprised when they realized this”

Translation Words - ULT

- [birthright](#)
- [amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded](#)
- [companion, fellow worker, friend](#)
- [firstborn](#)

ULT

33 The brothers sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth. The men were astonished together.

Genesis 43:34

But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers

The phrase "five times" can be stated more generally. Alternate translation: "But Benjamin received a portion that was much bigger than what his brothers received"

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- drunk, drunkard

ULT

³⁴ Joseph sent portions to them from the food in front of him. But Benjamin's portion was five times as much as any of his brothers. They drank and were merry with him.

Genesis 44

Genesis 44 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Judah's sacrifice

Judah is willing to sacrifice himself in order to save Benjamin, the favored son of Jacob. Judah's descendants will become the leaders of the Israelites and the godliest of the twelve tribes of Israel. (See: [favor](#), [favorable](#), [favoritism](#) and [godly](#), [godliness](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Joseph's test

Joseph tests his brothers to see if they are good. They treat their brother Benjamin better than they treated Joseph and tried to protect him. (See: [test](#), [tested](#), [testing](#), [testing in the fire](#))

Genesis 44:1

General Information:

This begins a new event in the story. Most likely this is the next morning after the feast.

steward of his house

The “steward” was responsible for managing Joseph’s household activities.

every man’s money

Their money was silver coins most likely in a small bag.

in his sack’s opening

“in his sack”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [house, household](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹ Joseph commanded the steward of his house, saying, “Fill the men’s sacks with food, as much as they can carry, and put every man’s money in his sack’s opening.”

Genesis 44:2

Put my cup, the silver cup

“Put my silver cup”

in the sack’s opening of the youngest

The word “brother” is understood. Alternate translation: “in the youngest brother’s sack” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- grain, grainfields
- silver
- silver

ULT

² Put my cup, the silver cup, in the sack’s opening of the youngest, and also his money for the grain.” The steward did as Joseph had said.

Genesis 44:3

The morning dawned

“The morning light shown”

the men were sent away, they and their donkeys

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they sent the men away, along with their donkeys” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- donkey, mule
- send, sent, send out

ULT

³ The morning dawned, and the men were sent away, they and their donkeys.

Genesis 44:4

Why have you returned evil for good?

This question is used to scold the brothers. Alternate translation: "You have treated us badly, after we were good to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Joseph (OT)
- house, household
- overtake
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

ULT

⁴ When they were out of the city but were not yet far off, Joseph said to his steward, "Get up, follow after the men, and when you overtake them, say to them, 'Why have you returned evil for good?'"

Genesis 44:5

Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination?

This question is used to scold the brothers. Alternate translation: "You already know that this is the cup that my master uses for drinking and for fortune telling!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁵ Is this not the cup from which my master drinks, and the cup that he uses for divination? You have done evil, this thing that you have done."

You have done evil, this thing that you have done

This repeats "you have done" for emphasis. Alternate translation: "What you have done is very evil" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Genesis 44:6

spoke these words to them

“spoke what Joseph told him to say”

Translation Words - ULT

- [overtake](#)

ULT

⁶ The steward overtook them and spoke these words to them.

Genesis 44:7

Why does my master speak such words as these?

Here “words” stands for what was said. The brothers refer to the steward as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “Why are you saying this, my master?” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

ULT

⁷ They said to him, “Why does my master speak such words as these? Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.”

Far be it from your servants that they would do such a thing.

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants” and “they.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “We would never do such a thing!” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Far be it from your servants

Something that a person would never do is spoken of as if it were an object that person wants to put very far from himself. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 44:8

Look, the money

“Listen to what we are about to say and you will see that we are speaking the truth: the money”

the money that we found in our sacks’ openings

“you know the money that we found in our sacks”

we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan

“we brought back to you from Canaan”

How then could we steal out of your master’s house silver or gold?

The brothers use a question to emphasize that they would not steal from the lord of Egypt. Alternate translation: “So we would never take anything from your master’s house!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

silver or gold

These words are used together to mean that they would not steal anything of any value.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Canaan, Canaanite
- earth, land
- gold, golden
- house, household
- return, turn back
- silver
- silver

ULT

⁸ Look, the money that we found in our sacks’ openings, we brought again to you out of the land of Canaan. How then could we steal out of your master’s house silver or gold?

Genesis 44:9

With whomever of your servants it is found

The brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the first person. Also, “it is found” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If you find that one of us has stolen the cup” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁹ With whomever of your servants it is found, let him die, and we also will be my master’s slaves.”

we also will be my master’s slaves

The phrase “my master” refers to the steward. This can be stated in the second person. Alternate translation: “you may take us as your slaves” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- die, dead, deadly, death
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 44:10

Now also let it be according to your words

“Very well. I will do what you said.” Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

He with whom the cup is found will be my slave

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If I find the cup in one of your sacks, that person will be my slave” (See: [Active](#) or [Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

10 The steward said, “Now also let it be according to your words. He with whom the cup is found will be my slave, and you others will be innocent.”

Genesis 44:11

brought his sack down

“lowered his sack”

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, land

ULT

11 Then each man hurried and brought his sack down to the ground, and each man opened his sack.

Genesis 44:12

the oldest...the youngest

The word “brother” is understood. Alternate translation: “the oldest brother...the youngest brother” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin’s sack

This can be translated as a new sentence and in active form. Alternate translation: “youngest. The steward found the cup in Benjamin’s sack” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

12 The steward searched. He began with the oldest and finished with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin’s sack.

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- seek, search, look for

Genesis 44:13

Then they tore their clothes

The word “they” refers to the brothers. Tearing clothes was a sign of great distress and sorrow. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

donkey and returned

“donkey, and they returned”

Translation Words - ULT

- [clothe](#), [clothed](#), [clothes](#), [clothing](#), [unclothed](#), [garments](#)
- [donkey](#), [mule](#)
- [return](#), [turn back](#)

ULT

13 Then they tore their clothes. Each man loaded his donkey and returned to the city.

Genesis 44:14

He was still there

“Joseph was still there”

they bowed before him

“they fell before him.” This is a sign of the brothers wanting the lord to be merciful to them. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

14 Judah and his brothers came to Joseph’s house. He was still there, and they bowed before him to the ground.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Judah
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- earth, land
- house, household

Genesis 44:15

Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?

Joseph uses a question to scold his brothers. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that a man like me can learn things by magic!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹⁵ Joseph said to them, "What is this that you have done? Do you not know that a man like me practices divination?"

Genesis 44:16

What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves?

All 3 questions mean basically the same thing. They use these questions to emphasize that there is nothing they can say to explain what happened. Alternate translation: "We have nothing to say, my master. We cannot speak anything of value. We cannot justify ourselves." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

What can we say to my master...my master's slaves

Here "my master" refers to Joseph. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "What can we say to you...your slaves" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

God has found out the iniquity of your servants

Here "found out" does not mean God just found out what the brothers did. It means God is now punishing them for what they did. Alternate translation: "God is punishing us for our past sins"

the iniquity of your servants

The brothers refer to themselves as "your servants." This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "our iniquity" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he also in whose hand the cup was found

Here "hand" stands for the whole person. Also, "was found" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the one who had your cup" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- iniquity
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir (2)
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- Judah
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

¹⁶ Judah said, "What can we say to my master? What can we speak? Or how can we justify ourselves? God has found out the iniquity of your servants. Look, we are my master's slaves, both we and he also in whose hand the cup was found."

Genesis 44:17

Far be it from me that I should do so

Something that a person would never do is spoken of as if it were an object the person wants put far away from him. Alternate translation: "It is not like me to do something like that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

The man in whose hand the cup was found

Here "hand" stands for the whole person. Also, "was found" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The man who had my cup" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

17 Joseph said, "Far be it from me that I should do so. The man in whose hand the cup was found, that person will be my slave, but as for you others, go up in peace to your father."

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 44:18

came near to

“approached”

let your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “let me, your servant” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

speak a word in my master’s ears

The word “ear” is a synecdoche that stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “speak to you, my master” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in my master’s ears

Here “my master” refers to Joseph. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “to you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

do not let your anger burn against your servant

Being angry is spoke of as if it were a burning fire. Alternate translation: “please do not be angry with me, your servant” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for you are just like Pharaoh

Judah compares the master to Pharaoh to emphasize the great power that the master has. He is also implying that he does want the master to become angry and execute him. Alternate translation: “for you are as powerful as Pharaoh and could have your soldiers kill me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Judah
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

18 Then Judah came near to him and said, “My master, please let your servant speak a word in my master’s ears, and do not let your anger burn against your servant, for you are just like Pharaoh.”

Genesis 44:19

My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "My master asked us if we have a father or a brother." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

¹⁹ My master asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'

My master asked his servants

Judah refers to Joseph with the words "my master" and "his." He also refers to himself and his brothers as "his servants." Alternate translation: "You, my master, asked us, your servants" or "You asked us" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 44:20

General Information:

Judah continues to speak before Joseph

We said to my master, 'We have a father...his father loves him.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And we said to my master that we have a father...his father loves him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

his father loves him

This refers to love for a friend or family member.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- children, child, offspring
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- love, beloved
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

20 We said to my master, 'We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a little one. But his brother is dead, and he alone is left of his mother, and his father loves him.'

Genesis 44:21

Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And you said to your servants that we should bring our youngest brother to you so that you may see him" (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

²¹ Then you said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me that I may see him.'

Then you said to your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as "your servants." Alternate translation: "Then you said to us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Bring him down to me

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: "Bring him to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 44:22

we said to my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “we said to you, my master” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

After that, we said to my master, ‘The boy cannot...father would die.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “In response, we said to my master that the boy cannot...father would die” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

his father would die

It is implied that their father would die from sorrow. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²² After that, we said to my master, ‘The boy cannot leave his father. For if he should leave his father his father would die.’

Genesis 44:23

General Information:

Judah continues his story to Joseph

Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'

ULT

²³ Then you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then you said to your servants that unless our youngest brother comes with us, we would not see you again." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Then you said to your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as "your servants." This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: "Then you said to us, your servants" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

comes down

It was common to use the word "down" when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

you will not see my face again

Here "face" stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: "you will not see me again" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 44:24

Then it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

ULT

²⁴ Then it came about when we went up to your servant my father, we told him the words of my master.

we went up to your servant my father

It was common to use the phrase “went up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

we told him the words of my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” Alternate translation: “we told him what you said, my master” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 44:25

Our father said, 'Go again, buy us some food.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Our father told us to go again to Egypt to buy food for us and our families." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

²⁵ Our father said, 'Go again, buy us some food.'

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

Genesis 44:26

go down

It was common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

Then we said, ‘We cannot go down. If our youngest brother...is with us.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Then we said to him that we cannot go down to Egypt. We told him that if our youngest brother is with us...is with us” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

to see the man’s face

Here “face” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “to see the man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- face, facial

ULT

26 Then we said, ‘We cannot go down. If our youngest brother is with us, then will we go down, for we will not be able to see the man’s face unless our youngest brother is with us.’

Genesis 44:27

General Information:

Judah continues his story to Joseph.

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a three-level quote.

said to us

Here “us” does not include Joseph. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’](#))

You know

Here “You” is plural and refers to the brothers. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bear, bearer, carry
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²⁷ Your servant my father said to us,
'You know that my wife bore me two
sons.'

Genesis 44:28

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quote that began in verse 27 continues.

he is torn in pieces

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a wild animal has torn him to pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁸ One of them went out from me and I said, “Surely he is torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since.”

Genesis 44:29

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quote that began in verse 27 ends here.

Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

ULT

²⁹ Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.'

The three-level quote that began with the words “Your servant...said to us, ‘You know...two sons” in verse 27 and continued with the words “and I said, ‘Surely...since” in verse 28 ends here. You may need to change one or more of these levels to indirect quotes. “This is what your servant my father said to us: ‘You know that my wife bore me two sons. One of them went out from me and I said that surely he had been torn in pieces, and I have not seen him since. Now if you also take this one from me, and harm comes to him, you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.’” or “Your servant my father told us that we knew that his wife had borne him two sons. One of them went out from him, and he said that surely that son had been torn in pieces, and he has not seen him since. He then said that if we also took this one from him, and harm came to him, we would bring down his gray hair with sorrow to Sheol.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

harm comes to him

Something bad happening to a person is spoken of as if “harm” were something that travels and comes to a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

you will bring down my gray hair with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed Sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “then you will cause me, an old man, to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

my gray hair

This stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “me, an old man” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Genesis 44:30

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

therefore, when I come

Judah begins to describe to Joseph a realistic but hypothetical case of what he will expect will happen to Jacob when he returns without Benjamin. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

when I come to your servant

Here “come” can be translated as “go” or “return.”

the lad is not with us

“the boy is not with us”

since his life is bound up in the boy’s life

The father saying he would die if his son died is spoken of as if their two lives were physically bound together. Alternate translation: “since he said he would die if the boy did not come back” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³⁰ Now, therefore, when I come to your servant my father, and the lad is not with us, since his life is bound up in the boy’s life,

Genesis 44:31

Connecting Statement:

Judah finishes describing to Joseph the realistic but hypothetical case that began with the words “therefore, when I come” in verse 30.

sorrow to Sheol

Judah finishes describing to Joseph the realistic but hypothetical case that began with the words “therefore, when I come” in verse 30. This is what he expects will happen to Jacob when he returns without Benjamin. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

it will come about

Judah is speaking about a hypothetical case in the future as if it would certainly happen. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol

To “bring down...to Sheol” is way of saying they will cause him to die and go to Sheol. He uses the word “down” because it was commonly believed Sheol is somewhere underground. Alternate translation: “And we will have caused our old father to die of sorrow” (See: [Idiom](#))

Your servants

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “And we, your servants” or “And we” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

the gray hair of your servant our father

Here “gray hair” stands for Jacob and emphasizes his old age. Alternate translation: “our old father” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

³¹ it will come about, when he sees the boy is not with us, he will die. Your servants will bring down the gray hair of your servant our father with sorrow to Sheol.

Genesis 44:32

For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father

The abstract noun “guarantee” can be stated with the verb “promised.” Alternate translation: “For I promised my father concerning the boy” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

³² For your servant became a guarantee for the boy to my father and said, ‘If I do not bring him to you, then I will bear the guilt to my father forever.’

For your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” Alternate translation: “For I, your servant” or “For I” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

then I will bear the guilt to my father

Being considered guilty is spoken of as if “guilt” were something that a person carries. Alternate translation: “then my father may blame me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [day](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [pledge, pledged](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 44:33

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your servant

Judah refers to himself as “your servant.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: “let me, your servant” or “let me” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

to my master

Judah refers to Joseph as “my master.” Alternate translation: “to you, my master” or “to you” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

let the boy go up

It was going to use the phrase “go up” when speaking about traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [lord, Lord, master, sir](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

ULT

33 Now therefore, please let your servant stay instead of the boy as slave to my master, and let the boy go up with his brothers.

Genesis 44:34

For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me?

Judah uses a question to emphasize the grief he would have if Benjamin did not return home. Alternate translation: "I cannot return to my father if the boy is not with me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁴ For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me? I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father."

I am afraid to see the evil that would come on my father

A person suffering terribly is spoken of as if "evil" were a thing that comes upon a person. Alternate translation: "I am afraid to see how much my father would suffer" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Genesis 45

Genesis 45 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Joseph finally reveals himself to his brothers in this chapter. This chapter forms the conclusion of the story which began in chapter 43.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

The account of Joseph focuses on the power of God. God is able to protect his people despite the evil actions of some. He also is able to continue to bless them despite their circumstances. (See: [people of God](#) and [bless, blessed, blessing](#))

Joseph's character

Genesis just recorded a period of time where Joseph's ancestors and brothers struggled with sin. Joseph's character in this chapter is upright. It gained him great favor in the eyes of Pharaoh and helped to save his people. (See: [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning save, saved, safe, salvation](#))

Genesis 45:1

could not control himself

This means he could not control his emotions. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “was about to start crying”

by him

“near him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- call, call out
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹ Then Joseph could not control himself before all the servants who stood by him. He said loudly, “Everyone must leave me.” So no servant stood by him when Joseph made himself known to his brothers.

Genesis 45:2

house of Pharaoh

Here “house” stands for the people in the Pharaoh’s palace.
Alternate translation: “everyone in Pharaoh’s palace” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

² He wept loudly, the Egyptians heard it,
and the house of Pharaoh heard of it.

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- house, household
- voice

Genesis 45:3

shocked in his presence

“terrified of him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother (2)
- life, live, living, alive
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

ULT

³ Joseph said to his brothers, “I am Joseph. Is my father still alive?” His brothers could not answer him, for they were shocked in his presence.

Genesis 45:4

whom you sold into Egypt

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation: "whom you sold as a slave to the trader who brought me to Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁴ Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Come near to me, please." They came near. He said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt."

Genesis 45:5

Do not be grieved

“do not be upset” or “do not be distressed”

that you sold me here

The meaning can be stated more explicitly. Alternate translation:

“that you sold me as a slave and sent me here to Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to preserve life

Here “life” stands for the people that Joseph saved from dying during the famine. Alternate translation: “so I could save many lives” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

⁵ Do not be grieved or angry with yourselves that you sold me here, for God sent me ahead of you to preserve life.

Genesis 45:6

there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest

“there will be five more years without planting or harvesting.” Here “neither plowing nor harvest” stands for the fact that the crops still will not grow because of the famine. Alternate translation: “and the famine will last five more years” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- year
- year
- earth, land
- famine
- harvest, reap
- plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

ULT

⁶ For these two years the famine has been in the land, and there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest.

Genesis 45:7

to preserve you as a remnant in the earth

“so that you and your families would not completely perish from the earth” or “to make sure your descendants would survive”

to keep you alive by a great deliverance

The abstract noun “deliverance” can be stated as “rescuing.” Alternate translation: “to keep you alive by rescuing you in a mighty way” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

⁷ God sent me ahead of you to preserve you as a remnant in the earth, and to keep you alive by a great deliverance.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- life, live, living, alive
- remnant
- deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue
- earth, land
- send, sent, send out

Genesis 45:8

he has made me a father to Pharaoh

Joseph advising and helping Pharaoh is spoken of as if Joseph were Pharaoh's father. Alternate translation: "he has made me a guide to Pharaoh" or "he has made me the chief adviser to Pharaoh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ So now it was not you who sent me here but God, and he has made me a father to Pharaoh, master of all his house, and ruler of all the land of Egypt.

of all his house

Here "house" stands for the people who live in his palace. Alternate translation: "of all his household" or "of all his palace" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ruler of all the land of Egypt

Here "land" stands for the people. Alternate translation: "ruler over all the people of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ruler

Here Joseph means that he is ruler in second place to Pharaoh, the king of Egypt. This understood information can be made clear. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- send, sent, send out

Genesis 45:9

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a three-level quotation.

go up to my father

It was common to use the phrase “go up” when speaking about going from Egypt to Canaan. Alternate translation: “go back to my father”

Come down to me

It was common to use the phrase “come down” when speaking about going from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: “Come here to me”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁹ Hurry and go up to my father and say to him, ‘This is what your son Joseph says, “God has made me master of all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.’

Genesis 45:10

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began in verse 9 continues here.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Goshen
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- earth, land
- flock, herd

ULT

10 You will live in the land of Goshen, and you will be near me, you and your children and your children's children, and your flocks and your herds, and all that you have.

Genesis 45:11

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began in verse 9 ends here.

I will provide...all that you have

The three-level quotation that began with the words “say to him” in verse 9 ends here. You may need to reduce the number of levels by making some levels indirect quotes. “say to him that his son Joseph says that God has made him master of all Egypt, so he must go down to Joseph and not delay. He will live in the land of Goshen, and he will be near Joseph, he and his children and his children’s children, and his flocks and his herds, and all that he has. Joseph will provide for him there, for there are still five years of famine, so that he does not come to poverty, him, his household, and all that he has.” or “say to him, ‘Your son Joseph says that God has made him master of all Egypt, so he must go down to Joseph and not delay. He will live in the land of Goshen, and he will be near Joseph, he and his children and his children’s children, and his flocks and his herds, and all that he has. Joseph will provide for him there, for there are still five years of famine, so that he does not come to poverty, him, his household, and all that he has.’”

ULT

11 I will provide for you there, for there are still five years of famine, so that you do not come to poverty, you, your household, and all that you have.”

come to poverty

This speaks about “poverty” as if it were a destination. Alternate translation: “waste away” or “starve” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- year
- famine
- house, household

Genesis 45:12

your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin

The word “eyes” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “All of you and Benjamin can see” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that it is my mouth that speaks to you

The word “mouth” stands for the entire person. Alternate translation: “that I, Joseph, am speaking to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjaminite](#)

ULT

¹² Look, your eyes see, and the eyes of my brother Benjamin, that it is my mouth that speaks to you.

Genesis 45:13

about all my honor in Egypt

“how the people in Egypt greatly honor me”

my father down here

It was common to use the word “down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt. Alternate translation: “my father here to me”

Translation Words - ULT

- honor
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

13 You will tell my father about all my honor in Egypt and of all that you have seen. You will hurry and bring my father down here.”

Genesis 45:14

He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck

"Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin, and they both wept"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Benjamin, Benjaminite

ULT

¹⁴ He hugged his brother Benjamin's neck and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck.

Genesis 45:15

He kissed all his brothers

In ancient Near East, it is common to greet a relative with a kiss. If your language has an affectionate greeting for a relative, use that. If not, use what is appropriate.

wept over them

This means Joseph was crying while he kissed them.

After that his brothers talked with him

Earlier they were too afraid to speak. Now they feel they can speak freely. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "After that his brothers talked freely with him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [brother](#) (2)
- [kiss](#)

ULT

15 He kissed all his brothers and wept over them. After that his brothers talked with him.

Genesis 45:16

The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come."

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. It may also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone in Pharaoh's palace heard that Joseph's brothers had come." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Pharaoh's house

This stands for Pharaoh's palace.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- house, household
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- voice

ULT

¹⁶ The news of the matter was told in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come." It pleased Pharaoh and his servants very much.

Genesis 45:17

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- beast
- earth, land

ULT

17 Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and go to the land of Canaan.

Genesis 45:18

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 17 ends here.

Get your father...fat of the land.'

The two-level quotation that began in verse 17 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "Pharaoh told Joseph to tell his brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals and go to the land of Canaan. Get your father and your households and come to me. I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'" or "Pharaoh to Joseph to tell his brothers to do this: to load their animals and go to the land of Canaan, and also to get their father and their households and go to him. Pharaoh would give them the good of the land of Egypt, and they would eat the fat of the land." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

18 Get your father and your households and come to me. I will give you the good of the land of Egypt, and you will eat the fat of the land.'

I will give you the good of the land of Egypt

"I will give you the best land in Egypt"

you will eat the fat of the land

The best food that a land produces is spoken of as if it were the fat portion of the land. Alternate translation: "you will eat the best food in the land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, land
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household

Genesis 45:19

General Information:

Pharaoh continues to tell Joseph what to tell his brothers.

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

you are commanded

This can be stated in active form. You may also need to add the words “to tell them,” which the writer left out of this ellipsis. Alternate translation: “I also command you to tell them” or “also tell them” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

take carts out

“Carts” are wagons with two or four wheels. Animals pull the carts.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

19 Now you are commanded, ‘Do this, take carts out of the land of Egypt for your children and for your wives. Get your father and come.’

Genesis 45:20

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quote that began in verse 19 ends here.

**Do not be concerned about your possessions,
for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours.'**

The two-level quote that began in verse 19 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. "Now you are commanded to tell them to take carts out of the land of Egypt for their children and for their wives, to get their father, and to come. They are not to be concerned about their possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt will be theirs." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

²⁰ Do not be concerned about your possessions, for the good of all the land of Egypt is yours.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- earth, land

Genesis 45:21

gave them provisions for the journey

“gave them what they needed for traveling”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

ULT

²¹ The sons of Israel did so. Joseph gave them carts, according to the command of Pharaoh, and gave them provisions for the journey.

Genesis 45:22

he gave each man changes of clothing

Each man received a set of clothes except for Benjamin who received 5 sets of clothes. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

three hundred pieces

“300 pieces” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- silver

ULT

22 To all of them he gave each man changes of clothing, but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five changes of clothing.

Genesis 45:23

ten donkeys...and ten female donkeys

The donkeys were included as part of the gift. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- bread
- donkey, mule
- donkey, mule
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- grain, grainfields
- send, sent, send out

ULT

²³ For his father he sent this: ten donkeys loaded with the good things of Egypt; and ten female donkeys loaded with grain, bread, and other supplies for his father for the journey.

Genesis 45:24

do not quarrel

Possible meanings include (1) "do not argue" and (2) "do not become afraid"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- send, sent, send out
- tremble, stagger, shake

ULT

²⁴ So he sent his brothers away and they left. He said to them, "See that you do not quarrel on the journey."

Genesis 45:25

went up out of Egypt

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

²⁵ They went up out of Egypt and came to the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father.

Genesis 45:26

he is ruler over all the land of Egypt

Here “land of Egypt” stands for the people of Egypt. Alternate translation: “he rules all the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

His heart was astonished

Here “heart” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “and he was astonished” or “he was very surprised” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he could not believe what they told him

“he did not accept that what they said was true”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [report, reported, tell, reputation](#)
- [rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader](#)

ULT

26 They told him saying “Joseph is still alive, and he is ruler over all the land of Egypt.” His heart was astonished, for he could not believe what they told him.

Genesis 45:27**They told him**

“They told Jacob”

all the words of Joseph that he had said to them

“everything that Joseph had said to them”

the spirit of Jacob their father revived

The word “spirit” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “Jacob their father recovered” or “Jacob their father became very excited” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, wind, breath](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

²⁷ They told him all the words of Joseph that he had said to them. When Jacob saw the carts that Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived.

Genesis 45:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death

ULT

²⁸ Israel said, "It is enough. Joseph my son is still alive. I will go and see him before I die."

Genesis 46

Genesis 46 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Going to Egypt

Yahweh allowed Israel to go to Egypt. He was to trust in Yahweh and his covenant faithfulness. God continued to bless them in Egypt. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [covenant love](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#))

Shepherds

Because of the regular flooding of the Nile River, Egypt's economy revolved around farming more than raising animals. Therefore, the Egyptians despised the nomadic lifestyle of shepherds. Joseph's instructions permitted the Hebrew people to live separately from the Egyptians.

Genesis 46:1

went to Beersheba

“came to Beersheba”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

¹ Israel made his journey with all that he had and went to Beersheba. There he offered sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac.

Genesis 46:2

Here I am

“Yes, I am listening”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- vision, envision

ULT

² God spoke to Israel in a vision at night, saying, “Jacob, Jacob.” He said, “Here I am.”

Genesis 46:3

to go down to Egypt

It was common to use the phrase “go down” when speaking of traveling from Canaan to Egypt.

I will make you a great nation

The “you” is singular and refers to Jacob. Here Jacob refers to his descendants that will become a large nation. Alternate translation: “I will give you many descendants, and they will become a great nation” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ He said, “I am God, the God of your father. Do not fear to go down to Egypt, for there I will make you a great nation.”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- God
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation

Genesis 46:4

into Egypt

“to Egypt”

I will surely bring you up again

The promise was made to Jacob, but the promise would be fulfilled to all of Israel's descendants. Alternate translation: “I will surely bring your descendants out of Egypt again” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

bring you up again

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking about traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand

The phrase “close you eyes with his own hand” is a way of saying that Joseph will be present when Israel dies and it will be Joseph who will close Jacob's eyelids at the time of his death. Alternate translation: “Joseph will even be present with you at the time of your death” (See: [Idiom](#))

will close your eyes

It was a custom to pull down the eyelids when a person died with their eyes open. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [hand](#)

ULT

⁴ I will go down with you into Egypt, and I will surely bring you up again and Joseph will close your eyes with his own hand.”

Genesis 46:5**rose up from**

“set out from”

in the carts

“Carts” are wagons with two or four wheels. Animals pull the carts. See how you translated “carts” in [Genesis 45:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- son
- Beersheba
- Beersheba
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- send, sent, send out

ULT

⁵ Jacob rose up from Beersheba. The sons of Israel transported Jacob their father, their children, and their wives, in the carts that Pharaoh had sent to carry him.

Genesis 46:6

they had accumulated

“they had acquired” or “they had gained”

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- earth, land
- livestock, animals
- seed, semen

ULT

⁶ They took their livestock and their possessions that they had accumulated in the land of Canaan. They came into Egypt, Jacob and all his descendants with him.

Genesis 46:7

He brought with him

“Jacob brought with him”

his sons' sons

“his grandsons”

his sons' daughters

“his granddaughters”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- seed, semen

ULT

⁷ He brought with him to Egypt his sons and his sons' sons, his daughters and his sons' daughters, and all his descendants.

Genesis 46:8

These were the names

This refers to the names of the people that the author is about to list.

of the children of Israel

“of Israel’s family members”

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- son
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Reuben
- firstborn

ULT

⁸ These were the names of the children of Israel who came to Egypt: Jacob and his sons, Reuben, Jacob’s firstborn;

Genesis 46:9

Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Enoch](#)
- [Reuben](#)

ULT

⁹ the sons of Reuben, Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi;

Genesis 46:10

Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Saul (OT)
- Simeon

ULT

10 the sons of Simeon, Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman;

Genesis 46:11

Gershon, Kohath, and Merari

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Levi, Levite

ULT

11 and the sons of Levi, Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

Genesis 46:12

Er, Onan, Shelah

These were the sons of Judah by his wife, Shua. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 38:3-5](#).

Perez, and Zerah

These were the sons of Judah by his daughter-in-law, Tamar. See how you translated these names in [Genesis 38:29-30](#).

Hezron...Hamul

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Judah
- die, dead, deadly, death
- earth, land

ULT

¹² The sons of Judah were Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah, (but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan). The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

Genesis 46:13

Tola, Puah, Lob...Shimron

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

¹³ The sons of Issachar were Tola, Puah, Lob, and Shimron;

Genesis 46:14

Sered, Elon...Jahleel

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Zebulun](#)

ULT

14 The sons of Zebulun were Sered,
Elon, and Jahleel

Genesis 46:15

Dinah

This is the name of Leah's daughter. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 30:21](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three

Here "sons" and "daughters" refer to Jacob's sons, daughters, and grandchildren related to Leah. Alternate translation: "Altogether he had 33 sons, daughters, and grandchildren" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Leah
- Paddan Aram
- Paddan Aram
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

15 These were the sons of Leah whom she bore to Jacob in Paddan Aram, along with his daughter Dinah. His sons and his daughters numbered thirty-three.

Genesis 46:16

Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi...Areli

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Gad

ULT

16 The sons of Gad were Zephon, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.

Genesis 46:17

Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi...Beriah...Heber...Malkiel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Serah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son \(2\)](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [sister](#)

ULT

17 The sons of Asher were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah; and Serah was their sister. The sons of Beriah were Heber and Malkiel

Genesis 46:18

Zilpah

This is the name of Leah's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These sons she bore to Jacob—sixteen in all

This refers to 16 children, grandchildren, and great-grandchildren that were related to Zilpah. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Laban](#)
- [Leah](#)
- [Zilpah](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)

ULT

18 These were the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban had given to Leah his daughter. These sons she bore to Jacob—sixteen in all.

Genesis 46:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Rachel

ULT

¹⁹ The sons of Jacob's wife Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin.

Genesis 46:20

Asenath

a woman's name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Potiphera

a man's name. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

priest of On

On is a city, also called Heliopolis, which was "the City of the Sun" and the center of worship of the sun god Ra. See how you translated this in [Genesis 41:45](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [bear, bearer, carry](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

20 In Egypt Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph by Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera priest of On.

Genesis 46:21

Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- Naaman

ULT

²¹ The sons of Benjamin were Bela, Beker, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.

Genesis 46:22

fourteen in all

This refers to the 14 sons and grandsons related to Rachel. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Rachel
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

²² These were the sons of Rachel who were born to Jacob—fourteen in all.

Genesis 46:23

Hushim

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Dan

ULT

²³ The son of Dan was Hushim.

Genesis 46:24

Jahziel, Guni, Jezer...Shillem

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Naphtali

ULT

²⁴ The sons of Naphtali were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem.

Genesis 46:25

Bilhah

This is the name of Rachel's female servant. See how you translated this name in [Genesis 29:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

seven in all

This refers to the 7 children and grandchildren related to Bilhah. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Bilhah
- Jacob, Israel
- Laban
- Rachel
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

²⁵ These were the sons born to Jacob by Bilhah, whom Laban gave to Rachel his daughter—seven in all.

Genesis 46:26

sixty-six

“66” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- loins, waist

ULT

²⁶ All those who went to Egypt with Jacob, who were his descendants, not counting Jacob's sons' wives, were sixty-six in all.

Genesis 46:27

seventy

“70” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- bear, bearer, carry
- house, household

ULT

²⁷ With the two sons of Joseph who were born to him in Egypt, the members of his family who went to Egypt were seventy in all.

Genesis 46:28

to show the way before him to Goshen

“to show them the way to Goshen”

Translation Words - ULT

- Goshen
- Goshen
- Joseph (OT)
- Judah
- earth, land
- send, sent, send out

ULT

²⁸ Jacob sent Judah ahead of him to Joseph to show the way before him to Goshen, and they came to the land of Goshen.

Genesis 46:29

Joseph prepared his chariot and went up

Here “Joseph” stands for his servants. Alternate translation: “Joseph’s servants prepared his chariot and Joseph went up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

went up to meet Israel

The phrase “went up” is used because Joseph is traveling to a higher elevation to meet his father. Alternate translation: “went to meet Israel”

hugged his neck, and wept on his neck a long time

“put his arms around his father, and wept for a long time”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Goshen](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁹ Joseph prepared his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen. He saw him, hugged his neck, and wept on his neck a long time.

Genesis 46:30

Now let me die

“Now I am ready to die” or “Now I will die happy”

since I have seen your face, that you are still alive

Here “face” stands for the entire person. Jacob was expressing joy at seeing Joseph. Alternate translation: “since I have seen you alive again” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

³⁰ Israel said to Joseph, “Now let me die, since I have seen your face, that you are still alive.”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death
- face, facial

Genesis 46:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

his father's house

Here "house" stands for his family. Alternate translation: "his father's family" or "his father's household" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will go up and tell Pharaoh

It was common to use the phrase "go up" when referring to someone going to speak with someone with greater authority. Alternate translation: "I will go tell Pharaoh"

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- house, household
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

³¹ Joseph said to his brothers and to his father's house, "I will go up and tell Pharaoh, saying, 'My brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me.'

Genesis 46:32

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 31 ends here.

The men are shepherds...all that they have

The two-level quotation that began with the words "I will go up" in verse 31 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "I will go up and tell Pharaoh and say that my brothers and my father's house, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me. I will tell him that the men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock, and that they have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

³² The men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock. They have brought their flocks, their herds, and all that they have.'

Translation Words - ULT

- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- flock, herd
- flock, herd
- livestock, animals
- shepherd, herder, pastor

Genesis 46:33

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a two-level quotation.

It will come about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event that is about to happen in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

ULT

³³ It will come about, when Pharaoh calls you and asks, 'What is your occupation?'

Genesis 46:34

Connecting Statement:

The two-level quotation that began in verse 33 ends here.

you should say, ‘Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.’

The two-level quotation that began with the words “when Pharaoh... asks” in verse 33 ends here. This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. “when Pharaoh...asks what your occupation is, that you should say that you have been keepers of livestock from your youth until now, both you and your forefathers. Do this” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

³⁴ that you should say, ‘Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we, and our forefathers.’ Do this so that you may live in the land of Goshen, for every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians.”

Your servants

Joseph’s family are to refer to themselves as “your servants” when they speak to Pharaoh. This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “We, your servants” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians

The abstract noun “abomination” can be translated with the adjective “disgusting.” Alternate translation: “Egyptians think shepherds are disgusting” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Goshen](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [livestock, animals](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 47

Genesis 47 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Abrahamic covenant

Part of the Abrahamic covenant was that Yahweh would bless those who bless Abraham's descendants. Since Pharaoh cared for the Hebrew people, Yahweh blessed the Egyptians while the Hebrew people lived in Egypt. The Hebrew people also multiplied greatly as this covenant promised. (See: [covenant](#) and [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Jacob was not buried in Egypt

In the ancient Near east, a person was typically buried in their hometown. Since Egypt was not the Israelites' home, Jacob did not wish to be buried in Egypt. This was a lesson to the Israelites that Canaan was their true home, the promised land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

Genesis 47:1

Joseph went in and told Pharaoh

It is not clear whether Joseph went with his father and family from Canaan to Goshen and then alone from Goshen to see the Pharaoh, back to Goshen for his five brothers, and then back to Pharaoh, as the ULT implies, or whether he brought the five brothers with him the first time he went from Goshen to Pharaoh, as the UST states. (See: [Order of Events](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Goshen
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- earth, land
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

¹ Then Joseph went in and told Pharaoh, "My father and my brothers, their flocks, their herds, and all that they own, have arrived from the land of Canaan. See, they are in the land of Goshen."

Genesis 47:2

He took five of his brothers and introduced them

It is not clear whether Joseph went with his father and family from Canaan to Goshen and then alone from Goshen to see the Pharaoh, back to Goshen for his five brothers, and then back to Pharaoh, as the ULT implies, or whether he brought the five brothers with him the first time he went from Goshen to Pharaoh, as the UST states. (See: [Order of Events](#))

ULT

² He took five of his brothers and introduced them to Pharaoh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Genesis 47:3

Your servants are shepherds

“Your servants shepherd flocks”

Your servants

Joseph’s brothers refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with more authority. This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “We, your servants” or “We” (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

as our ancestors

“both we and our forefathers” or “both we and our ancestors”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)
- [shepherd, herder, pastor](#)

ULT

³ Pharaoh said to his brothers, “What is your occupation?” They said to Pharaoh, “Your servants are shepherds, as our ancestors.”

Genesis 47:4

We come as temporary residents in the land

“We have come to stay for a while in Egypt”

There is no pasture

“There is no grass to eat”

now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Goshen
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- famine
- flock, herd
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁴ Then they said to Pharaoh, “We come as temporary residents in the land. There is no pasture for your servants’ flocks, because the famine is severe in the land of Canaan. So now, please let your servants live in the land of Goshen.”

Genesis 47:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁵ Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, saying,
"Your father and your brothers have
come to you."

Genesis 47:6

The land of Egypt is before you

“The land of Egypt is open to you” or “All of the land of Egypt is available to you”

Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen

“Settle your father and your brothers in the land of Goshen, which is the best region”

If you know any capable men among them

It is implied that they are capable of taking care of animals. Alternate translation: “If you know of any men among them who have great skill taking care of animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- brother
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Goshen
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- livestock, animals
- rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

⁶ The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best region, the land of Goshen. If you know any capable men among them, put them in charge of my livestock.”

Genesis 47:7

Jacob blessed Pharaoh

Here “blessed” means to express a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

7 Then Joseph brought in Jacob his father and presented him to Pharaoh. Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

Genesis 47:8

How long have you lived?

“How old are you?”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Jacob, Israel
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- year

ULT

⁸ Pharaoh said to Jacob, “How long have you lived?”

Genesis 47:9

The years of my travels are a hundred and thirty

The phrase “years of my travels” refers to how long he has lived on the earth traveling from one place to another. Alternate translation: “I have traveled on the earth for 130 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

The years of my life have been few...not been as long as those of my ancestors

Jacob means his life is short compared to the lives of Abraham and Isaac.

painful

Jacob has experienced much pain and trouble during his life.

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Jacob, Israel
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- day (2)
- day (3)
- day
- year
- year
- year (2)
- year
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

⁹ Jacob said to Pharaoh, “The years of my travels are a hundred and thirty. The years of my life have been few and painful. They have not been as long as those of my ancestors.”

Genesis 47:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- Jacob, Israel
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt

ULT

¹⁰ Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and went out from his presence.

Genesis 47:11

Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers

“Then Joseph took care of his father and his brothers and helped them establish where they would live”

the land of Rameses

This is another name for the land of Goshen. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

11 Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers. He gave them a territory in the land of Egypt, the best of the land, in the land of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- command, commandment
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- earth, land
- earth, land (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Genesis 47:12

according to the number of their dependents

Here, the word “dependents” means the small children in the family. Alternate translation: “according to how many small children were in their families”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- children, child, offspring
- Joseph (OT)
- bread
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household

ULT

12 Joseph provided food for his father, his brothers, and all his father’s household, according to the number of their dependents.

Genesis 47:13

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan

This refers to the people living in these lands. Alternate translation: “The people of Egypt and the people of Canaan” (See: [Metonymy](#))

wasted away

“became thin and weak”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [bread](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [famine](#)
- [famine](#)

ULT

13 Now there was no food in all the land; for the famine was severe. The land of Egypt and the land of Canaan wasted away because of the famine.

Genesis 47:14

Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants

“The people of Egypt and Canaan spent all of their money buying grain from Joseph”

Joseph gathered...Joseph brought

Most likely Joseph ordered his servants to gather and bring the money. (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

¹⁴ Joseph gathered all the money that was in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan, by selling grain to the inhabitants. Then Joseph brought the money to Pharaoh’s palace.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- earth, land
- grain, grainfields
- house, household
- silver
- silver

Genesis 47:15

When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent

Here “lands” stands for the people who live in the lands. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When the people of Egypt and Canaan used up all their money” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁵ When all the money of the lands of Egypt and Canaan was spent, all the Egyptians came to Joseph saying, “Give us food! Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?”

of the lands of Egypt and Canaan

“from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan”

Why should we die in your presence because our money is gone?

The people used a question to emphasize how desperate they are to buy food. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Please, do not let us die because we have used up all of our money!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- bread
- die, dead, deadly, death
- earth, land
- earth, land
- silver
- silver

Genesis 47:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- livestock, animals
- livestock, animals
- silver

ULT

¹⁶ Joseph said, "If your money is gone, bring your livestock and I will give you food in exchange for your livestock."

Genesis 47:17

He fed them with bread

Here “bread” stands for food in general. Alternate translation: “He gave them food” or “He provided them with food” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- year
- bread
- bread
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- donkey, mule
- flock, herd
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- livestock, animals
- livestock, animals
- livestock, animals (2)
- livestock, animals

ULT

17 So they brought their livestock to Joseph. Joseph gave them food in exchange for the horses, for the flocks, for the herds, and for the donkeys. He fed them with bread in exchange for all their livestock that year.

Genesis 47:18

they came to him

“the people came to Joseph”

We will not hide from my master

The people refer to Joseph as “my master.” This is a formal way of speaking to someone with greater authority. It can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: “We will not hide from you, our master” or “We will not hide from you” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

There is nothing left in the sight of my master

Here “sight” stands for Joseph himself. Alternate translation: “We have nothing left to give you, our master” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- beast
- year
- year
- livestock, animals
- silver

ULT

18 When that year was ended, they came to him the next year and said to him, “We will not hide from my master that our money is all gone, and the herds of cattle are my master’s. There is nothing left in the sight of my master, except our bodies and our land.”

Genesis 47:19

Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land?

The word “eyes” refers to Joseph’s sight. The people use a question to emphasize how desperate they are to buy food. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Please do not just watch as we die and our land is ruined!” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why should we die...both we and our land

The land becomes useless and ruined because there is no seed to plant; thus it is spoken of as if the land would die. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- bread
- die, dead, deadly, death
- die, dead, deadly, death
- desolate, desolation, alone, deserted
- seed, semen
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

19 Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land in exchange for food, and we and our land will be servants to Pharaoh. Give us seed that we may live and not die, and that the land may not become desolate.”

Genesis 47:20

In this way, the land became Pharaoh's

"So the land became Pharaoh's"

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian (2)
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- earth, land
- famine

ULT

²⁰ So Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh. For every Egyptian sold his field, because the famine was very severe. In this way, the land became Pharaoh's.

Genesis 47:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- people, people group

ULT

²¹ As for the people, he made them slaves from one end of Egypt's border to the other end.

Genesis 47:22

It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy

“But he did not buy the land of the priests”

the priests were given an allowance

An “allowance” is an amount of money or food that someone regularly gives to another person. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: “Pharaoh gave the priests a certain amount of food each day” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them

“They ate from what Pharaoh gave them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

ULT

²² It was only the land of the priests that Joseph did not buy, because the priests were given an allowance. They ate from the allotment which Pharaoh gave them. Therefore they did not sell their land.

Genesis 47:23

and you will plant

“that you might sow”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- people, people group
- seed, semen
- plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

ULT

²³ Then Joseph said to the people, “See, I have bought you and your land today for Pharaoh. Now here is seed for you, and you will plant the land.”

Genesis 47:24

At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own

The word “fifth” is a fraction. Alternate translation: “At harvest time you will divide the crops into five parts. You will give one part back to Pharaoh for payment and the four parts are for your own” (See: [Fractions](#))

ULT

²⁴ At the harvest, you must give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts will be your own, for seed of the field and for food for your households and your children.”

for food for your households and your children

You can state clearly the understood information. Alternate translation: “for food for your households and for food for your children” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- house, household
- seed, semen

Genesis 47:25

May we find favor in your eyes

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “May you be pleased with us” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

²⁵ They said, “You have saved our lives. May we find favor in your eyes. We will be Pharaoh’s servants.”

Genesis 47:26

in the land of Egypt

“over the land of Egypt” or “throughout the land of Egypt”

to this day

This means to the time that the author was writing this.

one-fifth

See how you translated “a fifth” in [Genesis 47:24](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- statute

ULT

²⁶ So Joseph made it a statute which is in effect in the land of Egypt to this day, that one-fifth belongs to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests did not become Pharaoh's.

Genesis 47:27

They were fruitful and multiplied greatly

The word “multiplied” explains how they were “fruitful.” Alternate translation: “They had very many children” (See: [Doublet](#))

were fruitful

Here “fruitful” means to prosper or to have children. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Goshen](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)
- [multiply, multiplied, multiplication](#)
- [possess, possessed, possession, dispossess](#)

ULT

27 So Israel lived in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen. His people gained possessions there. They were fruitful and multiplied greatly.

Genesis 47:28

seventeen years

“17 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

so the years of Jacob’s life were one hundred forty-seven years

“so Jacob lived to be 147 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel (2)
- day
- year
- year
- year
- year
- earth, land

ULT

²⁸ Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, so the years of Jacob’s life were one hundred forty-seven years.

Genesis 47:29

When the time approached for Israel to die

This speaks about time as if it travels and comes to a place. Alternate translation: "When it was almost time for Israel to die" (See: [Metaphor](#))

If now I have found favor in your eyes

Here "eyes" is a metonym for sight, and "sight" stands for thoughts or opinions. Alternate translation: "If I have found favor with you" or "If I have pleased you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

found favor

This means that someone is approved of by someone else. (See: [Idiom](#))

put your hand under my thigh

This act is a sign of making a serious promise. See how you translated this in [Genesis 24:2](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

show me faithfulness and trustworthiness

The abstract nouns "faithfulness" and "trustworthiness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "treat me in a faithful and trustworthy manner" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Please do not bury me in Egypt

The word "please" adds emphasis to this request.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- son
- trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- day
- bury, buried, burial
- die, dead, deadly, death
- hand
- loins, waist

ULT

29 When the time approached for Israel to die, he called his son Joseph and said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, put your hand under my thigh, and show me faithfulness and trustworthiness. Please do not bury me in Egypt."

Genesis 47:30

When I sleep with my fathers

Here “sleep” is a polite way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: “When I die and join my family members who died before me” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- bury, buried, burial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

30 When I sleep with my fathers, you will carry me out of Egypt and bury me in my forefathers' burial place.” Joseph said, “I will do as you have said.”

Genesis 47:31

Swear to me

“Promise me” or “Make an oath to me”

swore to him

“promised him” or “made an oath to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jacob, Israel
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- head
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

³¹ Israel said, “Swear to me,” and Joseph swore to him. Then Israel bowed down at the head of his bed.

Genesis 48

Genesis 48 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 48:15-16, and in 58:20.

Special concepts in this chapter

Blessing

The blessing of Jacob is given to Joseph, and his sons Manasseh and Ephraim. It is probably distinct from inheriting the promises Yahweh gave to Abraham because Scripture talks about all of Israel's descendants inheriting those promises. (See: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#) and [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Genesis 48:1

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

one said to Joseph

“someone said to Joseph”

Look, your father

“Listen, your father.” Here the word “look” is used to get Joseph’s attention.

So he took

“So Joseph took”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

¹ It came about after these things, that one said to Joseph, “Look, your father is sick.” So he took with him his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim.

Genesis 48:2

When Jacob was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When someone told Jacob” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your son Joseph has arrived to see you

“your son Joseph has come to you”

Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed

Here the author speaks of Israel struggling to sit up in bed as if he were gathering “strength” as someone gathers actual things. Alternate translation: “Israel made a great effort to sit up in bed” or “Israel struggled as he sat up in bed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [report, reported, tell, reputation](#)

ULT

² When Jacob was told, “Look, your son Joseph has arrived to see you,” Israel gathered strength and sat up in bed.

Genesis 48:3

Luz

This is the name of a city. See how you translated the name of this city in [Genesis 28:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the land of Canaan. He blessed me

This can be translated with the new sentence starting in a different place. Alternate translation: “in the land of Canaan, and he blessed me”

blessed

This refers to God pronouncing a formal blessing on someone.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

³ Jacob said to Joseph, “God Almighty appeared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan. He blessed me

Genesis 48:4

and said to me

This can be translated with the new sentence starting in a different place. Alternate translation: “And he said to me”

said to me, ‘Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “said to me that he would make me fruitful and multiply me. And, he said that he would make me an assembly of nations and he would give this land to my descendants as an everlasting possession.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Behold

God used the word “behold” here to alert Jacob to pay attention to what he was about to tell him.

I will make you fruitful, and multiply you

The phrase “multiply you” explains how God would make Jacob “fruitful.” Alternate translation: “I will give you very many descendants” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Idiom](#))

I will make of you an assembly of nations

Here “you” refers to Jacob, but it stands for Jacob’s descendants. Alternate translation: “I will make your descendants into many nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

an everlasting possession

“a permanent possession”

Translation Words - ULT

- [eternity](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [forever](#)
- [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [congregation](#), [meeting](#), [gather](#), [community](#)
- [earth](#), [land](#)
- [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#)
- [multiply](#), [multiplied](#), [multiplication](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#)
- [possess](#), [possessed](#), [possession](#), [dispossess](#)
- [seed](#), [semen](#)

ULT

⁴ and said to me, ‘Behold, I will make you fruitful, and multiply you. I will make of you an assembly of nations. I will give this land to your descendants as an everlasting possession.’

Genesis 48:5

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine

Ephraim and Manasseh each will receive a portion of land just like Joseph’s brothers.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Manasseh
- Reuben
- Simeon
- bear, bearer, carry
- earth, land

ULT

⁵ Now your two sons, who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you into Egypt, they are mine. Ephraim and Manasseh will be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon are mine.

Genesis 48:6

they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance

Possible meanings are (1) the rest of Joseph's children would inherit land as part of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh or (2) Joseph will be given separate land from Ephraim and Manasseh and Joseph's other children will inherit that land. Alternate translation: "as for their inheritance, you will list them under the names of their brothers"

ULT

⁶ The children you have after them will be yours; they will be listed under the names of their brothers in their inheritance.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- call, call out
- children, child, offspring
- inherit, inheritance, heir
- name

Genesis 48:7

Ephrath

This is another name for the town of Bethlehem. See how you translated the name of this city in [Genesis 35:16](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/names/bethlehem\]\]](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Ephrath, Ephrathah](#)
- [Ephrath, Ephrathah](#)
- [Paddan Aram](#)
- [Rachel](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

⁷ But as for me, when I came from Paddan, to my sorrow Rachel died in the land of Canaan on the way, while there was still some distance to go to Ephrath. I buried her there on the way to Ephrath" (that is, Bethlehem).

Genesis 48:8

Whose are these?

“Whose sons are these?”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)

ULT

⁸ When Israel saw Joseph's sons, he said, “Whose are these?”

Genesis 48:9

bless

A father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children or grandchildren.

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

⁹ Joseph said to his father, "They are my sons, whom God has given me here."
Israel said, "Bring them to me, that I may bless them."

Genesis 48:10

Now Israel's eyes...could not see

The word "Now" is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Israel. (See: [Background Information](#))

he kissed them

"Israel kissed them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [kiss](#)

ULT

10 Now Israel's eyes were failing because of his age, so he could not see. So Joseph brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them.

Genesis 48:11

to see your face again

Here “face” stands for the whole person. Alternate translation: “to see you again” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- face, facial
- seed, semen

ULT

11 Israel said to Joseph, “I never expected to see your face again, but God has even allowed me to see your children.”

Genesis 48:12

between Israel's knees

When Joseph placed his sons on Israel's lap or knees it was a sign that Israel was adopting them. This gave the children special inheritance rights from Jacob. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

then he bowed with his face to the earth

Joseph bowed down to show honor to his father. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [earth, land](#)

ULT

¹² Joseph brought them out from between Israel's knees, and then he bowed with his face to the earth.

Genesis 48:13

Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand

Joseph places the boys so that Israel will put his right hand on Manasseh. Manasseh was the oldest brother and the right hand was the sign he would receive the greater blessing. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- right hand
- right hand
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh

ULT

¹³ Joseph took them both, Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand toward Israel's right hand, and brought them close to him.

Genesis 48:14

his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head

Placing the right hand on Ephraim's head was the sign that he would receive the greater blessing. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- right hand
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Jacob, Israel
- Manasseh
- Manasseh
- firstborn
- hand
- head
- head

ULT

14 Israel reached out with his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head, who was the younger, and his left hand upon Manasseh's head. He crossed his hands, for Manasseh was the firstborn.

Genesis 48:15

Israel blessed Joseph

Here “Joseph” also stands for Ephraim and Manasseh. Since Joseph is the father, he is the only one mentioned here. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked

Serving God is spoken of as if it were walking before God. Alternate translation: “The God who my grandfather Abraham and father Isaac served” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who has cared for me

God has taken care of Israel like a shepherd takes care of his sheep. Alternate translation: “who has cared for me like a shepherd cares for his animals” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [day](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [shepherd, herder, pastor](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

ULT

15 Israel blessed Joseph, saying, “The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has cared for me to this day,

Genesis 48:16

the angel

Possible meanings are (1) this refers to the angel that God sent to protect Jacob or (2) this refers to God who appeared in angel form to protect Jacob.

protected me

“delivered me”

ULT

16 the angel who has protected me from all harm, may he bless these boys. May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac. May they grow into a multitude on the earth.”

May my name be named in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac

Here “name” stands for the person. The phrase “my name be named in them” is an idiom that means a person is remembered because of another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “May people remember Abraham, Isaac, and me because of Ephraim and Manasseh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

May they grow into a multitude on the earth

Here “they” refers to Ephraim and Manasseh, but it stands for their descendants. Alternate translation: “May they have many descendants who will live all over the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [name](#)
- [name](#)
- [redeem, redeemer, redemption](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Genesis 48:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- right hand
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Ephraim, Ephraimite (2)
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- head
- head
- head (2)

ULT

¹⁷ When Joseph saw his father place his right hand upon the head of Ephraim, it displeased him. He took his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head.

Genesis 48:18

Put your right hand upon his head

The right hand was the sign of the greater blessing which the oldest son was supposed to receive. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- right hand
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- firstborn
- head

ULT

18 Joseph said to his father, “Not so, my father; for this is the firstborn. Put your right hand upon his head.”

Genesis 48:19

He also will become a people, and he also will be great

Here “He” refers to Manasseh, but it stands for his descendants.
Alternate translation: “Your older son will have many descendants, and they will become a great people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- nation
- people, people group
- seed, semen

ULT

¹⁹ His father refused and said, “I know, my son, I know. He also will become a people, and he also will be great. Yet his younger brother will be greater than he, and his descendants will become a multitude of nations.”

Genesis 48:20

that day with these words

“that day, saying”

The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying

“The people of Israel will speak your names when they are blessing others”

ULT

²⁰ Israel blessed them that day with these words, “The people of Israel will pronounce blessings by your names saying, ‘May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh’.” In this way, Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh.

by your names saying, ‘May God make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh’

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “by your names. They will ask God to make others like Ephraim and like Manasseh” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

like Ephraim and like Manasseh

Israel saying Ephraim’s name first is another way he indicates that Ephraim will be greater than Manasseh.

Israel put Ephraim before Manasseh

Giving Ephraim the greater blessing and making him more important than Manasseh is spoken of as if Israel physically put Ephraim in front of Manasseh. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [day](#)

Genesis 48:21

will be with you...bring you back...your fathers

Here “you” and “your” are plural and refer to all the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

will be with you

This is an idiom that means God will help and bless the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “God will help you” or “God will bless you” (See: [Idiom](#))

will bring you back

Here “bring” can be translated as “take.” (See: [Go and Come](#))

land of your fathers

“land of your ancestors”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [return, turn back](#)

ULT

21 Israel said to Joseph, “See, I am about to die, but God will be with you, and will bring you back to the land of your fathers.”

Genesis 48:22

To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope

Possible meanings are (1) Joseph having more honor and authority than his brothers is spoken of as if he were physically above them.

Alternate translation: "To you, who is greater than your brothers, I give the mountain slope" or (2) Jacob means he is giving more land to Joseph than he is giving to Joseph's brothers. Alternate translation: "To you, I give one more ridge than I give your brothers. I give to you the mountain slope" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²² To you, as one who is above your brothers, I give to you the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow."

To you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Joseph. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the mountain slope that I took from the Amorites with my sword and my bow

Here "sword" and "bow" stands for fighting in battle. Alternate translation: "the portion of land I fought for and took from the Amorites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [bow and arrow, a bow](#)
- [hand](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

Genesis 49

Genesis 49 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 49:1-27.

Special concepts in this chapter

Prophecies

These statements made by Jacob to his sons are probably prophecies. These prophecies are concerned with the descendants of each of Jacob's sons who would become the twelve tribes of Israel. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“The scepter will not depart from Judah”

This prophecy indicates Judah will be the ruling tribe of Israel. The future kings of Israel all come from the tribe of Judah. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

“I buried Leah”

Since Moses wrote the book of Genesis, this is an editorial comment he makes in the text as the narrator.

Genesis 49:1

General Information:

This begins Jacob's final blessings to his sons. This continues through [Genesis 49:27](#). Jacob's blessings are written in poetic form. (See: [Poetry](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- Jacob, Israel
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- day
- report, reported, tell, reputation

ULT

¹ Then Jacob called for his sons, and said: "Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you what will happen to you in the future."

Genesis 49:2

Assemble yourselves and listen, you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father

Both sentences say the same thing for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Come and listen carefully to your father" (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

² Assemble yourselves and listen, you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father.

you sons of Jacob. Listen to Israel, your father

Jacob is referring to himself in the third person. It can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: "my sons. Listen to me, your father" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jacob, Israel
- Jacob, Israel
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Genesis 49:3

my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength

The phrases “my firstborn, my might” and “the beginning of my strength” mean the same thing. The words “might” and “strength” stand for Jacob’s ability to produce children. The words “firstborn” and “beginning” mean that Reuben is his first child. Alternate translation: “my first child after I became a man” (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

³ Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power.

outstanding in dignity, and outstanding in power

This can be stated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “You are first in honor and power” or “You surpass everyone else in honor and power”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

Genesis 49:4

Uncontrollable as rushing water

Jacob compares Reuben to water in a strong current to emphasize that he cannot control his anger and he is not stable. (See: [Simile](#))

you will not have the preeminence

“you shall not be first among your brothers”

because you went up to your father’s bed. Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch

Here “bed” and “couch” stand for Jacob’s concubine, Bilhah. Jacob is referring to when Reuben slept with Bilhah ([Genesis 35:22](#)). Alternate translation: “because you went to my bed and slept with Bilhah my concubine. You have shamed me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you went up to your father’s bed...you went up to my couch

Both statements mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- defile, defiled, desecrate
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- water, deep

ULT

⁴ Uncontrollable as rushing water, you will not have the preeminence, because you went up to your father’s bed. Then you defiled it; you went up to my couch.

Genesis 49:5

Simeon and Levi are brothers

This does not just mean they are brothers by birth. Jacob is emphasizing that they worked together to kill the people of Shechem.

Weapons of violence are their swords

“They use their swords to hurt and to kill people”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [\[\[rc://en/tw/dict/bible/names/levites\]\]](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)

ULT

⁵ Simeon and Levi are brothers.
Weapons of violence are their swords.

Genesis 49:6

O my soul...my heart

Jacob uses the words “soul” and “heart” to refer to himself and is saying that other people, and perhaps God also, honor him so much that he does not wish to join with those who make plans to do evil. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

do not come into their council; do not join in their meetings

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Jacob combines them to emphasize that he does not want to participate in their wicked plans. Alternate translation: “I certainly will not join with them to make any plans” (See: [Parallelism](#))

they hamstrung oxen

This refers to Simeon and Levi crippling oxen just for fun.

hamstrung

This refers to cutting the sinews of an animal’s leg so that it cannot walk.

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [council](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)
- [delight](#)
- [slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder](#)

ULT

⁶ O my soul, do not come into their council; do not join in their meetings, for my heart has too much honor for that. For in their anger they killed men. It was for pleasure that they hamstrung oxen.

Genesis 49:7

May their anger be cursed, for it was fierce— and their fury, for it was cruel

God cursing Simeon and Levi is spoken of as if God were cursing their anger and fury. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Lord says, ‘I will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury’” or “I, the Lord, will curse them because of their fierce anger and their cruel fury” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁷ May their anger be cursed, for it was fierce—and their fury, for it was cruel. I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel.

May their anger be cursed

In prophecy, the prophet will often speak the words of God as if God himself were speaking. This emphasizes how closely united the prophet and God are.

their fury, for it was cruel

The words “I will curse” are understood. Alternate translation: “I will curse their fury, for it was cruel” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel

The word “I” refers to God. The word “them” refers to Simeon and Levi but they are a metonym standing for their descendants. The words “Jacob” and “Israel” are a metonym standing for all people of Israel. Alternate translation: “I will divide their descendants and scatter them among all the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)

Genesis 49:8

your brothers will praise you...Your father's sons will bow down before you

These two statements mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

will praise you. Your hand

The second sentence states the reason for the first sentence. This can be made clear with “for” or “because.” Alternate translation: “will praise you. For your hand” or “will praise you because your hand” (See: [Connecting Words and Phrases](#))

Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies

This is a way of saying “You will conquer your enemies.” (See: [Idiom](#))

bow down

This means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [hand](#)
- [praise, praised, praiseworthy](#)

ULT

⁸Judah, your brothers will praise you. Your hand will be on the neck of your enemies. Your father's sons will bow down before you.

Genesis 49:9

Judah is a lion's cub

Jacob speaks about Judah as if he were a lion's cub. Jacob is emphasizing Judah's strength. Alternate translation: "Judah is like a young lion" (See: [Metaphor](#))

My son, you have gone up from your victims

"You, my son, have come back from eating your prey"

like a lioness

Jacob also compares Judah to a female lion. The lioness is the primary hunter and protector of her cubs. (See: [Simile](#))

Who would dare to awaken him?

Jacob uses a question to emphasize how terrifying Judah is to other people. Alternate translation: "No one wants to wake him up." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judah
- lion, lioness
- lion, lioness
- lion, lioness
- prey, prey on

ULT

⁹ Judah is a lion's cub. My son, you have gone up from your victims. He stooped down, he crouched like a lion, like a lioness. Who would dare to awaken him?

Genesis 49:10

The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet

The "scepter" and the "staff" are long decorated sticks that kings carried. Here they are metonymies that stand for the power to rule. And, "Judah" stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "The power to rule will always be with the descendants of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Parallelism](#))

ULT

¹⁰ The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him.

until Shiloh comes. The nations will obey him

Possible meanings are (1) "Shiloh" means "tribute." Alternate translation: "until the nations obey him and bring him tribute" or (2) "Shiloh" refers to the city of Shiloh. Alternate translation: "until the ruler comes to Shiloh. Then the nations will obey him" Many people consider this a prophecy about the Messiah, who is a descendant of King David. David is a descendant of Judah.

The nations will obey him

Here "nations" refer to the people. Alternate translation: "The people of the nations will obey him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Shiloh
- decree, decreed
- obey, keep
- people, people group
- scepter

Genesis 49:11

Binding his donkey...to the choice vine

Both statements mean the same thing. It is implied that the vines are so full of grapes that the master does not mind that his donkey eats some of them. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

his...he

Possible meanings for all occurrences of "his" or "he" are (1) they refer to Judah's descendants. Alternate translation: "their...they" or (2) they refer to the ruler in [Genesis 49:10](#), which may refer to the Messiah.

he has washed...in the blood of grapes

Both statements mean the same thing. It implies that there are so many grapes that they can wash their clothes in the juice. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he has washed

Often in prophecy events that will happen in the future are described as something that has already happened in the past. This emphasizes that this event will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "they will wash" or "he will wash" (See: [Predictive Past](#))

the blood of grapes

This speaks about the grape juice as if it were blood. This emphasizes how red the juice is. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound
- son
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments
- donkey, mule
- donkey, mule
- grape, grapevine
- vine
- vine
- wine, wineskin, new wine

ULT

11 Binding his donkey to the vine, and his donkey's colt to the choice vine, he has washed his garments in wine, and his robe in the blood of grapes.

Genesis 49:12

His eyes will be as dark as wine

This refers to the color of a person's eyes to the red color of wine. Possible meanings are (1) dark eyes imply healthy eyes or (2) people eyes will be red from drinking too much of wine. (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² His eyes will be as dark as wine, and his teeth as white as milk.

his teeth as white as milk

This compare the color of the person's teeth to the white color of milk. This implies that there will be so many healthy cows they will have much milk to drink. (See: [Simile](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#), [wineskin](#), [new wine](#)

Genesis 49:13

Zebulun will live

This refers to the descendants of Zebulun. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Zebulun will live" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will be a harbor

Here "He" stands for sea towns that the people of Zebulun will inhabit or build. These cities will provide shelter for ships. (See: [Metonymy](#))

harbor

a part of the sea that is next to land and is a safe place for ships

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [Zebulun](#)

ULT

13 Zebulun will live by the shore of the sea. He will be a harbor for ships, and his border will extend to Sidon.

Genesis 49:14

Issachar is a strong donkey

Jacob speaks about Issachar and his descendants as if they are a donkey. This emphasizes that they will work very hard. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Issachar will be like a strong donkey" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

14 Issachar is a strong donkey, lying down between the sheepfolds.

Issachar is

Often in prophecy events that will happen in the future are described as something that is already happening. This emphasizes that the event will certainly happen. It can be stated in the future tense. Alternate translation: "Issachar will be" or "The descendants of Issachar will be"

lying down between the sheepfolds

Possible meanings are (1) "lying down between the packs they were carrying" or (2) "lying down between two sheep pens." Either way, Jacob speaks about Issachar's descendants as if they are donkeys that have worked hard and are lying down to rest. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Issachar](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

Genesis 49:15

He sees...He will

These words refer to the descendants of Issachar (verse 14).
Alternate translation: "They see...They will" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a good resting place and the pleasant land

"a resting place that is good and that the land is pleasant"

He will bend his shoulder to the burden

The phrase "bend his shoulder to the burden" is a way of saying "work very hard to carry the load" (See: [Idiom](#))

become a servant for the task

"will work for others as slaves"

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- delight
- earth, land
- rest, rested, restless
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

15 He sees a good resting place and the pleasant land. He will bend his shoulder to the burden and become a servant for the task.

Genesis 49:16

Dan will judge his people

Here “Dan” stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Dan will judge their people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his people

Possible meanings for “his people” are (1) “the people of Dan” or (2) “the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [people, people group](#)
- [tribe, tribal, tribesmen](#)

ULT

16 Dan will judge his people as one of the tribes of Israel.

Genesis 49:17

Dan will be a snake beside the road

Jacob speaks about Dan and his descendants as if they were snakes. Though a snake is small, it can bring down a rider off his horse. So Dan, though a small tribe, is very dangerous to its enemies. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Dan will be like a snake beside the road" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

17 Dan will be a snake beside the road, a poisonous snake in the path that bites the horse's heels, so that his rider falls backward.

Translation Words - ULT

- Dan
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- serpent, snake, viper

Genesis 49:18

I wait for your salvation, Yahweh

The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated as “save.” Alternate translation: “I wait for you, Yahweh, to save me”

ULT

18 I wait for your salvation, Yahweh.

I wait

The word “I” refers to Jacob.

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- Yahweh

Genesis 49:19

Gad...attack him, but he

Here “Gad” stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Gad...attack them, but they” (See: [Metonymy](#))

at their heels

Here “heels” stands for the raiders who are running away from the descendants of Gad. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gad](#)
- [thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Gad—raiders will attack him, but he will attack them at their heels.

Genesis 49:20

Asher's food...and he

Here "Asher" stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "Asher's descendants' food...and they" (See: [Metonymy](#))

food will be rich

Here "rich" is a way of saying "delicious." (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asher](#)
- [bread](#)
- [king, kingship](#)

ULT

²⁰ Asher's food will be rich, and he will provide royal delicacies.

Genesis 49:21

Naphtali is...he will

Here “Naphtali” stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Naphtali are...they will” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Naphtali is a doe let loose

Jacob speaks about the descendants of Naphtali as if they were a female deer that is free to run. This may emphasize that they will be swift messengers. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Naphtali will be like deer set free” (See: [Metaphor](#))

have beautiful fawns

A “fawn” is a baby deer. The meaning of the Hebrew word is unclear. Some versions translate it as “have beautiful words” or “speak beautiful things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naphtali](#)
- [deer, doe, fawns, roebuck](#)
- [send, sent, send out](#)

ULT

²¹ Naphtali is a doe let loose; he will have beautiful fawns.

Genesis 49:22

Joseph is a fruitful bough

Here “Joseph” is a metonym that stands for his descendants. Jacob speaks about them as if they were a tree branch that produces a lot of fruit. This emphasizes that they will greatly increase in number. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Joseph are a fruitful bough” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²² Joseph is a fruitful bough, a fruitful bough near a spring, whose branches climb over the wall.

bough

a main branch of a tree

whose branches climb over the wall

Branches that grow and extend over a wall are spoken of as if they were climbing. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [fountain, source, spring](#)
- [fruit, fruitful, unfruitful](#)

Genesis 49:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- bow and arrow, a bow

ULT

²³ The archers will attack him and shoot at him and harass him.

Genesis 49:24

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants.

his bow will remain steady

The person holding the bow steady is spoken of as if the bow itself will remain steady. It is implied he is holding it steady as he aims at his enemy. Alternate translation: "he will hold his bow steady as he aims at his enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

²⁴ But his bow will remain steady, and his hands will be skillful because of the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob, because of the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.

his bow...his hands

Here "his" refers to Joseph who stands for his descendants. Alternate translation: "their bow...their hands" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his hands will be skillful

Here the whole person is represented by the "hands" since they are used to hold the bow. Alternate translation: "his arms will remain strong as he aims his bow" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the hands of the Mighty One

The "hands" are expressing the power of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the power of the Mighty One" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because of the name of the Shepherd

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of the Shepherd" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Shepherd

Jacob speak of Yahweh as if he were a "Shepherd." This emphasizes that Yahweh guides and protects his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the Rock

Jacob speaks of Yahweh as if he were a "Rock" that people can climb upon to find safety from enemies. This emphasizes that Yahweh protects his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [bow and arrow, a bow](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)

- might, mighty, mighty works
- shepherd, herder, pastor

Genesis 49:25

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants ([Genesis 49:22-23](#)).

help you...bless you

Here “you” refers to Joseph who stands for his descendants.

Alternate translation: “help your descendants...bless them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the sky

Here “sky” stands for the rain that helps the crops to grow. (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the deep that lies beneath

Here “deep” stands for the water underneath the ground that supplies rivers and wells. (See: [Metonymy](#))

blessings of the breasts and womb

Here “breasts and womb” stand for the ability for a mother to have children and feed them milk. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Almighty](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing \(2\)](#)
- [God](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [water, deep](#)
- [womb](#)

ULT

²⁵ The God of your father will help you and the Almighty God will bless you with blessings of the sky above, blessings of the deep that lies beneath, and blessings of the breasts and womb.

Genesis 49:26

General Information:

Jacob continues to bless Joseph and his descendants.

the ancient mountains

The meaning of the original language is not certain. Some Bible translations have “my ancestors” instead of “ancient mountains.”

May they be on the head of Joseph

Here “they” refers to the blessings of his father.

upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers

Jacob desires for these blessings to be passed on to even the most important of his descendants. Alternate translation: “on the head of the most important of Joseph’s descendants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

prince of his brothers

“most important of his brothers”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing \(2\)](#)
- [brother](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [conceive, conception](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [head](#)

ULT

²⁶ The blessings of your father are greater than the blessings of the ancient mountains or the desirable things of the ancient hills. May they be on the head of Joseph, even upon the crown of the head of the prince of his brothers.

Genesis 49:27

Benjamin is a hungry wolf

Here “Benjamin” is a metonym that stands for his descendants. Jacob speaks about Benjamin’s descendants as if they were a hungry wolf. This emphasizes that they will be fierce warriors. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Benjamin will be like hungry wolves” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁷ Benjamin is a hungry wolf. In the morning he will devour the prey, and in the evening he will divide the plunder.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin, Benjaminite
- prey, prey on
- wolf, wild dogs

Genesis 49:28

These are the twelve tribes of Israel

“These” refers to the sons Jacob mentioned in 49:1-27. Each son became the leader of his own tribe.

when he blessed them

Here the word “blessed” refers to the speaking of formal blessings.

Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing

“He gave each son a fitting blessing”

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

²⁸ These are the twelve tribes of Israel. This is what their father said to them when he blessed them. Each one he blessed with an appropriate blessing.

Genesis 49:29

he instructed them

“he commanded them”

I am about to go to my people

This is a polite way of saying he is about to die. Alternate translation: “I am about to die” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

go to my people

Jacob is referring to where his inner man will go when he dies. He expects to join Abraham and Isaac in the afterlife. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Ephron the Hittite

This is the name of a man. “Hittite” means “descendent of Heth.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

ULT

²⁹ Then he instructed them and said to them, “I am about to go to my people. Bury me with my forefathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite,

Genesis 49:30

Machpelah

Machpelah was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁰ in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah, which is near Mamre in the land of Canaan, the field that Abraham bought for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Hittite
- earth, land
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Genesis 49:31

General Information:

Jacob continues speaking to his sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Leah
- Rebekah
- Sarah, Sarai
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial

ULT

³¹ There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife; there they buried Isaac and Rebekah his wife; and there I buried Leah.

Genesis 49:32

in it were purchased

The purchase can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "in it were purchased by Abraham" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from the people of Heth

"from the Hittites"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Hittite](#)

ULT

³² The field and the cave that is in it were purchased from the people of Heth."

Genesis 49:33

finished these instructions to his sons

“finished instructing his sons” or “finished commanding his sons”

he pulled his feet into the bed

Jacob was sitting on the bed. Now, Jacob turns and puts his feet in the bed so he can lie down.

breathed his last

This is a polite way of saying a person died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

went to his people

After Jacob died, his inner man went to the same place as his relatives who died before him. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jacob](#), [Israel](#)

ULT

33 When Jacob finished these instructions to his sons, he pulled his feet into the bed, breathed his last, and went to his people.

Genesis 50

Genesis 50 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Embalming

Embalming was practiced in Egypt on very important people when they died. They removed the liquids from the body then wrapped it in an attempt to preserve the body from decay.

Joseph's character

Joseph's character was so upright that Pharaoh's officials went with him to Canaan to bury Jacob. This was a very large funeral procession. He also learned lessons from earlier in his life and unified his family. (See: [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [unrighteous](#), [unrighteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Genesis 50:1

that he collapsed on the face of his father

The term “he collapsed” is an idiom for being overcome. Alternate translation: “that he fell on his father in grief” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lament, lamentation
- Joseph (OT)
- face, facial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- kiss

ULT

¹ Then Joseph was so distressed that he collapsed on the face of his father, and he wept over him, and he kissed him.

Genesis 50:2**his servants the physicians**

“his servants who took care of dead bodies”

to embalm his father

To “embalm” is a special way of preserving a dead body before it is buried. Alternate translation: “to prepare his father’s body for burial” (See: [Euphemism](#))

ULT

² Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father. So the physicians embalmed Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, young man, young women](#)

Genesis 50:3

They took forty days

“They took 40 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

seventy days

“70 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lament, lamentation
- Egypt, Egyptian
- day
- day
- day

ULT

³ They took forty days, for that was the full time for embalming. The Egyptians wept for him seventy days.

Genesis 50:4

Connecting Statement:

A three-level quotation is introduced with the words “Joseph spoke... saying.” The second level begins with the words “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying.”

days of weeping

“days of mourning him” or “days of weeping for him”

Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh

Here “house of Pharaoh” stands for the officials that make up Pharaoh’s royal court. Alternate translation: “Joseph spoke to Pharaoh’s officials” (See: [Metonymy](#))

If now I have found favor in your eyes

The phrase “find favor” is an idiom which means to be approved of by someone. Also, the eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “If I have found favor with you” or “If you are pleased with me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor, favorable, favoritism
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- day
- house, household
- mourn, mourner, weeping

ULT

⁴ When the days of weeping were over, Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying, “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying,

Genesis 50:5

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that began with the words “Joseph spoke... saying” in verse 4 continues. The second level of that quotation, which began with the words “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh, saying” in verse 4 continues.

My father made me swear, saying, “See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me.” Now let me go up...I will return.

ULT

⁵ ‘My father made me swear, saying, “See, I am about to die. Bury me in my tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan. There you will bury me.” Now let me go up and bury my father, and then I will return.’”

This is the second level of the three-level quotation that begins with the words “If now I have” in verse 4. It contains a quote within it. This embedded quote can be translated as an indirect quote. “My father made me swear, saying that he was about to die and that I was to bury him in his tomb that he dug for himself in the land of Canaan. I was to bury him there. Now let me go up...I will return.” The entire second-level quotation can also be translated as an indirect quote. “If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak to Pharaoh and tell him that my father made me swear, saying that he was about to die and that I was to bury him in his tomb that he dug for himself in the land of Canaan. I was to bury him there. Now let me go up...I will return.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

See, I am about to die...you will bury me

This is the third level of the three-level quotation that begins with the words “If now I have” in verse 4.

See, I am about to die

“See, I am dying”

let me go up

It was common to use the phrase “go up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan, Canaanite
- bury, buried, burial
- die, dead, deadly, death
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- return, turn back
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Genesis 50:6

Pharaoh answered

It is implied that the members of the court spoke to Pharaoh, and now Pharaoh is replying to Joseph. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as he made you swear

“as you swore to him”

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- bury, buried, burial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

ULT

⁶ Pharaoh answered, “Go and bury your father, as he made you swear.”

Genesis 50:7

Joseph went up

It was common to use the phrase “went up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan.

All the officials...the elders...the senior officials

All of Pharaoh’s most important leaders attended the burial procession.

the elders of his household

Here “household” refers to Pharaoh’s royal court.

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- bury, buried, burial
- earth, land
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

⁷ Joseph went up to bury his father. All the officials of Pharaoh went with him—the elders of his household, all the senior officials of the land of Egypt,

Genesis 50:8

with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household

This can be translated as a new sentence: "Joseph's household, his brothers, and his father's household also went with him" (See: [Order of Events](#))

ULT

⁸ with all Joseph's household and his brothers, and his father's household. But their children, their flocks, and their herds were left in the land of Goshen.

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- children, child, offspring
- Goshen
- Joseph (OT)
- cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox
- earth, land
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- flock, herd
- house, household
- house, household

Genesis 50:9

Chariots

Here this stands for the men riding in the chariots. (See: [Metonymy](#))

It was a very large group of people

“It was a very large gathering”

Translation Words - ULT

- [chariot, charioteers](#)
- [horseman](#)

ULT

⁹ Chariots and horsemen also went with him. It was a very large group of people.

Genesis 50:10

When they came

The word “they” refers to the participants in the burial procession.

floor of Atad

Possible meanings are (1) the word “Atad” means “thorn” and it may refer to a place where large amounts of thorns grew, or (2) it may be the name of the person who owns the threshing floor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

10 When they came to the threshing floor of Atad on the other side of the Jordan, they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow. There Joseph made a seven-day mourning for his father.

they mourned with very great and grievous sorrow

“they were extremely sad and they mourned very much”

a seven-day

“a 7-day” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lament, lamentation
- Jordan River, Jordan
- day
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- thresh

Genesis 50:11

in the floor of Atad

Possible meanings are (1) “on the threshing floor that belonged to a man named Atad” or (2) “in the threshing floor at a place called Atad” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians

“The mourning of the Egyptians is very great”

Abel Mizraim

The translator can add a footnote that says: “The name Abel Mizraim means “the mourning of Egypt.”” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- name
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Jordan River, Jordan
- earth, land
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- mourn, mourner, weeping
- thresh

ULT

11 When the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning in the floor of Atad, they said, “This is a very sad occasion for the Egyptians.” That is why the place was called Abel Mizraim, which is beyond the Jordan.

Genesis 50:12

So his sons

“So Jacob’s sons”

just as he had instructed them

“just as he had directed them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)

ULT

¹² So his sons did for Jacob just as he had instructed them.

Genesis 50:13

His sons carried him

“His sons took his body”

Machpelah

Machpela was the name of an area or region. See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:9](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mamre

This was another name for the city of Hebron. It may have been named after Mamre, the friend of Abraham who lived there. See how you translated this in [Genesis 13:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ephron the Hittite

This is the name of a man. “Hittite” means “descendent of Heth.” See how you translated this in [Genesis 23:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Abraham, Abram
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Hittite
- bury, buried, burial
- earth, land
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

ULT

13 His sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave in the field of Machpelah, near Mamre. Abraham had bought the cave with the field for a burial place. He had bought it from Ephron the Hittite.

Genesis 50:14

Joseph returned into Egypt

“Joseph returned to Egypt”

all who had accompanied him

“all who had come with him”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- bury, buried, burial
- bury, buried, burial
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

ULT

14 After he had buried his father, Joseph returned into Egypt, he, along with his brothers, and all who had accompanied him to bury his father.

Genesis 50:15

What if Joseph holds on to anger against us

Here anger is spoken of as if it was something physical that Joseph could hold in his hands. Alternate translation: "What if Joseph is actually still angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him

Avenging oneself against someone who harmed him is spoken of as if the person were paying the other person what they are owed. Alternate translation: "wants revenge for the evil thing we did to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- return, turn back

ULT

15 When Joseph's brothers saw that their father was dead, they said, "What if Joseph holds on to anger against us and wants to repay us in full for all the evil we did to him?"

Genesis 50:16

Connecting Statement:

A three-level quotation begins with the words "Your father gave."

Your father gave instructions before he died, saying

Jacob was the father of all the brothers. Here they say "your father" to emphasize that Joseph needs to pay attention to what his father said. Alternate translation: "Before our father died he said"

ULT

16 So they commanded the presence of Joseph, saying, "Your father gave instructions before he died, saying,

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- Joseph (OT)
- die, dead, deadly, death
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Genesis 50:17

Connecting Statement:

The three-level quotation that begins with the words “Your father gave” in verse 16 ends here.

Tell Joseph this, “Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you.”

The three-level quotation that begins with the words “Your father gave” in verse 16 ends here. This is the second-level quotation, and it contains a third-level quotation that can be stated as an indirect quotation. “Tell Joseph to please forgive your transgression and your sin when you did evil to him.” Both the second- and third-level quotations can be translated as indirect quotations. “Your father instructed us before he died to tell you to please forgive our transgression and our sin when we did evil to you.” (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

and their sin when they did evil to you

“for the wicked things they did to you”

Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

please forgive the servants of the God of your father

The brothers are referring to themselves as “the servants of the God of your father.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “please forgive us, the servants of the God of our father” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Joseph wept when they spoke to him

“Joseph wept when he heard this message”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned
- forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned (2)
- God
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- transgress, transgression
- transgress, transgression
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

17 ‘Tell Joseph this, “Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin when they did evil to you.”’ Now please forgive the servants of the God of your father.” Joseph wept when they spoke to him.

- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Genesis 50:18

lay facedown before him

They lay down with their faces toward the ground. This is a sign of humility and respect for Joseph. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee
- servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

ULT

18 His brothers also went and lay facedown before him. They said, "See, we are your servants."

Genesis 50:19

Am I in the place of God?

Joseph uses a question to comfort his brothers. Alternate translation: "I am not in the place of God." or "I am not God." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

19 But Joseph answered them, "Do not be afraid. Am I in the place of God?"

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, frighten
- God
- Joseph (OT)

Genesis 50:20

you meant to harm me

“you intended to do evil against me”

God meant it for good

“God intended it for good”

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- God
- good, right, pleasant, better, best
- life, live, living, alive
- day
- people, people group

ULT

²⁰ As for you, you meant to harm me, but God meant it for good, to preserve the lives of many people, as you see today.

Genesis 50:21

So now do not be afraid

“So do not fear me”

I will provide for you and your little children

“I will always make sure you and your children have enough to eat”

He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts

Here “hearts” refers to the brothers. Alternate translation: “He comforted them by speaking kindly to them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- children, child, offspring
- fear, afraid, frighten
- heart
- comfort, comforts, comforter, un comforted

ULT

²¹ So now do not be afraid. I will provide for you and your little children.” He comforted them in this way and spoke kindly to their hearts.

Genesis 50:22

one hundred ten years

“110 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- year
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- house, household

ULT

²² Joseph lived in Egypt, together with his father's family. He lived one hundred ten years.

Genesis 50:23

Ephraim's children to the third generation

"Ephraim's children and grandchildren"

Machir

This is the name of Joseph's grandson. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were placed on the knees of Joseph

This expression means that Joseph adopted these children of Machir as his own children. This means they would have special inheritance rights from Joseph. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Joseph (OT)
- Joseph (OT)
- Manasseh
- bear, bearer, carry

ULT

²³ Joseph saw Ephraim's children to the third generation. He also saw the children of Machir son of Manasseh, who were placed on the knees of Joseph.

Genesis 50:24

surely come to you

In [Genesis 50:24/26](#) the word “you” refers to Joseph’s brothers, but it also stands for their descendants. (See: [Metonymy](#))

lead you up out of this land to the land

It was common to use the word “up” when speaking of traveling from Egypt to Canaan. Alternate translation: “bring you out of this land and take you to the land” (See: [Order of Events](#))

ULT

24 Joseph said to his brothers, “I am about to die; but God will surely come to you and lead you up out of this land to the land which he swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [earth, land](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

Genesis 50:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- son
- Joseph (OT)
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

ULT

²⁵ Then Joseph made the people of Israel swear an oath. He said, "God will surely come to you. At that time you must carry up my bones from here."

Genesis 50:26

110 years

“one hundred and ten years” (See: [Numbers](#))

They embalmed him

To “embalm” is a special way of preserving a dead body before it is buried. See how you translated “embalmed” in [Genesis 50:1](#).

he was placed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they placed him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in a coffin

“in a chest” or “in a case.” This is a box a dead person is placed in.

Translation Words - ULT

- [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [year](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#)

ULT

²⁶ So Joseph died, 110 years old. They embalmed him and he was placed in a coffin in Egypt.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 24

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[Sentence Structure](#)

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:20](#); [18:21](#); [19:13](#); [19:19](#); [21:16](#); [21:23](#); [21:30](#); [23:10](#); [23:13](#); [23:16](#); [24:12](#); [24:14](#); [24:27](#); [24:49](#); [28:4](#); [29:32](#); [30:23](#); [30:26](#); [31:42](#); [34:13](#); [35:5](#); [39:21](#); [41:19](#); [41:52](#); [42:21](#); [43:9](#); [43:14](#); [43:23](#); [44:32](#); [45:7](#); [46:34](#); [47:29](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 1:9](#); [2:1](#); [2:20](#); [3:17](#); [3:22](#); [4:11](#); [4:15](#); [4:24](#); [5:2](#); [6:1](#); [7:23](#); [8:2](#); [8:7](#); [8:13](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [Notes](#); [10:25](#); [11:4](#); [12:3](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [14:19](#); [15:13](#); [16:5](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:27](#); [18:4](#); [18:18](#); [18:25](#); [18:29](#); [18:30](#); [18:31](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:20](#); [20:16](#); [21:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [24:32](#); [24:67](#); [25:8](#); [25:10](#); [25:17](#); [25:23](#); [26:4](#); [26:11](#); [26:29](#); [27:29](#); [27:42](#); [28:14](#); [29:7](#); [29:8](#); [29:21](#); [29:31](#); [29:33](#); [30:33](#); [31:15](#); [31:22](#); [31:39](#); [32:10](#); [32:12](#); [32:25](#); [32:30](#); [33:11](#); [33:13](#); [34:3](#); [34:7](#); [34:24](#); [34:30](#); [35:8](#); [35:10](#); [35:19](#); [35:29](#); [37:33](#); [37:35](#); [38:3](#); [38:13](#); [38:14](#); [38:18](#); [38:20](#); [38:23](#); [38:24](#); [38:25](#); [38:29](#); [39:1](#); [39:20](#); [40:3](#); [40:15](#); [41:6](#); [41:21](#); [41:27](#); [41:30](#); [41:32](#); [41:36](#); [41:40](#); [42:15](#); [42:16](#); [42:19](#); [42:20](#); [42:25](#); [42:28](#); [43:12](#); [43:18](#); [44:3](#); [44:9](#); [44:10](#); [44:12](#); [44:16](#); [44:17](#); [44:28](#); [45:16](#); [45:19](#); [47:15](#); [47:22](#); [48:2](#); [48:16](#); [49:7](#); [50:26](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#); 3:7; 3:17; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:8; 4:18; 4:25; 4:26; 6:14; 7:10; 7:16; 8:5; 8:12; 8:21; Notes; 9:5; 10:19; 10:32; Notes; 11:5; 11:7; 11:9; Notes; 12:6; 12:9; 12:10; 12:12; 12:17; Notes; 13:1; 13:3; 14:3; 14:8; 14:17; 14:24; 15:14; Notes; 16:15; Notes; 19:10; 19:19; 19:20; 19:22; 19:23; 19:32; 19:34; Notes; 20:10; 20:18; Notes; 21:1; 21:6; 21:9; 21:11; 21:23; 22:1; 22:2; 22:12; 22:16; 22:19; Notes; 24:21; 24:49; 24:65; Notes; 25:19; 25:21; 25:22; 25:33; Notes; 26:1; 26:6; 26:14; 26:17; 26:24; 26:25; 26:30; 26:34; 27:2; 27:3; 27:4; 27:27; 27:28; 27:39; 27:45; 28:18; 29:7; 29:11; 29:27; 30:3; 30:28; 30:31; 30:40; 30:42; 31:15; 31:17; 31:22; 31:46; 31:54; Notes; 32:9; Notes; 33:1; 33:4; 33:13; 33:17; 33:18; Notes; 34:19; 35:5; 35:9; 35:21; 35:26; 36:1; 36:6; 36:7; 36:9; 36:17; 36:30; 36:34; 36:37; 36:40;

37:13; 37:25; 37:29; 37:34; 37:35; 38:7; 38:10; 38:11; 38:14; 38:15; 38:16; 38:23; 38:29; 39:5; 39:6; 39:10; 39:19; 40:6; 40:11; 40:14; 40:22; 41:22; 41:25; 41:54; Notes; 42:4; 42:6; 42:9; 42:12; 42:20; 42:24; 42:38; 43:9; 43:24; 43:31; 43:33; 44:18; 44:21; 44:22; 45:4; 45:5; 45:8; 45:15; 45:22; 45:23; 46:4; 47:6; 48:15; Notes; 49:11; 49:12; 49:24; 49:32; 50:6)

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Order of Events](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” and “that they had brought with them.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were,” rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” and “Peter **was** the best hunter in the village.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about 30 years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

And Jesus himself was beginning about 30 years old. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli,

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus’ age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he was **going through the grain fields**, and his **disciples were picking and eating the heads of grain**, rubbing them in their hands. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus’ disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, “But some of the Pharisees said”

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language’s way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “and” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was 86 years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother,** and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,** added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:5](#); [14:10](#); [14:13](#); [16:1](#); [16:16](#); [20:4](#); [23:10](#); [24:29](#); [25:28](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [28:6](#); [29:2](#); [29:16](#); [29:24](#); [31:24](#); [31:25](#); [31:32](#); [31:34](#); [32:32](#); [34:5](#); [37:3](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [42:6](#); [42:23](#); [48:10](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:15](#); [6:16](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:6](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. ¹"

The footnote would look like:

█ ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:15](#); [24:22](#))

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

This page answers the question: *How do connecting words work to join parts of the text in different ways?*

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: [Hypothetical Statements](#).
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word “instead” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “therefore” links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “but” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words “so that” connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word "so."

Jesus said to them, "Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men." **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

- (2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words "instead" or "then" here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

- (3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:12](#); [24:48](#); [26:15](#); [26:16](#); [27:6](#); [30:31](#); [49:8](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Pronouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [24:7](#); [24:14](#); [24:30](#); [26:9](#); [27:7](#); [32:4](#); [32:5](#); [32:9](#); [32:12](#); [32:17](#); [32:18](#); [42:22](#); [42:31](#); [42:32](#); [43:3](#); [43:7](#); [44:19](#); [44:20](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:25](#); [44:26](#); [44:29](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [48:4](#); [48:20](#); [50:5](#); [50:17](#))

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[Sentence Structure](#)

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
 - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

▮ The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

... for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
- (2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

>

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

... for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

... for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase “who is 90 years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

>

Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

I will call on Yahweh, **who is worthy to be praised**. (2 Samuel 22:4a ULT) There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because **he is worthy to be praised**

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.

You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Double Negatives](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:14](#); [6:7](#); [8:6](#); [14:6](#); [14:12](#); [17:17](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [23:18](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]
Sentence Structure](#)

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]]([[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]])

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:22](#); [11:6](#); [21:23](#); [22:12](#); [22:16](#); [32:26](#); [39:6](#); [39:8](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:22](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [5:29](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:7](#); [23:1](#); [24:67](#); [25:8](#); [25:17](#); [28:3](#); [28:17](#); [35:11](#); [35:29](#); [39:6](#); [47:27](#); [48:4](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([^1])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Sentence Structure](#)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:2](#); [18:29](#); [18:30](#); [18:31](#); [19:17](#); [21:24](#); [24:21](#); [24:25](#); [24:49](#); [33:9](#); [40:8](#); [41:7](#); [41:8](#); [41:14](#); [41:22](#); [41:24](#); [41:26](#); [42:5](#); [42:18](#); [42:32](#); [43:1](#); [44:2](#); [44:12](#); [45:19](#); [47:24](#); [49:7](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:1](#); [4:17](#); [4:25](#); [11:30](#); [12:15](#); [15:15](#); [16:5](#); [17:11](#); [17:14](#); [19:5](#); [19:8](#); [19:31](#); [19:32](#); [19:33](#); [19:35](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#); [21:7](#); [21:8](#); [Notes](#); [25:8](#); [26:10](#); [27:45](#); [29:23](#); [29:30](#); [30:3](#); [30:4](#); [30:15](#); [30:16](#); [31:35](#); [34:2](#); [35:22](#); [35:29](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [Notes](#); [38:2](#); [38:8](#); [38:9](#); [38:18](#); [38:26](#); [39:7](#); [39:10](#); [39:12](#); [39:14](#); [39:17](#); [47:30](#); [49:29](#); [49:33](#); [50:2](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

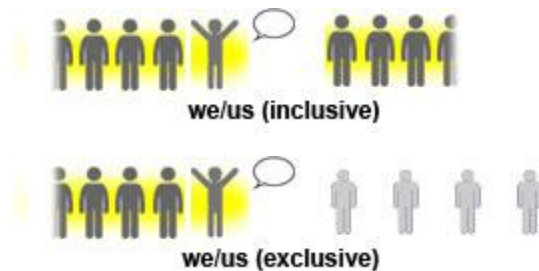
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[When Masculine Words Include Women](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:2; 19:13; 20:9; 22:5; 24:23; 26:10; 26:20; 31:32; 31:37; 32:18; 34:14; 34:21; 37:7; 37:8; 39:17; 41:11; 43:2; 43:7; 43:8; 44:27](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:14](#); [18:19](#); [18:27](#); [19:2](#); [19:19](#); [27:31](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [33:5](#); [33:8](#); [33:13](#); [33:14](#); [33:15](#); [35:1](#); [41:10](#); [41:12](#); [41:13](#); [41:25](#); [41:28](#); [41:33](#); [42:10](#); [44:7](#); [44:9](#); [44:16](#); [44:18](#); [44:19](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:24](#); [44:31](#); [44:32](#); [44:33](#); [46:34](#); [47:3](#); [47:18](#); [49:2](#); [50:17](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:16](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:9](#); [6:20](#); [6:21](#); [7:1](#); [18:3](#); [18:5](#); [24:25](#); [24:31](#); [24:49](#); [27:28](#); [27:29](#); [31:6](#); [31:29](#); [31:30](#); [42:19](#); [42:38](#); [43:8](#); [44:27](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [48:21](#); [48:22](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yodual\]\]](#)

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:34; 47:24](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:17](#); [7:1](#); [7:2](#); [7:15](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [14:7](#); [24:32](#); [24:41](#); [35:27](#); [41:14](#); [42:5](#); [42:6](#); [43:17](#); [48:21](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
- (2) Use the names for months that people know.
- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#))

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called a hendiadys. In a hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

... his own **kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by “and” can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. “The blessed hope” and “appearing of the glory” refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, “our great God” and “Savior Jesus Christ” refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

“A mouth” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes what comes from the mouth.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
- (2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
- (3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

For I will give you **wise words** ...

Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** ... (Luke 21:15a ULT)

for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

If you are **willingly obedient** ...

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

If you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

if you **obey willingly** ...

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Doublet](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:12](#); [19:24](#); [34:2](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:13](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:22](#); [4:25](#); [5:6](#); [5:9](#); [5:12](#); [5:15](#); [5:18](#); [5:21](#); [5:25](#); [5:29](#); [10:26](#); [11:10](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:24](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:6](#); [13:18](#); [14:1](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [16:14](#); [19:38](#); [20:1](#); [21:22](#); [22:2](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:22](#); [22:24](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:10](#); [23:14](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [24:10](#); [24:15](#); [25:1](#); [25:9](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:18](#); [25:20](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:22](#); [26:26](#); [26:33](#); [26:34](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:9](#); [28:19](#); [29:24](#); [29:29](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [30:12](#); [30:13](#); [30:21](#); [30:24](#); [31:47](#); [31:48](#); [31:49](#); [32:3](#); [32:22](#); [32:28](#); [32:30](#); [33:14](#); [33:17](#); [33:19](#); [33:20](#); [34:1](#); [34:2](#); [35:6](#); [35:7](#); [35:8](#); [35:18](#); [35:22](#); [35:25](#); [35:26](#); [35:27](#); [36:2](#); [36:3](#); [36:4](#); [36:5](#); [36:10](#); [36:11](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:15](#); [36:16](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:20](#); [36:21](#); [36:22](#); [36:23](#); [36:24](#); [36:25](#); [36:26](#); [36:27](#); [36:28](#); [36:29](#); [36:30](#); [36:32](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [36:40](#); [36:41](#); [36:42](#); [36:43](#); [37:2](#); [37:17](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:6](#); [38:8](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:14](#); [38:20](#); [38:21](#); [38:26](#); [38:29](#); [38:30](#); [41:45](#); [41:50](#); [46:9](#); [46:10](#); [46:11](#); [46:12](#); [46:13](#); [46:14](#); [46:15](#); [46:16](#); [46:17](#); [46:18](#); [46:20](#); [46:21](#); [46:23](#); [46:24](#); [46:25](#); [47:11](#); [48:3](#); [49:29](#); [49:30](#); [50:10](#); [50:11](#); [50:13](#); [50:23](#))

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:32](#); [27:46](#); [29:31](#); [30:1](#); [31:1](#); [31:26](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:8](#); [24:39](#); [24:41](#); [43:10](#); [44:30](#); [44:31](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

▮ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

▮ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

▮ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

▮ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

▮ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

▮ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

▮ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

▮ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

▮ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

▮ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

▮ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

▮ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Genesis 1:22; 1:28; 2:2; 2:24; 3:5; 3:17; 4:5; 4:8; 4:14; 4:16; 6:8; 8:17; 9:1; 9:7; 15:1; 15:4; 15:12; 15:14; 17:2; 17:20; 18:3; 18:25; 18:33; 19:7; 19:9; 19:17; 19:19; 19:29; 20:3; 20:15; 21:16; 21:20; 21:22; 21:23; 22:12; 23:6; 24:49; 24:50; 25:8; 25:17; 26:2; 26:11; 26:19; 27:20; 27:27; 27:46; 29:2; 29:8; 29:10; 30:3; 30:8; 30:14; 30:22; 30:27; 31:12; 31:36; 32:5; 32:10; 32:16; 33:8; 33:10; 34:5; 34:11; 35:11; 35:18; 35:29; 36:6; 36:7; 36:32; 36:35; 36:39; 37:3; 37:11; 37:14; 37:20; 37:27; 38:7; 38:10; 39:1; 39:2; 39:3; 39:4; 39:21; 39:23; 41:33; 41:35; 41:40; 41:41; 41:43; 41:52; 41:56; 42:22; 42:38; 43:29; 43:30; 44:29; 44:31; 46:4; 47:25; 47:27; 47:29; 48:4; 48:16; 48:21; 49:8; 49:15; 49:20; 49:29; 49:33; 50:1; 50:4; 50:23)

Imperatives — Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “**Do not go down** to Egypt; **live** in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. **Be clean.**” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general, second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like “light must be.”

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

Do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you;
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6, below, is to teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

Be clean. (Matthew 8:3b ULT)

“You are now clean.”
“I now cleanse you.”

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “**There is now light**” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “**Be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **Have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “**My will for you is that you be fruitful**, and **multiply**. **Fill** the earth, and **subdue** it. **I want you to have dominion** over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

- (2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “**Let there be** light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, ‘Let there be light,’ **so** there was light.
God said, “Light must be;” **as a result**, there was light.

- (3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

If you teach a child the way he should go,
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#))

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Order of Events](#)

Examples From the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

And it happened that in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

Now in those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector’s tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Introduction of New and Old Participants](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:22](#); [22:1](#); [22:20](#); [38:1](#); [38:24](#); [38:27](#); [39:7](#); [39:11](#); [39:13](#); [39:15](#); [39:18](#); [39:19](#); [40:1](#); [40:20](#); [41:1](#); [41:8](#); [42:1](#); [43:2](#); [44:24](#); [48:1](#))

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

Now **there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus** ... **This man** came to Jesus at night ... Jesus replied and said to **him** ... (John 3:1, 2a, 3a)

The first bolded phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. After being introduced, he is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he has become an old participant.

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples From the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man,” as in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who his family was, and what his name was.

Now there was a man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2a ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important participant is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife.” This phrase shows her relationship to him.

Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. **His wife** was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

Now King David was old, he had advanced in the days, and they covered him with the garments, but it was not warm enough for him. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his,” and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she.”

His wife was barren and she had never given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah’s wife is referred to by the noun phrase “the wife.”

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the wife and he said to her ... (Judges 13:3a ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant’s name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to by his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh. (Judges 13:8a ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages, people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.
- (2) If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
- (3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the participant is new, use one of your language’s ways of introducing new participants.

Then Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which is translated as Son of Encouragement), a Levite from Cyprus by birth ... (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) — Starting the sentence with Joseph’s name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of Encouragement). There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

- (2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

And it happened that when he was praying in a certain place, when he stopped, one of his disciples said to him, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John also taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) — Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.”

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20) — Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might prefer the pronoun.

Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:29](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Then Jesus answered and said to them, "People who are well do not have need of a physician, but those who have sickness. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance."
(Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples From the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9b ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two phrases in bold above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! **You began to reign** apart from us, and I wish you really did reign, so that we also might reign with you. (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
- (2) The irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call **the righteous**, but sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

- (2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God so that you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9a ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.**" (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot**

speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!** (Job 38:20-21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? **You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Litotes](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:20](#))

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:27](#); [29:15](#); [31:32](#); [37:22](#); [39:9](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:5](#); [1:8](#); [1:13](#); [1:19](#); [1:23](#); [1:31](#); [2:9](#); [3:5](#); [3:22](#); [8:22](#); [19:11](#); [24:3](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [43:33](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:16; 4:7; 5:22; 6:7; 6:8; 6:11; 6:12; 9:2; 9:5; 9:6; 15:1; 16:12; 17:1; 18:3; 18:23; 18:24; 18:27; 19:8; 19:11; 19:15; 19:17; 19:19; 19:32; 19:34; 20:9; 20:16; 21:19; 24:8; 24:21; 24:40; 24:41; 24:45; 24:49; 25:8; 25:27; 26:10; 26:35; 27:1; 27:12; 27:13; 27:28; 27:34; 27:35; 27:36; 27:39; 27:40; 27:45; 28:4; 28:17; 29:31; 30:2; 30:8; 30:18; 30:23; 30:27; 31:15; 31:39; 31:40; 32:5; 33:8; 33:10; 34:3; 34:11; 34:30; 35:5; 37:25; 37:26; 37:35; 39:2; 39:4; 39:5; 39:6; 39:8; 39:9; 39:22; 40:13; 41:29; 41:30; 41:31; 41:35; 41:37; 41:49; 41:50; 42:28; 42:37; 43:9; 44:7; 44:17; 44:18; 44:29; 44:30; 44:32; 44:34; 45:8; 45:11; 45:18; 47:19; 47:25; 47:29; 48:2; 48:15; 48:20; 48:22; 49:7; 49:9; 49:11; 49:14; 49:17; 49:21; 49:22; 49:24; 49:26; 49:27; 50:4; 50:15](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”
or:
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:17; 4:10; 6:5; 6:6; 6:11; 6:17; 7:15; 7:22; 9:2; 11:1; 12:2; 14:10; 14:11; 15:1; 15:14; 16:13; 18:3; 19:15; 19:19; 19:24; 19:31; 20:4; 20:5; 20:6; 20:9; 20:11; 20:13; 21:13; 21:16; 21:17; 21:18; 21:23; 22:17; 22:18; 23:11; 23:18; 24:7; 24:28; 24:45; 24:56; 24:60; 25:23; 26:9; 26:14; 26:25; 27:8; 27:13; 27:29; 27:40; 28:2; 28:14; 28:20; 28:21; 29:14; 29:22; 30:35; 31:27; 31:30; 31:42; 31:49; 32:5; 32:8; 32:11; 32:21; 33:10; 34:7; 34:25; 35:4; 35:5; 35:11; 36:43; 37:21; 37:22; 37:27; 40:3; 40:21; 40:22; 41:13; 41:30; 41:33; 41:35; 41:36; 41:40; 41:41; 41:43; 41:44; 41:46; 41:55; 41:57; 42:3; 42:19; 42:22; 42:28; 42:33; 44:7; 45:2; 45:5; 45:6; 45:8; 45:26; 46:3; 46:4; 46:29; 46:31; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 47:18; 47:19; 47:29; 48:4; 48:16; 48:19; 48:22; 49:4; 49:7; 49:10; 49:13; 49:15; 49:16; 49:19; 49:20; 49:21; 49:22; 49:24; 49:25; 49:27; 50:4; 50:9; 50:24](#))

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:20](#); [19:31](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#))

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord*® *Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord*® *Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: Genesis 4:24; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:18; 5:23; 5:25; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31; 6:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:13; 11:14; 11:16; 11:18; 11:20; 11:22; 11:24; 11:32; 14:14; 20:16; 21:4; 21:5; 23:1; 23:15; 24:60; 25:7; 25:16; 25:17; 25:20; 25:26; 26:12; 26:34; 31:38; 31:41; 32:6; 32:14; 32:15; 33:1; 33:19; 35:22; 35:28; 37:2; 37:9; 37:28; 41:46; 42:13; 45:22; 46:15; 46:18; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 47:9; 47:28; 50:3; 50:10; 50:22; 50:26)

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

This page answers the question: *Why are some events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples From the Bible

He even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, and the ark of the covenant of Yahweh followed after them. But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

(1) If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison. Now it came about, when all the people were baptized, Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

20 But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. 21 **Before John was put in prison**, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets 10 But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carrying seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh went forward and blew the trumpets, But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout nor let your voice be heard, nor let any word leave your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you must shout." (Joshua 6:8,10 ULT)

8,10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2b ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[Connecting Words and Phrases](#)

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:30](#); [26:18](#); [27:24](#); [47:1](#); [47:2](#); [50:8](#); [50:24](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [22:4](#); [22:15](#); [34:25](#); [41:5](#); [42:18](#))

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. “Sees” corresponds to “watches,” “everything...does” corresponds to “all the paths...takes,” and “a person” corresponds to “he.”

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words ‘Praise’ and ‘exalt’ mean the same thing. The words ‘Yahweh’ and ‘him’ refer to the same person. The terms ‘all you nations’ and ‘all you peoples’ refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely,” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:27](#); [4:23](#); [6:22](#); [11:1](#); [19:14](#); [22:12](#); [26:5](#); [31:2](#); [31:36](#); [32:11](#); [37:8](#); [41:30](#); [41:31](#); [43:8](#); [44:5](#); [44:16](#); [49:2](#); [49:3](#); [49:4](#); [49:6](#); [49:7](#); [49:8](#); [49:10](#); [49:11](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, waiting to attack you.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea.**

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:16](#); [4:7](#); [4:11](#); [4:12](#); [Notes](#); [19:19](#); [30:33](#); [31:44](#); [31:48](#); [31:52](#); [37:7](#))

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
 - parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#))
 - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
 - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):
 - > You should not give what is holy to the dogs,
 - >
 - >> and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.
 - >>
 - >> Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,
 - >
 - > and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

Listen to my call to you,
Yahweh; think about my groanings.
Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,
for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

“Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**.” (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

“Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater” (from an English rhyme)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:

- incomplete sentences
- lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
 Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
 Prayers, blessings, and curses
 Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

... for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of [Parallelism](#) has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
 Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,
 for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
 (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin**. God is his constant **delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**.”

- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.

- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh’s law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Symbolic Language](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:23; 49:1](#))

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples From the Bible

Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
- (2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
- (3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:11](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
 - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [3:15](#); [5:1](#); [11:7](#))

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are proverbs, and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Metaphor](#)

[Parallelism](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples From the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

- (1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
- (2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing

them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,
and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.

Wise people choose a good name over great riches,
and favor over silver and gold.

Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.

Will riches really help you?

I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,
so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain
in the harvest season;

And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow,
for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)

Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

There is a generation that curses their father
and does not bless their mother.
There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,

and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,
and they do not turn away from their sin.

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:9](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes.

They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.

Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [20:11](#); [20:13](#); [24:7](#); [24:14](#); [26:9](#); [27:7](#); [32:4](#); [32:5](#); [32:9](#); [32:12](#); [32:17](#); [32:18](#); [42:22](#); [42:31](#); [42:32](#); [43:3](#); [43:7](#); [44:19](#); [44:20](#); [44:21](#); [44:22](#); [44:23](#); [44:25](#); [44:26](#); [44:29](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [48:4](#); [48:20](#); [50:5](#); [50:17](#))

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)
[Sentence Structure](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

- (1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

- (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

- (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

- (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

- (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place.**”

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [22:8](#); [32:21](#); [33:3](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:1](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [4:6](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [12:18](#); [13:9](#); [16:13](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:17](#); [18:18](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [19:20](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [21:7](#); [23:15](#); [24:31](#); [25:32](#); [26:10](#); [27:36](#); [27:37](#); [27:45](#); [27:46](#); [29:15](#); [29:25](#); [30:2](#); [30:15](#); [30:30](#); [31:14](#); [31:15](#); [31:43](#); [32:29](#); [33:15](#); [34:23](#); [34:31](#); [37:8](#); [37:10](#); [37:13](#); [37:26](#); [37:30](#); [39:9](#); [40:8](#); [42:1](#); [42:22](#); [43:7](#); [43:29](#); [44:4](#); [44:5](#); [44:8](#); [44:15](#); [44:16](#); [44:34](#); [47:15](#); [47:19](#); [49:9](#); [50:19](#))

Sentence Structure

Description

The simplest sentence structure in English includes a **subject** and an **action** word:

- The boy ran.

This page answers the question: *What are the parts of a sentence?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Subject

The **subject** is who or what the sentence is about. In these examples, the subject is bolded:

- **The boy** is running.
- **He** is running.

Subjects are typically noun phrases or pronouns. (See Parts of Speech.) In the examples above, “the boy” is a noun phrase that has the noun “boy,” and “he” is a pronoun.

When the sentence is a command, in many languages it does not have a subject pronoun. People understand that the subject is “you.”

- Close the door.

Predicate

The predicate is the part of a sentence that tells something about the subject. It usually has a verb. (See Verbs.) In the sentences below, the subjects are “the man” and “he.” The predicates are in bold.

- The man is **strong**.
- He worked **hard**.
- He made **a garden**.

Compound Sentences

A sentence can be made up of more than one sentence. Each of the two lines below has a subject and a predicate and is a full sentence.

- He planted the yams.
- His wife planted the maize.

The compound sentence below contains the two sentences above. In English, compound sentences are joined with a conjunction such as “and,” “but,” or “or.”

- He planted the yams **and** his wife planted the maize.

Clauses

Sentences can also have clauses and other phrases. Clauses are like sentences because they have a subject and a predicate, but they do not normally occur by themselves. Here are some examples of clauses. The subjects are in bold, and the predicates are bolded.

- when **the maize was ready**
- after **she picked it**
- because **it tasted so good**

Sentences can have many clauses, and so they can become long and complex. But each sentence has to have at least one **independent clause**, that is, a clause that can be a sentence all by itself. The other clauses that cannot be sentences by themselves are called the **dependent clauses**. Dependent clauses depend on the independent clause to complete their meaning. The dependent clauses are bolded in the sentences below.

- **When the maize was ready**, she picked it.
- **After she picked it**, she carried it home and cooked it.
- Then she and her husband ate it all, **because it tasted so good**.

The following phrases can each be a whole sentence. They are the independent clauses from the sentences above.

- She picked it.
- She carried it home and cooked it.
- Then she and her husband ate it all.

Relative Clauses

In some languages, clauses can be used with a noun that is part of a sentence. These are called **relative clauses**.

In the sentence below, “the corn that was ready” is part of the predicate of the whole sentence. The relative clause “that was ready” is used with the noun “corn” to tell which corn she picked.

- His wife picked **the maize that was ready**.

In the sentence below “her mother, who was very annoyed” is part of the predicate of the whole sentence. The relative clause “who was very annoyed” is used with the noun “mother” to tell how her mother felt when she did not get any maize.

- She did not give any maize to **her mother, who was very annoyed**.

Translation Issues

- Languages have different orders for the parts of a sentence. (See Information Structure.)
- Some languages do not have relative clauses, or they use them in a limited way. (See [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding.](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order\]\]](#)

[Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:5](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:28](#); [22:17](#); [25:25](#); [26:4](#); [28:14](#); [31:26](#); [32:12](#); [33:10](#); [49:4](#); [49:9](#); [49:12](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:27](#); [24:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#); [24:52](#); [24:65](#); [27:29](#); [28:18](#); [31:13](#); [33:3](#); [33:6](#); [35:2](#); [35:14](#); [41:42](#); [41:43](#); [41:45](#); [42:6](#); [43:26](#); [43:28](#); [44:13](#); [44:14](#); [47:29](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:18](#); [49:8](#); [50:18](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

█ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

█ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

█ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

█ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

stars in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:7](#); [23:12](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19; 4:11; 4:23; 5:29; 6:12; 6:17; 7:15; 7:22; 9:5; 9:11; 9:15; 14:10; 15:15; 19:8; 21:14; 21:30; 22:6; 22:7; 22:17; 24:3; 24:37; 26:5; 26:18; 27:22; 27:28; 27:29; 27:40; 27:41; 28:14; 28:20; 30:41; 31:10; 31:12; 33:10; 34:30; 37:2; 37:25; 38:20; 41:8; 41:48; 41:49; 41:56; 42:21; 42:24; 42:38; 43:3; 43:12; 43:15; 43:21; 43:22; 43:26; 43:32; 44:16; 44:17; 44:18; 44:23; 44:26; 44:29; 44:31; 45:12; 45:26; 45:27; 46:30; 47:17; 48:11; 48:15; 49:6; 49:19; 49:24; 50:21](#))

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts\]\]](#)

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰ See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹ [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] [2]

[2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” ¹⁶ [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

¹⁴ He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵ There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. ¹⁶ If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:8](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate\]\]](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:12](#); [21:33](#); [25:34](#); [30:14](#); [30:37](#); [31:27](#); [43:11](#))

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate “brother” or “he” when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

A wise son makes **his** father rejoice
but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

- (1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)

“The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies.”
 “Wise **people** die just like fools die.”

- (2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

“For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia.”

- (3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

“If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.”
 (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

>

“If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:28](#); [41:44](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 27

Abel

Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G00060

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2](#); [4:4](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:25](#))

Abimelech

Facts:

Abimelech was a Philistine king over the region of Gerar during the time when Abraham and Isaac were living in the land of Canaan.

- Abraham deceived King Abimelech by telling him that Sarah was his sister rather than his wife.
- Abraham and Abimelech made an agreement regarding ownership of wells at Beersheba.
- Many years later, Isaac also deceived Abimelech and the other men of Gerar by saying that Rebekah was his sister, not his wife.
- King Abimelech rebuked Abraham, and later Isaac, for lying to him.
- Another man by the name of Abimelech was a son of Gideon and a brother of Jotham. Some translations may use a slightly different spelling of his name to make it clear that he is a different person from King Abimelech.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), [Gerar](#), Gideon, Jotham, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 11:21
- Genesis 20:3
- Genesis 20:5
- Genesis 21:22
- Genesis 26:11
- Judges 9:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0040

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:4](#); [20:8](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [20:14](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [21:22](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [21:27](#); [21:29](#); [21:32](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [26:9](#); [26:10](#); [26:11](#); [26:16](#); [26:26](#))

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, [desolate](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 9:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 1:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G09460

(Go back to: [Genesis 43:32](#); [46:34](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:8
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:4
- Genesis 22:2
- James 2:23
- Matthew 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **5:4** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **5:5** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **6:1** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **6:4** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:2** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0087, H0085, G00110

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:26; 11:27; 11:29; 11:31; 12:1; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:7; 12:9; 12:10; 12:14; 12:16; 12:17; 12:18; 13:1; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:7; 13:8; 13:12; 13:14; 13:18; 14:12; 14:13; 14:14; 14:19; 14:22; 14:23; 15:1; 15:2; 15:3; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 15:18; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:15; 16:16; 17:1; 17:3; 17:5; 17:9; 17:15; 17:17; 17:18; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 18:6; 18:7; 18:11; 18:13; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:22; 18:23; 18:27; 18:33; 19:27; 19:29; 20:1; 20:2; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:14; 20:17; 20:18; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:12; 21:14; 21:22; 21:24; 21:25; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 21:34; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:13; 22:14; 22:15; 22:19; 22:20; 22:23; 23:2; 23:3; 23:5; 23:7; 23:10; 23:12; 23:14; 23:16; 23:18; 23:19; 23:20; 24:1; 24:2; 24:6; 24:9; 24:12; 24:15;](#)

24:27; 24:34; 24:42; 24:48; 24:52; 24:59; 25:1; 25:5; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 25:10; 25:11; 25:12; 25:19; 26:1; 26:3; 26:5; 26:15;
26:18; 26:24; 28:4; 28:9; 28:13; 31:42; 31:53; 32:9; 35:12; 35:27; 48:15; 48:16; 49:30; 49:31; 50:13; 50:24)

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [1:27](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:8](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [2:21](#); [2:22](#); [2:23](#); [2:25](#); [3:8](#); [3:9](#); [3:12](#); [3:17](#); [3:20](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:24](#); [4:1](#); [4:25](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [6:1](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:7](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [8:21](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [11:5](#); [16:12](#))

administration, administrator, administering, officer, official, leader

Facts:

The terms “administration” and “administrator” refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

- Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
- In the New Testament, administration is one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
- A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “administrator” could include “governor” or “organizer” or “manager” or “ruler” or “government official.”
- The term “administration” could be translated as “governing” or “management” or “leadership.” or “organization.”
- Expressions such as “in charge of” or “taking care of” or “keeping order” could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, [gift](#), governor, Hananiah, Mishael, Azariah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Daniel 6:1-3
- Esther 9:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5532, H5608, H5632, H6213, H7860, G29410

(Go back to: [Genesis 39:1; 40:2](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:20](#); [22:17](#); [24:60](#); [49:8](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one's soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:11](#); [29:32](#); [31:42](#); [31:50](#); [41:52](#); [43:6](#))

Ai

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Ai was the name of a Canaanite town located just south of Bethel and about 8 km northwest of Jericho.

- After defeating Jericho, Joshua led the Israelites in an attack of Ai. But they were easily defeated because God was not pleased with them.
- An Israelite named Achan had stolen plunder from Jericho, and God ordered that he and his family be killed. Then God helped the Israelites defeat the people of Ai.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), Jericho)

Bible References:

- Ezra 2:27-30
- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 13:3-4
- Joshua 7:3
- Joshua 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5857

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:8](#); [13:3](#))

alien, foreigner, sojourn

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.” To sojourn is to live temporarily as a foreigner.

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- A sojourner is another word for a temporary foreign resident.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:17
- Acts 7:29-30
- Deuteronomy 1:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0312, H0628, H0776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G02410, G02450, G05260, G09150, G18540, G35810, G39270, G39410

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:12](#); [17:27](#); [31:15](#); [35:4](#))

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G38410

([Go back to: Genesis 17:1; 28:3; 35:11; 43:14; 48:3; 49:25](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), grain offering, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:20](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [13:4](#); [13:18](#); [22:9](#); [26:25](#); [33:20](#); [35:1](#); [35:3](#); [35:7](#))

Amalek, Amalekite

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, David, [Esau](#), [Negev](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:43
- 2 Samuel 1:8
- Exodus 17:10
- Numbers 14:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:7](#); [36:12](#))

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:9-11
- Acts 9:20-22
- Galatians 1:6
- Mark 2:10-12
- Matthew 7:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G06390, G15680, G15690, G16050, G16110, G18390, G22840, G22850, G22960, G22970, G22980, G40230, G45920, G50590

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 43:33](#))

Ammon, Ammonite

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group that lived on the east side of the Jordan River across from the Israelites.

- The book of Genesis reports that the Ammonite nation was descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.
- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- Ezekiel 25:2
- Genesis 19:38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:27
- Zephaniah 2:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5983, H5984, H5985

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:38](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567,

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [14:7](#); [14:13](#); [15:16](#); [15:21](#); [48:22](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:24](#); [4:20](#); [4:21](#); [9:18](#); [9:22](#); [9:23](#); [10:21](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [12:1](#); [15:15](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [19:31](#); [19:32](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [19:36](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [22:7](#); [22:21](#); [24:7](#); [24:23](#); [24:38](#); [24:40](#); [26:3](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [26:24](#); [27:6](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:12](#); [27:14](#); [27:18](#); [27:19](#); [27:22](#); [27:26](#); [27:30](#); [27:31](#); [27:32](#); [27:34](#); [27:38](#); [27:39](#); [27:41](#); [28:2](#); [28:7](#); [28:8](#); [28:13](#); [28:21](#); [29:9](#); [29:12](#); [31:1](#); [31:3](#); [31:5](#); [31:6](#); [31:7](#); [31:9](#); [31:14](#); [31:16](#); [31:18](#); [31:19](#); [31:29](#); [31:30](#); [31:35](#); [31:42](#); [31:53](#); [32:9](#); [33:19](#); [34:4](#); [34:6](#); [34:11](#); [34:13](#); [34:19](#); [35:18](#); [35:22](#); [35:27](#); [36:9](#); [36:24](#); [36:43](#); [37:1](#); [37:2](#); [37:4](#); [37:10](#); [37:11](#); [37:12](#); [37:22](#); [37:32](#); [37:35](#); [38:11](#); [41:51](#); [42:13](#); [42:29](#); [42:32](#); [42:35](#); [42:36](#); [42:37](#); [43:2](#); [43:7](#); [43:8](#); [43:11](#); [43:23](#); [43:27](#); [43:28](#); [44:17](#); [44:19](#); [44:20](#); [44:22](#); [44:24](#); [44:25](#); [44:27](#); [44:30](#); [44:31](#); [44:32](#); [44:34](#); [45:3](#); [45:8](#); [45:9](#); [45:13](#); [45:18](#); [45:19](#); [45:23](#); [45:25](#); [45:27](#); [46:1](#); [46:3](#); [46:5](#); [46:29](#); [46:31](#); [46:34](#); [47:1](#); [47:3](#); [47:5](#); [47:6](#); [47:7](#); [47:9](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:30](#); [48:1](#); [48:9](#); [48:15](#); [48:16](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#); [48:19](#); [48:21](#); [49:2](#); [49:4](#); [49:8](#); [49:25](#); [49:26](#); [49:28](#); [49:29](#); [50:1](#); [50:2](#); [50:5](#); [50:6](#); [50:7](#); [50:8](#); [50:10](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#); [50:16](#); [50:17](#); [50:22](#))

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [Notes](#); [19:1](#); [19:15](#); [21:17](#); [22:11](#); [22:15](#); [24:7](#); [24:40](#); [28:12](#); [31:11](#); [32:1](#); [48:16](#))

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:13](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:14](#); [17:21](#); [18:14](#); [24:14](#); [24:44](#); [28:18](#); [40:4](#); [41:33](#); [41:34](#); [47:6](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:2](#))

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic, Aram of Damascus

Definition:

“Aram” was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Mesopotamia, [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- 2 Samuel 8:6
- Amos 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:16
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Hosea 12:12
- Psalm 60:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0130, H0726, H0758, H0761, H0762, H0763, H1834, H7421

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:22](#); [10:23](#); [22:21](#); [24:10](#); [25:20](#); [28:5](#); [31:20](#); [31:24](#))

Ararat

Facts:

In the Bible, “Ararat” is the name given to a land, a kingdom, and a mountain range.

- The “land of Ararat” was probably located in what is now the northeastern part of the country of Turkey.
- Ararat is best known as the name of the mountain that Noah’s ark came to rest on after the waters of the great flood began to recede.
- In modern times, a mountain called “Mount Ararat” is often thought to be the location of the “mountains of Ararat” in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:35-37
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Isaiah 37:38
- Jeremiah 51:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0780

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:4](#))

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- Genesis 21:20
- Isaiah 21:16-17
- Job 16:13
- Proverbs 26:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1167, H1869, H2671, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:20](#))

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:6
- Genesis 8:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0727, H8392, G27870

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:14; 6:15; 6:16; 6:18; 7:1; 7:9; 7:13; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:23; 8:1; 8:4; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:13; 8:16; 8:19; 9:10; 9:18](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), atonement, holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [Genesis 50:26](#))

ash, ashes

Facts:

The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word “dust” is used with the term “ashes” in the phrase, “dust and ashes.” This phrase can be translated as “dust and ashes” or simply as “ashes.”
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: [fire](#), [sackcloth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Psalms 102:9
- Psalms 113:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0080, H0665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G28680, G47000, G50770, G55220

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:27](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterranean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Zilpah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:13](#); [35:26](#); [46:17](#); [49:20](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Genesis 28:3](#); [35:11](#); [48:4](#); [49:1](#); [49:2](#); [49:6](#); [49:29](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:14](#); [10:11](#); [10:22](#); [25:3](#); [25:18](#))

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, [just](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [Genesis 4 General Notes](#); [4:15](#); [4:24](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 7:43
- Daniel 1:2
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 1:11
- Matthew 1:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:6** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:9** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H0894, H0895, H0896, G08970

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [11:9](#))

barren, dry

Definition:

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:5
- Galatians 4:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 3:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G06920, G47230

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:30](#); [25:21](#); [29:31](#))

basket, basketfuls

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 9:25
- Amos 8:1
- John 6:13-15
- Judges 6:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G28940, G34260, G45530, G47110

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:16](#); [40:17](#); [40:18](#))

bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, [fruit](#), [iniquity](#), [report](#), [sheep](#), [strength](#), [testimony](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- Lamentations 3:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G01420, G04300, G09410, G10800, G16270, G25920, G31400, G41600, G47220, G48280, G50410, G50880, G53420, G54090, G55760

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:16](#); [4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:13](#); [4:17](#); [4:18](#); [4:20](#); [4:22](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [6:1](#); [6:4](#); [10:1](#); [10:21](#); [14:14](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [17:19](#); [17:21](#); [17:23](#); [17:27](#); [18:13](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [20:17](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [21:7](#); [21:9](#); [22:20](#); [22:24](#); [24:15](#); [24:24](#); [24:36](#); [24:47](#); [25:2](#); [25:12](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:1](#); [30:3](#); [30:5](#); [30:7](#); [30:9](#); [30:10](#); [30:12](#); [30:17](#); [30:19](#); [30:20](#); [30:21](#); [30:23](#); [30:25](#); [30:39](#); [31:8](#); [31:43](#); [34:1](#); [35:16](#); [35:17](#); [35:26](#); [36:4](#); [36:5](#); [36:12](#); [36:14](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:27](#); [38:28](#); [40:20](#); [41:50](#); [44:27](#); [46:15](#); [46:18](#); [46:20](#); [46:22](#); [46:25](#); [46:27](#); [48:5](#); [50:23](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, [reveal](#), Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:2](#); [7:8](#); [8:20](#); [34:23](#); [36:6](#); [45:17](#); [47:18](#))

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Abraham](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 3:20
- 2 Samuel 17:11
- Genesis 21:14
- Genesis 21:31
- Genesis 46:1
- Nehemiah 11:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0884

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:14](#); [21:31](#); [21:32](#); [21:33](#); [22:19](#); [26:23](#); [26:33](#); [28:10](#); [46:1](#); [46:5](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”

- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 9:16-18
- Habakkuk 1:5-7
- Mark 6:4-6
- Mark 1:14-15
- Luke 9:41
- John 1:12
- Acts 6:5
- Acts 9:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 3:3
- 1 Corinthians 6:1
- 1 Corinthians 9:5
- 2 Corinthians 6:15
- Hebrews 3:12
- 1 John 3:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **4:8** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:6** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:1** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:3** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:6** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:1** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:9** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus.
- **46:9** It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0540, G05430, G05440, G05690, G05700, G05710, G39820, G41000, G41020, G41030, G41350

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 15:6; Notes](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:18](#); [35:24](#); [42:4](#); [42:36](#); [43:14](#); [43:15](#); [43:16](#); [43:29](#); [43:34](#); [44:12](#); [45:12](#); [45:14](#); [45:22](#); [46:19](#); [46:21](#); [49:27](#))

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:8](#); [13:3](#); [28:19](#); [31:13](#); [35:1](#); [35:3](#); [35:6](#); [35:7](#); [35:8](#); [35:15](#); [35:16](#))

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 7:42
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 2:16
- Ruth 1:2
- Ruth 1:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:4** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:6** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0376, H0672, H1035, G09650

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:19](#))

Bethuel

Facts:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), [Laban](#), [Nahor](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 4:30
- Genesis 28:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1328

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:22](#); [22:23](#); [24:15](#); [24:24](#); [24:47](#); [24:50](#); [25:20](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#))

Bilhah

Facts:

Bilhah was one of Jacob's wives. She gave birth to Dan and Naphtali, two sons of Jacob whose descendants became tribes of Israel.

- Laban gave Bilhah to Rachel as a servant when Rachel married Jacob.
- Because Rachel was not having children, she gave Bilhah to Jacob as a wife in order to produce children for her.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#), [Dan](#), [Naphtali](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:29
- Genesis 30:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1090

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:29](#); [30:3](#); [30:4](#); [30:5](#); [30:7](#); [35:22](#); [35:25](#); [37:2](#); [46:25](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:9](#); [37:7](#); [42:24](#); [44:30](#); [49:11](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:28](#))

birthright

Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:1
- Genesis 25:34
- Genesis 43:33
- Hebrews 12:14-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1062, G44150

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 25 General Notes](#); [25:31](#); [25:32](#); [25:33](#); [25:34](#); [Notes](#); [27:36](#); [43:33](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Genesis 9 General Notes](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [37:22](#); [37:26](#); [37:31](#); [42:22](#))

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 7:23
- Psalm 51:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G18130

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:7](#); [7:4](#); [7:23](#))

body

Definition:

The term “body” refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or to a group consisting of individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [hand](#); [face](#); [loins](#); [righthand](#); [tongue](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- Ephesians 4:4
- Judges 14:8
- Numbers 6:6-8
- Psalm 31:9
- Romans 12:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G44300, G49540, G49830, G55590

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:11](#))

bow and arrow, a bow

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:16
- Habakkuk 3:9-10
- Job 29:20-22
- Lamentations 2:4
- Psalms 58:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G51150

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:16](#); [21:16](#); [27:3](#); [48:22](#); [49:23](#); [49:24](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:2](#); [19:1](#); [23:7](#); [23:12](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#); [24:52](#); [27:29](#); [33:3](#); [33:6](#); [33:7](#); [37:7](#); [37:9](#); [37:10](#); [41:43](#); [42:6](#); [43:26](#); [43:28](#); [44:14](#); [47:31](#); [48:12](#); [49:8](#); [50:18](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19; 14:18; 18:5; 21:14; 25:34; 27:17; 28:20; 31:54; 37:25; 39:6; 40:16; 41:54; 41:55; 43:25; 43:31; 43:32; 45:23; 47:12; 47:13; 47:15; 47:17; 47:19; 49:20](#))

breath, breathe

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “breathe” and “breath” are often used figuratively to refer to giving life or having life.

- The Bible teaches that God “breathed into” Adam the breath of life. It was at that point that Adam became a living soul.
- When Jesus breathed on the disciples and told them to “receive the Spirit,” he was probably literally breathing out air onto them to symbolize the Holy Spirit coming to them.
- Sometimes the terms “breathing” and “breathing out” are used to refer to speaking.
- The figurative expression “breath of God” or “breath of Yahweh” often refers to God’s wrath being poured out on rebellious or godless nations. It communicates his power.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “breathed his last” is a figurative way of saying “he died.” It could also be translated as “he took his last breath” or “he stopped breathing and died” or “he breathed in air one last time.”
- Describing the Scriptures as “God-breathed” means that God spoke or inspired the words of the Scriptures which human authors then wrote down. It is probably best, if possible, to translate “God-breathed” somewhat literally since it is difficult to communicate the exact meaning of this.
- If a literal translation of “God-breathed” is not acceptable, other ways to translate this could include “inspired by God” or “authored by God” or “spoken by God.” It could also be said that “God breathed out the words of Scripture.”
- The expressions “put breath in” or “breathe life into” or “gives breath to” could be translated as “cause to breathe” or “make alive again” or “enable them to live and breathe” or “give life to.”
- If possible, it is best to translate “breath of God” with the literal word that is used for “breath” in the language. If God cannot be said to have “breath,” this could be translated as “God’s power” or “God’s speech.”
- The expression “catch my breath” or “get my breath” could be translated as “relax in order to breathe more slowly” or “stop running in order to breathe normally.”
- The expression “is only a breath” means “lasts a very short time.”
- Similarly the expression “man is a single breath” means “people live a very short time” or “the lives of human beings are very short, like a single breath” or “compared to God, the life of a person seems as short as the time it takes to breathe in one breath of air.”

(See also: [Adam](#), Paul, word of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:17
- Ecclesiastes 8:8
- Job 4:9
- Revelation 11:11
- Revelation 13:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3307, H5301, H5396, H5397, H7307, G17200, G41570

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:7; 7:22](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:22](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:10](#); [4:11](#); [4:21](#); [9:5](#); [9:22](#); [9:25](#); [10:21](#); [10:25](#); [12:5](#); [13:8](#); [13:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:14](#); [14:16](#); [16:12](#); [19:7](#); [20:5](#); [20:13](#); [20:16](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:23](#); [24:15](#); [24:27](#); [24:29](#); [24:48](#); [24:53](#); [24:55](#); [25:18](#); [25:26](#); [26:31](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:23](#); [27:29](#); [27:30](#); [27:35](#); [27:37](#); [27:40](#); [27:41](#); [27:42](#); [27:43](#); [27:44](#); [27:45](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [29:4](#); [29:10](#); [29:12](#);

29:15; 31:23; 31:25; 31:32; 31:37; 31:46; 31:54; 32:3; 32:6; 32:11; 32:13; 32:17; 33:3; 33:9; 34:11; 34:25; 35:1; 35:7; 36:6; 37:2; 37:4; 37:5; 37:8; 37:9; 37:10; 37:11; 37:12; 37:13; 37:14; 37:16; 37:17; 37:19; 37:23; 37:26; 37:27; 37:30; 38:1; 38:8; 38:9; 38:29; 38:30; 42:3; 42:4; 42:6; 42:7; 42:8; 42:13; 42:15; 42:16; 42:19; 42:20; 42:21; 42:28; 42:32; 42:33; 42:34; 42:38; 43:3; 43:4; 43:5; 43:6; 43:7; 43:13; 43:14; 43:29; 43:30; 44:14; 44:19; 44:20; 44:23; 44:26; 44:33; 45:1; 45:3; 45:4; 45:12; 45:14; 45:15; 45:16; 45:17; 45:24; 46:31; 47:1; 47:2; 47:3; 47:5; 47:6; 47:11; 47:12; 48:6; 48:19; 48:22; 49:5; 49:8; 49:26; 50:8; 50:14; 50:15; 50:17; 50:18; 50:24)

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:11](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:20](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:13](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:15](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:19](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [35:4](#); [35:8](#); [35:19](#); [35:29](#); [47:29](#); [47:30](#); [48:7](#); [49:29](#); [49:31](#); [50:5](#); [50:6](#); [50:7](#); [50:13](#); [50:14](#))

Cain

Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:1](#); [4:2](#); [4:3](#); [4:5](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:9](#); [4:13](#); [4:15](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:24](#); [4:25](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: Genesis 1:5; 1:8; 1:10; 2:19; 2:20; 2:23; 3:9; 3:20; 4:17; 4:25; 4:26; 5:2; 5:3; 5:29; 11:9; 12:8; 12:18; 13:4; 16:11; 16:13; 16:14; 16:15; 17:5; 17:15; 17:19; 19:5; 19:22; 19:37; 19:38; 20:8; 20:9; 21:3; 21:12; 21:17; 21:31; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 24:57; 24:58; 25:25; 25:26; 25:30; 26:9; 26:18; 26:20; 26:21; 26:25; 26:33; 27:1; 27:36; 27:42; 28:1; 28:19; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:6; 30:8; 30:11; 30:13; 30:18; 30:20; 30:21; 30:24; 31:4; 31:47; 31:48; 31:54; 32:2; 32:28; 32:30; 33:17; 33:20; 35:7; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:18; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:29; 38:30; 39:14; 41:8; 41:14; 41:43; 41:45; 41:51; 41:52; 45:1; 46:33; 47:29; 48:6; 48:16; 49:1; 50:11)

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:21
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 3:4
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G25740

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:16](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:14](#); [24:19](#); [24:20](#); [24:22](#); [24:30](#); [24:31](#); [24:32](#); [24:35](#); [24:44](#); [24:46](#); [24:61](#); [24:63](#); [24:64](#); [30:43](#); [31:17](#); [31:34](#); [32:7](#); [32:15](#); [37:25](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:18; 9:22; 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 10:6; 10:15; 10:18; 10:19; 11:31; 12:5; 12:6; 13:7; 13:12; 15:21; 16:3; 17:8; 23:2; 23:19; 24:3; 24:37; 28:1; 28:6; 28:8; 31:18; 33:18; 34:30; 35:6; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 37:1; 38:2; 42:5; 42:7; 42:13; 42:29; 42:32; 44:8; 45:17; 45:25; 46:6; 46:10; 46:12; 46:31; 47:1; 47:4; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 48:3; 48:7; 49:30; 50:5; 50:11; 50:13](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:14](#); [31:26](#); [34:29](#))

cast out, driving out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagog or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:17-19
- Mark 3:13-16
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G15440

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:24](#); [4:14](#); [21:10](#); [37:20](#); [37:22](#); [37:24](#))

caught up

Definition:

The term “caught up” often refers to God taking a person up to heaven in a sudden, miraculous way.

- The phrase “caught up with” refers to coming up to someone after hurrying to reach him. A term with a similar meaning is “overtake.”
- The apostle Paul talked about being “caught up” to the third heaven. This could also be translated as “taken up.”
- Paul said that when Christ comes back, Christians will be “caught up” together to meet him in the air.
- The figurative expression, “my sins have caught up with me” could be translated as “I am receiving the consequences of my sin” or “because of my sin I am suffering” or “my sin is causing me trouble.”

(see: miracle, [overtake](#), suffer, [trouble](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:1-2
- Acts 8:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1692, G07260

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:23](#))

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Shinar](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:4-5
- Ezekiel 1:1
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G54660

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:28](#); [11:31](#); [15:7](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 8:29
- Acts 8:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G07160, G44800

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:43](#); [46:29](#); [50:9](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:24](#))

chief, leader

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [head](#), chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:2
- Psalm 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G07490, G07500, G07540, G44100, G44130, G55060

(Go back to: [Genesis 36:15](#); [36:16](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:19](#); [36:21](#); [36:29](#); [36:30](#); [36:40](#); [36:41](#); [36:42](#); [36:43](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:28
- 3 John 1:4
- Galatians 4:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 8:34-35
- Nehemiah 5:5
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 5:25
- Luke 3:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G07300, G08150, G10250, G10640, G10810, G10850, G14710, G34390, G35150, G35160, G38080, G38120, G38130, G38160, G50400, G50410, G50420, G50430, G50440, G52060, G52070, G53880

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:30](#); [21:8](#); [21:14](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:23](#); [30:26](#); [33:1](#); [33:2](#); [33:5](#); [33:6](#); [33:7](#); [33:13](#); [33:14](#); [34:29](#); [44:20](#); [46:5](#); [47:12](#); [47:24](#); [48:6](#); [50:8](#); [50:21](#))

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Abraham, covenant](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48

- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 5:3
- Judges 15:18
- 2 Samuel 1:20
- Jeremiah 9:26
- Ezekiel 32:25
- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:3
- Acts 15:1
- Acts 11:3
- Romans 2:27
- Galatians 5:3
- Ephesians 2:11
- Philippians 3:3
- Colossians 2:11
- Colossians 2:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:3** “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- **5:5** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G02030, G05640, G19860, G40590, G40610

(Go back to: [Genesis 17 General Notes](#); [17:10](#); [17:11](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:23](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [21:4](#); [Notes](#); [34:15](#); [34:17](#); [34:22](#); [34:24](#))

cistern, well

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, [prison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0883, H0953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G40770, G54210

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:14](#); [21:19](#); [21:25](#); [21:30](#); [24:11](#); [24:20](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:25](#); [26:32](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:8](#); [29:10](#); [37:20](#); [37:22](#); [37:24](#); [37:28](#); [37:29](#))

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:5](#); [10:18](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [12:3](#); [24:38](#); [24:40](#); [24:41](#); [28:14](#); [36:40](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](#), demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Genesis 7 General Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [8:20](#); [18:4](#); [19:2](#); [24:32](#); [43:24](#); [43:31](#))

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G02940, G14630, G15620, G17370, G17420, G17460, G19020, G20660, G22240, G24390, G24400, G40160, G47490, G55090

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:21](#); [9:23](#); [27:15](#); [27:16](#); [27:27](#); [28:20](#); [35:2](#); [37:29](#); [37:34](#); [38:14](#); [38:19](#); [39:12](#); [39:13](#); [39:15](#); [39:16](#); [39:18](#); [41:14](#); [41:42](#); [44:13](#); [45:22](#); [49:11](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:26](#); [28:18](#); [28:22](#); [31:13](#); [31:45](#); [31:51](#); [31:52](#); [35:14](#); [35:20](#))

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 1:4
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G03020, G38700, G38740, G38750, G38880, G38900, G39310

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:29](#); [24:67](#); [27:42](#); [37:35](#); [38:12](#); [50:21](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:16](#); [3:11](#); [3:17](#); [6:22](#); [7:5](#); [7:9](#); [7:16](#); [12:20](#); [18:19](#); [21:4](#); [24:53](#); [26:5](#); [26:11](#); [27:8](#); [28:1](#); [28:6](#); [32:4](#); [32:17](#); [32:19](#); [41:46](#); [42:25](#); [44:1](#); [45:19](#); [47:11](#); [48:12](#); [49:29](#); [49:33](#); [50:2](#); [50:12](#); [50:16](#); [50:24](#))

companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 1:9
- Proverbs 2:17
- Psalms 38:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G28440, G33530, G48980, G49040

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:3](#); [11:7](#); [26:26](#); [31:49](#); [38:20](#); [43:33](#))

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 1:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 5:9-11
- Jonah 4:1-3
- Mark 1:41
- Romans 9:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G16530, G33560, G36270, G46970, G48340, G48350

(Go back to: [Genesis 43:14](#); [43:30](#))

conceive, conception

Definition:

The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: [create](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 2:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 1:24-25
- Luke 2:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G10800, G17220, G28450, G48150

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:1](#); [4:17](#); [16:4](#); [16:5](#); [16:11](#); [19:36](#); [21:2](#); [25:21](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:5](#); [30:7](#); [30:17](#); [30:19](#); [30:23](#); [30:41](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:18](#); [38:24](#); [38:25](#); [49:26](#))

concubine

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:7
- Genesis 22:24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:24](#); [25:6](#); [35:22](#); [36:12](#))

contempt, contemptible, not worth listening to

Facts:

The term “contempt” refers to a deep disrespect and dishonor that is shown toward something or someone. Something that is greatly dishonorable is called “contemptible.”

- A person or behavior that shows open disrespect for God is also called “contemptible” and could be translated as “greatly disrespectful” or “completely dishonorable” or “deserving scorn.”
- To “hold in contempt” means to regard someone as having less value or to judge someone as less worthy than oneself.
- The following expressions have a similar meaning: “have contempt for” or “show contempt for” or “be in contempt of” or “treat with contempt.” These all mean to “strongly disrespect” or “strongly dishonor” something or someone by what is said and done.
- When King David sinned by committing adultery and murder, God said that David had “shown contempt for” God. It means he had greatly disrespected and dishonored God by doing that.

(See also: dishonor)

Bible References:

- Daniel 12:1-2
- Proverbs 15:5-6
- Psalms 31:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0936, H0937, H0959, H0963, H1860, H7043, H7589, H5006, G18480

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:3](#); [25:34](#); [38:23](#))

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:11](#); [6:12](#))

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 3:2
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:9
- Matthew 5:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4186, H5475, G10100, G48240, G48920

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:6](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, [judge](#), [king](#), tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:16](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:18; Notes; 9:9; 9:11; 9:12; 9:13; 9:15; 9:16; 9:17; Notes; Notes; 14:13; Notes; 15:18; Notes; 17:2; 17:4; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 17:14; 17:19; 17:21; Notes; 21:27; 21:32; Notes; Notes; 26:28; Notes; Notes; 31:44; Notes; Notes; Notes](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:13](#); [21:23](#); [24:12](#); [24:14](#); [24:27](#); [24:49](#); [Notes](#); [32:10](#); [Notes](#); [39:21](#); [Notes](#); [47:29](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:16](#); [13:5](#); [15:9](#); [18:7](#); [18:8](#); [20:14](#); [21:27](#); [24:35](#); [26:14](#); [32:5](#); [32:7](#); [32:15](#); [33:13](#); [34:28](#); [41:2](#); [41:3](#); [41:4](#); [41:18](#); [41:19](#); [41:20](#); [41:26](#); [41:27](#); [45:10](#); [46:32](#); [47:1](#); [47:17](#); [49:6](#); [50:8](#))

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1](#); [1:21](#); [1:27](#); [2:3](#); [2:4](#); [5:1](#); [5:2](#); [6:7](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- It can also mean to pray.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#), [pray](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:9
- Mark 5:5-6
- Mark 6:48-50
- Psalm 22:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G03100, G03490, G08630, G09940, G09950, G19160, G20190, G27990, G28050, G28960, G29050, G29060, G29290, G43770, G54550

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 4:10](#); [18:20](#); [18:21](#); [19:13](#); [27:34](#); [39:14](#); [39:15](#); [39:18](#); [41:55](#))

cupbearer

Definition:

In Old Testament times, a “cupbearer” was a king’s servant who was given the task of bringing the king his cup of wine, usually tasting the wine first to make sure it had not been poisoned.

- In English, the term cupbearer literally means “cup bringer” or “someone who brings the cup.”
- A cupbearer was known for being very trustworthy and loyal to his king.
- Because of his trusted position, a cupbearer would often have influence in the decisions the ruler made.
- Nehemiah was the cupbearer for King Artaxerxes of Persia during the time when some of the Israelites were in captivity in Babylon.

(See also: Artaxerxes, [Babylon](#), [captive](#), Persia, [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:3-5
- Nehemiah 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8248

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:1](#); [40:2](#); [40:5](#); [40:9](#); [40:13](#); [40:20](#); [40:21](#); [40:23](#); [41:9](#))

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:16
- Acts 8:6
- Luke 5:13
- Luke 6:19
- Luke 8:43
- Matthew 4:23-25
- Matthew 9:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:6** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.”
- **26:8** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!”
- **44:3** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:8** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
- **49:2** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H0622, G12950, G17430, G23220, G23230, G23860, G23900, G23920, G25110, G36470, G49820, G51980, G51990

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:17](#); [50:2](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#); [3:14](#); [3:17](#); [4:11](#); [5:29](#); [8:21](#); [9:25](#); [12:3](#); [27:12](#); [27:13](#); [27:29](#); [49:7](#))

Cush

Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have, at different times, included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), Ethiopia)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:8-10
- Ezekiel 29:10
- Genesis 2:13
- Genesis 10:6-7
- Jeremiah 13:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3570, 3571

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:13](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:14](#); [41:36](#))

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Assyria](#), [believe](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 9:1-2
- Acts 9:3
- Acts 26:12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1834, G11540

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:15](#); [15:2](#))

Dan

Facts:

Dan was Jacob's fifth son. He was Bilhah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "judge."
- The tribe of Dan settled in the northern part of Canaan. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Dan" refers to the land given to the tribe of Dan.
- "Dan" was also the name an Israelite city located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem. In the Old Testament times, the city of Dan served as a landmark for the northern boundary of the country of Israel, opposite the city of Beersheba as a landmark for the southern boundary.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Bilhah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:35
- 1 Kings 4:25
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 14:14
- Genesis 30:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:14](#); [30:6](#); [35:25](#); [46:23](#); [49:17](#))

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:6
- 1 John 2:8
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 1:13
- Isaiah 5:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 8:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0652, H0653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G22170, G46520, G46530, G46550, G46560

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:2](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:18](#); [15:12](#))

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

(Go back to: [Genesis](#) 1:5; 1:8; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:18; 1:19; 1:23; 1:31; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:17; 3:5; 3:8; 3:14; 3:17; 4:3; 4:14; 5:1; 5:2; 5:4; 5:5; 5:8; 5:11; 5:14; 5:17; 5:20; 5:23; 5:27; 5:31; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 7:4; 7:10; 7:11; 7:12; 7:13; 7:17; 7:24; 8:3; 8:4; 8:6; 8:10; 8:12; 8:14; 8:22; 9:29; 10:25; 11:32; 14:1; 15:18; 17:12; 17:23; 17:26; 18:1; 19:37; 19:38; 21:4; 21:8; 21:26; 21:34; 22:4; 22:14; 24:1; 24:12; 24:42; 24:55; 25:7; 25:24; 25:31; 25:33; 26:1; 26:8; 26:15; 26:18; 26:32; 26:33; 27:2; 27:41; 27:44; 27:45; 29:7; 29:14; 29:20; 29:21; 30:14; 30:32; 30:33; 30:35; 30:36; 31:22; 31:23; 31:39; 31:40; 31:43; 31:48; 32:32; 33:16; 34:25; 35:3; 35:20; 35:28; 35:29; 37:34; 38:12; 39:10; 39:11; 40:4; 40:7; 40:12; 40:13; 40:18; 40:19; 40:20; 41:1; 41:9; 42:13; 42:17; 42:18; 42:32; 43:9; 44:32; 47:8; 47:9; 47:23; 47:26; 47:28; 47:29; 48:15; 48:20; 49:1; 50:3; 50:4; 50:10; 50:20)

deceive, lie, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:13](#); [21:23](#); [27:35](#); [29:25](#); [31:7](#); [34:13](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, [decree](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:16](#); [26:22](#))

decree, decreed

Definition:

The term “decree” means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a “decree.”

- A “decree” is similar to a “law,” but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term “decree” could be translated as to “order” or to “command” or to “formally require” or to “publicly make a law.”
- God’s laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 8:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 2:13
- Esther 1:22
- Luke 2:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4687, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G13780

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:10](#))

deer, doe, fawns, roebuck

Definition:

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:34
- Genesis 49:21
- Job 39:2
- Psalms 18:33
- Song of Songs 2:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0354, H0355, H0365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:21](#))

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: profane, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:5](#); [34:13](#); [34:27](#); [49:4](#))

delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:9](#); [18:12](#); [34:19](#); [49:6](#); [49:15](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:20](#); [32:11](#); [32:30](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [45:7](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:12](#); [21:23](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:6](#); [16:7](#); [21:14](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [36:24](#); [37:22](#))

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

Definition:

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: [desert](#), devastate, ruin, waste)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 1:20
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Lamentations 3:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0490, H0816, H0910, H1565, H2717, H2720, H2721, H2723, H3173, H3341, H3456, H3582, H4875, H4923, H5352, H5800, H7582, H7701, H7722, H8047, H8074, H8076, H8077, G20480, G20490, G20500, G34430

(Go back to: [Genesis 47:19](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:13](#); [6:17](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [13:10](#); [18:28](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:29](#); [34:30](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: consume)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:15](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: [nominal adjective](#))
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 2:17](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:14](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [5:27](#); [5:31](#); [7:22](#); [9:29](#); [11:28](#); [11:32](#); [18:25](#); [19:19](#); [20:3](#); [20:7](#); [21:16](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [25:8](#); [25:11](#); [25:17](#); [25:32](#); [26:9](#); [26:11](#); [26:18](#); [27:2](#); [27:4](#); [27:7](#); [27:10](#); [30:1](#); [33:13](#); [35:8](#); [35:18](#); [35:19](#); [35:29](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [37:18](#); [38:7](#); [38:10](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [42:2](#); [42:37](#); [42:38](#); [43:8](#); [44:9](#); [44:20](#); [44:22](#); [44:31](#); [45:28](#); [46:12](#); [46:30](#); [47:15](#); [47:19](#); [47:29](#); [48:7](#); [48:21](#); [50:5](#); [50:15](#); [50:16](#); [50:24](#); [50:26](#))

discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

- The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
- It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
- “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: [judge](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 3:7-9
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Proverbs 1:5
- Psalms 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H2940, H4209, H5234, H8085, G03500, G12520, G12530, G29240

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:33](#); [41:39](#))

disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: [believe](#), persecute, [captive](#), exile)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:1
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 18:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G12870, G12900, G46500

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:19; 10:18; 10:32; 11:4; 11:8; 11:9; 49:7](#))

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: [apostle](#), [false god](#), [magic](#), [sorcery](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:1-2
- Acts 16:16
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G44360

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:27](#); [44:5](#); [44:15](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [1:28](#); [3:16](#); [4:7](#); [24:2](#); [37:8](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:16](#); [16:12](#); [22:3](#); [22:5](#); [24:35](#); [30:43](#); [32:5](#); [32:15](#); [34:28](#); [36:24](#); [42:26](#); [42:27](#); [43:18](#); [43:24](#); [44:3](#); [44:13](#); [45:23](#); [47:17](#); [49:11](#); [49:14](#))

dove, pigeon

Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as “a small grayish brown bird called a dove” or “a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)”.
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [olive](#), [innocent](#), [pure](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:9
- Luke 2:22-24
- Mark 1:10
- Matthew 3:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G40580

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:8](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [15:9](#))

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:16-17
- Daniel 1:17-18
- Daniel 2:1
- Genesis 37:6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 2:13
- Matthew 2:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **8:7** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:1** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G17970, G17980, G36770

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:3](#); [20:6](#); [28:12](#); [31:10](#); [31:11](#); [31:24](#); [37:5](#); [37:6](#); [37:8](#); [37:9](#); [37:10](#); [37:19](#); [37:20](#); [40:5](#); [40:8](#); [40:9](#); [40:16](#); [41:1](#); [41:5](#); [41:7](#); [41:8](#); [41:11](#); [41:12](#); [41:15](#); [41:17](#); [41:22](#); [41:25](#); [41:26](#); [41:32](#); [42:9](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), grain offering)

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:14](#))

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: [wine](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 7:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G31780, G31820, G31830, G31840, G36300, G36320

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:21](#); [43:34](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, [heaven](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1](#); [1:2](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:29](#); [1:30](#); [2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:6](#); [2:11](#); [2:12](#); [2:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [6:4](#); [6:5](#); [6:6](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:17](#); [7:3](#); [7:4](#); [7:6](#); [7:10](#); [7:12](#); [7:14](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:24](#); [8:1](#); [8:3](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [8:17](#); [8:19](#); [8:22](#); [9:1](#); [9:2](#); [9:7](#); [9:10](#); [9:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [9:19](#); [10:5](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:20](#); [10:25](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:4](#); [11:8](#); [11:9](#); [11:28](#); [11:31](#); [12:1](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:10](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:9](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [13:17](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [15:7](#); [15:13](#); [15:18](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [18:2](#); [18:18](#); [18:25](#); [19:1](#); [19:23](#); [19:28](#); [19:31](#); [20:1](#); [20:15](#); [21:21](#); [21:23](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [22:2](#); [22:18](#); [23:2](#); [23:7](#); [23:12](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:19](#); [24:3](#); [24:4](#); [24:5](#); [24:7](#); [24:37](#); [24:52](#); [24:62](#); [25:6](#); [26:1](#); [26:2](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:12](#); [26:22](#); [27:28](#); [27:39](#); [27:46](#); [28:4](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [29:1](#); [30:25](#); [31:3](#); [31:13](#); [31:18](#); [32:3](#); [32:9](#); [33:3](#); [33:18](#); [34:1](#); [34:2](#); [34:10](#); [34:21](#); [34:30](#); [35:6](#); [35:12](#); [35:16](#);

35:22; 36:5; 36:6; 36:7; 36:16; 36:17; 36:20; 36:21; 36:30; 36:31; 36:34; 36:43; 37:1; 37:10; 38:9; 40:15; 41:19; 41:29;
41:30; 41:31; 41:33; 41:34; 41:36; 41:41; 41:43; 41:44; 41:45; 41:46; 41:47; 41:48; 41:52; 41:53; 41:54; 41:55; 41:56;
41:57; 42:5; 42:6; 42:7; 42:9; 42:12; 42:13; 42:29; 42:30; 42:32; 42:33; 42:34; 43:1; 43:11; 43:26; 44:8; 44:11; 44:14; 45:6;
45:7; 45:8; 45:10; 45:17; 45:18; 45:19; 45:20; 45:25; 45:26; 46:6; 46:12; 46:20; 46:28; 46:31; 46:34; 47:1; 47:4; 47:6;
47:11; 47:13; 47:14; 47:15; 47:20; 47:27; 47:28; 48:3; 48:4; 48:5; 48:7; 48:12; 48:16; 48:21; 49:15; 49:30; 50:5; 50:7; 50:8;
50:11; 50:13; 50:24)

Eden, garden of Eden

Facts:

In ancient times, Eden was a region that had a garden where God placed the first man and woman to live.

- The garden where Adam and Eve lived was only part of Eden.
- The exact location of the region of Eden is not certain, but the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers were flowing through it.
- The word “Eden” comes from a Hebrew word meaning to “take great delight in.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [Euphrates River](#), [Eve](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:11-13
- Genesis 2:7-8
- Genesis 2:10
- Genesis 2:15
- Genesis 4:16-17
- Joel 2:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5729, H5731

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:8](#); [2:10](#); [2:15](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [4:16](#))

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:30
- Genesis 32:3
- Genesis 36:1
- Isaiah 11:14-15
- Joshua 11:16-17
- Obadiah 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0123, H0130, H8165, G24010

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:30](#); [32:3](#); [36:1](#); [36:8](#); [36:9](#); [36:16](#); [36:17](#); [36:19](#); [36:21](#); [36:31](#); [36:32](#); [36:43](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), [Nile River](#), patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:6](#); [10:13](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:14](#); [13:1](#); [13:10](#); [15:18](#); [16:1](#); [16:3](#); [21:9](#); [21:21](#); [25:12](#); [25:18](#); [26:2](#); [37:25](#); [37:28](#); [37:36](#); [39:1](#); [39:2](#); [39:5](#); [40:1](#); [40:5](#); [41:8](#); [41:19](#); [41:29](#); [41:30](#); [41:33](#); [41:34](#); [41:36](#); [41:41](#); [41:43](#); [41:44](#); [41:45](#); [41:46](#); [41:48](#); [41:53](#); [41:54](#); [41:55](#); [41:56](#); [41:57](#); [42:1](#); [42:2](#); [42:3](#); [43:2](#); [43:15](#); [43:32](#); [45:2](#); [45:4](#); [45:8](#); [45:9](#); [45:13](#); [45:18](#); [45:19](#); [45:20](#); [45:23](#); [45:25](#); [45:26](#); [46:3](#); [46:4](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [46:8](#); [46:20](#); [46:26](#); [46:27](#); [46:34](#); [47:6](#); [47:11](#); [47:13](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:20](#); [47:21](#); [47:26](#); [47:27](#); [47:28](#); [47:29](#); [47:30](#); [48:5](#); [50:3](#); [50:7](#); [50:11](#); [50:14](#); [50:22](#); [50:26](#))

Elam, Elamites

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites,” and they lived in a region that was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located southeast of the Tigris River in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:17-19
- Acts 2:9
- Ezra 8:4-7
- Isaiah 22:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5867, H5962, G16390

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:22](#); [14:1](#); [14:9](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Genesis 50:7](#))

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:17](#); [4:18](#); [5:18](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:24](#); [25:4](#); [46:9](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:14](#))

envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:1](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), [Manasseh](#), kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:52](#); [46:20](#); [48:1](#); [48:5](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:20](#); [50:23](#))

Ephrath, Ephrathah

Facts:

The terms “Ephrath” and “Ephrathah” are probably derived from the name “Ephraim,” who was one of the sons of Joseph and became the patriarch of one of the 12 tribes of Israel. Different

- “Ephrathah” is the name of the region where Rachel died, near the city of Bethel.
- There is a woman named “Ephrath” in the OT, who was the wife of Caleb.
- Both cities of Bethlehem and Kirjath-Jearim are also called “Ephrathah,” even though both cities are in a different region than described above (near Bethel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Boaz, Caleb, David, [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0672, H0673

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:16](#); [35:19](#); [48:7](#))

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:5
- Hebrews 12:17
- Romans 9:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:7** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **7:2** So *Esau* gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **7:4** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **7:5** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **7:10** But *Esau* had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G22690

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:27](#); [25:28](#); [25:29](#); [25:30](#); [25:32](#); [25:34](#); [26:34](#); [27:1](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:15](#); [27:19](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [27:23](#); [27:24](#); [27:30](#); [27:32](#); [27:34](#); [27:37](#); [27:38](#); [27:41](#); [27:42](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:8](#); [28:9](#); [32:3](#); [32:4](#); [32:6](#); [32:8](#); [32:11](#); [32:13](#); [32:17](#); [32:18](#); [32:19](#); [33:1](#); [33:4](#); [33:9](#); [33:15](#); [33:16](#); [35:1](#); [35:29](#); [36:1](#); [36:2](#); [36:4](#); [36:5](#); [36:6](#); [36:8](#); [36:9](#); [36:10](#); [36:12](#); [36:13](#); [36:14](#); [36:15](#); [36:17](#); [36:18](#); [36:19](#); [36:40](#); [36:43](#))

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:22](#); [6:3](#); [9:12](#); [9:16](#); [13:15](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:13](#); [17:19](#); [21:33](#); [48:4](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 2:13-14
- Isaiah 7:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G21660

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:14](#); [15:18](#))

Eve

Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means “life” or “living.”

- God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
- Eve was created to be Adam’s “helper.” She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
- Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [life](#), [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:13
- 2 Corinthians 11:3
- Genesis 3:20
- Genesis 4:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:13** Then God took one of Adam’s ribs and made it into a woman and brought her to him.
- **2:2** But there was a crafty snake in the garden. He asked the woman, “Did God really tell you not to eat the fruit from any of the trees in the garden?”
- **2:11** The man named his wife **Eve**, which means “life-giver,” because she would become the mother of all people.
- **21:1** God promised that a descendant of **Eve** would be born who would crush the snake’s head.
- **48:2** Satan spoke through the snake in the garden in order to deceive **Eve**.
- **49:8** When Adam and **Eve** sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because Adam and **Eve** disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2332, G20960

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:20](#); [4:1](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:9](#); [2:17](#); [3:5](#); [3:22](#); [6:5](#); [8:21](#); [13:13](#); [18:23](#); [18:25](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:19](#); [21:11](#); [21:12](#); [24:50](#); [26:29](#); [28:8](#); [31:7](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [31:52](#); [37:2](#); [37:20](#); [37:33](#); [38:7](#); [38:10](#); [39:9](#); [41:3](#); [41:4](#); [41:19](#); [41:20](#); [41:21](#); [41:27](#); [44:4](#); [44:5](#); [44:34](#); [47:9](#); [48:16](#); [48:17](#); [50:15](#); [50:17](#); [50:20](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:9](#); [20:14](#); [21:27](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [21:30](#); [22:13](#); [29:2](#); [29:3](#); [29:6](#); [29:7](#); [29:8](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [30:32](#); [31:19](#); [31:38](#); [32:14](#); [33:13](#); [38:12](#); [38:13](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:23](#); [31:2](#); [31:5](#); [32:20](#); [32:30](#); [33:10](#); [33:18](#); [38:15](#); [40:7](#); [43:3](#); [43:5](#); [43:31](#); [44:23](#); [44:26](#); [46:30](#); [48:11](#); [50:1](#))

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [Genesis 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Genesis 26 General Notes](#))

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:28](#); [12:1](#); [24:4](#); [24:7](#); [31:3](#); [31:13](#); [32:9](#); [43:7](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 7:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:6
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 4:25
- Matthew 24:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G30420

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:10](#); [26:1](#); [41:27](#); [41:30](#); [41:31](#); [41:36](#); [41:54](#); [41:56](#); [41:57](#); [42:5](#); [42:19](#); [43:1](#); [45:6](#); [45:11](#); [47:4](#); [47:13](#); [47:20](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:7](#); [6:8](#); [Notes](#); [12:13](#); [18:3](#); [19:19](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [30:27](#); [32:5](#); [Notes](#); [33:8](#); [33:10](#); [33:11](#); [33:15](#); [34:11](#); [Notes](#); [39:4](#); [39:21](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [47:25](#); [47:29](#); [50:4](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), [marvel](#), power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:10](#); [9:2](#); [15:1](#); [18:15](#); [19:30](#); [Notes](#); [20:8](#); [20:11](#); [21:17](#); [22:12](#); [26:7](#); [26:24](#); [28:17](#); [31:31](#); [31:42](#); [31:53](#); [32:7](#); [32:11](#); [Notes](#); [35:17](#); [42:18](#); [42:35](#); [43:18](#); [43:23](#); [46:3](#); [50:19](#); [50:21](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:3](#); [21:8](#); [26:30](#); [29:22](#); [40:20](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:7](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:17](#); [19:24](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:4](#); [10:15](#); [22:21](#); [25:13](#); [27:19](#); [27:32](#); [29:26](#); [35:23](#); [36:15](#); [38:6](#); [38:7](#); [41:51](#); [43:33](#); [46:8](#); [48:14](#); [48:18](#); [49:3](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:24](#); [6:3](#); [6:12](#); [6:13](#); [6:17](#); [6:19](#); [7:15](#); [7:16](#); [7:21](#); [8:17](#); [9:4](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [9:17](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [17:14](#); [17:23](#); [17:24](#); [17:25](#); [29:14](#); [37:27](#); [40:19](#); [41:2](#); [41:3](#); [41:4](#); [41:18](#); [41:19](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2; 4:4; 12:16; 13:5; 21:28; 24:35; 26:14; 27:9; 29:2; 29:3; 29:8; 30:31; 30:32; 30:36; 30:38; 30:39; 30:40; 30:41; 30:42; 30:43; 31:4; 31:8; 31:10; 31:12; 31:38; 31:41; 31:43; 32:5; 32:7; 32:16; 32:19; 33:13; 34:28; 37:2; 37:12; 37:14; 38:17; 45:10; 46:32; 46:34; 47:1; 47:3; 47:4; 47:17; 50:8](#))

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don’t let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10
- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3999, G26270

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:17](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:10](#); [7:17](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [9:28](#); [10:1](#); [10:32](#); [11:10](#))

flute, pipe

Definition:

In Bible times, pipes were musical instruments made of bone or wood with holes to allow the sound to come out. A flute was a kind of pipe.

- Most pipes had reeds made out of a kind of thick grass that vibrated as air was blown over it.
- A pipe without any reeds was often called a “flute.”
- A shepherd played a pipe to calm his flocks of sheep.
- Pipes and flutes were used for playing sad or joyful music.

(See also: [flock](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:7
- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- Daniel 3:3-5
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 9:23
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4953, H5748, H2485, H2490, G08320, G08340, G08360

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:21](#))

fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 1:17
- Ephesians 5:15
- Galatians 3:3
- Genesis 31:28
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 25:8
- Proverbs 13:16
- Psalms 49:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0191, H0196, H0200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G04530, G04540, G07810, G08010, G08770, G08780, G27570, G31500, G31540, G34710, G34720, G34730, G34740, G39120

(Go back to: [Genesis 25 General Notes](#); [31:28](#))

forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 5:17-19
- Psalms 25:11
- Psalms 25:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:2
- Luke 5:21
- Acts 8:22
- Ephesians 4:31-32
- Colossians 3:12-14
- 1 John 2:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:1** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:8** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins."

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:24](#); [18:26](#); [50:17](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:27](#); [28:15](#))

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: [flood](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:2](#); [16:7](#); [24:13](#); [24:29](#); [24:30](#); [24:42](#); [24:43](#); [24:45](#); [36:24](#); [49:22](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), Holy Spirit, [vine](#), [womb](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:22](#); [1:28](#); [1:29](#); [3:2](#); [3:3](#); [3:6](#); [4:3](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [9:7](#); [17:6](#); [17:20](#); [26:22](#); [28:3](#); [30:2](#); [35:11](#); [41:52](#); [47:27](#); [48:4](#); [49:22](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:27
- Acts 3:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 4:21
- Matthew 1:22-23
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:4** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:3** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:5** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G10960, G41380

(Go back to: [Genesis 12 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Gad

Facts:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Zilpah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:11](#); [35:26](#); [46:16](#); [49:19](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:1](#); [22:17](#); [23:10](#); [23:18](#); [24:60](#); [28:17](#); [34:20](#); [34:24](#); [38:14](#))

Gaza

Facts:

During Bible times, Gaza was a prosperous Philistine city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 38 kilometers south of Ashdod. It was one of the Philistines' five major cities.

- Because of its location, Gaza was a key seaport where commercial activities took place between many different people groups and nations.
- Today, the city of Gaza is still an important seaport in the Gaza Strip, which is a region of land located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea bordered by Israel on the north and east, and by Egypt on the south.
- Gaza was the city that the Philistines took Samson to after they had captured him.
- Philip the evangelist was walking along the desert road to Gaza when he met an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Philip, [Philistines](#), Ethiopia, Gath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:24-25
- Acts 8:26
- Genesis 10:19
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Judges 6:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5804, H5841, G10480

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:19](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:4](#); [5:1](#); [6:9](#); [7:1](#); [9:12](#); [10:1](#); [10:32](#); [11:10](#); [11:27](#); [15:16](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:12](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:19](#); [36:1](#); [36:9](#); [37:2](#))

Gerar

Facts:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Beersheba](#), [Hebron](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:19](#); [20:1](#); [20:2](#); [26:1](#); [26:6](#); [26:17](#); [26:20](#); [26:26](#))

gift

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1
- 2 Samuel 11:8
- Acts 8:20
- Acts 10:4
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 1:17
- John 4:9-10
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 8:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G03340, G13900, G13940, G14310, G14340, G14350, G33110, G54860

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:3](#); [4:4](#); [4:5](#); [25:6](#); [32:13](#); [32:18](#); [32:20](#); [32:21](#); [33:10](#); [34:12](#); [43:11](#); [43:15](#); [43:25](#); [43:26](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:21](#); [31:23](#); [31:25](#); [37:25](#))

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Ham](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- Deuteronomy 7:1
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Joshua 24:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1622

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [15:21](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: [honor](#), majesty, exalt, [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Genesis 40 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
 - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
 - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
 - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 3:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0689, H1423, H1429, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G01220, G20550, G20560, G51310

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:9](#); [27:9](#); [27:16](#); [30:32](#); [30:33](#); [30:35](#); [31:10](#); [31:12](#); [31:38](#); [32:14](#); [37:31](#); [38:17](#); [38:20](#); [38:23](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [false god](#), [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), [Son of God](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: Genesis 1:1; 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 1:24; 1:25; 1:26; 1:27; 1:28; 1:29; 1:31; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:3; 3:5; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:25; 5:1; 5:22; 5:24; 6:2; 6:4; 6:9; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:22; 7:9; 7:16; 8:1; 8:15; 9:1; 9:6; 9:8; 9:12; 9:16; 9:17; 9:26; 9:27; 14:18; 14:19; 14:20; 14:22; 16:13; 17:1; 17:3; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:15; 17:18; 17:19; 17:22; 17:23; 19:29; 20:3; 20:6; 20:11; 20:13; 20:17; 21:2; 21:4; 21:6; 21:12; 21:17; 21:19; 21:20; 21:22; 21:23; 21:33; 22:1; 22:3; 22:8; 22:9; 22:12; 23:6; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:27; 24:42; 24:48; 25:11; 26:24; 27:20; 27:28; 28:3; 28:4; 28:12; 28:13; 28:17; 28:20; 28:21; 28:22; 30:2; 30:6; 30:8; 30:17; 30:18; 30:20; 30:22; 30:23; 31:5; 31:7; 31:9; 31:11; 31:13; 31:16; 31:24; 31:29; 31:42; 31:50; 31:53; 32:1; 32:2; 32:9; 32:28; 32:30; 33:5; 33:10; 33:11; 33:20; 35:1; 35:3; 35:5; 35:7; 35:9; 35:10; 35:11; 35:13; 35:15; 39:9; 40:8; 41:16; 41:25; 41:28; 41:32; 41:38; 41:39; 41:51; 41:52; 42:18; 42:28; 43:14; 43:23; 43:29; 44:16; 45:5; 45:7; 45:8; 45:9; 46:1; 46:2; 46:3; 48:3; 48:9; 48:11; 48:15; 48:20; 48:21; 49:25; 50:17; 50:19; 50:20; 50:24; 50:25)

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Genesis 24 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [31:30](#); [31:32](#); [31:53](#); [35:2](#); [35:4](#))

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: [nominaladj](#))
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”
- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also [evil](#), [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

(Go back to: [Genesis 44 General Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:12](#); [13:2](#); [24:22](#); [24:35](#); [24:53](#); [41:42](#); [44:8](#))

Gomorrah

Facts:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [Lot](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sodom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:19](#); [13:10](#); [14:2](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [18:20](#); [19:24](#); [19:28](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:4](#); [1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:18](#); [1:21](#); [1:25](#); [1:31](#); [2:9](#); [2:12](#); [2:17](#); [2:18](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:22](#); [4:7](#); [6:2](#); [12:16](#); [15:15](#); [16:6](#); [18:7](#); [20:15](#); [24:10](#); [24:16](#); [24:50](#); [25:8](#); [26:7](#); [26:29](#); [27:9](#); [29:19](#); [30:20](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [32:9](#); [32:12](#); [34:18](#); [40:14](#); [40:16](#); [41:5](#); [41:22](#); [41:24](#); [41:26](#); [41:35](#); [41:37](#); [44:4](#); [45:16](#); [45:18](#); [45:20](#); [45:23](#); [47:6](#); [47:11](#); [49:15](#); [50:20](#))

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [famine](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 8:22-24
- Genesis 45:11
- Genesis 47:2
- Genesis 50:7-9
- Joshua 10:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

(Go back to: [Genesis 45:10](#); [46:28](#); [46:29](#); [46:34](#); [47:1](#); [47:4](#); [47:6](#); [47:27](#); [50:8](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Genesis 36 General Notes; 43:29](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:28](#); [27:37](#); [41:5](#); [41:6](#); [41:7](#); [41:22](#); [41:23](#); [41:24](#); [41:26](#); [41:27](#); [41:35](#); [41:49](#); [42:1](#); [42:2](#); [42:3](#); [42:19](#); [42:25](#); [42:26](#); [43:2](#); [44:2](#); [45:23](#); [47:14](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:10](#); [40:11](#); [49:11](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:29-31
- Genesis 23:6
- Genesis 50:5
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 5:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 3:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:4** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:6** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:7** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:9** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:4** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:5** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G34180, G34190, G50280

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:9](#); [23:20](#); [35:20](#); [47:30](#); [49:30](#); [50:5](#); [50:13](#))

Greece, Grecian

Facts:

During New Testament times, Greece was a province in the Roman Empire.

- Like the modern-day country of Greece, it was located on a peninsula that is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea, the Aegean Sea, and the Ionian Sea.
- The apostle Paul visited several cities in Greece and established churches in the cities of Corinth, Thessalonica, and Philippi and probably others.
- People who are from Greece are called "Greeks" and their language is "Greek." People from other Roman provinces also spoke Greek, including many Jews.
- Sometimes the term "Greek" is used to refer to a Gentile.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Corinth, Gentile, Greek, [Hebrew](#), Philippi, Thessalonica)

Bible References:

- Daniel 8:21
- Daniel 10:20-21
- Daniel 11:1-2
- Zechariah 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3120, G16710

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:2](#); [10:4](#))

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 6:7
- James 2:10-11
- John 19:4
- Jonah 1:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.”
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0816, H0817, H0818, H5352, H5355, H7563, G03380, G17770, G37840, G52670

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:10](#); [42:21](#))

had relations with, lovemaking, sleep with, lie with

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- The expression “sleep with” someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book “Song of Songs,” the ULT uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression “make love to.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:1-2
- 1 Samuel 1:19
- Deuteronomy 21:13
- Genesis 19:5
- Matthew 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0160, H0935, H1540, H2181, H2233, H3045, H3212, H6172, H7250, H7901, H7903, G10970

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:2; 16:4; 19:32; 19:33; 19:34; 19:35; 26:10; 29:21; 29:23; 29:30; 30:3; 30:4; 30:15; 30:16; 34:2; 34:7; 35:22; 38:2; 38:8; 38:9; 38:16; 38:18; 39:7; 39:10; 39:12; 39:14](#))

Hagar

Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [Ishmael](#), [Sarah](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:9
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:2 Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:1](#); [16:3](#); [16:4](#); [16:8](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [21:9](#); [21:14](#); [21:17](#); [25:12](#))

Ham

Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [Canaan](#), [dishonor](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2526

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:32](#); [6:10](#); [7:13](#); [9:18](#); [9:22](#); [10:1](#); [10:6](#); [10:20](#))

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), Nebuchadnezzar, Syria, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 8:9
- Amos 6:1-2
- Ezekiel 47:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:18](#))

Hamor

Facts:

Hamor was a Canaanite man living in the city of Shechem when Jacob and his family were living in nearby Succoth. He was a Hivite.

- Jacob bought a family burial ground from Hamor's sons.
- While they were there, Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah.
- Dinah's brothers took revenge on Hamor's family and killed all the men in the city of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Shechem](#), [Succoth](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 34:2
- Genesis 34:21
- Joshua 24:32-33
- Judges 9:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2544

(Go back to: [Genesis 33:19](#); [34:2](#); [34:4](#); [34:6](#); [34:8](#); [34:13](#); [34:18](#); [34:20](#); [34:24](#); [34:26](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, [right hand](#), [honor](#), [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: Genesis 3:22; 4:11; 5:29; 8:9; 9:2; 9:5; 14:20; 14:22; 16:6; 16:9; 16:12; 19:10; 19:16; 20:5; 21:18; 21:30; 22:6; 22:10; 22:12; 24:2; 24:9; 24:10; 24:18; 24:22; 24:30; 24:47; 25:26; 27:16; 27:17; 27:22; 27:23; 30:35; 31:29; 31:39; 31:42; 32:11; 32:13; 32:16; 33:10; 33:19; 35:4; 37:21; 37:22; 37:27; 38:18; 38:20; 38:28; 38:29; 38:30; 39:1; 39:3; 39:4; 39:6; 39:8; 39:12; 39:13; 39:22; 39:23; 40:11; 40:13; 40:21; 41:42; 43:12; 43:15; 43:21; 43:22; 43:26; 44:16; 44:17; 46:4; 47:29; 48:14; 48:17; 48:22; 49:8; 49:24)

hang, hung

Definition:

The term “hang” means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- In modern times, death by hanging is usually done by tying a rope around a person’s neck and suspending him from an elevated object until he dies. This elevated object can be any number of things, such as a tree or a gallows, that is, a platform built specifically for the purpose of hanging a person in order to kill him.
- In biblical times, however, ancient cultures may not have killed people by hanging in precisely the same way. For example, Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross (sometimes called a “tree”), but there was nothing around his neck. The soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- Some ancient cultures “hung” a person by impaling him on a wooden pole in such a way that he was suspended above the ground so that he could not escape. The person would be left there until he died.
- For many references to death by “hanging” in the Bible, the specific means of death is unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39
- Galatians 3:13
- Genesis 40:22
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2614, H3363, H8518, G05190

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:19](#); [40:22](#); [41:13](#))

Haran

Facts:

Haran was a younger brother of Abram and the father of Lot.

- Haran was also the name of the town where Abram and his family lived awhile on their journey from the city of Ur to the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Haran was a son of Caleb.
- A third man in the Bible named Haran was a descendant of Levi.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Caleb](#), [Canaan](#), [Levite](#), [Lot](#), [Terah](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:12
- Acts 7:1-3
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 27:43-45
- Genesis 28:10-11
- Genesis 29:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2039

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:26](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [11:29](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [27:43](#); [28:10](#); [29:4](#))

hard, harden, hardness

Definition:

The term “hard” generally refers to something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The use of “hard” (in various forms) with “heart” refers to people being stubbornly unrepentant or disobedient (usually) to God.
- When used as a modifier, its meaning is similar to “great effort.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:7
- Exodus 14:4
- Hebrews 4:7
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G09170, G14190, G14210, G14220, G14230, G22050, G25320, G25530, G28720, G28730, G34250, G34330, G40530, G41830, G44560, G44570, G46410, G46420, G46430, G46450, G49120

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:14](#))

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 9:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 5:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9
- Matthew 9:38
- Ruth 1:22
- Galatians 6:9-10
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G02700, G23250, G23260, G23270

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:22](#); [26:12](#); [30:14](#); [45:6](#))

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:10](#); [3:15](#); [8:5](#); [11:4](#); [28:12](#); [28:18](#); [40:13](#); [40:16](#); [40:17](#); [40:19](#); [40:20](#); [47:31](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#); [49:26](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:5](#); [6:6](#); [8:21](#); [17:17](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [24:45](#); [27:41](#); [31:20](#); [31:26](#); [34:3](#); [45:26](#); [50:21](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:1](#); [1:8](#); [1:9](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:17](#); [1:20](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:30](#); [2:1](#); [2:4](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [6:7](#); [6:17](#); [Notes](#); [7:3](#); [7:11](#); [7:19](#); [7:23](#); [8:2](#); [9:2](#); [11:4](#); [Notes](#); [14:19](#); [14:22](#); [15:5](#); [19:24](#); [21:17](#); [22:11](#); [22:15](#); [22:17](#); [24:3](#); [24:7](#); [26:4](#); [27:28](#); [27:39](#); [28:12](#); [28:17](#); [49:25](#))

Hebrew

Facts:

The term “Hebrew” refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word “Hebrew” can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called “Hebrew.” However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term “Hebrew” probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Israelites” or “Jews.” When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 5:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 1:8-10
- Philippians 3:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5680, G14440, G14450, G14460, G14470

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:13](#); [39:14](#); [39:17](#); [40:15](#); [41:12](#); [43:32](#))

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Absalom)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 2:10-11
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 1:10
- Numbers 13:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:18](#); [23:2](#); [23:19](#); [35:27](#); [37:14](#))

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:7
- Genesis 15:1
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G28160, G28180, G28200, G47890

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:10](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:15](#); [15:20](#); [23:3](#); [23:5](#); [23:7](#); [23:10](#); [23:16](#); [23:18](#); [23:20](#); [25:9](#); [25:10](#); [26:34](#); [27:46](#); [36:2](#); [49:29](#); [49:30](#); [49:32](#); [50:13](#))

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Hamor](#), [Noah](#), [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 34:2
- Joshua 9:1-2
- Judges 3:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:17](#); [34:2](#); [36:2](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Genesis 2 General Notes](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [Genesis 43:11](#))

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:20](#); [34:19](#); [45:13](#))

horn, horned

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: authority, [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), power royal, [sheep](#), trumpet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 1:39
- 2 Samuel 22:3
- Jeremiah 17:1
- Psalms 22:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G27680

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:13](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for war and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.

(See also: [chariot](#), [donkey](#), Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:4
- 2 Kings 2:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 6:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G24620

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:43](#); [47:17](#); [49:17](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- Yahweh commanded the Israelites not to have many horsemen because having a strong army would cause them to trust their own strength rather than Yahweh in battle.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:5
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6571, H7395, G24600

(Go back to: [Genesis 50:9](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, tabernacle, temple, house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:14; 7:1; 12:1; 12:15; 12:17; 14:14; 15:2; 15:3; 17:12; 17:13; 17:23; 17:27; 18:19; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:10; 19:11; 20:13; 20:18; 24:2; 24:7; 24:23; 24:27; 24:28; 24:31; 24:32; 24:38; 24:40; 27:15; 28:2; 28:17; 28:21; 28:22; 29:13; 30:30; 31:14; 31:30; 31:37; 31:41; 33:17; 34:19; 34:26; 34:29; 34:30; 35:2; 36:6; 38:11; 39:2; 39:4; 39:5; 39:8; 39:9; 39:11; 39:14; 39:16; 40:3; 40:7; 41:10; 41:40; 41:51; 42:19; 42:33; 43:16; 43:17; 43:18; 43:19; 43:24; 43:26; 44:1; 44:4; 44:8; 44:14; 45:2; 45:8; 45:11; 45:16; 45:18; 46:27; 46:31; 47:12; 47:14; 47:24; 50:4; 50:7; 50:8; 50:22](#))

image of God, image

Definition:

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like his own.”

(See also: [image](#), Son of God, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 4:3-4
- Colossians 3:9-11
- Genesis 1:26-27
- Genesis 9:6
- James 3:9-10
- Romans 8:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4541, H1544, H2553, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6816, H8403, G05040, G01790

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:26](#); [1:27](#); [9:6](#))

image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [image of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 7:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 1:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G15040, G51790

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:19](#); [31:34](#); [31:35](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#), [possess](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:16](#); [44:16](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [44:10](#))

integrity

Definition:

The term “integrity” refers to being honest, with strong moral principles and behavior is said to have integrity.

- Having integrity also means choosing to do what is honest and right even when nobody else is watching.
- Certain characters in the Bible, such as Joseph and Daniel, showed integrity when they refused to do evil and chose to obey God.
- The book of Proverbs says that it is better to be poor and have integrity than to be rich and corrupt or dishonest.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “integrity” could also be translated as “honesty” or “moral uprightness” or “behaving truthfully” or “acting in a trustworthy, honest manner.”

(See also: Daniel, [Joseph \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4
- Job 2:3
- Job 4:6
- Proverbs 10:8-9
- Psalm 26:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3476, H6664, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8537, H8538, H8549, G45870

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:5](#); [20:6](#))

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [dream](#), [prophet](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:5](#); [40:8](#); [40:12](#); [40:16](#); [40:18](#); [40:22](#); [41:8](#); [41:11](#); [41:12](#); [41:13](#); [41:15](#); [42:23](#))

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **5:6** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **6:5** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **7:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3327, H3446, G24640

(Go back to: [Genesis 17:19](#); [17:21](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [21:8](#); [21:10](#); [21:12](#); [22:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:6](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [24:4](#); [24:14](#); [24:62](#); [24:63](#); [24:64](#); [24:66](#); [24:67](#); [25:5](#); [25:6](#); [25:9](#); [25:11](#); [25:19](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:26](#); [25:28](#); [26:1](#); [26:6](#); [26:8](#); [26:9](#); [26:12](#); [26:16](#); [26:17](#); [26:18](#); [26:19](#); [26:20](#); [26:25](#); [26:27](#); [26:31](#); [26:32](#); [26:35](#); [27:5](#); [27:20](#); [27:21](#); [27:22](#); [27:26](#); [27:30](#); [27:32](#); [27:33](#);

27:37; 27:39; 27:46; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:13; 31:42; 31:53; 32:9; 35:12; 35:27; 35:28; 35:29; 46:1; 48:15; 48:16;
49:31; 50:24)

Ishmael, Ishmaelite

Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There were several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name “Ishmael” means “God hears.”
- God promised to bless Abraham’s son Ishmael, but he was not the son with whom God had promised to establish his covenant.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There were also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Hagar](#), [Isaac](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Paran](#), [Sarah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 23:1
- Genesis 16:12
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 37:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:2** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **5:4** “I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3458, H3459

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:18](#); [17:20](#); [17:23](#); [17:25](#); [17:26](#); [25:9](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:17](#); [28:9](#); [36:3](#); [37:25](#); [37:27](#); [37:28](#); [39:1](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: [Genesis 32:28](#); [32:32](#); [33:20](#); [34:7](#); [35:10](#); [35:21](#); [35:22](#); [36:31](#); [42:5](#); [47:27](#); [48:20](#); [49:7](#); [49:16](#); [49:24](#); [49:28](#); [50:25](#))

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:18](#); [35:23](#); [46:13](#); [49:14](#))

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to “Israel.” His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob’s twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “heel.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person’s body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob’s name to “Israel,” which probably means “He struggles with God.”
- Jacob married Laban’s two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph’s father in Matthew’s genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, [Leah](#), [Rachel](#), [Zilpah](#), [Bilhah](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Rebekah](#), [Laban](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: Genesis 25:26; 25:27; 25:28; 25:29; 25:30; 25:31; 25:33; 25:34; 27:6; 27:11; 27:15; 27:17; 27:19; 27:21; 27:22; 27:30; 27:36; 27:41; 27:42; 27:46; 28:1; 28:5; 28:6; 28:7; 28:10; 28:16; 28:18; 28:20; 29:1; 29:4; 29:10; 29:11; 29:12; 29:13; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:21; 29:28; 30:1; 30:2; 30:4; 30:5; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:16; 30:17; 30:19; 30:25; 30:31; 30:36; 30:37; 30:40; 30:41; 30:42; 31:1; 31:2; 31:3; 31:4; 31:11; 31:17; 31:20; 31:22; 31:24; 31:25; 31:26; 31:29; 31:31; 31:32; 31:33; 31:36; 31:43; 31:45; 31:46; 31:47; 31:51; 31:53; 31:54; 32:1; 32:2; 32:3; 32:4; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:18; 32:20; 32:24; 32:25; 32:27; 32:28; 32:29; 32:30; 32:32; 33:1; 33:10; 33:17; 33:18; 34:1; 34:3; 34:5; 34:6; 34:7; 34:13; 34:19; 34:25; 34:27; 34:30; 35:1; 35:2; 35:4; 35:5; 35:6; 35:9; 35:10; 35:14; 35:15; 35:20; 35:22; 35:23; 35:26; 35:27; 35:29; 36:6; 37:1; 37:2; 37:3; 37:13; 37:34; 42:1; 42:4; 42:29; 42:36; 43:6; 43:8; 43:11; 45:21; 45:25; 45:27; 45:28; 46:1; 46:2; 46:5; 46:6; 46:8; 46:15; 46:18; 46:19; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 46:29; 46:30; 47:7; 47:8; 47:9; 47:10; 47:28; 47:29; 47:31; 48:2; 48:3; 48:8; 48:10; 48:11; 48:13; 48:14; 48:21; 49:1; 49:2; 49:7; 49:24; 49:33; 50:2; 50:24)

Japheth

Facts:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed as, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [flood](#), [Ham](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:4
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3315

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:32](#); [6:10](#); [7:13](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:27](#); [10:1](#); [10:2](#); [10:21](#))

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [Genesis 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [37:11](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:16](#); [15:21](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:10](#); [13:11](#); [32:10](#); [50:10](#); [50:11](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:24](#); [30:25](#); [33:2](#); [33:7](#); [35:24](#); [37:2](#); [37:3](#); [37:5](#); [37:13](#); [37:17](#); [37:23](#); [37:28](#); [37:29](#); [37:31](#); [37:33](#); [39:1](#); [39:2](#); [39:4](#); [39:5](#); [39:6](#); [39:7](#); [39:10](#); [39:20](#); [39:21](#); [39:22](#); [40:3](#); [40:4](#); [40:6](#); [40:8](#); [40:9](#); [40:12](#); [40:16](#); [40:18](#); [40:22](#); [40:23](#); [41:14](#); [41:15](#); [41:16](#); [41:17](#); [41:25](#); [41:39](#); [41:41](#); [41:42](#); [41:44](#); [41:45](#); [41:46](#); [41:49](#); [41:50](#); [41:51](#); [41:54](#); [41:55](#); [41:56](#); [41:57](#); [42:3](#); [42:4](#); [42:6](#); [42:7](#); [42:8](#); [42:9](#); [42:14](#); [42:18](#); [42:23](#); [42:25](#); [42:36](#); [43:15](#); [43:16](#); [43:17](#); [43:18](#); [43:19](#); [43:24](#); [43:25](#); [43:26](#); [43:30](#); [44:2](#); [44:4](#); [44:14](#); [44:15](#); [45:1](#); [45:3](#); [45:4](#); [45:9](#); [45:16](#); [45:17](#); [45:21](#); [45:26](#); [45:27](#); [45:28](#); [46:4](#); [46:19](#); [46:20](#); [46:27](#); [46:28](#); [46:29](#); [46:30](#); [46:31](#); [47:1](#); [47:5](#); [47:7](#); [47:11](#); [47:12](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:16](#); [47:17](#); [47:20](#); [47:23](#); [47:26](#); [47:29](#); [48:1](#); [48:2](#); [48:3](#); [48:8](#); [48:9](#); [48:11](#); [48:12](#); [48:13](#); [48:15](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#); [48:21](#); [49:22](#); [49:26](#); [50:1](#); [50:2](#); [50:4](#); [50:7](#); [50:8](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#); [50:16](#); [50:17](#); [50:19](#); [50:22](#); [50:23](#); [50:24](#); [50:25](#); [50:26](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:27](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, Judea, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:35](#); [35:23](#); [37:26](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:6](#); [38:7](#); [38:8](#); [38:11](#); [38:12](#); [38:15](#); [38:20](#); [38:22](#); [38:23](#); [38:24](#); [38:26](#); [43:3](#); [43:8](#); [44:14](#); [44:16](#); [44:18](#); [46:12](#); [46:28](#); [49:8](#); [49:9](#); [49:10](#))

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), law)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:8
- Acts 7:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Luke 18:1-2
- Matthew 5:25
- Ruth 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G03500, G12520, G13480, G29190, G29220, G29230

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:25](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment?**”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Genesis 11 General Notes](#); [15:14](#); [16:5](#); [19:9](#); [31:53](#); [49:16](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:19](#); [18:25](#))

Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, Meribah Kadesh

Facts:

The names Kadesh, Kadesh-Barnea, and Meribah Kadesh all refer to an important city in Israel's history which was located in the southern part of Israel, near the region of Edom.

- The city of Kadesh was an oasis, a place where there was water and fertile soil in the middle of a desert named Zin.
- Moses sent twelve spies into the land of Canaan from Kadesh Barnea.
- Israel also encamped at Kadesh during the wandering in the wilderness.
- Kadesh Barnea was where Miriam died.
- It was at Meribah Kadesh where Moses disobeyed God and hit a rock to get water for the Israelites, instead of speaking to it as God had told him to do.
- The name "kadesh" comes from the Hebrew word meaning "holy" or "set apart."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [desert](#), [Edom](#), [holy](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 48:28
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Genesis 16:14
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Joshua 10:40-41
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4809, H6946, H6947

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:1](#))

Kedar

Facts:

Kedar was Ishmael's second son. It was also an important city, which was probably named after the man.

- The city of Kedar is located in the northern part of Arabia near the southern border of Palestine. In Bible times, it was known for its greatness and beauty.
- The descendants of Kedar formed a large people group that is also called "Kedar."
- The phrase "dark tents of Kedar" refers to the black goathair tents the people of Kedar lived in.
- These people raised sheep and goats. They also used camels for transporting things.
- In the Bible, the phrase "the glory of Kedar" refers to the greatness of that city and its people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, [goat](#), [Ishmael](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Song of Songs 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6938

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:13](#))

kind [NOT kindness]

Definition:

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:21
- Genesis 1:24
- Mark 9:29
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G10850, G54490

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:21](#); [1:24](#); [1:25](#); [6:20](#); [7:14](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:1](#); [14:2](#); [14:5](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:10](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [17:6](#); [17:16](#); [20:2](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [35:11](#); [36:31](#); [39:20](#); [40:1](#); [40:5](#); [41:46](#); [49:20](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.

- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [20:9](#))

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to "kiss someone farewell" means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word "kiss" is used to mean "say goodbye to." When Elisha said to Elijah, "Let me first go and kiss my father and mother," he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Luke 22:48
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G27050, G53680, G53700

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:26](#); [27:27](#); [29:11](#); [29:13](#); [31:28](#); [31:55](#); [33:4](#); [45:15](#); [48:10](#); [50:1](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, [reveal](#), understand, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:9; 2:17; 3:5; 3:7; 3:22; 4:1; 4:9; 4:17; 4:25; 8:7; 8:11; 9:24; 12:11; 15:8; 15:13; 18:19; 18:21; 19:5; 19:8; 19:33; 19:35; 20:6; 20:7; 21:26; 22:12; 24:14; 24:16; 24:21; 25:27; 27:2; 28:16; 29:5; 30:26; 30:29; 31:6; 31:32; 33:13; 38:9; 38:16; 38:26; 39:6; 39:8; 41:21; 41:31; 41:39; 42:23; 42:33; 42:34; 43:7; 43:22; 44:15; 44:27; 45:1; 47:6; 48:19](#))

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.

One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.

A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: Aaron, authority, Caleb, [descendant](#), [Esau](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

(Go back to: [Genesis 36:5](#); [36:14](#); [36:16](#); [36:18](#))

Laban

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Laban was the uncle and father-in-law of Jacob.

- Jacob lived with Laban's household in Padan Aram and managed his sheep and goats as a condition of marriage to Laban's daughters.
- Jacob's preference was for Laban's daughter Rachel to be his wife.
- Laban deceived Jacob and made him marry his oldest daughter Leah first before giving Rachel to him as his wife.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Nahor](#), [Leah](#), [Rachel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:30
- Genesis 24:50
- Genesis 27:43
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 29:5
- Genesis 29:13
- Genesis 30:26
- Genesis 46:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3837

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:29](#); [24:50](#); [25:20](#); [27:43](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [29:5](#); [29:10](#); [29:13](#); [29:14](#); [29:15](#); [29:16](#); [29:19](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:26](#); [29:29](#); [30:25](#); [30:27](#); [30:34](#); [30:36](#); [30:40](#); [30:42](#); [31:1](#); [31:2](#); [31:12](#); [31:19](#); [31:20](#); [31:22](#); [31:24](#); [31:25](#); [31:26](#); [31:31](#); [31:33](#); [31:34](#); [31:36](#); [31:43](#); [31:47](#); [31:48](#); [31:51](#); [31:55](#); [32:4](#); [46:18](#); [46:25](#))

labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:9
- 1 Thessalonians 3:5
- Galatians 4:10-11
- James 5:4
- John 4:38
- Luke 10:2
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G00750, G20380, G20400, G20410, G28720, G28730, G48660, G49040

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:5](#); [2:15](#); [4:2](#); [4:12](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:7](#); [22:8](#); [30:32](#); [30:33](#); [30:35](#); [30:40](#))

Lamech

Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [Noah](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 4:18-19
- Genesis 4:24
- Genesis 5:25
- Genesis 5:29
- Genesis 5:31
- Luke 3:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G29840

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:18](#); [4:19](#); [4:23](#); [4:24](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [5:28](#); [5:30](#); [5:31](#))

lament, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- Amos 8:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 2:5
- Lamentations 2:8
- Micah 2:4
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0421, H0578, H0592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G23540, G23550, G28700, G28750

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:16](#); [23:2](#); [27:38](#); [37:35](#); [50:1](#); [50:3](#); [50:10](#))

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, [decree](#), [command](#), [declare](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:2
- Esther 3:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:5
- John 18:31
- Romans 7:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G17850, G35480, G35510, G47470

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:5](#))

Leah

Facts:

Leah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the older sister of Rachel and the mother of six of Jacob's sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun. She was also the mother of Jacob's daughter Dinah.

- The book of Genesis tells the story of how Leah's father Laban tricked Jacob into marrying her before marrying Rachel.
- God abundantly blessed Leah by giving her many children, even though her husband Jacob loved Rachel more than her.
- Leah is the ancestral mother of both King David and Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Reuben](#), [Simeon](#), [Levi](#), [Judah](#), [Issachar](#), [Zebulun](#), [Laban](#), [Rachel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:17
- Genesis 29:28
- Genesis 31:6
- Ruth 4:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3812

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:16](#); [29:17](#); [29:23](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:30](#); [29:31](#); [29:32](#); [30:9](#); [30:10](#); [30:11](#); [30:12](#); [30:13](#); [30:14](#); [30:16](#); [30:17](#); [30:18](#); [30:19](#); [30:20](#); [31:4](#); [31:14](#); [31:33](#); [33:1](#); [33:2](#); [33:7](#); [34:1](#); [35:23](#); [35:26](#); [46:15](#); [46:18](#); [49:31](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), temple, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:34](#); [34:25](#); [34:30](#); [46:11](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *living* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:20; 1:21; 1:24; 1:25; 1:28; 1:30; 2:7; 2:9; 2:19; 2:20; 3:1; 3:14; 3:17; 3:20; 3:22; 3:24; 5:3; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:9; 5:10; 5:12; 5:13; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 5:19; 5:21; 5:25; 5:26; 5:28; 5:30; 6:17; 6:19; 6:20; 7:3; 7:11; 7:14; 7:15; 7:21; 7:22; 8:1; 8:17; 8:19; 8:21; Notes; 9:2; 9:3; 9:4; 9:5; 9:10; 9:12; 9:15; 9:16; 9:28; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 12:5; 12:12; 12:13; 14:21; 17:14; 17:18; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:32; 19:34; 20:7; 23:1; 25:6; 25:7; 25:17; 27:4; 27:19; 27:25; 27:31; 27:40; 27:46; 31:32; 32:30; 34:3; 34:8; 35:18; 36:6; 37:20; 37:21; 37:33; 42:2; 42:15; 42:16; 42:18; 42:21; 43:7; 43:8; 43:27; 43:28; 44:30; 45:3; 45:7; 45:26; 45:28; 46:15; 46:18; 46:22; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 46:30; 47:8; 47:9; 47:19; 47:25; 47:28; 49:6; 50:20; 50:22\)](#)

light, luminary, shine, brighten, enlighten

Definition:

The term “light” is used figuratively in various ways in the Bible. Light is often used as a metaphor for wisdom, life, righteousness, truth, or happiness.

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [wisdom](#), [life](#), [righteous](#), [true](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 John 2:8
- 2 Corinthians 4:6
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 2:5
- John 1:5
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 6:23
- Nehemiah 9:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0216, H0217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G06810, G07960, G16450, G29850, G30880, G53380, G54570, G54580, G54600, G54620

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:3](#); [1:4](#); [1:5](#); [1:14](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [1:17](#); [1:18](#))

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 1:5
- Mark 8:24
- Matthew 17:2
- Matthew 18:3
- Psalms 73:5
- Revelation 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1823, H8403, H8544, G15030, G15040, G25090, G25310, G25960, G36640, G36650, G36660, G36670, G36680, G36690, G36970, G48330, G51080, G56130, G56150, G56160, G56180, G56190

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:1](#); [5:3](#))

lion, lioness

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 7:29
- Proverbs 19:12
- Psalms 17:12
- Revelation 5:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0738, H0739, H0744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G30230

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:9](#))

livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), [goat](#), [horse](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:24](#); [1:25](#); [1:26](#); [2:20](#); [3:14](#); [4:20](#); [6:7](#); [6:20](#); [7:14](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [8:1](#); [8:17](#); [9:10](#); [13:2](#); [13:7](#); [29:7](#); [30:29](#); [31:9](#); [31:18](#); [33:17](#); [34:5](#); [34:23](#); [36:6](#); [36:7](#); [46:6](#); [46:32](#); [46:34](#); [47:6](#); [47:16](#); [47:17](#); [47:18](#))

loins, waist

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), gird, [children](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- 2 Chronicles 6:9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G37510

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:11](#); [37:34](#); [46:26](#); [47:29](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: Genesis 15:2; 15:8; 18:3; 18:12; 18:27; 18:30; 18:31; 18:32; 19:2; 19:18; 20:4; 23:6; 23:11; 23:15; 24:9; 24:10; 24:12; 24:14; 24:18; 24:27; 24:35; 24:36; 24:37; 24:39; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:49; 24:51; 24:54; 24:56; 24:65; 27:29; 27:37; 31:35; 32:4; 32:5; 32:18; 33:8; 33:13; 33:14; 33:15; 37:19; 39:2; 39:3; 39:7; 39:8; 39:16; 39:19; 39:20; 40:1; 40:7; 42:10; 42:30; 42:33; 43:20; 44:5; 44:7; 44:8; 44:9; 44:16; 44:18; 44:19; 44:20; 44:22; 44:24; 44:33; 45:8; 45:9; 47:18; 47:25; 49:23)

Lot

Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Ammon](#), [Haran](#), [Moab](#), [Sodom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G30910

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:27](#); [11:31](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [13:1](#); [13:5](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:14](#); [14:12](#); [14:16](#); [19:1](#); [19:5](#); [19:6](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [19:12](#); [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [19:18](#); [19:23](#); [19:29](#); [19:30](#); [19:36](#))

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn’t benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

- Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
- When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
- In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

- This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
- The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2

- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:8** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:2](#); [24:67](#); [25:28](#); [27:4](#); [27:9](#); [27:14](#); [29:18](#); [29:20](#); [29:30](#); [29:32](#); [Notes](#); [34:3](#); [37:3](#); [37:4](#); [44:20](#))

lust, lustful, passions, desires

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, “lust” usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one’s own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, “lust” could be translated as “wrong desire” or “strong desire” or “wrongful sexual desire” or “strong immoral desire” or to “strongly desire to sin.”
- The phrase to “lust after” could be translated as to “wrongly desire” or to “think immorally about” or to “immorally desire.”

(See also: adultery, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:6](#))

lute, lyre

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modern day acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: harp)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:21](#); [31:27](#))

Maacah

Facts:

Maacah (or Maakah) was one of the sons of Abraham's brother Nahor. Other people in the Old Testament also had this name.

- The city of Maacah or Beth Maacah was located in the far north of Israel, in the region occupied by the tribe of Naphtali.
- It was an important city and was attacked by enemies on several occasions.
- Maacah was the name of several women, including the mother of David's son Absalom.
- King Asa removed his grandmother Maacah from being queen because she had promoted Asherah worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Asa, Asherah, [Nahor](#), [Naphtali](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4601

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:24](#))

magic, magical, magician, who talk with spirits

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: [divination](#), [Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), power, sorcery)

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2748, H2749, H3049, G30970

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:8](#); [41:24](#))

Manasseh

Facts:

Manasseh was the older son of Joseph. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Manasseh is similar to the Hebrew word meaning “to forget.”
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the “half-tribe of Manasseh” because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh. King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Three other men named Manasseh are mentioned in the Old Testament. One of them was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods. The other two were men who lived during the time of Ezra and were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), [Ephraim](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 15:9
- Deuteronomy 3:12-13
- Genesis 41:51
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 1:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G31280

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:51](#); [46:20](#); [48:1](#); [48:5](#); [48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:20](#); [50:23](#))

Mede, Medes, Media

Facts:

Media was an ancient empire located east of Assyria and Babylonia, and north of Elam and Persia. The people who lived in the empire of Media were called "Medes."

- The Media empire covered parts of what are present-day Turkey, Iran, Syria, Iraq and Afghanistan.
- The Medes were closely associated with the Persians and the two empires joined forces to conquer the Babylonian empire.
- Babylonia was invaded by Darius the Mede during the time that the prophet Daniel was living there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Cyrus](#), [Daniel](#), [Darius](#), [Elam](#), [Persia](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:6
- Acts 2:9
- Daniel 5:28
- Esther 1:3-4
- Ezra 6:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4074, H4075, H4076, H4077, G33700

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:2](#))

meditate, meditation

Definition:

“The term meditate” means to spend time thinking about something carefully and deeply.

- This term is often used in the Bible to refer to thinking about God and his teachings.
- Psalm 1 says that the person who meditates on the law of the Lord “day and night” will be greatly blessed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “meditate on” could be translated as “think about carefully and deeply” or to “consider thoughtfully” or to “think about often.”
- The noun form is “meditation” and could be translated as “deep thoughts.” A phrase like “meditation of my heart” could be translated as “what I think deeply about” or “what I often think about.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:63
- Joshua 1:8-9
- Psalm 1:1-2
- Psalms 119:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1897, H1900, H1902, H7742, H7878, H7879, H7881

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:63](#))

Melchizedek

Facts:

During the time when Abram lived, Melchizedek was the king of the city of Salem (later "Jerusalem")

- Melchizedek's name means "king of righteousness" and his title "king of Salem" means "king of peace."
- He was also called a "priest of God Most High."
- Melchizedek is first mentioned in the Bible when he served Abram bread and wine after Abram rescued his nephew Lot from powerful kings. Abram gave Melchizedek one-tenth of the plunder from his victory.
- In the New Testament, Melchizedek is described as someone who had no father or mother. He was called a priest and king who will reign forever.
- The New Testament also says that Jesus is a priest according to the priestly "order of Melchizedek." Jesus was not descended from Levi as the Israelite priests were. His priesthood is directly from God, as Melchizedek's was.
- Based on these descriptions of him in the Bible, Melchizedek was a human priest who was also chosen by God to represent or point forward to Jesus, the eternal king of peace and righteousness and our great high priest.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [everlasting](#), high priest, Jerusalem, [Levite](#), [priest](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:18
- Hebrews 6:20
- Hebrews 7:17
- Psalm 110:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4442, G31980

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:18](#))

Meshech

Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Japheth](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5-7
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Psalms 120:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4851, H4902

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:23](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [Genesis 32:3](#); [32:6](#))

Midian, Midianite

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also Arabia, [Egypt](#), [flock](#), Gideon, Jethro, Moses)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:16
- Genesis 25:1-4
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Genesis 37:28
- Judges 7:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **16:4** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!"
- **16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4080, H4084, H4092

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:2](#); [25:4](#); [36:35](#); [37:28](#); [37:36](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:4](#); [10:8](#); [10:9](#); [18:18](#); [26:16](#); [49:3](#); [49:7](#); [49:24](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: David, Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 7:5-6
- 1 Samuel 7:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

([Go back to: Genesis 31:49](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:37](#); [36:35](#))

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:9](#); [27:12](#); [39:14](#); [39:17](#))

month, monthly

Definition:

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, H3391, H3393, G33760

(Go back to: [Genesis 7:11](#); [8:4](#); [8:5](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [29:14](#); [38:24](#))

Most High

Facts:

The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: [God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 4:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 7:1-3
- Hosea 7:16
- Lamentations 3:35
- Luke 1:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G53100

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:18](#); [14:19](#); [14:20](#); [14:22](#))

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Genesis 23:2](#); [27:41](#); [37:34](#); [37:35](#); [50:4](#); [50:10](#); [50:11](#))

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:22](#); [1:28](#); [3:16](#); [6:1](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [8:17](#); [9:1](#); [9:7](#); [16:10](#); [17:2](#); [17:20](#); [22:17](#); [26:4](#); [26:24](#); [28:3](#); [35:11](#); [47:27](#); [48:4](#))

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: frankincense, learned men)

Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 2:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G34640, G46660, G46690

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:25](#); [43:11](#))

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

(Go back to: [Genesis 46:21](#))

Nahor

Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:2
- Luke 3:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G34930

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [11:29](#); [22:20](#); [22:23](#); [24:10](#); [24:15](#); [24:24](#); [24:47](#); [29:5](#); [31:53](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:11](#); [2:19](#); [2:20](#); [3:20](#); [4:17](#); [4:19](#); [4:21](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [5:2](#); [5:3](#); [5:29](#); [6:4](#); [10:25](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [13:4](#); [16:1](#); [16:11](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:5](#); [17:15](#); [17:19](#); [19:22](#); [19:37](#); [19:38](#); [21:3](#); [21:33](#); [22:14](#); [22:24](#); [24:29](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:25](#); [25:26](#); [25:30](#); [26:18](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#); [26:22](#); [26:25](#); [26:33](#); [27:36](#); [28:19](#); [29:16](#); [29:32](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:35](#); [30:6](#); [30:8](#); [30:11](#); [30:13](#); [30:18](#); [30:20](#); [30:21](#); [30:24](#); [31:48](#); [32:2](#); [32:27](#); [32:28](#); [32:29](#); [32:30](#); [33:17](#); [35:8](#); [35:10](#); [35:15](#); [35:18](#); [36:10](#); [36:32](#); [36:35](#); [36:39](#); [36:40](#); [38:1](#); [38:2](#); [38:3](#); [38:4](#); [38:5](#); [38:6](#); [38:29](#); [38:30](#); [41:45](#); [41:51](#); [41:52](#); [46:8](#); [48:6](#); [48:16](#); [50:11](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Bilhah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 30:8](#); [35:25](#); [46:24](#); [49:21](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:5](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [12:2](#); [15:14](#); [17:4](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:16](#); [17:20](#); [18:18](#); [20:4](#); [21:13](#); [21:18](#); [22:18](#); [25:23](#); [26:4](#); [35:11](#); [46:3](#); [48:19](#))

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:9](#); [13:1](#); [13:3](#); [13:14](#); [20:1](#); [24:62](#); [28:14](#))

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 8:8
- Genesis 41:1-3
- Jeremiah 46:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**.
- **9:4** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**.
- **9:6** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed.
- **10:3** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0216, H2975, H4714, H5104

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:1](#); [41:2](#); [41:3](#); [41:17](#); [41:18](#))

Nineveh, Ninevite

Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A "Ninevite" was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Jonah](#), [repent](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 1:3
- Jonah 3:3
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5210, G35350, G35360

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:11](#); [10:12](#))

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [ark](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [5:32](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:13](#); [6:22](#); [7:1](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [7:13](#); [7:15](#); [7:23](#); [8:1](#); [8:6](#); [8:11](#); [8:13](#); [8:15](#); [8:18](#); [8:20](#); [9:1](#); [9:8](#); [9:17](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [9:24](#); [9:28](#); [9:29](#); [10:1](#); [10:32](#))

oak

Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunks of certain oak trees could be measured up to 6 meters around.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will find it important to use the term “oak tree” rather than just the word “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, “an oak” could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:3-4
- Genesis 13:18
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Judges 6:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0352, H0424, H0427, H0436, H0437, H0438

(**Go back to:** [Genesis 12:6](#); [13:18](#); [14:13](#); [18:1](#); [35:8](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:23](#); [21:24](#); [21:31](#); [22:16](#); [24:3](#); [24:7](#); [24:8](#); [24:9](#); [24:37](#); [24:41](#); [25:33](#); [26:3](#); [26:28](#); [26:31](#); [31:53](#); [47:31](#); [50:5](#); [50:6](#); [50:24](#); [50:25](#))

obey, keep

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal. In the Bible, often the term “keep” means “to obey.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:32
- Acts 6:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 1:25
- James 2:10
- Luke 6:47
- Matthew 7:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:4** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **5:6** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **5:10** “Because you (Abraham) have *obeyed* me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **5:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:7** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G01910, G39800, G39820, G50830, G50840, G52180, G52190, G52550, G52920, G52930, G54420

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:19](#); [26:5](#); [49:10](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Genesis 28:18](#); [35:14](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Genesis 8:11](#))

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor, dominate

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:7
- Ecclesiastes 4:1
- Job 10:3
- Judges 2:18-19
- Nehemiah 5:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6031, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G26160, G26690

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:13](#); [16:6](#); [16:9](#))

oversee, overseer, keeper

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people. In the Bible, often the term “keeper” means “overseer.”

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 3:2
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G19830, G19840, G19850

(Go back to: [Genesis 39:4](#); [39:5](#); [41:34](#))

overtake

Definition:

The term “overtake” and “overtook” refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops “overtake” an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse “overtakes” someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings “overtake” people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, “overtake” could be translated as “conquer” or “capture” or “defeat” or “catch up to” or “completely affect.”
- The past action “overtook” can be translated as “caught up to” or “came alongside of” or “conquered” or “defeated” or “caused harm to.”
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they don’t repent.
- The phrase “My words have overtaken your fathers” means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: [bless](#), [curse](#), [prey](#), [punish](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- John 12:35

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H0935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G26380, G29830

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:25](#); [44:4](#); [44:6](#))

Paddan Aram

Facts:

Paddan Aram was the name of a region where Abraham's family lived before moving to the land of Canaan. It means "plain of Aram."

- When Abraham left Haran in Paddan Aram to travel to the land of Canaan, most of the rest of his family stayed behind in Haran.
- Many years later, Abraham's servant went to Paddan Aram to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives there and found Rebekah, grand-daughter of Bethuel.
- Isaac and Rebekah's son Jacob also traveled to Paddan Aram and married two daughters of Rebekah's brother Laban who was living in Haran.
- Aram, Paddan-Aram, and Aram-Naharium were all part of the same region that is now where the modern-day country of Syria is located.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Aram](#), [Bethuel](#), [Canaan](#), [Haran](#), [Jacob](#), [Laban](#), [Rebekah](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:2
- Genesis 35:9
- Genesis 46:12-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6307

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:20](#); [28:2](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [28:7](#); [31:18](#); [33:18](#); [35:9](#); [35:26](#); [46:15](#); [48:7](#))

Paran

Facts:

Paran was a desert or wilderness area east of Egypt and south of the land of Canaan. There was also a Mount Paran, which may have been another name for Mount Sinai.

- The slave Hagar and her son Ishmael went to live in the wilderness of Paran after Sarah ordered Abraham to send them away.
- When Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, they passed through the wilderness of Paran.
- It was from Kadesh-Barnea in the wilderness of Paran that Moses sent twelve men to spy out the land of Canaan and bring back a report.
- The wilderness of Zin was north of Paran and the wilderness of Sin was south of Paran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Kadesh](#), [Sinai](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:18
- 1 Samuel 25:1
- Genesis 21:19-21
- Numbers 10:11-13
- Numbers 13:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0364, H6290

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:6; 21:21](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:15](#); [26:29](#); [26:31](#); [28:21](#); [29:6](#); [34:21](#); [37:4](#); [37:14](#); [41:16](#); [43:23](#); [43:27](#); [43:28](#); [44:17](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Genesis 37 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:6](#); [14:16](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#); [19:4](#); [23:7](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:13](#); [25:23](#); [26:10](#); [26:11](#); [27:29](#); [28:3](#); [32:7](#); [33:15](#); [34:16](#); [34:22](#); [35:6](#); [35:29](#); [41:40](#); [41:55](#); [42:6](#); [47:21](#); [47:23](#); [48:4](#); [48:19](#); [49:10](#); [49:16](#); [50:20](#))

perfect, complete

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws. Old Testament sacrifices needed to be “perfect” or “complete,” that is, without blemish.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

(See also: blemish)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:2
- James 3:2
- Matthew 5:46-48
- Psalms 19:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G01990, G26750, G26760, G36470, G50460, G50470, G50480, G50500

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:9; 17:1](#))

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan, false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Genesis 13:7
- Joshua 3:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:7](#); [15:20](#); [34:30](#))

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as "Pharaoh."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 7:13
- Acts 7:21
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 40:7
- Genesis 41:25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **8:8 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **9:2** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **9:13** "I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt."
- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh_ that he is more powerful than_Pharaoh** and all of Egypt's gods.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4428, H4714, H6547, G53280

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:15](#); [12:17](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [37:36](#); [39:1](#); [40:2](#); [40:7](#); [40:11](#); [40:13](#); [40:14](#); [40:17](#); [40:19](#); [40:21](#); [41:1](#); [41:4](#); [41:7](#); [41:8](#); [41:9](#); [41:10](#); [41:14](#); [41:15](#); [41:16](#); [41:17](#); [41:25](#); [41:28](#); [41:32](#); [41:33](#); [41:34](#); [41:35](#); [41:37](#); [41:38](#); [41:39](#); [41:41](#); [41:42](#); [41:44](#); [41:45](#); [41:46](#); [41:55](#); [42:15](#); [42:16](#); [44:18](#); [45:2](#); [45:8](#); [45:16](#); [45:17](#); [45:21](#); [46:5](#); [46:31](#); [46:33](#); [47:1](#); [47:2](#); [47:3](#); [47:4](#); [47:5](#); [47:7](#); [47:8](#); [47:9](#); [47:10](#); [47:11](#); [47:14](#); [47:19](#); [47:20](#); [47:22](#); [47:23](#); [47:24](#); [47:25](#); [47:26](#); [50:4](#); [50:6](#); [50:7](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, [Gaza](#), Goliath, [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:4
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:14](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [26:1](#); [26:8](#); [26:14](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#))

pierce, pierced

Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, Jesus, [servant](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 22:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G13300, G13380, G15740, G26600, G35720, G40440

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:27](#))

pit, pitfall, trenches, cistern

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- A “cistern” was a hole dug in order to hold water.
- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 6:39
- Proverbs 1:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0875, H0953, H1356, H1475, H2352, H4087, H4113, H4379, H6354, H7585, H7745, H7816, H7825, H7845, H7882, G00120, G09990, G54210

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:10](#); [40:15](#); [41:14](#))

plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, and if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 6:8
- Luke 8:5
- Matthew 6:25-26
- Matthew 13:4
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G46870, G47030, G54520

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:8](#); [9:20](#); [21:33](#); [26:12](#); [47:23](#))

plea, plead, please, beg, implore

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 8:3-5
- Judges 6:31
- Luke 4:39
- Proverbs 18:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H2603, H3198, H4941, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6664, H6419, H7378, H7379, H7775, H8199, H8467, H8469, G11890, G17930, G20650, G38700

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:21](#); [42:21](#))

pledge, pledged

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- To “pledge” could be translate as to “formally commit to” or to “strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 5:4-5
- Exodus 22:26
- Genesis 38:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0781, H2254, H2258, H5667, H5671, H6148, H6161, H6162

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:17](#); [38:18](#); [38:20](#); [43:9](#); [44:32](#))

plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:

A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: [bronze](#), [ox](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:4
- Luke 9:62
- Luke 17:7
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0406, H0855, H2758, H2790, H5215, H5647, H5656, H5674, H6213, H6398, G07220, G07230

(Go back to: [Genesis 45:6](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:7](#); [15:8](#); [17:8](#); [22:17](#); [24:60](#); [28:4](#); [34:10](#); [36:43](#); [47:11](#); [47:27](#); [48:4](#))

Potiphar

Facts:

Potiphar was an important official for the pharaoh of Egypt during the time that Joseph was sold as a slave to some Ishmaelites.

- Potiphar bought Joseph from the Ishmaelites and appointed him to be in charge of his household.
- When Joseph was falsely accused of doing wrong, Potiphar had Joseph put in prison.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:34-36
- Genesis 39:2
- Genesis 39:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6318

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:36](#); [39:1](#))

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 2:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 3:28
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 49:8
- James 3:9-10
- John 5:41-42
- Luke 1:46
- Luke 1:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:8** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:7** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!”
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:8** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, H8416, G29800, G38530

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:15](#); [29:35](#); [49:8](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:7](#); [20:17](#))

precious, valuable, expensive, fine

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:1
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 1:7
- Luke 7:2-5
- Psalms 36:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0068, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G09270, G17840, G24720, G41850, G41860, G50920, G50930

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:53](#); [27:15](#))

prey, prey on

Definition:

The term “prey” refers to something that is hunted, usually an animal that is used for food.

- In a figurative sense, “prey” can refer to a person who is taken advantage of, abused, or oppressed by a more powerful person.
- To “prey on” people means to take advantage of them by oppressing them or stealing something from them.
- The term “prey” could also be translated as “hunted animal” or “hunted one” or “victim.”

(See also: [oppress](#))

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 12:9
- Psalms 104:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0400, H0957, H0962, H2963, H2964, H5706, H5861, H7997, H7998

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:9](#); [49:27](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: [Genesis 14 General Notes](#); [14:18](#); [41:45](#); [41:50](#); [46:20](#); [47:22](#); [47:26](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, [ruler](#), [Satan](#), Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:15](#); [17:20](#))

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4
- Ephesians 4:1
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 6:17
- Matthew 5:26
- Matthew 14:3
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0612, H0613, H0615, H0616, H0631, H0953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G11980, G11990, G12000, G12010, G12020, G12100, G22520, G36120, G47880, G48690, G50840, G54380, G54390

(Go back to: [Genesis 39:20](#); [39:22](#); [40:3](#); [40:5](#); [42:16](#); [42:19](#))

profit, profitable, unprofitable

Definition:

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: worthy)

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

Bible References:

- Job 15:3
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 2:8
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 6:63
- Mark 8:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 2:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G01470, G02550, G05120, G08880, G08890, G08900, G12810, G25850, G27700, G27710, G34080, G42970, G42980, G48510, G55390, G56220, G56230, G56240

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:26](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Genesis 9 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#);
[Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:1** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **14:1** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:9** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [Introduction to Genesis](#); [Genesis 47 General Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, [divination](#), [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), law, [vision](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:7](#); [Notes](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:21](#); [24:40](#); [24:42](#); [24:56](#); [34:29](#); [39:2](#); [39:3](#); [39:23](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshipping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:31](#); [38:15](#); [38:24](#))

prostrate

Definition:

The term “prostrate” means to be lying face down, stretched out on the ground.

- To “fall prostrate” or to “prostrate oneself” before someone means to suddenly bow down very low or in front of that person.
- Usually this position of being prostrate is a response that shows shock, amazement, and awe because of something miraculous that happened. It also shows honor and respect for the person being bowed to.
- Being prostrate also was a way to worship God. People often responded this way to Jesus in thanksgiving and worship when he did a miracle or to honor him as a great teacher.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “prostrated” could include “bowed down low with the face to the ground” or “worshiped him by lying face down in front of him” or “bowed down low to the ground in amazement” or “worshiped.”
- The phrase “will not prostrate ourselves” could be translated as “will not worship” or “will not lie face down in worship” or “will not bow down and worship.”
- “Prostrate himself to” could also be translated as “worship” or “bow down in front of.”

(See also: awe, [bow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 17:36-38
- Genesis 43:28
- Revelation 19:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5307, H5457, H6440, H6915, H7812

(Go back to: [Genesis 43:28](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:5](#); [24:26](#); [24:48](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:13](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:2](#))

Rachel

Facts:

Rachel was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Joseph and Benjamin, whose descendants became three of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Rachel and her sister Leah were the daughters of Laban, Jacob's uncle.
- For many years, Rachel was not able to have any children. Then God enabled her to give birth to Joseph.
- Years later, Rachel died as she gave birth to Benjamin. Jacob buried her near Bethlehem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Jacob](#), [Laban](#), [Leah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:6
- Genesis 29:19-20
- Genesis 29:30
- Genesis 31:6
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Matthew 2:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7354, G44780

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:6](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:11](#); [29:12](#); [29:16](#); [29:17](#); [29:18](#); [29:20](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:29](#); [29:30](#); [29:31](#); [30:1](#); [30:2](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:14](#); [30:15](#); [30:22](#); [30:25](#); [31:4](#); [31:14](#); [31:19](#); [31:32](#); [31:33](#); [31:34](#); [33:1](#); [33:2](#); [33:7](#); [35:16](#); [35:19](#); [35:20](#); [35:24](#); [35:25](#); [46:19](#); [46:22](#); [46:25](#); [48:7](#))

raise, rise, lift, get up, stir up,

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- 2 Samuel 7:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 3:1
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 6:1
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 7:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:5** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:7** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:5** "You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead."
- **44:8** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:4** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:2** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G03050, G03860, G03930, G04500, G10960, G13260, G14530, G15250, G18170, G18250, G18920, G19990, G48910

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:8](#); [6:18](#); [7:17](#); [9:9](#); [9:11](#); [9:17](#); [13:17](#); [17:7](#); [17:19](#); [17:21](#); [18:16](#); [19:1](#); [19:14](#); [19:15](#); [19:33](#); [19:35](#); [21:18](#); [21:32](#); [22:3](#); [22:19](#); [23:3](#); [23:7](#); [24:10](#); [24:54](#); [24:61](#); [25:34](#); [26:3](#); [27:19](#); [27:31](#); [27:43](#); [28:2](#); [31:13](#); [31:17](#); [31:21](#); [31:35](#); [32:22](#); [35:1](#); [35:3](#); [37:7](#); [37:28](#); [37:35](#); [38:8](#); [38:19](#); [43:8](#); [43:13](#); [43:15](#); [44:4](#); [46:5](#); [50:6](#); [50:7](#))

Rebekah

Facts:

Rebekah was a grand-daughter of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- God chose Rebekah to be the wife of Abraham's son Isaac.
- Rebekah left the region of Aram Naharaim where she lived and went with Abraham's servant to the region of the Negev where Isaac was living.
- For a long time Rebekah did not have any children, but finally God blessed her with twin boys, Esau and Jacob.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Aram](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Nahor](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15
- Genesis 24:45
- Genesis 24:56
- Genesis 24:64
- Genesis 25:28
- Genesis 26:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:2** After a very long journey to the land where Abraham's relatives lived, God led the servant to **Rebekah**. She was the granddaughter of Abraham's brother.
- **6:6** God told **Rebekah**, "There are two nations inside of you."
- **7:1** As the boys grew up, **Rebekah** loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau.
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau. But before he did, **Rebekah** and Jacob tricked him by having Jacob pretend to be Esau.
- **7:6** But **Rebekah** heard of Esau's plan. So she sent Jacob far away to live with her relatives.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7259

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:23](#); [24:15](#); [24:29](#); [24:30](#); [24:45](#); [24:51](#); [24:53](#); [24:58](#); [24:59](#); [24:60](#); [24:61](#); [24:64](#); [24:67](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:28](#); [26:7](#); [26:8](#); [26:35](#); [27:5](#); [27:6](#); [27:11](#); [27:15](#); [27:42](#); [27:46](#); [28:5](#); [29:12](#); [35:8](#); [49:31](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:4](#))

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

(Go back to: [Genesis 21:25](#); [31:42](#); [37:10](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Genesis 48:16](#))

reed

Facts:

The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 7:24
- Matthew 11:7
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 68:30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0098, H0100, H0260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G25630

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:2](#); [41:5](#); [41:18](#); [41:22](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 2:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G07570, G09360, G22310, G48210

(Go back to: [Genesis 36:31](#); [36:32](#); [36:33](#); [36:34](#); [36:35](#); [36:36](#); [36:37](#); [36:38](#); [36:39](#); [37:8](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” also implies that there were other people who did not remain or were not left over.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 9:12
- Ezekiel 6:8-10
- Genesis 45:7
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 4:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G26400, G30050, G30620

(Go back to: [Genesis 45:7](#))

report, reported, tell, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 5:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 5:15
- Luke 8:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, H8089, G01890, G01910, G03120, G05180, G09870, G12250, G13100, G18340, G20360, G21630, G30040, G30560, G31400, G33770

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:22; 14:13; 21:26; 22:20; 24:28; 26:32; 27:42; 29:12; 31:20; 31:22; 31:27; 32:5; 32:29; 37:2; 37:16; 38:13; 38:24; 41:24; 41:25; 42:29; 43:6; 43:7; 45:13; 45:26; 46:31; 47:1; 48:2; 49:1](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [2:15](#); [8:4](#); [18:4](#); [49:15](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Genesis 37:22](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:19](#); [8:3](#); [8:7](#); [8:9](#); [8:12](#); [14:7](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [15:16](#); [16:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:14](#); [18:33](#); [20:7](#); [20:14](#); [21:32](#); [22:5](#); [22:19](#); [24:5](#); [24:6](#); [24:8](#); [26:18](#); [28:15](#); [28:21](#); [29:3](#); [31:3](#); [31:13](#); [31:55](#); [32:6](#); [32:9](#); [33:16](#); [37:29](#); [37:30](#); [38:22](#); [40:13](#); [40:21](#); [41:13](#); [42:24](#); [42:25](#); [42:28](#); [42:37](#); [43:2](#); [43:10](#); [43:12](#); [43:13](#); [43:18](#); [43:21](#); [44:8](#); [44:13](#); [44:25](#); [48:21](#); [50:5](#); [50:14](#); [50:15](#))

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:32](#); [30:14](#); [35:22](#); [35:23](#); [37:21](#); [37:22](#); [37:29](#); [42:22](#); [42:37](#); [46:8](#); [46:9](#); [48:5](#); [49:3](#))

reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 3:5
- Galatians 1:12
- Lamentations 2:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 3:15
- Revelation 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0241, H1540, H1541, G06010, G06020, G55370

(Go back to: [Genesis 35:7](#))

reward, prize, deserve

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of “wages,” which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:6
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 6:35
- Mark 9:40-41
- Matthew 5:11-12
- Matthew 6:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H0866, H0868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G04690, G05140, G05910, G26030, G34050, G34060, G34080

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:1](#))

right hand

Definition:

The term “right hand” refers to the hand on the right side of a person’s body. In the Bible, the term is often used figuratively to refer to other body parts on a person’s right side, to the direction of a person’s right, to the direction south, or to a place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand can be used figuratively as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:33
- Colossians 3:1
- Galatians 2:9
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 2:3
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 44:3
- Revelation 2:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G11880

(Go back to: [Genesis 48:13](#); [48:14](#); [48:17](#); [48:18](#))

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), [integrity](#), [just](#), [law](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), [unlawful](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:9](#); [7:1](#); [15:6](#); [18:19](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:25](#); [18:26](#); [18:28](#); [20:4](#); [30:33](#); [38:26](#); [Notes](#); [44:16](#); [Notes](#))

rule, reign, ruler, prefect, official, leader

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, [king](#), synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:17-18
- Acts 7:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 9:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G07460, G07520, G07550, G07570, G07580, G09320, G09360, G10180, G12030, G12990, G17780, G17850, G18490, G22320, G22330, G25250, G25830, G28880, G29610, G35450, G38410, G41650, G41730, G42910

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:16](#); [1:18](#); [21:22](#); [21:32](#); [23:6](#); [25:16](#); [26:26](#); [34:2](#); [37:36](#); [39:1](#); [39:21](#); [39:22](#); [39:23](#); [40:2](#); [40:3](#); [40:4](#); [40:7](#); [40:9](#); [40:16](#); [40:20](#); [40:21](#); [40:22](#); [40:23](#); [41:9](#); [41:10](#); [41:12](#); [42:6](#); [45:8](#); [45:26](#); [47:6](#))

run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To “run in such a way as to win the prize” refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To “run in the path of your commands” means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. * To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. * “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country. * Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” * The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: [false god](#), persevere, refuge, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:18
- Galatians 2:2
- Galatians 5:7
- Philippians 2:16
- Proverbs 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0213, H0386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G04130, G13770, G16010, G15300, G15320, G19980, G27010, G37290, G40630, G43700, G43900, G48900, G49360, G51430, G52400, G52950, G53430

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:2](#); [18:7](#); [24:17](#); [24:28](#); [24:29](#); [29:12](#); [29:13](#); [33:4](#); [41:14](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 3:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 1:8-10
- Jonah 3:5
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G45260

([Go back to: Genesis 37:34](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:54](#); [46:1](#))

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called "Salt Lake."
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or "salts") that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name "Dead Sea."
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the "Sea of Arabah" and the "Sea of Negev" because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Arabah](#), [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- Deuteronomy 3:17
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H4417

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:3](#))

sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 1:27
- Joshua 5:15
- Mark 6:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G45470, G52660

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:23](#))

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:30
- Genesis 11:31
- Genesis 17:15
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:1** So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me."
- **5:4** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise."
- **5:4** God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess."
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8283, H8297, G45640

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:29](#); [11:30](#); [12:5](#); [12:11](#); [12:17](#); [16:1](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [17:15](#); [17:17](#); [17:19](#); [17:21](#); [18:6](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:11](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [20:2](#); [20:14](#); [20:16](#); [20:18](#); [21:1](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [21:6](#); [21:7](#); [21:9](#); [21:12](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:19](#); [24:36](#); [24:67](#); [25:10](#); [25:12](#); [49:31](#))

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), kingdom of God, [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:8
- 1 Thessalonians 2:17-20
- 1 Timothy 5:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 1:8
- Mark 8:33
- Zechariah 3:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:1** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:6** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:7** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:4** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.

- **50:9** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G11390, G11400, G11410, G11420, G12280, G41900, G45660, G45670

(Go back to: [Genesis 3 General Notes](#))

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

(Go back to: [Genesis 36:37](#); [36:38](#); [46:10](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), punish, [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

(Go back to: [Genesis 41 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [49:18](#))

scepter

Definition:

The term “scepter” refers to an ornamental rod or staff held by a ruler, such as a king.

- Scepters were originally a branch of wood with carved decorations. Later scepters were also made of precious metals such as gold.
- The scepter was a symbol of royalty and authority and also symbolized the honor and dignity associated with a king.
- In the Old Testament, God was described as having a scepter of righteousness because God rules as king over his people.
- An Old Testament prophecy referred to the Messiah as a symbolic scepter that would come from Israel to rule over all nations.
- This could also be translated as “ruling rod” or “ruler’s rod” or “king’s rod.”

(See also: authority, Christ, [king](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 1:5
- Esther 4:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Hebrews 1:8
- Numbers 21:18
- Psalms 45:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2710, H4294, H7626, H8275, G44640

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:10](#))

seal, sealed, unsealed

Definition:

To term “seal” means to close an object with something (usually called a “seal”) that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus’ grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a “seal” showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 2:3
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 6:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 5:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G26960, G49720, G49730

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:18](#); [38:25](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [children](#), [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:29](#); [3:15](#); [4:25](#); [7:3](#); [8:22](#); [9:9](#); [12:7](#); [13:15](#); [13:16](#); [15:3](#); [15:5](#); [15:13](#); [15:18](#); [16:10](#); [17:7](#); [17:8](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [17:19](#); [19:32](#); [19:34](#); [21:12](#); [21:13](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [24:7](#); [24:60](#); [26:3](#); [26:4](#); [26:24](#); [28:4](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [32:12](#); [35:12](#); [38:8](#); [38:9](#); [46:6](#); [46:7](#); [47:19](#); [47:23](#); [47:24](#); [48:4](#); [48:11](#); [48:19](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:5](#); [25:22](#); [31:35](#); [31:39](#); [37:15](#); [37:16](#); [42:22](#); [43:30](#); [44:12](#))

seize, seizure, capture

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 8:29
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G07240, G19490, G26380, G29020, G29830, G48150, G48840

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:11](#); [14:12](#); [19:16](#); [21:25](#); [31:31](#); [39:12](#))

send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commissioned me.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [redeem](#), [castout](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:33-34
- Acts 8:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 9:37-38
- Matthew 10:5
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G07820, G03750, G06300, G06490, G06520, G06570, G10260, G10320, G15440, G15990, G18210, G33330, G33430, G39360, G39920, G43110, G43410, G43690, G48420, G48820

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:23](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [12:20](#); [18:16](#); [19:13](#); [19:29](#); [20:2](#); [21:14](#); [24:7](#); [24:40](#); [24:54](#); [24:56](#); [24:59](#); [25:6](#); [26:27](#); [26:29](#); [26:31](#); [27:42](#); [27:45](#); [28:5](#); [28:6](#); [30:25](#); [31:4](#); [31:27](#); [31:42](#); [32:3](#); [32:5](#); [32:18](#); [32:26](#); [37:13](#); [37:14](#); [37:32](#); [37:33](#); [38:17](#); [38:20](#); [38:23](#); [38:25](#); [41:8](#); [41:14](#); [42:4](#); [42:16](#); [43:4](#); [43:5](#); [43:8](#); [43:14](#); [44:3](#); [45:5](#); [45:7](#); [45:8](#); [45:23](#); [45:24](#); [45:27](#); [46:5](#); [46:28](#); [49:21](#))

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), [Eden](#), [evil](#), [prey](#), [Satan](#), [sin](#), [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 3:3
- Genesis 3:4-6
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 3:7
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G21910, G20620, G37890

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:1](#); [3:2](#); [3:4](#); [3:13](#); [3:14](#); [49:17](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), [works](#), [obey](#), [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: Genesis 9:25; 9:26; 9:27; 12:16; 14:4; 14:15; 15:13; 15:14; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:8; 18:3; 18:5; 18:7; 19:2; 19:19; 20:8; 20:14; 20:17; 21:10; 21:12; 21:13; 21:25; 22:3; 22:5; 22:19; 24:2; 24:5; 24:9; 24:10; 24:14; 24:17; 24:34; 24:35; 24:52; 24:53; 24:59; 24:61; 24:65; 24:66; 25:12; 25:23; 26:14; 26:15; 26:19; 26:24; 26:25; 26:32; 27:29; 27:37; 27:40; 29:15; 29:18; 29:20; 29:24; 29:25; 29:27; 29:29; 29:30; 30:3; 30:4; 30:7; 30:9; 30:10; 30:12; 30:18; 30:26; 30:29; 30:43; 31:6; 31:33; 31:41; 32:4; 32:5; 32:10; 32:16; 32:18; 32:20; 32:22; 33:1; 33:2; 33:5; 33:6; 33:14; 34:19; 35:25; 35:26; 39:4; 39:17; 39:19; 40:4; 40:20; 41:10; 41:12; 41:37; 41:38; 42:10; 42:11; 42:13; 43:18; 43:28; 44:7; 44:9; 44:10; 44:16; 44:17; 44:18; 44:19; 44:21; 44:23; 44:24; 44:27; 44:30; 44:31; 44:32; 44:33; 45:16; 46:34; 47:3; 47:4; 47:19; 47:25; 49:15; 50:2; 50:7; 50:17; 50:18)

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:3](#))

Seth

Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abel](#), [Cain](#), [call](#), [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:1
- Luke 3:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G45890

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:25](#); [4:26](#); [5:3](#); [5:4](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#))

shadow, overshadow, shade

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:9
- Genesis 19:8
- Isaiah 30:2
- Jeremiah 6:4
- Psalms 17:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G06440, G19820, G26830, G46390

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:8](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), [false god](#), humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:25](#); [30:23](#); [34:7](#); [34:14](#))

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Arabia, [Beersheba](#), Ethiopia, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- Isaiah 60:6-7
- Psalms 72:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5434, H7614

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:7](#); [10:28](#); [25:3](#))

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [Hamor](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:14-16
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:19
- Genesis 37:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

(Go back to: [Genesis 12:6](#); [33:18](#); [33:19](#); [34:2](#); [34:4](#); [34:6](#); [34:8](#); [34:11](#); [34:13](#); [34:18](#); [34:20](#); [34:24](#); [34:26](#); [37:12](#); [37:13](#); [37:14](#))

Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as "Semites"; they spoke "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Arabia](#), [ark](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:10
- Genesis 7:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G45900

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:32](#); [6:10](#); [7:13](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [9:26](#); [9:27](#); [10:1](#); [10:21](#); [10:22](#); [10:31](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#))

shepherd, herder, pastor

Definition:

A “shepherd” is a person who takes care of sheep. In the Old Testament, this word can also refer to a “herder” who takes care of other kinds of domestic livestock such as goats or cattle.

- As a verb, the term “shepherd” means to lead sheep (or other livestock) to places with good food and water, protect them from wild animals, keep them from getting lost and other duties necessary to keep livestock alive and healthy.
- In the Bible, this term is often used figuratively to refer to taking care of the needs of people (not only animals), both physical and spiritual.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of them. In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd,” and in other places Jesus is called the “great shepherd” of the Church.
- The term “shepherd” is also used in the New Testament to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” Elders and overseers are also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- The noun “shepherd” can be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When referring to someone who cares for livestock other than sheep, the term can be translated as “herder,” “tender of livestock” or “person who takes care of livestock.”
- When used as a verb, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- In some contexts, the term “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- When used figuratively, the noun “shepherd” could be translated in different ways, including “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- When used figuratively, the verb “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”

(See also: [sheep](#), [livestock](#), [pastor](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 2:9
- Mark 6:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.

- **17:2** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:6** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:8** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G07500, G41650, G41660

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:2](#); [13:7](#); [13:8](#); [26:20](#); [29:7](#); [29:9](#); [30:31](#); [30:36](#); [37:2](#); [37:12](#); [37:13](#); [37:16](#); [46:32](#); [47:3](#); [48:15](#); [49:24](#))

shield

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [Satan](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:26
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Samuel 22:36
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Psalms 18:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G23750

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:1](#))

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), dedicate, Hannah, Jerusalem, [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), Samuel, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 2:26-27
- 1 Samuel 1:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:10](#))

Shinar

Facts:

Shinar means “country of two rivers” and was the name of a plain or region in southern Mesopotamia.

- Shinar later became known as “Chaldea” and then, “Babylonia.”
- Ancient peoples living in the city of Babel in the Plain of Shinar built a tall tower to try to make themselves great.
- Generations later, the Jewish patriarch Abraham lived in the city of Ur in this region, which by that time was called “Chaldea.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babel](#), [Babylon](#), [Chaldea](#), [Mesopotamia](#), [patriarchs](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:8-10
- Genesis 14:1
- Genesis 14:7-9
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- Zechariah 5:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8152

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:10](#); [11:2](#); [14:1](#); [14:9](#))

shrewd, cunning

Definition:

The term “shrewd” describes a person who is intelligent and clever, especially in practical matters.

- Often the term “shrewd” has a meaning that is partly negative since it usually also involves being selfish.
- A shrewd person is usually focused on helping himself, not others.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “cunning” or “crafty” or “smart” or “clever,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2450, H6175, G54290

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:1](#))

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Noah](#), Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 3:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G46050, G46060

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:15](#); [10:19](#); [49:13](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:14](#); [4:15](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:17](#); [17:11](#); [Notes](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:2](#); [17:12](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [17:27](#); [20:16](#); [23:9](#); [23:13](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [24:35](#); [24:53](#); [31:15](#); [37:28](#); [42:25](#); [42:27](#); [42:28](#); [42:35](#); [43:12](#); [43:15](#); [43:18](#); [43:21](#); [43:22](#); [43:23](#); [44:1](#); [44:2](#); [44:8](#); [45:22](#); [47:14](#); [47:15](#); [47:16](#); [47:18](#))

Simeon

Facts:

Simeon was Jacob's second son. He was Leah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Simeon."
- The name Simeon is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to hear."
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Simeon" refers to the land given to the tribe of Simeon.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.
- Another man named Simeon is mentioned in Luke's genealogy of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 2:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G48260

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:33](#); [34:25](#); [34:30](#); [35:23](#); [42:24](#); [42:36](#); [43:23](#); [46:10](#); [48:5](#); [49:5](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: [brother](#) in Christ, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 1:2
- Romans 16:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0269, H1323, G00270, G00790

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:22; 12:13; 12:19; 20:2; 20:5; 20:12; 24:30; 24:59; 24:60; 25:20; 26:7; 26:9; 28:9; 29:13; 30:1; 30:8; 34:13; 34:14; 34:27; 34:31; 36:3; 36:22; 46:17](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Genesis 22:10](#); [37:31](#); [43:16](#))

slay, slain, slaughter, kill, murder

Definition:

To “slay” a person or animal means to kill it. Often it means to kill it in a forceful or violent way. If a man has killed an animal he has “slain” it.

- When referring to an animal or to a large number of people, the term “slaughter” is another term that is often used.
- An act of slaughtering is also called a “slaughter.”
- The phrase “the slain” could also be translated as “the slain people” or “the people who were killed.”

(See also: [slaughter](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 28:23
- Isaiah 26:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2076, H2491, H2717, H2763, H2873, H2874, H4191, H4194, H5221, H6991, H6992, H7523, H7819, G03370, G06150, G13150, G23800, G26950, G49680, G49690, G54070

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:8](#); [4:14](#); [4:15](#); [4:23](#); [4:25](#); [12:12](#); [20:4](#); [20:11](#); [26:7](#); [27:41](#); [27:42](#); [34:25](#); [34:26](#); [37:20](#); [37:26](#); [49:6](#))

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G46700

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:19](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [14:2](#); [14:8](#); [14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:17](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [18:16](#); [18:20](#); [18:22](#); [18:26](#); [19:1](#); [19:4](#); [19:24](#); [19:28](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [Son of God](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: Genesis 3:16; 4:17; 4:25; 4:26; 5:4; 5:7; 5:10; 5:13; 5:16; 5:19; 5:22; 5:26; 5:28; 5:30; 5:32; 6:10; 6:18; 7:7; 7:13; 8:16; 8:18; 9:1; 9:8; 9:18; 9:19; 9:24; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:6; 10:7; 10:20; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 10:25; 10:29; 10:31; 10:32; 11:5; 11:11; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:19; 11:21; 11:23; 11:25; 11:31; 12:5; 14:12; 15:2; 15:3; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 17:1; 17:12; 17:16; 17:19; 17:23; 17:25; 17:26; 17:27; 18:10; 18:14; 18:19; 19:12; 19:37; 19:38; 21:2; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 21:10; 21:11; 21:13; 22:2; 22:3; 22:6; 22:7; 22:8; 22:9; 22:10; 22:12; 22:13; 22:16; 22:20; 23:8; 23:11; 24:3; 24:4; 24:5; 24:6; 24:7; 24:8; 24:15; 24:24; 24:36; 24:37; 24:38; 24:40; 24:44; 24:47; 24:48; 24:51; 25:3; 25:4; 25:6; 25:9; 25:11; 25:12; 25:13; 25:16; 25:19; 25:20; 25:22; 25:26; 27:1; 27:5; 27:6; 27:8; 27:13; 27:15; 27:17; 27:18; 27:20; 27:21; 27:24; 27:25; 27:26; 27:27; 27:29; 27:31; 27:32; 27:37; 27:42; 27:43; 28:5; 28:9; 29:5; 29:12; 29:13; 29:32; 29:33; 29:34; 29:35; 30:1; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:10; 30:12; 30:14; 30:15; 30:16; 30:17; 30:19; 30:20; 30:23; 30:24; 30:35; 31:1; 31:16; 31:17; 31:28; 31:43; 31:55; 32:11; 32:32; 33:19; 34:2; 34:5; 34:7; 34:8; 34:13; 34:18; 34:20; 34:24; 34:25; 34:26; 34:27; 35:5; 35:17; 35:22; 35:23; 35:24; 35:25; 35:26; 35:29; 36:5; 36:6; 36:10; 36:11; 36:12; 36:13; 36:14; 36:15; 36:16; 36:17; 36:18; 36:19; 36:20; 36:21; 36:22; 36:23; 36:24; 36:25; 36:26; 36:27; 36:28; 36:32; 36:33; 36:35; 36:38; 36:39; 37:2; 37:3; 37:32; 37:33; 37:34; 37:35; 38:3; 38:4; 38:5; 38:11; 38:26; 41:50; 42:1; 42:5; 42:11; 42:13; 42:32; 42:37; 42:38; 43:29; 45:9; 45:10; 45:21; 45:28; 46:5; 46:7; 46:8; 46:9; 46:10; 46:11; 46:12; 46:13; 46:14; 46:15; 46:16; 46:17; 46:18; 46:19; 46:21; 46:22; 46:23; 46:24; 46:25; 46:26; 46:27; 47:29; 48:1; 48:2; 48:5; 48:8; 48:9; 48:19; 49:1; 49:2; 49:8; 49:9; 49:11; 49:22; 49:32; 49:33; 50:12; 50:13; 50:23; 50:25)

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#), [ruler](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 6:2
- Genesis 6:4
- Job 1:6
- Romans 8:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H1121, G52070, G50430

(Go back to: [Genesis 6:2](#); [6:4](#))

soul, self, person

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:7](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: [soul](#), Holy Spirit, demon, [breath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:2](#); [3:8](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [7:15](#); [7:22](#); [8:1](#); [26:35](#); [41:8](#); [41:38](#); [45:27](#))

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), power, [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 7:9
- Luke 9:3
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G25630, G35860, G44640

(Go back to: [Genesis 38:18](#); [38:25](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), law, ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [Genesis 26:5](#); [47:26](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:12](#); [25:23](#); [31:6](#); [31:29](#); [41:57](#); [47:6](#); [49:3](#))

strife, disputes, quarrel, arguing, conflict

Definition:

The term “strife” refers to physical or emotional conflict between people.

- A person who causes strife does things that result in strong disagreements between people and in hurt feelings.
- Sometimes the use of the word “strife” implies that strong emotions are involved, such as anger or bitterness.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “disagreement” or “dispute” or “conflict.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 3:3-5
- Habakkuk 1:3
- Philippians 1:17
- Proverbs 17:1
- Psalms 55:8-9
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1777, H1779, H4066, H4090, H4683, H4808, H7379, H7701, G04850, G20520, G20540, G30550, G31630, G53790

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:7](#); [13:8](#); [26:20](#); [26:21](#))

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, "succoth" (or "sukkoth") means "shelters."

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:46
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 8:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5523, H5524

(Go back to: [Genesis 33:17](#))

sweep

Facts:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term “sweep” is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Isaiah](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:3
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 90:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H0857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G42160, G45630, G49510

(Go back to: [Genesis 18:23](#); [18:24](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:24](#); [27:40](#); [31:26](#); [34:25](#); [34:26](#); [48:22](#); [49:5](#))

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several different women in the Old Testament. There are several cities or other places that are named Tamar in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" was the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar," and general references to a place called "Tamar" which may have been different from the cities.

(See also: Absalom, [ancestor](#), Amnon, David, [ancestor](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:4
- 2 Samuel 13:2
- 2 Samuel 14:25-27
- Genesis 38:6-7
- Genesis 38:24
- Matthew 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1193, H2688, H8412, H8559

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:7](#); [38:6](#); [38:11](#); [38:13](#); [38:24](#))

Tarshish

Facts:

In biblical times, Tarshish was a port city situated on the Mediterranean Sea. The specific location of the city is unknown. Also, the Old Testament mentions two different men named Tarshish.

- The city of Tarshish was a prosperous port city with ships that carried products to buy, sell, or trade. The Bible states that King Solomon kept a fleet of ships stationed at Tarshish.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.
- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esther, [Japheth](#), Jonah, [Nineveh](#), Phoenicia, [wise men](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:2-5
- Isaiah 2:16
- Jeremiah 10:9
- Jonah 1:3
- Psalms 48:7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8659

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:4](#))

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong."
- To "tempt God" could be translated as to "put God to the test" or to "test God" or to "try God's patience" or to "cause God to have to punish" or to "stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, [Satan](#), [sin](#), [test](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:4-5
- Hebrews 4:15
- James 1:13
- Luke 4:2
- Luke 11:4
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:1** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:8** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0974, H4531, H5254, G05510, G15980, G39850, G39860, G39870

(Go back to: [Genesis 22 General Notes](#))

tent, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), curtain, Paul, Sinai, tabernacle, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:10
- Daniel 11:45
- Exodus 16:18
- Genesis 12:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0167, H0168, H2583, H3407, H6898

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:20](#); [9:21](#); [9:27](#); [12:8](#); [13:3](#); [13:5](#); [13:12](#); [13:18](#); [18:1](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [24:67](#); [25:27](#); [26:25](#); [31:25](#); [31:33](#); [31:34](#); [33:19](#); [35:21](#))

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), [Levite](#), [livestock](#), [Melchizedek](#), minister, [sacrifice](#), tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- Isaiah 6:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G05860, G11810, G11830

(Go back to: [Genesis 14:20](#); [28:22](#))

Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [Haran](#), [Lot](#), Mesopotamia, [Nahor](#), [Sarah](#), [Shem](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Luke 3:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G22910

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:24](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [11:31](#); [11:32](#))

terror, terrorize, terrify, dread, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme or intense fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 2:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:9
- Mark 6:48-50

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H0928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1205, H1763, H2111, H2113, H2189, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, G16290, G16300, G22580, G44220, G44260, G54010

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:2](#); [15:12](#); [28:17](#); [35:5](#); [45:3](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: [tempt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [Genesis 22 General Notes](#); [22:1; Notes](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:44](#); [31:48](#); [31:50](#); [31:52](#); [41:16](#))

thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan’s plan is to try to get God’s people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: [bless](#), crime, crucify, [darkness](#), [destroyer](#), power, Samaria, [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 6:30
- Revelation 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G07270, G24170, G28120, G30270

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:19](#))

thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thornbush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: [crown](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 6:7-8
- Matthew 13:7
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G01730, G01740, G46470, G51460

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:18](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [Genesis 50:10](#); [50:11](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 1:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 5:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 1:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G09680, G23620

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:40](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [Genesis 10:5](#); [10:20](#); [10:31](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), trespass, [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [Genesis 31:36](#); [50:17](#))

tremble, stagger, shake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:12](#); [4:14](#); [27:33](#); [42:28](#); [45:24](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Genesis 25:16](#); [49:16](#); [49:28](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Genesis 34:30](#); [35:3](#); [41:8](#); [41:51](#); [42:21](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 1 John 1:5-7
- 1 John 2:8
- 3 John 1:8
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 1:6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 1:18
- James 3:14
- James 5:19
- Jeremiah 4:2
- John 1:9
- John 1:16-18
- John 1:51
- John 3:31-33
- Joshua 7:19-21
- Lamentations 5:19-22
- Matthew 8:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 26:1-3

- Revelation 1:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:8** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0199, H0389, H0403, H0529, H0530, H0543, H0544, H0551, H0571, H0935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G02250, G02260, G02270, G02280, G02300, G11030, G33030, G34830, G36890, G41030, G41370

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:48](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Genesis 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [24:27](#); [24:49](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [32:10](#); [Notes](#); [42:20](#); [Notes](#); [47:29](#))

Tubal

Facts:

There were several men in the Old Testament who had the name “Tubal.”

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named “Tubal-Cain” was a son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal was also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [descendant](#), Ezekiel, Isaiah, [Japheth](#), [Lamech](#), [people group](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:5
- Ezekiel 27:12-13
- Genesis 10:2-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8422, H8423

(Go back to: [Genesis 4:22](#); [10:2](#))

tunic

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See Also: robe)

Bible References:

- Daniel 3:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 8:12-13
- Luke 3:11
- Mark 6:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G55090

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:21](#); [37:3](#); [37:23](#); [37:31](#); [37:32](#); [37:33](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [Genesis 19:3](#))

Ur

Facts:

Ur was an important city along the Euphrates River in the ancient region of Chaldea, which was part of Mesopotamia. This region was located in what is now the modern-day country of Iraq.

- Abraham was from the city of Ur and it was from there that God called him to leave to go to the land of Canaan.
- Haran, the brother of Abraham and father of Lot, died in Ur. This was probably a factor that influenced Lot to leave Ur with Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [Chaldea](#), [Euphrates River](#), [Haran](#), [Lot](#), Mesopotamia)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0218

(Go back to: [Genesis 11:28](#); [11:31](#); [15:7](#))

veil, veiled, unveiled

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb to “veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 3:12-13
- 2 Corinthians 3:16
- Ezekiel 13:18
- Isaiah 47:1-2
- Song of Songs 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4304, H4533, H4555, H6777, H6809, H7196, H7479, G03430, G25710, G25720

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:65](#); [38:14](#); [38:19](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [Genesis 40:9](#); [40:10](#); [49:11](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:20](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 1:27
- Luke 1:35
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 25:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:4** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:5** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:1** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G39320, G39330

(Go back to: [Genesis 24:16](#))

vision, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 9:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 1:22
- Luke 24:23
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G37010, G37050, G37060

(Go back to: [Genesis 15:1; 46:2](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Genesis 3:17](#); [4:23](#); [16:2](#); [21:12](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [22:18](#); [26:5](#); [27:8](#); [27:13](#); [27:22](#); [27:38](#); [27:43](#); [29:11](#); [30:6](#); [39:14](#); [39:15](#); [39:18](#); [45:2](#); [45:16](#))

VOW

Definition:

A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G21710

(Go back to: [Genesis 28:20](#); [31:13](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Genesis 5:22](#); [5:24](#); [6:9](#); [9:23](#); [13:17](#); [17:1](#); [48:15](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:15](#); [4:9](#); [17:9](#); [17:10](#); [24:6](#); [28:15](#); [28:20](#); [30:31](#); [31:24](#); [31:29](#); [31:49](#); [37:11](#))

water, deep

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- The “deep” refers to a deep body of water, such as the watery depths at the beginning of creation or bodies of water that extend deep under the earth’s surface such as oceans, seas, etc.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), Holy Spirit, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 4:10
- John 4:14
- John 4:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, H8415, G05040, G42150, G42220, G52020, G52040

(Go back to: Genesis 1:2; 1:6; 1:7; 1:9; 1:10; 1:20; 1:21; 1:22; 7:6; 7:7; 7:10; 7:11; 7:17; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:24; 8:1; 8:2; 8:3; 8:5; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:11; 8:13; 9:11; 9:15; 16:7; 18:4; 21:14; 21:15; 21:19; 21:25; 24:11; 24:13; 24:32; 24:43; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:32; 37:24; 43:24; 49:4; 49:25)

week

Definition:

The term “week” literally refers to a period of time lasting seven days.

- In the Jewish system of counting time, a week begins at sunset on Saturday and ends at sunset the following Saturday.
- In the Bible, the term “week” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a group of seven units of time, such as seven years.
- The “Festival of Weeks” is a celebration of harvest that takes place seven weeks after Passover. It is also called “Pentecost.”

(See also: Pentecost)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:7-8
- Deuteronomy 16:9
- Leviticus 23:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7620, G45210

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:27](#); [29:28](#))

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G46210

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:14](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Genesis 9:21](#); [9:24](#); [14:18](#); [19:32](#); [19:33](#); [19:34](#); [19:35](#); [27:25](#); [27:28](#); [27:37](#); [49:11](#); [49:12](#))

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term “wise men” simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term “wise men” often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king’s royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes “wise men” also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men,” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term “wise men” simply means people who are wise, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Daniel](#), [divination](#), [magic](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [ruler](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 2:1-2
- Daniel 2:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G46800

(Go back to: [Genesis 41:8](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

(Go back to: [Genesis 34 General Notes](#); [41:33](#); [41:39](#))

wolf, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term “wolves” is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: [evil](#), false prophet, [sheep](#), teach)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:7
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:3
- Matthew 7:15
- Zephaniah 3:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G30740

(Go back to: [Genesis 49:27](#))

womb

Definition:

The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: [euphemism](#))
- A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
- Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 2:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G10640, G28360, G33880

(Go back to: [Genesis 20:18](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [29:31](#); [30:2](#); [30:22](#); [38:27](#); [49:25](#))

work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
- God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: [fruit](#), Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Acts 2:8-11
- Daniel 4:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 2:15-16
- James 2:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 2:7
- Romans 3:28
- Titus 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G20410

(Go back to: [Genesis 2:2](#); [2:3](#); [3:23](#); [5:29](#); [39:11](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:44](#); [40:2](#); [49:7](#))

wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or “treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:5
- Luke 6:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 71:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0816, H2248, H2250, H2255, H2257, H2398, H2554, H2555, H3238, H3637, H4834, H5062, H5142, H5230, H5627, H5753, H5766, H5791, H5792, H5916, H6031, H6087, H6127, H6231, H6485, H6565, H6586, H7451, H7489, H7563, H7665, H7667, H7686, H8133, H8267, H8295, G00910, G00920, G00930, G00950, G02640, G08240, G09830, G09840, G15360, G16260, G16510, G17270, G19080, G25560, G25580, G25590, G26070, G30760, G30770, G37620, G41220, G51950, G51960

(Go back to: [Genesis 16:5](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: [Genesis 2 General Notes](#); 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:21; 2:22; 3:1; 3:8; 3:9; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:22; 3:23; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:6; 4:9; 4:13; 4:15; 4:16; 4:26; 5:29; 6:3; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 7:1; 7:5; 7:16; 8:20; 8:21; 9:26; 10:9; 11:5; 11:6; 11:8; 11:9; 12:1; 12:4; 12:7; 12:8; 12:17; 13:4; 13:10; 13:13; 13:14; 13:18; 14:22; 15:1; 15:2; 15:4; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:18; 16:2; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:13; 17:1; 18:1; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:26; 18:33; 19:13; 19:14; 19:16; 19:24; 19:27; 20:18; 21:1; 21:33; 22:11; 22:14; 22:15; 22:16; 24:1; 24:3; 24:7; 24:12; 24:21; 24:26; 24:27; 24:31; 24:35; 24:40; 24:42; 24:44; 24:48; 24:50; 24:51; 24:52; 24:56; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 26:2; 26:12; 26:22; 26:24; 26:25; 26:28; 26:29; 27:7; 27:20; 27:27; 28:13; 28:16; 28:21; 29:31; 29:32; 29:33; 29:35; 30:24; 30:27; 30:30; 31:3; 31:49; 32:9; 38:7; 38:10; 39:2; 39:3; 39:5; 39:21; 39:23; 49:18)

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: [month](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

(Go back to: [Genesis 1:14; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:11; 5:12; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:22; 5:23; 5:25; 5:26; 5:27; 5:28; 5:30; 5:31; 5:32; 6:3; 7:6; 7:11; 8:13; 9:28; 9:29; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:26; 11:32; 12:4; 14:4; 14:5; 15:13; 16:3; 16:16; 17:1; 17:17; 17:21; 17:24; 17:25; 21:5; 23:1; 25:7; 25:17; 25:20; 25:26; 26:12; 26:34; 29:18; 29:20; 29:27; 29:30; 31:38; 31:41; 35:28; 37:2; 41:1; 41:26; 41:27; 41:29; 41:30; 41:34; 41:35; 41:36; 41:46; 41:47; 41:48; 41:50; 41:53; 41:54; 45:6; 45:11; 47:8; 47:9; 47:17; 47:18; 47:28; 50:22; 50:26](#))

yoke, yoked, tied

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: [bind](#), burden, [oppress](#), persecute, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10
- Galatians 5:1
- Genesis 27:40
- Isaiah 9:4
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Matthew 11:30
- Philippians 4:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G20860, G22180

(Go back to: [Genesis 27:40](#))

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was Jacob's tenth son. He was Leah's sixth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Zebulun" or "Zebulun."
- The meaning of the name Zebulun is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word probably meaning "to honor" or "to dwell."
- The tribe of Zebulun settled in northwest Canaan, bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Issachar, Manasseh, and Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), [Leah](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:20
- Isaiah 9:1
- Judges 4:10
- Matthew 4:13
- Matthew 4:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G21940

(Go back to: [Genesis 30:20](#); [35:23](#); [46:14](#); [49:13](#))

Zilpah

Facts:

Zilpah was one of Jacob's wives. She was the mother of Jacob's two sons Gad and Asher.

- Laban gave Zilpah to Leah as a servant when Leah married Jacob.
- When Leah stopped having children, she gave Zilpah to Jacob as a wife to bear more children for her.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), [Gad](#), [Asher](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:23
- Genesis 30:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2153

(Go back to: [Genesis 29:24](#); [30:9](#); [30:10](#); [30:12](#); [35:26](#); [37:2](#); [46:18](#))

Zoar

Facts:

Zoar was a small city where Lot fled when God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.

- It was formerly known as “Bela” but was renamed “Zoar” when Lot asked God to spare this “small” city.
- Zoar is thought to have been located in the plain of the Jordan River or at the southern end of the Dead Sea.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lot](#), [Sodom](#), [Gomorrah](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 34:1-3
- Genesis 13:10-11
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 19:22
- Genesis 19:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6820

(Go back to: [Genesis 13:10](#); [14:2](#); [14:8](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#); [19:30](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community